



# Korean Basic Course

## Part 1



## TABLE OF CONTENTS

PREFACE.....	111
INTRODUCTORY UNIT	
Introduction.....	1
Organization and Use of This Course.....	2
Romanization.....	5
Korean Orthography (Hankil).....	6
Special Symbols.....	6
Pronunciation.....	7
Basic Syllable Chart.....	9
Syllable Final Consonant Chart.....	11
UNIT 1. GREETINGS	
BASIC DIALOGUES.....	19
Additional Greeting Expressions.....	25
Notes on Dialogues.....	25
Grammar Notes.....	27
1. The Verbals and the Copula.....	27
2. Particles <u>in/nin</u> , <u>il/lil</u> , <u>e</u> .....	28
3. Nouns and Noun Phrases.....	30
DRILLS.....	31
EXERCISES.....	36
UNIT 2. FINDING ONE'S WAY AROUND	
BASIC DIALOGUES.....	39
Notes on Dialogues.....	44
Grammar Notes.....	45
1. Formal Polite Speech Sentences.....	45
2. Particles <u>i/ka</u> , <u>lo/ilo</u> , <u>e</u> .....	47
3. Determinatives <u>i</u> , <u>ca</u> , <u>ki</u> , <u>oni</u> , <u>olin</u> , <u>wen</u> .....	47
4. Post-Nouns <u>kes</u> , <u>pun</u> , <u>ccok</u> .....	48
5. <u>imnita</u> and <u>issimnita</u> .....	48
DRILLS.....	50
EXERCISES.....	59
UNIT 3. FINDING ONE'S WAY AROUND (Continued)	
BASIC DIALOGUES.....	61
Notes on Dialogues.....	66
Grammar Notes.....	67
1. Verbs: Action vs. Description and Transitive vs. Intransitive.....	67
2. Future Tense.....	68
3. Honorifics.....	68
4. Negative <u>an</u> .....	69
5. Particle <u>ese</u> 'from', 'at', 'in', 'on'.....	69
6. Particle <u>e</u> 'to'.....	70
DRILLS.....	71
EXERCISES.....	78
UNIT 4. SHOPPING	
BASIC DIALOGUES.....	81
Numerals (1).....	87

Notes on Dialogues.....	89
Grammar Notes.....	90
1. Informal Polite Speech.....	90
2. Past Tenses.....	94
3. Particle <u>to</u> .....	95
4. Particle <u>wa/kwa</u> .....	95
5. <u>-ci</u> + <u>anhsimnita</u> .....	95
6. Numerals.....	96
DRILLS.....	97
EXERCISES.....	107
UNIT 5. SHOPPING (Continued)	
BASIC DIALOGUES.....	111
Numerals (2).....	119
Notes on Dialogues.....	120
Grammar Notes.....	121
1. <u>-n/in/nin</u> + Nominal.....	121
2. <u>-l/il kka yo?</u> .....	122
3. Adverbs.....	122
4. Counters <u>cang</u> , <u>can</u> , <u>kwən</u> , <u>kæ</u> , <u>pun</u> , <u>mali</u> .....	124
DRILLS.....	126
EXERCISES.....	138
UNIT 6. TIME	
BASIC DIALOGUES.....	141
Notes on Dialogues.....	148
Grammar Notes.....	150
1. Time Counters <u>nyən</u> , <u>hæ</u> , <u>-wəl</u> , <u>tal</u> , <u>cull</u> , <u>il</u> , <u>nal</u> , <u>-si</u> , <u>sikan</u> , <u>pun</u> .....	150
2. <u>-ci yo?</u> .....	151
3. <u>-le/ile</u> .....	152
4. Adverbial Phrases.....	152
DRILLS.....	154
EXERCISES.....	168
UNIT 7. TIME (Continued)	
BASIC DIALOGUES.....	171
Numeral Phrases.....	177
Notes on Dialogues.....	178
Grammar Notes.....	179
1. Numeral Phrases.....	179
2. Particle <u>lo/ilo</u> 'as', 'in the capacity of', 'by means of'..	179
3. <u>-n/in/nin ka yo?</u> .....	180
4. <u>-lyəko/ilyəko</u> .....	180
5. <u>-(1)l kka ha-</u> .....	181
6. Particle <u>kkaci</u> .....	181
7. Inflected Forms and Verb Phrases.....	182
DRILLS.....	184
EXERCISES.....	196
UNIT 8. TALKING ABOUT ONE'S WORK	
BASIC DIALOGUES.....	199
Notes on Dialogues.....	204
Grammar Notes.....	205
1. <u>-ki</u> .....	205
2. Particle <u>mata</u> .....	206

3. - <u>l/ll</u> su iss- vs. - <u>l/ll</u> su eps-.....	
4. Particle <u>pota</u> .....	207
DRILLS.....	208
EXERCISES.....	221
UNIT 9. GOING TO THE MOVIES	
BASIC DIALOGUES.....	225
Notes on Dialogues.....	230
Grammar Notes.....	231
1. - <u>ko</u> .....	231
2. - <u>ci</u> man.....	232
3. - <u>l/ll</u> .....	232
4. Particle <u>hako</u> .....	233
DRILLS.....	234
EXERCISES.....	248
UNIT 10. GOING AROUND THE TOWN..	
BASIC DIALOGUES.....	251
Notes on Dialogues.....	256
Grammar Notes.....	257
1. - <u>myen/imyen</u> .....	257
2. Infinitive + <u>to</u> 'even though-', 'although-'.....	258
3. <u>ceil</u> or <u>kacang</u> .....	258
4. Particle <u>na/ina</u> .....	259
DRILLS.....	261
EXERCISES.....	274
UNIT 11. GOING AROUND THE TOWN (Continued)	
BASIC DIALOGUES.....	277
Notes on Dialogues.....	282
Grammar Notes.....	283
1. - <u>ci</u> ma(l)-.....	283
2. Infinitive + <u>cu</u> .....	284
3. Particle <u>ya</u> .....	285
4. - <u>n/in/nin</u> kes.....	286
5. - <u>(l)l</u> kes <u>imnita</u> .....	287
6. Further Notes on Honorifics.....	289
DRILLS.....	289
EXERCISES.....	304
UNIT 12. EATING AND DRINKING	
BASIC DIALOGUES.....	307
Notes on Dialogues.....	314
Grammar Notes.....	316
1. - <u>(l)ni</u> kka, 'because..', 'since..'.....	316
2. - <u>(l)lyemyen</u> .....	316
3. Infinitive + <u>po</u> -.....	317
4. Particle <u>tinci/itinci</u> .....	317
5. Particle <u>man</u> 'only'.....	318
DRILLS.....	319
EXERCISES.....	328
UNIT 13. EATING AND DRINKING (Continued)	
BASIC DIALOGUES.....	331
Additional Vocabulary and Phrases.....	335
Notes on Dialogues.....	342



Grammar Notes.....	343
1. <u>-(i)na</u> , '---but'.....	343
2. <u>-n/in</u> { <u>cək</u> } <u>i issimnikka?</u> 'Have [you] ever done...?'.....	343
{ <u>il</u> }	
3. Interrogative + <u>-n/in/nin ci</u> .....	344
4. Particles <u>eke</u> 'to' and <u>ekese</u> 'from'.....	345
5. Dependent Nouns.....	346
DRILLS.....	347
EXERCISES.....	357
UNIT 14. TALKING ABOUT ONE'S LIFE AND FAMILY	
BASIC DIALOGUES.....	361
Notes on Dialogues.....	368
Grammar Notes.....	370
1. <u>ttæ</u> 'time', 'occasion', 'when'.....	370
2. Infinitive + <u>sæ</u> 'and..', 'and so..'.....	371
3. A Nominal + { <u>we e</u> } 'beside Nominal'.....	372
{ <u>pakk e</u> }	
4. <u>ssik</u> 'each', 'at one time'.....	372
5. Infinitive + <u>iss-</u> .....	373
DRILLS.....	374
EXERCISES.....	384
UNIT 15. TALKING ABOUT ONE'S LIFE AND FAMILY (Continued)	
BASIC DIALOGUES.....	387
Notes on Dialogues.....	394
Grammar Notes.....	395
1. <u>hu</u> 'after', 'the later time', 'next'.....	395
2. <u>cæn</u> 'before', 'the previous time'.....	395
3. <u>-n/in ci</u> + (period of time) + <u>twe-</u> .....	396
4. <u>-nin tongan</u> 'while doing something'.....	396
5. Nominal + <u>e tæhæ sæ</u> 'concerning Nominal'.....	397
DRILLS.....	398
EXERCISES.....	408
UNIT 16. TELEPHONING	
BASIC DIALOGUES.....	411
Notes on Dialogues.....	419
Grammar Notes.....	420
1. <u>-n/in/nin te</u> 'while..', 'such is the case'.....	421
2. Infinitive + <u>tu-</u> (or <u>noh-</u> ).....	421
3. <u>-ke</u> .....	422
4. <u>-n/in/nin ci</u> .....	423
DRILLS.....	424
EXERCISES.....	431
UNIT 17. TELEPHONING (Continued)	
BASIC DIALOGUES.....	435
Notes on Dialogues.....	440
Grammar Notes.....	440
1. Plain Speech: Formal and Informal.....	440
2. Personal Nouns in the Polite and Plain Speeches.....	443
3. Particles <u>lako</u> and <u>ko</u> .....	443
DRILLS.....	446
EXERCISES.....	461

UNIT 18. TALKING ABOUT WEATHER	
BASIC DIALOGUES.....	465
Notes on Dialogues.....	472
Grammar Notes.....	473
1. <u>-ninkun/kun yo!</u> .....	473
2. Infinitive + <u>ci</u> .....	473
3. <u>-n/in/nin kəs kath-</u> .....	474
4. Particle <u>chələm</u> .....	475
5. Particle <u>lato/ilato</u> .....	476
6. <u>-(i)l kyehwek i-</u> 'be planning to-'.....	476
DRILLS.....	478
EXERCISES.....	486
Korean-English Glossary.....	488
Index to the Grammar Notes.....	551

## INTRODUCTORY UNIT

Introduction

This is the first of two volumes designed to teach spoken Korean to English speakers. The Korean presented in this book is representative of the 'standard' speech of educated Koreans in Seoul, which has been the capital city and cultural, educational and political center of the country for over five hundred years. In Korea, as in every other nation, there is considerable local variation in pronunciation and vocabulary as well as in styles of speech. However, in schools all over Korea the language presented here is used and taught as the national standard and, if you learn it well, you will be speaking a form of Korean which has prestige throughout the country and which will be understood everywhere.

This course is written primarily for use in an intensive language program of twenty or more hours per week; but it can also be used for other situations, such as a language program in which one or more part-time students attend class for three to six hours per week, or for individual study with the aid of recorded tapes.

Acquiring proficiency in the use of language is like acquiring proficiency in any other skill, for example, driving an automobile-- you must practice until the mechanics of driving - or speaking - are reflex. It is the aim of this course, therefore, to bring students to 'automacity' in speaking and understanding everyday Korean.

The following points are emphasized to both the teacher and the student:

1. ALWAYS SPEAK AT A NORMAL CONVERSATIONAL SPEED. Neither the teacher nor the student should ever allow himself to speak slower than a 'normal rate of speed'.
2. AVOID THE USE OF ENGLISH IN THE CLASSROOM except for occasional linguistic explanations or discussions by a linguist. Drill hours with the native-speaking instructor should be carried out entirely in Korean from the very beginning. Time spent in speaking English in class is largely time wasted.
3. CORRECT MISTAKES IMMEDIATELY. Mistakes made by a student should not be passed over, but should be immediately corrected by the instructor.
4. AVOID QUESTIONS beginning with WHY, such as "Why do you say it that way?"

If a student wants to ask questions, he should ask more useful and answerable questions beginning with HOW or WHEN, such as, "How do you use the word?" or, "When do you use this expression?"

5. AVOID DISCUSSIONS WITH THE INSTRUCTOR ABOUT KOREAN. Talking about Korean should be confined to the linguistic hour specially set aside for such discussions with a scientific linguist, separate from regular drill hours.
6. REVIEW CONSTANTLY. As the students proceed through the course, they should master everything thoroughly. Each new unit presupposes thorough mastery of what has been covered before. Otherwise, do not go ahead.

#### Organization and Use of This Course

Each unit in Korean Basic Course Volume 1 (Units 1-18) consists of four major parts: Basic Dialogues or other 'basic sentences', Notes on Dialogues, Grammar Notes, Drills and Exercises.

#### Basic Dialogues

Each unit begins with a connected dialogue of about ten sentences between two or (occasionally) more speakers. Each dialogue is to be practiced, memorized and acted out until it has been so 'overlearned' that the utterances and their sequence are understood and can be produced automatically without conscious thought or hesitation. In some units, there is a group of two or (rarely) more short dialogues which are related to one another. In such a unit, the dialogues may be treated as one connected dialogue.

In the Basic Dialogues, new words and phrases ('build-ups') are introduced immediately before each sentence. They are not part of the Dialogue itself.

In dealing with the Basic Dialogues, the following steps are suggested:

1. First, the instructor reads each sentence line-by-line at normal speed. The students listen with books closed, so that they may become accustomed to depending on their ears.

2. The instructor says the words or phrases of the 'build-ups' and then the complete sentences. The students repeat immediately after the instructor (books still closed). The instructor corrects errors by repeating mispronounced

words or phrases as they should have been said, so that the students can try again.

3. When the students are able to approximate an imitation of the instructor, they begin intensive practice on the dialogue, imitating the instructor line-by-line (books optionally open), until the instructor is satisfied that their performance is sure and fluent.

4. After going through the dialogue several times in this way, the students take the roles in the dialogue (books closed) and practice until they are freely able to do it from memory.

#### Notes on Dialogues and Grammar Notes

Notes on Dialogues and Grammar Notes follow the Basic Dialogue section. The Notes are intended to be self-explanatory and to be read outside the class after the Basic Dialogue has been introduced. The Notes on Dialogues are numbered according to the sentences in the dialogue, and are intended to give additional information on the use of the words, phrases or sentences. The Grammar Notes are systematic presentations of new patterns or major grammatical constructions that occur for the first time in the Basic Dialogues or other 'basic sentences' in the unit.

If the course is being taught (as intended) by a team composed of a scientific linguist and a native speaker, some explanation of the Notes may be appropriate in class. However, in general, drill time in class with a native instructor should be conducted entirely in Korean. If the native-speaking instructor is also a trained linguist and fluent in English, specific periods may be set aside for grammatical explanations; these should be kept separate from regular drill sessions during which English should be used only for translations or paraphrases designed to keep the student aware of the meaning of the Korean sentences he is practicing.

The Grammar Notes are written to give some basic understanding of Korean to the beginning student, and are intended to be immediately and practically relevant. If, however, the student finds them difficult to understand, he can simply ignore them. Instead of wasting time talking about Korean, extensive drill concentrated on specific points of pronunciation or grammar can produce the desired goal - proficiency in performance. The course is designed to produce an operational competence in Korean, not a theoretical understanding of it.

#### Drills

The Drills in this Course are of a considerable variety. However, each

unit basically has five kinds of drills:

- Substitution Drills
- Transformation (or Grammar) Drills
- Response Drills
- Combination Drills
- Expansion Drills

It is to be noted that each drill has its own specific purpose, but the final goal of all the drills is to lead the student to develop his proficiency in free conversation. Without sufficient drill practice, he cannot achieve such proficiency. Therefore, a great proportion of class time is to be devoted to drills, until the students are able to do them accurately with their books closed.

Drills can be done in the following steps:

1. Drills are learned first like the sentences of the dialogues. That is, each new drill sentence is repeated after the instructor until it is correctly produced with books closed.
2. The students read the drill sentences aloud at normal speed from their books.
3. The drill is then done without the book; the instructor gives the appropriate cues or stimuli, and the students produce the proper responses.

a. Substitution Drills

In this course, there are several kinds of substitution drills: Simple Substitution; Multiple Substitution; Alternate Substitution, Correlation Substitution, etc. In substitution drills - of whatever kind - students will be required to produce the given pattern sentence, and then they will be required to make substitutions in one or more 'slots', using the 'cues' furnished by the instructor. Sometimes, he may be asked to form a properly arranged sentence by inserting a correlated cue. The basic aims of a substitution drill are two-fold: the first is to make the student's control of the pattern sentences automatic and reflex, in order to develop fluency in actual free conversation; the second is to practice useful lexical items in the given sentence patterns. The lexical items are either those which have occurred previously or new related ones. New words and phrases added in the substitution drills are marked with an asterisk to the left of the sentence on their first occurrence. New words and phrases are used only in substitution drills. Substitution drills are printed in two columns, with English equivalents on the right and drill sentences with cues underlined on the left. English equivalents are not provided except for

the model sentences at the beginning of each drill; but only in Substitution Drills are English equivalents provided for subsequent sentences.

b. Response Drills

These are mostly question-and-answer drills designed to help the students develop ability to respond to questions normally. A model is provided at the beginning of the drill. The student is required to produce a response for each question or remark, using the cue or stimulus supplied by the instructor.

c. Transformation Drills

The student is required to produce sentences parallel in an easily generalizable way to the pattern sentence. For example, the student may be asked to transform a negative to an affirmative pattern; or a statement to a question. Transformation Drills are sometimes designated as Grammar Drills in this course.

d. Combination Drills

These are drills in which the student is asked to produce one long pattern by combining two short patterns.

e. Expansion Drills

Starting from a short sentence, the instructor gives cues one by one requesting the student to expand the sentence each time in specific ways.

### Exercises

The exercises are of two sorts: (1) they ask the student to complete unfinished utterances or to give appropriate responses to the questions based on reality relevant to each situation; (2) they offer suggestions about additional practice and review for what has been covered in the unit.

The students should be able to do all these exercises fluently and accurately before going on to the next unit.

### Romanization

The symbols used to represent Korean sounds are based on a phonemic analysis (see Pronunciation), but each word is transcribed morphophonemically - that is, each word is always written with the same sequence of symbols, even though its pronunciation may be changed by what precedes or follows it. However, if a word has two shapes, our selection is made on the basis of the final sound of the preceding word. The stems of inflected words (i.e. verbs) are written the same way always, even if phonetic changes take place when certain endings or suffixes are added to them.



Words are separated by spaces. A Korean word is a form which may be either (1) inflected or uninflected, (2) bound or free. Free forms can occur alone, while bound forms can occur only with other forms. If a bound form occurs with another form, the combination is a single word unless at least one of the bound forms also occurs with free forms in other constructions.

The first letter of a sentence (except l or e) is capitalized. So is the first letter of a proper noun wherever it occurs.

### Korean Orthography (Hankil)

In Volume 1, the dialogue portions of each unit are accompanied by Korean orthography (Hankil) throughout the text. And in the glossary at the end of the text, Hankil is provided for all entries, in addition to English equivalents.

We follow the standard Korean spelling rules in this text regardless of the transcription. Spaces within a phrase or sentence are based on Hankil writing rules; for example, particles are not separated from the words preceding them.

Since Hankil is relatively easy to learn, it may be introduced gradually during the middle part of the text, replacing the Romanized transcription completely by the time Volume 1 is completed. A student should thus be able to read in Hankil at normal speed before he goes on to Volume 2, which is entirely in Hankil and English.

It is not the intention of this text to teach spoken Korean through Hankil from the very beginning, since it requires some time before the student can read it fluently. Hankil can be easily mastered by reading (in Hankil) dialogues which have already been memorized by the students.

It is suggested that students interested in written Korean (which requires the knowledge of Chinese characters in addition to Hankil) use an appropriate basic reading text.

### Special Symbols

<u>Symbol</u>	<u>In a KOREAN sequence</u>	<u>In an ENGLISH sequence</u>
( )	Optional addition, no change of meaning. <u>a(b)</u> = a <u>or</u> ab; <u>b</u> is optional. Mues (il) hasimnikka? 'What do [you] do?'	Explanatory information, not required in English.  Korean (language)

( ' ' )	---	Literal translation. [I]'m fine. ('[I] exist well.')
[ ]	---	English items not represented in Korean. [I]'m fine. ('[I] exist well.')
a/b	Alternate forms (like English <u>a/an</u> ).	---
	1/ka, 1l/111	
/ /	'Sentence' pronunciation of preceding words (like English <u>can't you /kancha/</u> )	---
	ettəhsɨmnikka?/ettəssɨmnikka/ haksəng/hakssəng/ Hankuk mal/hangkungmal/	
;	---	(In 'Build-ups') or child; baby
*	(In substitution drills) new lexical item.	---
?	End of question-sentence.	---
.	End of other kinds of sentences.	---
,	After (1) sentence adverbs and adverb phrases, (2) subordinate clauses.	---
-	(1) Connects parts of compound words (like English <u>sister-in-</u> <u>law</u> ), (2--in Grammar Notes) indicates end of verb stem or beginning of some verb endings.	---

### Pronunciation

Standard Korean, spoken by educated natives of Seoul, has an inventory of 8 vowels, 2 semi-vowels and 19 consonants:

## (a) Vowels

i	ɪ	u
e	ɛ	o
æ	a	

## (b) Semi-vowels

w	y
---	---

## (c) Consonants

p	t	c	k	
pp	tt	cc	kk	
ph	th	ch	kh	h
	s			
	ss			
m	n	ng		
	l			

Note: The symbols pp, tt, cc, kk, ph, th, ch, kh, ss, ng in the above chart are unit sounds, not combination sounds.

The Korean phonological system can be described in terms of possible syllable formation:

- (a) 8 single vowels
- (b) 144 consonant + vowel
- (c) 11 semi-vowel + vowel
- (d) 108 consonant + y (semi-vowel) + vowel
- (e) 90 consonant + w (semi-vowel) + vowel
- (f) 1 i + y
- (g) 1 w + ɛ + y
- (h) 8 consonant + w + ɛ + y
- (i) 56 vowel + consonant
- (j) 1008 consonant + vowel + consonant
- (k) 42 y + vowel + consonant
- (l) 35 w + vowel + consonant
- (m) 756 consonant + y + vowel + consonant
- (n) 630 consonant + w + vowel + consonant

The most common syllable types, however, are the first five kinds: (a) 8 single vowels, (b) 144 consonant + vowel, (c) 11 semi-vowel + vowel, (d) 108 consonant + y + vowel, (e) 90 consonant + w + vowel.

The following chart shows the formation of the basic Korean syllables. It is essential that the student should ultimately be able to pronounce and distinguish each syllable type correctly.

Basic Syllable Chart

INTRODUCTORY UNIT

Practice 1

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20
a	ka	kka	kha	na	ta	tta	tha	la	ma	pa	ppa	pha	sa	ssa	ca	cca	cha	ha	ang
ə	kə	kke	khe	ne	te	tte	the	le	me	pe	ppe	phe	se	sse	ce	cce	che	he	əng
o	ko	kko	kho	no	to	tto	tho	lo	mo	po	ppo	pho	so	sso	co	cco	cho	ho	ong
u	ku	kku	khu	nu	tu	ttu	thu	lu	mu	pu	ppu	phu	su	ssu	cu	ccu	chu	hu	ung
l	kl	kkl	khl	nl	tl	ttl	thl	ll	ml	pl	ppl	phl	sl	ssl	cl	cc1	chl	hl	lɪng
l	kl	kkl	khl	nl	tl	ttl	thl	ll	ml	pl	ppl	phl	sl	ssl	cl	cc1	chl	hl	lɪng
e	ke	kke	khe	ne	te	tte	the	le	me	pe	ppe	phe	se	sse	ce	cce	che	he	eɪng
æ	kæ	kkeæ	kheæ	næ	tæ	tteæ	theæ	læ	mæ	pæ	ppeæ	pheæ	sæ	ssæ	cæ	ccæ	chæ	hæ	æɪng
ya	kya	kkyā	khyā	nyā	tyā	ttya	thya	lyā	myā	pyā	ppyā	phya	syā	ssya	cya	ccya	chya	hya	yaŋg
yə	kyə	kkyə	khyə	nyə	tyə	ttyə	thyə	lyə	myə	pyə	ppyə	phyə	syə	ssyə	cye	ccye	chye	hye	yəŋg
yɔ	kyɔ	kkyɔ	khyɔ	nyɔ	tyɔ	ttɔ	thɔ	lyɔ	myɔ	pyɔ	ppyɔ	phɔ	syɔ	ssyɔ	cyo	ccyo	chyo	hyo	yɔŋg
yɯ	kyɯ	kkyɯ	khyɯ	nyɯ	tyɯ	ttɯ	thɯ	lyɯ	myɯ	pyɯ	ppyɯ	phɯ	syɯ	ssyɯ	cɣu	ccɣu	chɣu	hyu	yɯŋg
yɛ	kyɛ	kkyɛ	khyɛ	nyɛ	tyɛ	ttɛ	thɛ	lyɛ	myɛ	pyɛ	ppyɛ	phɛ	syɛ	ssyɛ	cye	ccye	chye	hye	yɛŋg
yæ	kyæ	kkyæ	khyæ	nyæ	tyæ	ttɥæ	thɥæ	lyæ	myæ	pyæ	ppyæ	phɥæ	syæ	ssyæ	cɥæ	ccɥæ	chɥæ	hyæ	yæŋg
wā	kwa	kka	kha	nwa	twa	ttwa	thwa	lwa	mwa	pwa	ppwa	phwa	swa	sswa	cwa	ccwa	chwa	hwa	wāŋg
wə	kwa	kka	kha	nwa	twa	ttwa	thwa	lwa	mwa	pwa	ppwa	phwa	swa	sswa	cwa	ccwa	chwa	hwa	wəŋg
wɪ	kɪ	kkaɪ	khaɪ	nɪ	tɪ	ttɪ	thɪ	lɪ	mɪ	pɪ	ppɪ	phɪ	sɪ	ssɪ	cɪ	ccɪ	chɪ	hɪ	wɪŋg
wɛ	kɛ	kkaɛ	khaɛ	nɛ	tɛ	ttɛ	thɛ	lɛ	mɛ	pɛ	ppɛ	phɛ	sɛ	ssɛ	cɛ	ccɛ	chɛ	hɛ	wɛŋg
wæ	kɶæ	kkaɶæ	khaɶæ	nɶæ	tɶæ	ttɶæ	thɶæ	lɶæ	mɶæ	pɶæ	ppɶæ	phɶæ	sɶæ	ssɶæ	cɶæ	ccɶæ	chɶæ	hɶæ	wæŋg

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

20	앙 응 응 응 이 잉 애 양 영 오 옹 예 액 왕 웅 응 잉 외
19	하 허 호 후 흐 히 헤 해 하 허 호 후 헤 해 화 휘 후 회
18	차 처 초 추 츠 치 চে 채 차 처 초 추 চে 채 좌 취 추 좌
17	짜 저 쟀 쟁 쟂 지 제 재 짜 저 쟀 쟁 쟂 제 재 좌 쟀 쟁 쟂
16	자 저 조 주 즈 지 제 재 자 저 조 주 제 재 좌 쟀 쟁 쟂
15	샤 셔 샐 샘 샡 시 세 새 샤 셔 샐 샘 샡 슈 세 새 생 셔 씩 씩 씩 씩
14	사 서 소 수 스 시 세 새 사 셔 소 슈 세 새 삭 석 쉬 쇠 쇠
13	파 퍼 포 푸 프 피 페 패 파 퍼 포 푸 페 패 괘 꺾 푸 피 꺾
12	바 버 반 뵤 뵤 뵤 비 베 배 바 버 보 부 베 배 바 뷔 뷔 뷔 뷔
11	마 머 모 무 묘 미 메 대 마 머 모 무 메 대 마 뮌 뮌 뮌 뮌
10	라 러 로 루 르 리 례 래 라 러 로 류 례 래 락 락 락 락
9	타 터 토 투 트 티 테 태 타 터 토 류 례 태 탁 탁 탁 탁
8	따 터 단 뉐 단 띠 데 태 따 더 또 뉐 데 뉐 뉐 뉐 뉐
7	다 더 도 두 드 디 데 대 다 더 도 두 데 대 따 뉐 뉐 뉐 뉐
6	나 너 노 누 느 니 네 내 나 녀 노 뉴 네 내 나 뉐 뉐 뉐 뉐
5	카 켄 크 쿠 크 키 케 캐 카 켄 크 쿨 켄 캐 좌 켄 켄 켄 켄
4	가 개 교 구 그 기 게 개 가 겨 교 구 게 개 까 거 더 더 더
3	가 거 고 구 그 기 게 개 가 겨 교 구 게 개 과 귀 귀 귀 귀
2	아 어 오 우 으 이 에 애 야 여 오 유 예 액 와 워 워 워 외
1	아 어 오 우 으 이 에 애 야 여 오 유 예 액 와 워 워 워 외

Syllable Final Consonant Chart

Possible syllable final consonants within or at the end of words.	Actual syllable-final sounds
(1)    -k -kk -kh	/ -k/
(2)    -t -tt -th -s -ss -c -cc -ch	/ -t/
(3)    -p -pp -ph	/ -p/
(4)    -h	/ --/
(5)    -l	/ -l/
(6)    -m	/ -m/
(7)    -n	/ -n/
(8)    -ng	/ -ng/

Practice 2

- (1)        kak  
           kakk  
           kakh
- /kak/
- (2)        tat  
           tatt  
           tath  
           tas  
           tass
- /tat/

	tac	}	
	tacc		/tat/
	tach		
(3)	pap	}	
	papp		/pap/
	paph		
(4)	ah		/a/
(5)	lal		/lal/
(6)	mam		/mam/
(7)	nan		/nan/
(8)	ang		/ang/

Every syllable-final consonant within or at the end of a word becomes the initial consonant of the following syllable when a vowel occurs immediately after it. If two consonants occur in a cluster, the first of the cluster belongs to the preceding syllable and the second goes to the following syllable. Morphophonemic boundary within a word is not indicated. Thus, the consonant combinations -p p-, -t t-, -c c-, -k k-, -s s-, -p h-, -t h-, -c h-, -k h-, which may be divided morphemically so that the first consonant of the cluster belongs to the preceding syllable and the second to the following syllable, are not distinguished syllabically from the unit consonants pp, tt, cc, kk, ss, ph, th, ch, kh, even though the Korean orthography does distinguish them. In Korean, every syllable contains a vowel; therefore, there are as many syllables as there are vowels.

## Practice 3

(1)	kaka	(3)	papa
	kakka		pappa
	kakha		papha
(2)	tata	(4)	aha
	tatta	(5)	lala
	tatha	(6)	mama
	tasa	(7)	nana
	tassa	(8)	anga
	taca		
	tacca		
	tacha		



1	Symbol:	Closest English Sound:	Short Description:
	a	'a' in 'father'	short
	ə	'u' in 'but'	open; phonetically [ɔ] or [ʌ]
	o	'o' in 'for'	rounded; with lips protruded
	u	'u' in 'food'	short with lip-rounding
	ɪ	'u' in 'put'	long and unrounded
	i	'ee' in 'meet'	short
	e	'e' in 'pen'	lower than English 'e'
	æ	'a' in 'bat'	short

Practice 4

- |                      |                      |                     |
|----------------------|----------------------|---------------------|
| 1. /a/               | 2. /ə/               | 3. /o/              |
| a 'oh'               | əə 'quickly'         | o 'a family name'   |
| ai 'child'           | ee 'yesterday'       | oi 'cucumber'       |
| ca 'well'            | ce 'I' (polite form) | Co 'a family name'  |
| 4. /u/               | 5. /ɪ/               | 6. /i/              |
| un 'luck'            | in 'silver'          | i 'lice'            |
| au 'younger brother' | ɪysa 'doctor'        | Kim 'a family name' |
| kutu 'shoe'          | kim 'gold'           | pi 'rain'           |
| 7. /e/               | 8. /æ/               |                     |
| ne 'yes'             | ækɪ 'child'          |                     |
| eku 'gee'            | pæu 'actor'          |                     |
| ke 'crab'            | kæ 'dog'             |                     |

2	Symbol:	Closest English Sound:	Short Description:		
			initially	medially	finally
	k	'c' in 'can'	slightly aspirated	sometimes voiced intervocallically	unreleased
	kk	'c' in 'scan'	unaspirated; tense	unaspirated; tense	unreleased
	kh	'k' in 'keen'	heavily aspirated	heavily aspirated	unreleased

Practice 5

- |                     |                           |                |
|---------------------|---------------------------|----------------|
| 1. /k/              | 2. /kk/                   | 3. /kh/        |
| Kim 'a family name' | kkum 'dream'              | khi 'height'   |
| koki 'meat'         | kkachi 'magpie'           | kho 'nose'     |
| aka 'baby'          | akka 'a little while ago' | cokha 'nephew' |
| kuk 'soup'          | cakku 'repeatedly'        |                |

3	Symbol:	Closest English Sound:	Short Description:		
			initially	medially	finally
	t	't' in 'top'	slightly aspirated	sometimes voiced intervocallically	unreleased
	tt	't' in 'stop'	unaspirated; tense	unaspirated; tense	unreleased
	th	't' in 'teen'	heavily aspirated	heavily aspirated	unreleased

Practice 6

- |             |                 |                             |
|-------------|-----------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. /t/      | 2. /tt/         | 3. /th/                     |
| tal 'moom'  | ttal 'daughter' | thal 'mask' or 'trouble'    |
| eti 'where' | ittta 'later'   | ithil 'two days'            |
| pata 'sea'  | patta 'receive' | pithal 'slope'              |
| tot 'sail'  | tto 'again'     | tho 'particle (in grammar)' |

4	Symbol:	Closest English Sound:	Short Description:		
			initially	medially	finally
	p	'p' in 'pin'	slightly aspirated	sometimes voiced intervocallically	unreleased
	pp	'p' in 'spin'	unaspirated; tense	unaspirated; tense	unreleased
	ph	'p' in 'peen'	heavily aspirated	heavily aspirated	unreleased

Practice 7

1. /p/	2. /pp/	3. /ph/
pal 'foot'	ppalkan 'red'	phal 'arm'
pul 'fire'	ppul 'horn'	phul 'grass'
ipal 'hair-cut'	ippal 'tooth'	naphal 'trumpet'
nap 'lead'	nappin 'bad'	nophi 'height'

5	Symbol:	Closest English Sound:	Short Description:		
			initially	medially	finally
	c	'ch' in 'chick'	slightly aspirated	sometimes voiced intervocallically	unreleased
	cc	'j' in 'Jack'	unaspirated; tense	unaspirated; tense	unreleased
	ch	'ch' in 'cheek'	heavily aspirated	heavily aspirated	unreleased

Practice 8

1. /c/	2. /cc/	3. /ch/
cam 'sleep'	ccam 'spare time'	cham 'truth'
cœul 'scale'	cook 'side'	chima 'skirt'
ice 'now'	eccil 'how'	kicha 'train'
ece 'yesterday'	eccæse 'why'	achim 'morning'

6	Symbol:	Closest English Sound:	Short Description:
	s	's' in 'Smith'	regularly voiceless; unreleased in final position
	ss	'ts' in 'puts'	voiceless; tense; unreleased in final position

Practice 9

1. /s/	2. /ss/
sal 'flesh'	ssal 'rice'
si 'poetry'	ssi 'seed'

Pusan 'name of a city'  
 susul 'operation'

pissan 'expensive'  
 malssim 'speech'

7	Symbol:	Closest English Sound:	Short Description:		
			initially	medially	finally
	m	'm' in 'mother'	consonantal	consonantal	syllabic
	n	'n' in 'name'	consonantal	consonantal	syllabic
	ng	'ng' in 'sing'	--	consonantal	syllabic

Practice 10

- |                 |              |               |
|-----------------|--------------|---------------|
| 1. /m/          | 2. /n/       | 3. /ng/       |
| mal 'horse'     | nal 'day'    | kang 'river'  |
| Mikuk 'America' | nul 'sister' | congī 'paper' |
| imi 'already'   | eni 'which'  | pang 'room'   |
| mom 'body'      | men 'far'    | səng 'castle' |

8	Symbol:	Closest English Sound:	Short Description:		
			initially	medially	finally
	l	'l' in 'light' or 'ball'	front l	flap	back l

Practice 11

1. /l/
- |         |         |
|---------|---------|
| lætio   | 'radio' |
| palam   | 'wind'  |
| salang  | 'love'  |
| kəlsang | 'chair' |
| pal     | 'foot'  |

9	Symbol:	Closest English Sound:	Short Description:		
			initially	medially	finally
	h	'h' in 'hire'	strong friction	weak friction	--

Practice 12

1. /h/

hana	'one'	ohu	'afternoon'
hilin	'cloudy'	inhi	'girl's name'
hakkyo	'school'	ahin	'90'
huson	'descendent'		

10	Symbol:	Closest English Sound:	Short Description:												
	<u>w</u> before <table border="0" style="display: inline-table; vertical-align: middle;"> <tr><td style="font-size: 2em;">{</td><td>a</td></tr> <tr><td></td><td>e</td></tr> <tr><td></td><td>i</td></tr> <tr><td></td><td>e</td></tr> <tr><td></td><td>æ</td></tr> </table>	{	a		e		i		e		æ	'wh' in 'why'	lip rounding		
{	a														
	e														
	i														
	e														
	æ														
	<u>y</u> before <table border="0" style="display: inline-table; vertical-align: middle;"> <tr><td style="font-size: 2em;">{</td><td>a</td></tr> <tr><td></td><td>e</td></tr> <tr><td></td><td>o</td></tr> <tr><td></td><td>u</td></tr> <tr><td></td><td>e</td></tr> <tr><td></td><td>æ</td></tr> </table>	{	a		e		o		u		e		æ	'y' in 'yet'	palatalizing
{	a														
	e														
	o														
	u														
	e														
	æ														

Practice 13

1. /w/

wi	'stomach'
wenki	'energy'
wæ	'why'
cengwen	'garden'
I-wel	'February'

2. /y/

yek	'station'
yuli	'glass'
yaku	'baseball'
uyu	'milk'
welya	'moon-night'

## 제 1 과 인사

(대화 A )

안녕

1. 김 : 안녕하십니까?

2. 제임스 : 예, 안녕하십니까?

처음

뵙습니다

3. 김 : 처음 뵙습니다.

김

기수

4. 김 기수입니다.

이름

저

저의, 제

저의 이름, 제 이름

저의 이름은

제임스입니다

5. 제임스 : 제 이름은 제임스입니다.

선생

선생은

미국

사람

미국 사람

UNIT 1. Greetings  
BASIC DIALOGUES FOR MEMORIZATION

Dialogue A

Kim

annyəng

peace; tranquility

1. Annyəng-hasimnikka?

How are you? ('Are you at peace?')

James

2. Ne, annyəng-hasimnikka?

Fine. How are you? ('Yes, how are you?')

Kim

chəim

first time

pwepsimnita/pwepssimnita/

(I see you)

3. Chəim pwepsimnita.

('I'm glad to meet you.') ('I see you for the first time.')

Kim

(family name)

Kisu

(given name)

4. Kim Kisu imnita.

[I] am Kisu Kim.

James

ilim

name

cə

I

cə e }

my

ce

my name

cə e ilim }

ce ilim }

as for my name

ce ilim in }

[it] is James

Ceimsi imnita

5. Ce ilim in Ceimsi imnita.

My name is James. ('As for my name, it is James.')

Kim

sənsəng

teacher; you (polite)

sənsəng in

as for the teacher; as for you

Mikuk

America; the United States

salam

person

Mikuk salam

an American

6. Sənsəng in Mikuk salam imnikka?

Are you an American?



6. 김 : 선생은 미국 사람입니까?  
예  
그렇습니다
7. 제임스 : 예, 그렇습니다.
8. 김 : 선생은 무엇을 하십니까?  
무엇  
무엇을  
하십니까
9. 제임스 : 저는 학생입니다.  
저는  
학생  
학생입니다
10. 김 : 무엇을 공부하십니까?  
공부  
공부 하니까
11. 제임스 : 한국 말을 공부합니다.  
한국  
말  
한국 말  
공부 합니다
- (대화 B )
12. 김 : 제임스 선생, 안녕하십니까?  
제임스 선생

James

- ne yes  
 kiləhsımnıta/kıləssımnıta/ [it]is so; [that]'s right  
 7. Ne, kiləhsımnıta. Yes, I am. ('Yes, that's right.')

Kim

- müə what(thing)?  
 müə ıl what (as direct object)  
 hasımnıka do [you] do?  
 8. Sənsəng ıl müə (ıl) hasımnıka? What do you do? ('As for you, what do [you] do?')

James

- cə nın I (as a topic); as for me  
 haksəng/hakssəng/ student  
 haksəng ımıta [I] am a student  
 9. Cə nın haksəng ımıta. I am a student.

Kim

- kongpu studying  
 kongpu-hamınika do [you] study?  
 10. Müə ıl kongpu-hamınika? What do [you] study?

James

- Hankuk/Hangkuk/ Korea  
 mal language; utterance; speech  
 Hankuk mal/Hangkungmal/ Korean (language)  
 kongpu-hamıta [I] study  
 11. Hankuk mal ıl kongpu-hamıta. [I] study Korean.

Dialogue BKim

- Ceımsı Sənsəng Mr. James  
 12. Ceımsı Sənsəng, annyəng-hasımnıka? Good morning, Mr. James.

- 아
13. 제임스 : 아, 안녕하세요니까, 김 선생?
- 잘  
있습니다
14. 김 : 예, 잘 있습니다.
- 요즘  
어떻게  
지나십니까
15. 제임스 : 요즘 어떻게 지나십니까?
- 덕분에
16. 김 : 덕분에 잘 지냅니다.
- 재미  
어떻습니까
17. 선생은 재미 어떻게습니까?
- 그저
18. 제임스 : 그저 그렇습니다.
- 부인  
부인도, 부인께서도
19. 김 : 부인께서도 안녕하세요니까?
20. 제임스 : 예, 잘 있습니다.

- James
13. A, annyŏng-hasimnikka, Kim  
Sensŏng?
- Kim
14. Ne, cal issimnita.
- James
15. Yocim ettŏhke cinasimnikka?
- Kim
16. Tŏkpun e cal cinamnita.
17. Sensŏng in cŏmi ettŏhsimnikka?
- James
18. Kicŏ kilŏhsimnita.
- Kim
19. Puin (kkesŏ) to annyŏng-  
hasimnikka?
- James
20. Ne, cal issimnita.
- oh
- Oh, how are you, Mr. Kim?
- well
- [there] is; [there] exists  
(Yes) I'm fine. ('I exist well.')
- these days; lately
- how; in what way  
are [you] getting along?  
How are you getting along these days?
- (at favor)
- I'm doing fine, thank you. ('I'm  
getting along well at your favor.')
- fun; interest  
how is [it]?
- And how are you? ('As for you, how is  
fun?')
- just
- Just so-so. ('It is just so.')
- your wife; lady
- your wife also
- How is your wife? ('Is your wife also  
at peace?')
- She is fine. ('Yes, [she] exists  
well.')

- 21.           미안합니다.
- 22.           고맙습니다.
- 23.           천만에 말씀입니다.
- 24.           실례합니다.
- 25.           실례했습니다.
- 26.           실례하겠습니다.
- 27.           안 됐습니다.
- 28.           (아니요) 괜찮습니다.
- 29.           안녕히 가십시오.
- 30.           안녕히 계십시오.
- 31.           또 뵙겠습니다.

## ADDITIONAL GREETING EXPRESSIONS

21. Mianhamnita. { I'm sorry  
Thank you for your trouble.
22. Komapsimnita. Thank you.
23. Chenman e malssim imnita. { You're welcome.  
Not at all.  
Don't mention it.
24. Sillye-hamnita./silyehamnita/ Excuse me (on leaving, on interrupting).
25. Sillye-hæssimnita. Excuse me (for what was done).
26. Sillye-hakessimnita. Excuse me (for what I'm going to do).
27. An twessimnita. That's too bad.
28. (Aniyo) kwæchanhsimnita. Not at all. ('No, that's all right,')  
/kwæchanssimnita/
29. Annyenghi kasipsiyo. Goodbye (to someone leaving). ('Go peacefully.')
30. Annyenghi kyesipsiyo. Goodbye (to someone staying). ('Stay peacefully.')
31. Tto pwepkessimnita. { See you again.  
So long.  
I'll see you again.

## NOTES ON DIALOGUES

(Numbers correspond to the sentence numbers in the dialogues.)

- 1.2. The expression Annyeng-hasimnikka? ('Are you at peace?') is a general greeting similar to such English expressions as 'How are you?', 'How do you do?', 'Good morning.', 'Good evening.', etc. It is used for first meetings at any time of the day. The usual response to Annyeng-hasimnikka? are Annyeng-hasimnikka?; Ne, annyeng-hasimnikka?
3. Chæim pwepsimnita. ('I meet you for the first time.') is regularly said by someone who has just been introduced. The response is usually Chæim pwepsimnita.; Annyeng-hasimnikka?.
4. Kim Kisu is a full name: the family name Kim plus the given name Kisu. Most Korean names consist of three syllables: the first is a family name, the last two are a given name. Cæ 'I' is the politest equivalent of na.

6. Sensang means either 'teacher' or polite 'you'. After a family name or a family name plus a given name it is used as a title or term of address like English Mr., Mrs., or Miss. This form of address (i.e. Name + Sensang) is most commonly used among or to the teachers of all levels, regardless of age and/or sex, but is also commonly used among and to educated male adults. Mr./Mistta/, Mrs./Missessi/, and Miss /Missi/, followed by the family name are commonly used by Koreans as forms of address when speaking to equals and young people. These forms of address are not applied to individuals older than or superior to the speaker. A full or last name + Ssi 'Mr. \_\_\_\_\_' occurs for other than the addressee to refer to a male adult of any age, rank or status. A family name + Ssi is also used as a term of address directly to the addressee who is a blue-collar worker.
7. Ne, kiləhsimnita. ('What you just said is right, that's so.') is used as a response when you agree to the Yes-No question regardless of whether it is negative or affirmative. Aniyo, the opposite of Ne, means 'What you just said is wrong.' It is used in a parallel way as opposed to Ne. Often Ne and Aniyo are used similarly as 'yes' and 'no' in affirmative Yes-No questions but are the other way around in negative Yes-No questions.
- 10.11. When a situation is obvious, the subject or topic in a Korean sentence is usually omitted. For example, (Sensang in) muəs il kongpu-hamnikka? 'What do you study?'; (Na nin) Hankuk mal il kongpu-hamnita. 'I study Korean.' Note that the subjects or topics in brackets may be omitted in speech. Kongpu-hamnita 'studies' is one of many Korean verbs which are formed from nouns. The noun kongpu 'studying' makes a verb (stem) by simply adding another verb (stem) ha- 'to do', that is, kongpu + ha- kongpu-ha- 'to study'. (See Grammar Notes, the Verbals.) Examples:
- |                         |                   |
|-------------------------|-------------------|
| <u>Kongpu-hamnita</u> . | '[I] study.'      |
| <u>Kongpu-hamnikka?</u> | 'Do [you] study?' |
12. Celmsi Sensang, annyeng-hasimnikka? ('Mr. James, how are you?') and Annyeng-hasimnikka, Celmsi Sensang? ('How are you, Mr. James?') can be freely interchangeable.
15. Yocim ettəhke cinasimnikka? ('How do you pass by these days?') is a polite greeting to someone you know well, to ask him how things are going. The usual responses are Təkpun e cal cinamnita. ('I pass by well at your favor.') or Kice kiləhsimnita. 'Just so-so.'



19. Puin without being preceded by a name means either 'lady' or 'your wife'.  
A family name (with or without being followed by a given name) + Sənsəng  
(or a title) + puin means 'Mrs. \_\_\_\_\_' or 'Mr. so-and-so's wife'.  
Example:  
Kim Sənsəng puin 'Mrs. Kim' or 'Mr. Kim's wife'
21. Mianhamnita. is commonly used to apologize, or to express thanks immediately upon receiving something.
23. Chənmən e malssim imnita. ('A million words.') is a formal response to 'Thank you.', complimentary statements, and apologies. The English equivalent is 'You're welcome.' or 'Not at all.'
- 24.25. Sillye-hamnita. ('I commit rudeness. '), Sillye-həssimnita. ('I committed  
26. rudeness. '), Sillye-hakessimnita. ('I'll commit rudeness. ') are different only in time: present, past, and future, respectively. The proper one depends on the situation. Sillye-hamnita. and Sillye-hakessimnita. are used interchangeably for what is not done. Sillye-həssimnita. is used for something already done. 'Excuse me.' in English is used generally for all three expressions.
27. An twessimnita. 'That's too bad.' ('[It] has not become. ') is used to express the speaker's sympathy or regret.
28. (Aniyo), kwəchanhsimnita. 'Not at all.' ('(No), that's not bad. ') is an informal response to Mianhamnita., Komapsimnita., Sillye-hamnita. (or Sillye-hakessimnita. or Sillye-həssimnita.), or to An twessimnita.
- 29.30. When two people part, the one who goes away says Annyənghi kyesipsiyo. ('Stay peacefully. '), and the one who remains says Annyənghi kasipsiyo. ('Go peacefully. '). If both are departing, they both say Annyənghi kasipsiyo.

## GRAMMAR NOTES

## 1. The Verbals and the Copula

In Korean, inflected words, which may be used by themselves as complete sentences, are called Verbals. Korean verbals are made up of two main parts: Verb Stems + Endings.

Neither of the two main components in a verbal occurs alone. The verbals occur in a variety of forms depending on what endings are added to the verb stems,

but the verb stems maintain their shapes, in most instances. Hereafter, we will call verb stems as well as all members of the inflected class of words Verbs.

In Korean dictionaries, verbs always are listed with the ending -ta. For instance, ka-ta 'to go', o-ta 'to come', mek-ta 'to eat', ca-ta 'to sleep', ilk-ta 'to read'. This is called the dictionary form of a verb. When -ta is dropped from the dictionary form the Verb Stem remains. It is very important to recognize every verb stem because all the inflected forms are based on them.

Examples of Verbals:

(Cə nɪn) <u>Kongpu-hamnita</u> .	'(I)'m studying.'
(Cə nɪn) Hankuk mal ɪl <u>kallichimnita</u> .	'(I) teach Korean.'
Cal <u>cinamnita</u> .	'[I]'m fine.' ('I pass by well.')
<u>Komapsimnita</u> .	'(I) thank (you).'

Imnita is a verb: i- is its stem and -mnita is its ending. Imnita and the other inflected forms of i- (for example, its dictionary form i-ta) are used in sentences like 'Noun A is Noun B.' Often Noun A is not stated, but is understood. Thus, the verb stem i- is equivalent to one meaning of the English verb 'to be'. Notice, however, that the English verb 'to be' is used not only to connect two nouns ('A is B') as in 'I am a teacher', but is also used in sentences like 'A is in such and such a state', as in 'She is beautiful'. The Korean verb imnita is used only for 'A is B', never in sentences like 'A is beautiful'. Imnita is called the Copula; i- is the stem of the Copula.

The Copula never occurs alone. It is always preceded immediately by a noun and there is no pause between the noun and the Copula.

The Copula is distinguished from other verbals only in that the Copula never occurs as a complete sentence, whereas other verbals may occur as complete sentences. Observe the following Copula expressions:

(Cə nɪn) <u>Kim imnita</u> .	'(I) am Kim.'
(Kɪ kəs;) <u>Muəs imnikka?</u>	'What is (it)?'
(Cə nɪn) <u>Mikuk salam imnita</u> .	'(I) am an American.'
(Ceɪmsɪ nɪn) <u>Haksəng imnita</u> .	'(James) is a student.'

## 2. Particles in/nin, ɪl/lil, e

There is a class of uninflected words in Korean which occurs within a sentence or at the end of a sentence, but never at the beginning of one. These words are never preceded by a pause; they are regularly pronounced as though they were part of the preceding word. All such words are called Particles.

Some particles have only one shape; others occur in either of two shapes determined by the final sound of the preceding word.

(a) in/nin 'as for', 'in reference to' is a two-shape particle: in occurs after a word ending in a consonant and nin occurs after a word ending in a vowel.

(1) It follows the general topic (often one already under discussion) about which something new or significant is about to be stated or asked:

Examples:

Ce nin haksæng imnita.	'I am a student.'
Ce ilim in Ceimsi imnita.	'My name is James.'
Sensæng in Mikuk salam imnikka?	'Are you an American?'

(2) in/nin also occurs as the particle of comparison following a topic which is being compared: A in/nin 'A in comparison with (others)' or 'insofar as we're talking about A.' Examples:

Sensæng in mues il hasimnikka?	'What are YOU doing?'
Ce nin Yenge nin kongpu-hamnita.	'ENGLISH I am studying.'

(in/nin never follows an interrogative word (i.e. a word that asks a question: 'What?', 'Who?', 'Where?', etc.)

(b) il/lil is a two-shape particle: il occurs after a noun ending in a consonant and lil after a noun ending in a vowel. The particle il/lil singles out the preceding noun as the direct object of the following inflected expression. Examples:

<u>Mues il</u> kongpu-hamnikka?	' <u>What</u> do [you] study?'
<u>Hankuk mal il</u> kongpu-hamnita.	'[I] am studying <u>Korean</u> .'
<u>Ilpon mal il</u> kalichimnita.	'[He] teaches <u>Japanese</u> .'
<u>Cungkuk mal il</u> mal-hamnita.	'[He] speaks <u>Chinese</u> .'

(c) e

When the particle e occurs between two nouns, it is called the Possessive Particle. Noun 1 + e + Noun 2 means 'Noun 1's Noun 2' or 'Noun 2 of Noun 1'.

1. Examples:

ce e ilim	'my name'
hakkyo e ilim	'the name of the school'
Kim e chæk	'Kim's book'

3. Nouns and Noun phrases.

Korean nouns are uninflected words, that is, they have only one form. (They do not, for example, reflect the singular-plural distinction as English nouns do.) In Korean two or more nouns often make up noun phrases and are used as though they were one word. Compare:

## (a) Single nouns:

Mikuk	'America', 'the U.S.'
salam	'person', 'man'
mal	'language', 'utterance'

## (b) Noun Phrases:

## (1) Country name + salam = Nationality

Mikuk salam	'(an) American' ('America person')
Yengkuk salam	'(an) Englishman' ('Britian person')
Ilpon salam	'(a) Japanese' ('Japan person')
Cungkuk salam	'(a) Chinese' ('China person')

## (2) Country name + mal = language of the country named

Hankuk mal	'Korean (language)' ('Korea language')
Cungkuk mal	'Chinese (language)' ('China language')
Pullanse mal	'French' ('France language')
Yenge*	'English'

## Note 1: Place name + mal = dialect

Soul mal	'Seoul dialect'
Pusan mal	'Pusan dialect'

## Note 2: Place name + salam = Person of the place named

Nam-Han salam	'South Korean'
Pusan salam	'Pusanian'
Soul salam	'Seoulite'
Nyuyok salam	'New Yorker'

A noun which may occur as a free form is called a Free Noun. Hereafter, any noun or noun phrase which occurs in a position where a free noun can be substituted shall be called a Nominal Expression or simply a Nominal.

----- × -----

\* Yenge is a single-word expression for 'English'.

Yengkuk mal ('British language') is rarely used for English.

## DRILLS

## A. Substitution Drill

- |                                       |   |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| 1. Ce ilim in Ceimsi imnita.          | My name is James.                               |
| 2. Ce ilim in <u>Kim</u> imnita.      | My name is Kim.                                 |
| 3. Ce ilim in <u>Kisu</u> imnita.     | My name is Kisu.                                |
| 4. Ce ilim in <u>Kim Kisu</u> imnita. | My name is Kisu Kim.                            |
| *5. Ce ilim in <u>Pak</u> imnita.     | My name is Park (family name).                  |
| *6. Ce ilim in <u>I Kisu</u> imnita.  | My name is Kisu Lee (family name + given name). |
| *7. Ce ilim in <u>Chwe</u> imnita.    | My name is Choe (family name).                  |
| *8. Ce ilim in <u>Ceng</u> imnita.    | My name is Chung (family name).                 |

## B. Substitution Drill

- |   |                                      |
|---|--------------------------------------|
| 1. Ce nin <u>haksæng</u> imnita.            | I am a student.                      |
| 2. Ce nin <u>sensæng</u> imnita.            | I am a teacher.                      |
| 3. Ce nin <u>Hankuk salam</u> imnita.       | I am a Korean.                       |
| 4. Ce nin <u>Mikuk salam</u> imnita.        | I am an American.                    |
| 5. Ce nin <u>Mikuk haksæng</u> imnita.      | I am an American student.            |
| 6. Ce nin <u>Hankuk haksæng</u> imnita.     | I am a Korean student.               |
| 7. Ce nin <u>Hankuk mal haksæng</u> imnita. | I am a Korean (language) student.    |
| 8. Ce nin <u>Hankuk mal sensæng</u> imnita. | I am a Korean (language) teacher.    |
| *9. Ce nin <u>Mikuk mal sensæng</u> imnita. | I am an American (language) teacher. |
| *10. Ce nin <u>Yenge sensæng</u> imnita.    | I am an English teacher.             |
| *11. Ce nin <u>Mikuk salam</u> imnita.      | I am an American.                    |

## C. Substitution Drill

- |  |                     |
|--|---------------------|
| 1. Ce nin <u>Hankuk salam</u> imnita.    | I am a Korean.      |
| *2. Ce nin <u>Yengkuk salam</u> imnita.  | I am an Englishman. |
| *3. Ce nin <u>Ilpon salam</u> imnita.    | I am a Japanese.    |
| *4. Ce nin <u>Cungkuk salam</u> imnita.  | I am a Chinese.     |
| *5. Ce nin <u>Tokil salam</u> imnita.    | I am a German.      |
| *6. Ce nin <u>Pullanse salam</u> imnita. | I am a Frenchman.   |
| *7. Ce nin <u>Seul salam</u> imnita.     | I am from Seoul.    |

## D. Substitution Drill

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. Sənsəŋ in Mikuk salam imnikka?           | {Are you an American?<br>{Is the teacher an American?     |
| 2. Sənsəŋ in <u>Hankuk salam</u> imnikka?   | {Are you a Korean?<br>{Is the teacher a Korean?           |
| 3. Sənsəŋ in <u>Yəŋkuk salam</u> imnikka?   | {Are you an Englishman?<br>{Is the teacher an Englishman? |
| 4. Sənsəŋ in <u>Ilpon salam</u> imnikka?    | {Are you a Japanese?<br>{Is the teacher a Japanese?       |
| 5. Sənsəŋ in <u>Cungkuk salam</u> imnikka?  | {Are you a Chinese?<br>{Is the teacher a Chinese?         |
| 6. Sənsəŋ in <u>Tokil salam</u> imnikka?    | {Are you a German?<br>{Is the teacher a German?           |
| 7. Sənsəŋ in <u>Pullansə salam</u> imnikka? | {Are you a Frenchman?<br>{Is the teacher a Frenchman?     |
| 8. Sənsəŋ in <u>Səul salam</u> imnikka?     | {Are you from Seoul?<br>{Is the teacher from Seoul?       |
| 9. Sənsəŋ in <u>Kim sənsəŋ</u> imnikka?     | {Are you Mr. Kim<br>{Is the teacher Mr. Kim?              |
| *10. Sənsəŋ in <u>Hankuk yəca</u> imnikka?  | Is the teacher a Korean woman?                            |
| *11. Sənsəŋ in <u>Mikuk yəca</u> imnikka?   | Is the teacher an American woman?                         |
| *12. Sənsəŋ in <u>Yəŋkuk yəca</u> imnikka?  | Is the teacher an English woman?                          |

## E. Substitution Drill

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. Sənsəŋ in Mikuk salam imnikka?                      | Is the teacher an American?                      |
| 2. <u>Kim Sənsəŋ</u> in Mikuk salam imnikka?           | Is Mr. Kim an American?                          |
| 3. <u>Ceimsi Sənsəŋ</u> in Mikuk salam<br>imnikka?     | Is Mr. James an American?                        |
| 4. <u>Pak Sənsəŋ</u> in Mikuk salam<br>imnikka?        | Is Mr. Park an American?                         |
| 5. <u>Haksəŋ</u> in Mikuk salam imnikka?               | Is the student an American?                      |
| 6. <u>Hankuk mal haksəŋ</u> in Mikuk salam<br>imnikka? | Is the Korean (language) student an<br>American? |
| 7. <u>Hankuk mal sənsəŋ</u> in Mikuk salam<br>imnikka? | Is the Korean (language) teacher an<br>American? |

## F. Substitution Drill

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. <u>Sensæng</u> in muës (il) hasimnikka?                            | { What do you do?<br>What does the teacher do?                            |
| 2. <u>Haksæng</u> in muës (il) hasimnikka?                            | What does the student do?   |
| *3. <u>Tangsïn</u> in muës (il) hasimnikka?                           | What do you do (to husband or wife,<br>or to the same male adult friend)? |
| 4. <u>Ceimsi Sensæng</u> in muës (il)<br>hasimnikka?                  | What does Mr. James do?   |
| 5. <u>I Sensæng</u> in muës (il) hasimnikka?                          | What does Mr. Lee do?   |
| 6. <u>Chwe Sensæng</u> in muës (il)<br>hasimnikka?                    | What does Mr. Choe do?  |
| 7. <u>Kim Sensæng</u> in muës (il) hasimnikka?                        | What does Mr. Kim do?   |
| 8. <u>Kim Sensæng</u> in muës (il) <u>kongpu-</u><br><u>hamnikka?</u> | What does Mr. Kim study?  |
| *9. <u>Kim Sensæng</u> in muës (il) <u>pæumnikka?</u>                 | What does Mr. Kim learn?  |
| *10. <u>Kim Sensæng</u> in muës (il)<br><u>kalichimnikka?</u>         | What does Mr. Kim teach?  |
| *11. <u>Kim Sensæng</u> in muës (il)<br><u>i(l)ksimnikka?</u>         | What does Mr. Kim read?   |

## G. Substitution Drill

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. <u>Kim Sensæng</u> in muës il<br><u>i(l)ksimnikka?</u>           | What does Mr. Kim read?  |
| 2. <u>Pak Sensæng</u> in muës il<br><u>i(l)ksimnikka?</u>           | What does Mr. Park read?   |
| 3. <u>Pak Sensæng</u> in muës il <u>pæumnikka?</u>                  | What is Mr. Park learning?   |
| 4. <u>Chwe Sensæng</u> in muës il <u>pæumnikka?</u>                 | What is Mr. Choe learning?   |
| 5. <u>Chwe Sensæng</u> in muës il<br><u>kalichimnikka?</u>          | What does Mr. Choe teach?  |
| 6. <u>Mikuk haksæng</u> in muës kalichimnikka?                      | What is the American student teaching?   |
| *7. <u>Mikuk haksæng</u> in muës il <u>mal-</u><br><u>hamnikka?</u> | { What does the American student say?<br>What does the American student speak? |
| 8. <u>Hankuk mal sensæng</u> in muës il mal-<br>hamnikka?           | What does the Korean teacher say?  |
| 9. <u>Hankuk mal sensæng</u> in muës il<br><u>kongpu-hamnikka?</u>  | What is the Korean teacher studying?   |
| 10. <u>Ilpon haksæng</u> in muës il kongpu-<br>hamnikka?            | What is the Japanese student studying?   |

## H. Substitution Drill

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. (Cə nɪn) Hankuk mal ɪl kongpu-hamnita.         | I('m) study(ing) Korean.                |
| 2. (Cə nɪn) <u>Mikuk mal</u> ɪl kongpu-hamnita.   | I('m) study(ing) the American language. |
| 3. (Cə nɪn) <u>Ilpon mal</u> ɪl kongpu-hamnita.   | I('m) study(ing) Japanese.              |
| 4. (Cə nɪn) <u>Cungkuk mal</u> ɪl kongpu-hamnita. | I('m) study(ing) Chinese.               |
| 5. (Cə nɪn) <u>Yəngə lɪl</u> kongpu-hamnita.      | I('m) study(ing) English.               |
| 6. (Cə nɪn) <u>Hankuk mal</u> ɪl kongpu-hamnita.  | I('m) study(ing) Korean.                |
| 7. (Cə nɪn) Hankuk mal ɪl <u>kalɪchɪmnita</u> .   | I('m) teach(ing) Korean.                |
| 8. (Cə nɪn) Hankuk mal ɪl <u>mal-hamnita</u> .    | I speak Korean.                         |
| 9. (Cə nɪn) Hankuk mal ɪl <u>pəʊmnita</u> .       | I('m) learn(ing) Korean.                |
| 10. (Cə nɪn) Hankuk mal ɪl <u>i(l)ksɪmnita</u> .  | I('m) read(ing) Korean.                 |

## I. Substitution Drill

- |   |                                     |
|---|-------------------------------------|
| 1. (Sənsæŋ ɪn) muəs ɪl kongpu-hamnikka?                           | What do you study?                  |
| 2. (Sənsæŋ ɪn) <u>Hankuk mal ɪl</u> kongpu-hamnikka?<br>hamnikka? | Do you study Korean?                |
| 3. (Sənsæŋ ɪn) <u>Mikuk mal ɪl</u> kongpu-<br>hamnikka?           | Do you study the American language? |
| 4. (Sənsæŋ ɪn) <u>Cungkuk mal ɪl</u> kongpu-<br>hamnikka?         | Do you study Chinese?               |
| 5. (Sənsæŋ ɪn) <u>Ilpon mal ɪl</u> kongpu-<br>hamnikka?           | Do you study Japanese?              |
| 6. (Sənsæŋ ɪn) <u>Yəngə lɪl</u> kongpu-hamnikka?                  | Do you study English?               |
| 7. (Sənsæŋ ɪn) <u>Tokil mal ɪl</u> kongpu-hamnikka?               | Do you study German?                |
| 8. (Sənsæŋ ɪn) <u>Pullansə mal ɪl</u> kongpu-<br>hamnikka?        | Do you study French?                |



## J. Substitution Drill

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Ce nin Yøngø lil mal-hamnita.                            | I speak English.                         |
| 2. <u>Kim Sənsəng</u> in Yøngø lil mal-hamnita.             | Mr. Kim speaks English.                  |
| 3. Kim Sənsəng in <u>Pullansə mal</u> il mal-hamnita.       | Mr. Kim speaks French.                   |
| 4. Kim Sənsəng in Pullansə mal il <u>pəumnita</u> .         | Mr. Kim is learning French.              |
| 5. <u>Hankuk haksəng</u> in Pullansə mal il pəumnita.       | Korean students are learning French.     |
| 6. Hankuk haksəng in <u>Tokil mal</u> il pəumnita.          | Korean students are learning German.     |
| 7. Hankuk haksəng in Tokil mal il <u>ilksimnita</u> .       | Korean students read German.             |
| 8. <u>Yəngkuk haksəng</u> in Tokil mal il ilksimnita.       | British students read German.            |
| 9. Yəngkuk haksəng in <u>Cungkuk mal</u> il ilksimnita.     | British students read Chinese.           |
| 10. Yəngkuk haksəng in Cungkuk mal il <u>kalichimnita</u> . | A British student is teaching Chinese.   |
| 11. <u>Mikuk haksəng</u> in Cungkuk mal il kalichimnita.    | An American student is teaching Chinese. |

## K. Response Drill (based on the dialogues)

Teacher:

1. Annyəng-hasimnikka?
2. Chəim pwepsimnita.
3. Ce ilim in Kim Kisu imnita.
4. Sənsəng in Mikuk salam imnikka?
5. (Sənsəng in) muəs (il) hasimnikka?
6. Muəs il kongpu-hamnikka?
7. Ceimsi Sənsəng, annyəng-hasimnikka?
8. Yocim ettəhke cinasimnikka?
9. (Sənsəng in) cəmi (ka) ettəhsimnikka?

Student:

- Ne, annyəng-hasimnikka?  
 Annyəng-hasimnikka? Chəim pwepsimnita.  
 Ce ilim in Ceimsi imnita.  
 Ne, kiləhsimnita.  
 Ce nin haksəng imnita.; Hankuk mal il kongpu-hamnita.  
 Hankuk mal il kongpu-hamnita.  
 Ne, cal issimnita.  
 (Təkpun e) cal cinamnita.  
 Kice kiləhsimnita.

## L. Response Drill

Teacher:

1. Mianhamnita.
2. Sillye-hamnita.
3. Sillye-hakessimnita.
4. Sillyehæssimnita.
5. Annyenghi kasipsiyo.
6. Annyenghi kyesipsiyo.
7. Komapsimnita.
8. Mianhamnita.
9. An twessimnita.
10. Tto pwepkessimnita.

Student:

- Chenman e malssim imnita.  
 (Aniyo) kwæanchanhsimnita.  
 (Aniyo) kwæanchanhsimnita.  
 (Aniyo) kwæanchanhsimnita.  
 Annyenghi kyesipsiyo.  
 Annyenghi kasipsiyo.  
 Chenman e malssim imnita.  
 (Aniyo) kwæanchanhsimnita.  
 (Aniyo) kwæanchanhsimnita.  
 Ne, tto pwepkessimnita.

## EXERCISES

## A. Tell Kim Sænsang:

- |                                   |  |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| 1. your name.                     | 9. that you read French.   |
| 2. that you are an American.      | 10. that Mr. Park is learning English.                           |
| 3. that you are a student.        | 11. that the Korean (language) teacher<br>is a woman from Seoul. |
| 4. that you are studying Korean.  | 12. that the American is an English<br>teacher.                  |
| 5. that you are fine.             | 13. that the English teacher speaks<br>Chinese.                  |
| 6. that Mr. Park teaches Korean.  | 14. that the Chinese woman teaches<br>German.                    |
| 7. that you are glad to meet him. | 15. that the German (language)<br>student speaks Japanese.       |
| 8. that you speak Japanese.       |  |

## B. Conduct the following conversations:

Ask Mr. Kim:

1. if he is a Korean.
2. what he does.
3. what he teaches.
4. how he's getting along these days.
5. if the teacher is an American.
6. if the student is a Korean.
7. if he speaks Korean.
8. if Mr. James is a Korean (language)  
student.

Mr. Kim answers:

- that he is.  
 that he is a teacher.  
 that he teaches Korean.  
 that he's doing fine.  
 that he is.  
 that he is an Englishman.  
 that he does.  
 that he is.

C. You've met a stranger at a party; tell him:

1. that you are glad to meet him.
2. that your name is so-and-so.
3. that you're studying Korean.
4. that Mr. Park is your Korean teacher.
5. that you'll see him again.

## 제 2 과      기   찾   기

( 대화   A )

- 잠간  
시   려  
시   려   합   니   다
1.   A :      잠간 시   려   합   니   다.
- 말,   말   씬  
좀  
물   어   보   시   다
2.            말   씬   좀   물   어   보   시   다.
3.   B :      예,   무   었   입   니   까?
- 대사관  
미국   대사관   이  
어   디  
어   디   에  
있   으   니   까
4.   A :      미국   대사관   이   어   디   에   있   으   니   까?
- 저   기  
저   기   에  
쪽  
왼   쪽  
왼   쪽   으   로  
가   십   시   요
5.   B :      저   기   에   있   으   니   다.   왼   쪽   으   로   가   십   시   요.

UNIT 2. Finding One's Way Around  
BASIC DIALOGUES FOR MEMORIZATION

Dialogue A

A

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| camkan/camkkan/<br>sillye<br>sillye-hamnita                | for a moment<br>rudeness<br>[I] commit rudeness   |
| 1. Camkan sillye-hamnita.<br>mal }<br>malssim }<br>com }   | Excuse me for a moment.<br>word; speech; language<br>a little<br>let's inquire; let's ask |
| mule popsita/mulepopssita/<br>2. Malssim com mule popsita. | May I ask you a question? ('Let's<br>inquire a word.')                                    |

B

- |                      |                    |
|----------------------|--------------------|
| 3. Ne, mues imnikka? | Yes, what is [it]? |
|----------------------|--------------------|

A

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| tassakwan<br>Mikuk Tassakwan i<br>eti<br>eti e<br>issimnikka | embassy<br>the U.S. Embassy (as subject)<br>what place?<br>at what place?; where?<br>does [it] exist?; is [there]? |
| 4. Mikuk Tassakwan i eti e issimnikka?                       | Where is the U.S. Embassy? ('At what<br>place does the U.S. Embassy exist?')                                       |

B

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| caki<br>caki e<br>ccok<br>wen ccok<br>wen ccok ilo<br>kasipsiyo/kasipssiyo/<br>5. Caki e issimnita. Wen ccok ilo<br>kasipsiyo. | that place; there<br>at that place; over there<br>side; direction<br>the left (side)<br>to the left<br>(please) go<br>[It]'s over there. Go to the left. |
|--|--|

건물

저 건물

학교

6. A: 저 건물이 학교입니까?

7. B: 예, 그렇습니다.

대단히

고맙습니다

8. A: 대단히 고맙습니다.

아니요

천만에 말씀

9. B: 아니요, 천만에 말씀입니다.

(대화 B )

어메

시청

10. A: 시청이 어메 있습니까?

이 건물

11. B: 이 건물이 시청입니다.

저것

저것은

12. A: 저것은 무엇입니까?

- A
- |           |               |
|-----------|---------------|
| kənmul    | building      |
| cə kənmul | that building |
| hakkyo    | school        |
6. Cə kənmul i hakkyo imnikka? Is that building a school?

- B
7. Ne, kiləhsimnita. Yes, it is.

- A
- |              |                 |
|--------------|-----------------|
| tətanhi      | very; very much |
| komapsimnita | [I]'m grateful  |
8. Tətanhi komapsimnita. Thank you very much.

- B
- |                   |                     |
|-------------------|---------------------|
| chenman e malssim | ('a million words') |
|-------------------|---------------------|
9. Aniyo, chenman e malssim imnita. (No,) Not at all. ('You're welcome.')

Dialogue B

- A
- |         |           |
|---------|-----------|
| ete     | where     |
| sichəng | City Hall |
10. Sichəng i ete issimnikka? Where is the City Hall?

- B
- |          |               |
|----------|---------------|
| i kənmul | this building |
|----------|---------------|
11. I kənmul i sichəng imnita. This building is the City Hall.

- A
- |           |                                    |
|-----------|------------------------------------|
| cə kəs    | that (thing); the thing over there |
| cə kəs in | as for that                        |
12. Cə kəs in muəs imnikka? What is THAT?

13. B:                   그것  
                          여관  
                          그것은 여관입니다.
14. A:                   어느 것  
                          백화점  
                          어느 것이 백화점입니까?
15. B:                   옆  
                          옆에  
                          시청 옆에  
                          백화점은 시청 옆에 있습니다.
16. A:                   공보  
                          공보원  
                          미국 공보원  
                          미국 공보원은 어디에 있습니까?
17. B:                   바로  
                          앞  
                          앞에  
                          바로 앞에  
                          바로 앞에 있습니다.
18. A:                   감사  
                          감사합니다  
                          대단히 감사합니다.
19. B:                   아니요, 천만에요.



- B
13. Kɪ kəs in yəkwan imnita.      that; it  
yəkwan      inn; hotel  
It's a hotel. ('It's an inn.')
- A
14. əni kəs i pəkhwacəm imnikka?      which one  
pəkhwacəm      department store  
Which one is the department store?
- B
15. Pəkhwacəm in sichəng yəph e      the side  
yəph      beside; by  
yəph e      beside the City Hall; next to  
sichəng yəph e      the City Hall  
The department store is beside the City Hall. ('As for a department store it exists besides the City Hall.')
- A
16. Mikuk Kongpowən in ət e issimnikka?      public information  
kongpo      information office  
kongpowən      USIS  
Mikuk Kongpowən      USIS  
Where is USIS? ('As for USIS, where is [it]?')
- B
17. Palo aph e issimnita.      just; right  
palo      the front  
aph      at the front  
aph e      right ahead  
palo aph e      [It]'s right up ahead.
- A
18. Tətanhi kamsa-hamnita.      gratitude  
kamsa      [I] thank you  
kamsa-hamnita      Thanks a lot.
- B
19. Aniyo, chənman e yo.      No, not at all.

## NOTES ON DIALOGUES

(Numbers correspond to the sentence numbers in the dialogues)

1. Camkan sillye-hamnita. 'Excuse me for a moment.' is usually said when you stop a stranger to get some information.
2. Malssim com mule popsita. ('Let us ask [you] a word') is often preceded by Camkan sillye-hamnita. and is regularly used to a stranger from whom you want to inquire about something, such as directions.
3. Mues 'what (thing)' is always a free noun. It is never used to modify a following noun.
5. Ccok 'direction' occurs after determinatives (See Grammar Note 3) or place names. It never stands along. Examples:
 

i ccok	'this way'
ce ccok	'that way'
ki ccok	'that way'
hakkyo ccok	'the direction of the school'
tassakwan ccok	'the direction of the embassy'
wen ccok	'the left'
clin ccok	'the right'
- 8.18 Komapsimnita. and Kamsa-hamnita. 'Thank you.' are freely interchangeable on any occasion.
10. ete 'where' is the contracted form of eti + e.
13. Yekwan generally refers to 'inns' or 'hotels' of all sizes. However, modern western-style hotels are often called hothel.
14. eni 'which', 'what' always occurs before a nominal (free or bound) as a determinative. It never occurs as a free form.
19. Chenman e yo. 'Not at all.' is the informal equivalent of Chenman e malssim imnita.

## GRAMMAR NOTES

## 1. Formal Polite Speech Sentences

The nucleus of a Korean sentence comes at the end of the sentence. When the nucleus of a normal sentence is a verb, we talk about verb-stems and verb-endings. There are several levels and/or styles of speech which show the relationship between the speaker and the person spoken to and/or about. The distinctions of speech level are shown mostly by the inflected forms of verbs.

In all societies, everywhere, when people talk to one another, they give each other signals (gestures, tones of voice, word-choice, etc.) to show that they understand their personal relationship (equality, dominance, subordination) and the situation (polite-casual, formal-informal, etc.). Sometimes, in our democratic society, we like to pretend these things don't exist, but they do. Very few of us can talk to our boss the way we talk to our best friend. In Korean, the personal relationship signals are built into the language.

Formal Polite Speech is the polite style of speech commonly used between adults who do not have a casual relationship. The four forms of Formal Polite Speech verb-endings are listed below.

(a) Formal Polite Statement Form: -mnita ~ -(s)imnita

In Formal Polite Statements, -mnita is added to a verb stem ending in a vowel; -(s)imnita to a verb stem ending in a consonant. Examples:

<u>Stem</u>		<u>Verbal</u>	
ka-	'to go'	Kamnita.	'[I] go.'
o-	'to come'	Omnita.	'[I] come.'
pæu-	'to learn'	Pæumnita.	'[I] learn.'
kongpu-ha-	'to study'	Kongpu-hamnita.	'[I] study.'
ilk-	'to read'	Ilk(s)imnita.	'[I] read.'
mæk-	'to eat'	Mæk(s)imnita.	'[I] eat.'
a(1)-	'to know'	Amnita.	'[I] know.'

(b) Formal Polite Question Form: -mnikka? ~ -(s)imnikka?

In Formal Polite Questions, -mnikka? is added to a verb stem ending in a vowel, -(s)imnikka? to a verb stem ending in a consonant. Compare:

Kamnita.	'[I] go.'	Kamnikka?	'Do [you] go?'
Omnita.	'[I] come.'	Omnikka?	'Do [you] come?'
Pæumnita.	'[I] learn.'	Pæumnikka?	'Do [you] learn?'
Kongpu-hamnita.	'[I] study.'	Kongpu-hamnikka?	'Do [you] study?'
Ilk(s)imnita.	'[I] read.'	Ilk(s)imnikka?	'Do [you] read?'
Mek(s)imnita.	'[I] eat.'	Mek(s)imnikka?	'Do [you] eat?'

(c) Formal Polite Imperative Form: -sipsiyo ~ -isipsiyo

In Formal Polite Requests, -sipsiyo is added to a verb stem ending in a vowel and -isipsiyo to a verb stem ending in a consonant. Examples:

<u>Stem</u>		<u>Verbal</u>	
ha-	'to do'	Hasipsiyo.	'Please do [it].'
ka-	'to go'	Kasipsiyo.	'Please go.'
o-	'to come'	Osipsiyo.	'Please come.'
mule po-	'to inquire'	Mule posipsiyo.	'Please ask.'
iss-	'to exist'	Issisipsiyo.	'Please stay.'
ilk-	'to read'	Ilkisipsiyo.	'Please read.'

(d) Formal Polite Propositative Form: -psita ~ -ipsita

In Formal Polite Proposals ('Let's \_\_\_\_.'), -psita is added to a verb stem ending in a vowel, and -ipsita is added to a verb stem ending in a consonant. Examples:

<u>Stem</u>		<u>Verbal</u>	
ka-	'to go'	Kapsita.	'Let's go.'
kalichi-	'to teach'	Kalichipsita.	'Let's teach.'
mal-ha-	'to speak'	Mal-hapsita.	'Let's speak.'
mule po-	'to inquire'	Mule popsita.	'Let's ask.'
ilk-	'to read'	Ilkipsita.	'Let's read.'

2. Particles i/ka, lo/ilo, e(a) i/ka

The particle i/ka singles out the preceding word as the emphasized subject of a sentence; i occurs after a word ending in a consonant and ka after a word ending in a vowel. When the particle i/ka is added, the subject is emphatic. Observe the location of the emphasis in the English equivalents. Examples:

<u>Hakkyo ka</u> issimnita.	'There is <u>a school</u> .' ('A school exists.')
<u>Ce kenmul i</u> tassakwan imnita.	' <u>That building</u> is the embassy.'
<u>Ce ka</u> Hankuk mal il pæumnita.	' <u>I</u> am studying Korean.'

(b) lo/ilo 'to, toward'

A place nominal + lo/ilo followed by such verbs as ka- 'to go', o- 'to come' indicates the direction of the following inflected expression. Lo occurs after a place noun which ends in a vowel and ilo after a noun ending in a consonant.

Examples:

Hakkyo lo kamnita.	{ '[I] go to school.'
	{ '[I]'m going toward the school.'
Cip ilo osipsiyo.	'Please come to the house.'
Wen ccok ilo kasipsiyo.	'Please go to the left (side).'

(c) e 'at', 'on', 'in', 'to'

A place (or location) noun + e indicates that the action of the following inflected expression takes place at the noun. Examples:

Søul i <u>Hankuk e</u> issimnita.	'Seoul is <u>in Korea</u> . ('Seoul is in Korea.')
Tassakwan i <u>eti e</u> issimnikka?	' <u>Where</u> is the Embassy? ('At what place does the Embassy exist?')
Yekwan in palo <u>aph e</u> issimnita.	'A hotel is right <u>ahead</u> .'
Chæk il <u>chæksang e</u> tuæssimnita.	'[I] have placed ('put') the book <u>on the desk</u> .'

## 3. Determinatives

There is a small class of uninflected words in Korean which never occur by themselves but are followed by nominals. Words of this class are called Determinatives. A determinative + a nominal = a noun phrase. In Unit 2, we have the following determinatives: i 'this\_\_\_', ce 'that\_\_\_', ki 'the (or that)\_\_\_', eni 'which\_\_\_', olin 'right\_\_\_', wen 'left\_\_\_'. Observe the following examples:

i chæk	'this book'
i kəs	'this (thing)'
cə salam	'that man'
cə kəs	'that ('thing over there)'
kɪ kənmul	'that ('the') building'
kɪ salam	'that man (mentioned previously)'
ənɪ pəkwaçəm	'which department store'
ənɪ kəs	'which one'
olin ccok	'the right (direction)'
wen ccok	'the left (direction)'

Note that i 'this\_\_' and cə 'that\_\_' before nominals indicate nominals within the sight of the speaker, while kɪ 'that (or the)\_\_\_' before a nominal refers to a previously mentioned one; olin 'the right\_\_' and wen 'the left\_\_' occur only before the word ccok.

#### 4. Post-Nouns: kəs, pun, ccok

Kəs ('thing'), pun ('person'), ccok ('side') belong to a small class of Korean nouns which never occur alone but only after such words as determinatives, free nouns, or other modifier classes of words and make up nominal phrases. Words of this class are called Post-Nouns. Examples:

i kəs	'this (thing)'
cə pun	'that man (honored)'
khɪn kəs	'(a) big one'
wen ccok	'the left (side)'

#### 5. Imnita and Issimnita

In Korean there is a distinction between the expression (a) 'A is B' and (b) 'There is an A.' or 'A exists.' In Unit 1, we learned that the copula i- (of which imnita is one inflected form) is used to denote 'Noun A is Noun B.' In contrast to the copula, the verb iss- (of which issimnita is one inflected form) means '(something) exists.' (See Grammar Note 1, Unit 1.) Compare:

(a)

(Kɪ kəs ɪn) chæk imnita.	'[It] is a book.'
I kənmul i hakkyo imnita.	'This building is a school.'
Na nin sənsəng imnita.	'I am a teacher.'

(b)

Chæk i issimnita.

'There is a book.'  
( 'A book exists.' )

Søul e tæsakwan i issimnita.

'There is an Embassy at Seoul.'  
( 'An embassy exists at Seoul.' )

Note that a nominal i/ka + issimnita preceded by a personal noun as a topic occurs to express that the personal noun has or possesses the nominal. Examples:

Na nin chæk i issimnita.

'I have a book.'  
( 'As for me a book exists.' )Sønsøng in Hankuk mal sacøn i  
issimnikka?

'Do you have a Korean dictionary?'

Ne, (na nin) sikye ka issimnita.

'Yes, I have a watch.'

## DRILLS

## A. Substitution Drill

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. <u>Təsakwan</u> i ətɪ e issɪmnikka?               | Where is the Embassy?                         |
| 2. <u>Mikuk Təsakwan</u> i ətɪ e issɪmnikka?         | Where is the U.S. Embassy?                    |
| 3. <u>Hakkyo ka</u> ətɪ e issɪmnikka?                | Where is the school?                          |
| 4. <u>Sichəng</u> i ətɪ e issɪmnikka?                | Where is the City Hall?                       |
| 5. <u>Pəkhwacəm</u> i ətɪ e issɪmnikka?              | Where is the department store?                |
| 6. <u>Yəkwan</u> i ətɪ e issɪmnikka?                 | Where is the inn?                             |
| 7. <u>Kongpowən</u> i ətɪ e issɪmnikka?              | Where is the information center?              |
| 8. <u>Mikuk Kongpowən</u> i ətɪ e issɪmnikka?        | Where is the USIS?                            |
| 9. <u>Hankuk Təsakwan</u> i ətɪ e issɪmnikka?        | Where is the Korean Embassy?                  |
| 10. <u>Haksəng</u> i ətɪ e issɪmnikka?               | Where is the student?                         |
| 11. <u>Hankuk mal sənsəng</u> i ətɪ e<br>issɪmnikka? | Where is the Korean (language)<br>teacher?    |
| 12. <u>Ki kəs</u> i ətɪ e issɪmnikka?                | Where is it?                                  |
| *13. <u>Ai ka</u> ətɪ e issɪmnikka?                  | Where is the child?                           |
| 14. <u>Puin</u> i ətɪ e issɪmnikka?                  | Where is your wife? ('Where is the<br>lady?') |

## B. Substitution Drill

- |                                   |                           |
|-----------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. <u>Cəki</u> e issɪmnita.       | [It]'s over there.        |
| *2. <u>Yəki</u> e issɪmnita.      | [It]'s over here.         |
| 3. <u>Wen ccok</u> e issɪmnita.   | [It]'s on the left.       |
| *4. <u>Olin ccok</u> e issɪmnita. | [It]'s on the right.      |
| 5. <u>Aph</u> e issɪmnita.        | [It]'s in front [of you]. |
| *6. <u>Twɪ</u> e issɪmnita.       | [It]'s in the back.       |
| 7. <u>Yəph</u> e issɪmnita.       | [It]'s beside [you].      |
| 8. <u>Hakkyo</u> e issɪmnita.     | [It]'s at school.         |
| 9. <u>Mikuk</u> e issɪmnita.      | [It]'s in America.        |
| 10. <u>Hankuk</u> e issɪmnita.    | [It]'s in Korea.          |



C. Substitution Drill (Supply i/ka Particle.)

- |                                    |                                |
|------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. <u>Sicheng</u> i issimnita.     | [There] is the City Hall.      |
| 2. <u>Hakkyo</u> (ka) issimnita.   | [There] is a school.           |
| 3. <u>Kenmul</u> (i) issimnita.    | [There] is a building.         |
| 4. <u>Yekwan</u> (i) issimnita.    | [There] is an inn.             |
| 5. <u>Sensang</u> (i) issimnita.   | [There] is a teacher.          |
| *6. <u>Kyosil</u> (i) issimnita.   | [There] is a classroom.        |
| *7. <u>Sikye</u> (ka) issimnita.   | [There] is a watch.            |
| *8. <u>Chæk</u> (i) issimnita.     | [There] is a book.             |
| *9. <u>Chæksang</u> (i) issimnita. | [There] is a { table.<br>desk. |
| *10. <u>Iyca</u> (ka) issimnita.   | [There] is a chair.            |
| *11. <u>Yenphil</u> (i) issimnita. | [There] is a pencil.           |
| *12. <u>Cito</u> (ka) issimnita.   | [There] is a map.              |
| 13. <u>Ai</u> (ka) issimnita.      | [There] is a child.            |

## D. Substitution Drill

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. <u>Tæsakwan</u> i <u>yeki</u> e issimnita.               | The Embassy is here ('at this place').       |
| 2. <u>Tæsakwan</u> i <u>cæki</u> e issimnita.               | The Embassy is over there ('at that place'). |
| 3. <u>Hakkyo</u> ka <u>cæki</u> e issimnita.                | The school is over there.                    |
| 4. <u>Hakkyo</u> ka <u>wen ccok</u> e issimnita.            | The school is on the left.                   |
| 5. <u>Mikuk Kongpowen</u> i <u>wen ccok</u> e<br>issimnita. | USIS is on the left.                         |
| 6. <u>Mikuk Kongpowen</u> i <u>i kenmul</u> e<br>issimnita. | USIS is in this building.                    |
| 7. <u>Pækhwacem</u> i <u>i kenmul</u> e issimnita.          | The department store is in this<br>building. |
| 8. <u>Pækhwacem</u> i <u>aph</u> e issimnita.               | The department store is ahead.               |
| 9. <u>Yekwan</u> i <u>aph</u> e issimnita.                  | The inn is ahead.                            |
| 10. <u>Yekwan</u> i <u>yeph</u> e issimnita.                | The inn is nearby.                           |

E. Substitution Drill (Supply lo/ilo Particle.)

- |                                       |                                      |
|---------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1. Wen ccok ilo kasipsiyo.            | (Please) go to the left.             |
| *2. <u>Olin ccok</u> (ilo) kasipsiyo. | (Please) go to the right.            |
| *3. <u>I ccok</u> (ilo) kasipsiyo.    | (Please) go this way.                |
| *4. <u>Ce ccok</u> (ilo) kasipsiyo.   | (Please) go that way.                |
| 5. <u>Hakkyo</u> (lo) kasipsiyo.      | (Please) go to school.               |
| 6. <u>Ce kenmul</u> (lo) kasipsiyo.   | (Please) go to that building.        |
| 7. <u>Pækhwacem</u> (ilo) kasipsiyo.  | (Please) go to the department store. |
| 8. <u>Sicheng</u> (ilo) kasipsiyo.    | (Please) go to the city hall.        |
| 9. <u>Yekwan</u> (ilo) kasipsiyo.     | (Please) go to the inn.              |
| 10. <u>Tæsakwan</u> (ilo) kasipsiyo.  | (Please) go to the Embassy.          |

## F. Substitution Drill

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Ce kenmul i hakkyo imnikka?                | Is that building a school?               |
| 2. Ce kenmul i <u>tæsakwan</u> imnikka?       | Is that building the embassy?            |
| 3. Ce kenmul i <u>Mikuk Tæsakwan</u> imnikka? | Is that building the U.S. Embassy?       |
| 4. Ce kenmul i <u>sicheng</u> imnikka?        | Is that building the City Hall?          |
| 5. Ce kenmul i <u>kongpowen</u> imnikka?      | Is that building the information center? |
| 6. Ce kenmul i <u>pækhwacem</u> imnikka?      | Is that building a department store?     |
| 7. <u>Ce kes i</u> pækhwacem imnikka?         | Is that a department store?              |
| 8. <u>I kes i</u> pækhwacem imnikka?          | Is this a department store?              |
| 9. <u>Ki kes i</u> pækhwacem imnikka?         | Is it a department store?                |
| 10. <u>I kenmul i</u> pækhwacem imnikka?      | Is this building a department store?     |
| 11. <u>eni kes i</u> pækhwacem imnikka?       | Which is the department store?           |
| 12. <u>eni kenmul i</u> pækhwacem imnikka?    | Which building is the department store?  |

G. Substitution Drill (Supply i/ka Particle)

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. Cə kənmul i hakkyo imnikka?             | Is that building a school?                |
| 2. Cə salam i haksəng imnikka?             | Is he ('that person') a student?          |
| 3. Cə kəs i yəkwan imnikka?                | Is that an inn?                           |
| 4. Cə kənmul i Mikuk Təsakwan imnikka?     | Is that building the U.S. Embassy?        |
| 5. Cə haksəng i Mikuk salam imnikka?       | Is that student an American?              |
| 6. Cə yeca ka Yəngə səsəng imnikka?        | Is she ('that woman') an English teacher? |
| 7. Cə ccok i Mikuk Kongpowən imnikka?      | Is USIS that way?                         |
| 8. Cə hakkyo ka Hankuk mal hakkyo imnikka? | Is that school a Korean language school?  |
| 9. Cə kənmul i pəkhwacəm imnikka?          | Is that building a department store?      |
| 10. Cə puin i Hankuk yeca imnikka?         | Is that lady a Korean woman?              |

## H. Substitution Drill

- |  |                                   |
|--|-----------------------------------|
| 1. Səsəng e ilim in muəs imnikka?          | What is your name?                |
| 2. Haksəng e ilim in muəs imnikka?         | What is the student's name?       |
| 3. Cə səsəng e ilim in muəs imnikka?       | What's that teacher's name?       |
| 4. I kənmul e ilim in muəs imnikka?        | What's the name of this building? |
| 5. Cə hakkyo e ilim in muəs imnikka?       | What's the name of that school?   |
| 6. Cə Mikuk salam e ilim in muəs imnikka?  | What's the name of that American? |
| 7. Cə Hankuk salam e ilim in muəs imnikka? | What's the name of that Korean?   |
| 8. Ki salam e ilim in muəs imnikka?        | What's the name of that man?      |
| 9. Cə yəkwan e ilim in muəs imnikka?       | What's the name of that inn?      |
| 10. Cə ai e ilim in muəs imnikka?          | What's the name of that child?    |
| 11. Cə puin e ilim in muəs imnikka?        | What's the name of that lady?     |

## I. Substitution Drill

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. Pækhwacæm in hakkyo yeph e<br>issimnita.              | The department store is next to the<br>school. |
| 2. <u>Tæsakwan</u> in hakkyo yeph e<br>issimnita.        | The Embassy is next to the school.             |
| 3. <u>Mikuk Tæsakwan</u> in hakkyo yeph e<br>issimnita.  | The U.S. Embassy is next to the<br>school.     |
| 4. <u>Mikuk Kongpowen</u> in hakkyo yeph e<br>issimnita. | USIS is next to the school.                    |
| 5. <u>Hankuk yekwan</u> in hakkyo yeph e<br>issimnita.   | The Korean inn is next to the school.          |
| *6. <u>inhæng</u> in hakkyo yeph e issimnita.            | The bank is next to the school.                |
| *7. <u>Sangcæm</u> in hakkyo yeph e issimnita.           | The store is next to the school.               |
| 8. <u>Hothel</u> in hakkyo yeph e issimnita.             | The hotel is next to the school.               |
| *9. <u>Cip</u> in hakkyo yeph e issimnita.               | The house is next to the school.               |
| *10. <u>Kongwen</u> in hakkyo yeph e issimnita.          | The park is next to the school.                |

## J. Substitution Drill

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. Pækhwacæm in sicheng yeph e issimnita.                | The department store is next to the<br>City Hall.              |
| 2. Pækhwacæm in sicheng <u>aph</u> e issimnita.          | The department store is in front of<br>the City Hall.          |
| 3. Pækhwacæm in sicheng <u>twi</u> e issimnita.          | The department store is behind the<br>City Hall.               |
| 4. Pækhwacæm in sicheng <u>wen ccok e</u><br>issimnita.  | The department store is on the left<br>side of the City Hall.  |
| 5. Pækhwacæm in sicheng <u>olln ccok e</u><br>issimnita. | The department store is on the right<br>side of the City Hall. |
| *6. Pækhwacæm in sicheng <u>aph ccok e</u><br>issimnita. | The department store is on the front<br>side of the City Hall. |
| *7. Pækhwacæm in sicheng <u>twi ccok e</u><br>issimnita. | The department store is on the back<br>side of the City Hall.  |
| *8. Pækhwacæm in sicheng <u>kakkai</u><br>issimnita.     | The department store is near the<br>City Hall.                 |

K. Substitution Drill (Supply in/nin Particle.)

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. Pækhwacem in sicheng yeph e<br>issimnita.              | The department store is next to the<br>City Hall. |
| 2. <u>Sicheng</u> in <u>tæsakwan</u> yeph e<br>issimnita. | The City Hall is next to the Embassy.             |
| 3. <u>Hakkyo</u> nin <u>yekwan</u> yeph e issimnita.      | The school is next to an inn.                     |
| *4. <u>Yekwan</u> in <u>inhæng</u> yeph e issimnita.      | The inn is next to a bank.                        |
| *5. <u>inhæng</u> in <u>sangcæm</u> yeph e issimnita.     | The bank is next to a store.                      |
| *6. <u>Sangcæm</u> in <u>hothel</u> yeph e issimnita.     | The store is next to a hotel.                     |
| *7. <u>Hothel</u> in <u>cip</u> yeph e issimnita.         | The hotel is next to a house.                     |
| *8. <u>Cip</u> in <u>kongwen</u> yeph e issimnita.        | The house is next to a park.                      |
| *9. <u>Kongwen</u> in <u>kil</u> yeph e issimnita.        | The park is right near the street.                |

## L. Substitution Drill

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. Pækhwacem in sicheng yeph e<br>issimnita.                     | The department store is next to the<br>City Hall.   |
| 2. <u>Hakkyo</u> nin sicheng <u>aph</u> e issimnita.             | The school is in front of the City<br>Hall.         |
| 3. <u>Hankuk Tæsakwan</u> in sicheng <u>twi</u> e<br>issimnita.  | The Korean Embassy is behind the<br>City Hall.      |
| 4. <u>inhæng</u> in sicheng <u>wen ccok</u> e<br>issimnita.      | The bank is on the left side of the<br>City Hall.   |
| 5. <u>Sangcæm</u> in sicheng <u>olin ccok</u> e<br>issimnita.    | The store is on the right side of<br>the City Hall. |
| 6. <u>Hothel</u> in sicheng <u>kakkai</u> issimnita.             | The hotel is near the City Hall.                    |
| 7. <u>Kongwen</u> in sicheng <u>aph ccok</u> e<br>issimnita.     | The park is on the front side of the<br>City Hall.  |
| 8. <u>Cip</u> in sicheng <u>twi ccok</u> e issimnita.            | The house is on the back side of<br>the City Hall.  |
| 9. <u>Mikuk Kongpowen</u> in sicheng <u>yeph</u> e<br>issimnita. | USIS is next to the City Hall.                      |

## M. Response Drill

Tutor: Mikuk Təsakwan i issimnikka?

'Is there a U.S. Embassy?'

Student: Ne, Mikuk Təsakwan i  
issimnita.

'Yes, [there] is a U.S. Embassy.'

- |   |                                   |
|---|-----------------------------------|
| 1. Cəki e issimnikka?                             | Ne, cəki e issimnita.             |
| 2. Cə kəs i hakkyo imnikka?                       | Ne, cə kəs i hakkyo imnita.       |
| 3. Kiləhsimnikka?                                 | Ne, kiləhsimnita.                 |
| 4. I kənmul i sichəng imnikka?                    | Ne, i kənmul i sichəng imnita.    |
| 5. (Sənsəng in) Mikuk salam imnikka?              | Ne, Mikuk salam imnita.           |
| 6. (Sənsəng in) Hankuk mal il<br>kongpu-hamnikka? | Ne, Hankuk mal il kongpu-hamnita. |
| 7. Cal issimnikka?                                | Ne, cal issimnita.                |
| 8. Mianhamnikka?                                  | Ne, mianhamnita.                  |
| 9. Kwəanchanhsimnikka?                            | Ne, kwəanchanhsimnita.            |
| 10. Hankuk mal il pəumnikka?                      | Ne, Hankuk mal il pəumnita.       |
| 11. Yəngə lil mal-hamnikka?                       | Ne, Yəngə lil mal-hamnita.        |
| 12. Ilpon mal il kalichimnikka?                   | Ne, Ilpon mal il kalichimnita.    |

## N. Response Drill (Answer the question based on the dialogue.)

- |   |                                  |
|---|----------------------------------|
| 1. Sillye-hamnita.                          | Aniyo, kwəanchanhsimnita.        |
| 2. Malssim com mule popsita.                | Ne, muəs imnikka.                |
| 3. Tətanhi komapsimnita.                    | Aniyo, chənman e malssim imnita. |
| 4. Yocim əttəhke cinasimnikka?              | (Təkpun e) cal cinamnita.        |
| 5. Sənsəng in Mikuk salam imnikka?          | Ne, kiləhsimnita.                |
| 6. Sənsəng in muəs hasimnikka?              | Hankuk mal il kongpu-hamnita.    |
| 7. Kim Sənsəng in muəs il<br>kalichimnikka? | Hankuk mal il kalichimnita.      |
| 8. Chək i əte issimnikka?                   | Chəksang e issimnita.            |
| 9. Səul i əte issimnikka?                   | Hankuk e issimnita.              |
| 10. ıyca ka əti e issimnikka?               | Chəksang aph e issimnita.        |

O. Grammar Drill (Based on Grammar Note 2 supply i/ka in a proper place.)

Tutor: Təsakwan ətə issimnikka?

Student: Təsakwan i ətə issimnikka?

1. Sichəng (i) cəki e issimnita.
2. Hakkyo (ka) wen cəok e issimnita.
3. Cəimsı Sənsəng (i) Mikuk salam imnita.
4. Haksəng (i) kongpu-hamnita.
5. Yəki (ka) təsakwan imnita.
6. iyca (ka) ətı e issimnikka?
7. Kim Kisu (ka) haksəng imnikka?
8. Səul (i) Hənkuk e issimnikka?
9. əni kəs (i) pəkhwacəm imnikka?
10. I kənmul (i) sichəng imnikka?

P. Transformation Drill (Transform the sentence as in the example supplying the particle i/ka.)

Tutor: I kəs i chək imnita.

'This is a book.'

Student: Chək i issimnita.

'There is a book.'

- |                                     |                                 |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. I kəs i hakkyo imnita.           | Hakkyo (ka) issimnita.          |
| 2. I kəs i təsakwan imnita.         | Təsakwan (i) issimnita.         |
| 3. I kəs i sichəng imnita.          | Sichəng (i) issimnita.          |
| 4. I kəs i sikye imnita.            | Sikye (ka) issimnita.           |
| 5. I kəs i iyca imnita.             | iyca (ka) issimnita.            |
| 6. I kəs i kyosil imnita.           | Kyosil (i) issimnita.           |
| 7. I kəs i Cungkuk Təsakwan imnita. | Cungkuk Təsakwan (i) issimnita. |
| 8. I kəs i chəksang imnita.         | Chəksang (i) issimnita.         |
| 9. I kəs i pəkhwacəm imnita.        | Pəkhwacəm (i) issimnita.        |
| 10. I kəs i yəkwan imnita.          | Yəkwan (i) issimnita.           |

Q. Response Drill (Use the particle in/nin in place of i/ka and answer the questions as in the example.)

Tutor: Hakkyo ka issimnikka?

'Is there a school?'

Student: Ne, hakkyo nin issimnita.

'Yes, there is a school...(but)...'

1. Cə kəs i pəkhwacəm imnikka?

Ne, cə kəs in pəkhwacəm imnita.

2. Sichəng i wen ccok e issimnikka?

Ne, sichəng in wen ccok e issimnita.

3. Cəimsı ka Hankuk mal il kongpu-  
hamnikka?

Ne, Cəimsı nin Hankuk mal il kongpu-  
hamnita.

4. İyca ka yəki e issimnikka?

Ne İyca nin yəki e issimnita.

5. Kim Kisu ka Hankuk salam imnikka?

Ne, Kim Kisu nin Hankuk salam imnita.

6. Səul i Hankuk e issimnikka?

Ne, Səul in Hankuk e issimnita.

7. Pak Sənsəng i Yəngə lıl kalıchımnikka?

Ne, Pak Sənsəng in Yəngə lıl  
kalıchımnita.

8. Mikuk salam i Cungkuk mal il  
pəumnıka?

Ne, Mikuk salam in Cungkuk mal il  
pəumnita.

R. Grammar Drill (Supply the right particle wherever appropriate: in/nin,  
il/lil, e, ilo/lo.)

Tutor: Cə İlim Cəimsı imnita.

Student: Cə İlim in Cəimsı imnita.

1. Cə (nin) haksəng imnita.

2. Muəs (il) kongpu-hamnikka?

3. Hankuk mal (il) pəumnita.

4. Pak Sənsəng in Yəngə (lil) kalıchımnita.

5. Təsakwan in cəki (e) issimnita.

6. Wen ccok (ilo) kasıpsıyo.

7. Cə kəs (in) muəs imnikka?

8. Palo aph (e) issimnita.

9. Hakkyo (lo) kasıpsıyo.

10. Olin ccok (ilo) kasıpsıyo.

11. Cə nin Yəngə (lil) mal-hamnita.

12. Cəimsı Sənsəng in İlpon mal (il) kalıchımnita.



## EXERCISES

A asks B for the following information and B responds.

A asks:

1. where the U.S. Embassy is.
2. what that building is.
3. which building the department store is.
4. where USIS is.
5. where the City Hall is.
6. what he does.
7. how he's doing these days.
8. whether that building is a department store.
9. whether the school is next to the City Hall.
10. whether the school is behind the City Hall.
11. whether the department store is in front of the U.S. Embassy.
12. whether USIS is beside the Embassy.
13. whether that is the school building.
14. where a bank is.
15. whether the park is near the street.
16. whether the store is beside the street.

B answers:

- that it is next to the City Hall.
- that it is the USIS building.
- that the department store is in front of USIS.
- that it is in front of the department store.
- that it is in front of USIS.
- that he teaches Korean.
- that he's doing O.K.
- that it is.
- that it is behind the City Hall.
- that it is in front of the City Hall.
- that it is next to the Embassy.
- that it is in the Embassy building.
- that it is a department store.
- that it is near the park.
- that it is beside the street.
- that it is so.

## 제 3 과 길 찾기( 계속 )

(대화 A)

여보세요

길

좀

물어 보겠습니다

1. A: 여보세요, 길 좀 물어 보겠습니다.

어디를

찾습니까

2. B: 예, 어디를 찾습니까?

여

서울여

가는 길

아십니까, 압니까

3. A: 서울 여에 가는 길은 아십니까?

똑바로

가십시오

4. B: 예, 똑바로 가십시오.

여기에서

멈니까, 멈습니까

5. A: 여기에서 멈니까?

## UNIT 3. Finding One's Way Around (Continued)

## BASIC DIALOGUES FOR MEMORIZATION

Dialogue AA

- |                   |                    |
|-------------------|--------------------|
| yepose yo         | hello there!; say! |
| kil               | street; road; way  |
| com               | a little           |
| mule pokessimnita | I will inquire     |
1. Yepose yo! Kil com mule pokessimnita.
- Excuse me. May I ask you for directions?  
( 'I'll inquire about the street a little.' )

B

- |                            |                          |
|----------------------------|--------------------------|
| eti lil                    | where (as direct object) |
| chacsimnikka/chassimnikka/ | do [you] look for?       |
2. Ne, eti lil chacsimnikka?
- Certainly, where do you want to go?  
( 'What (place) are you looking for?' )

A

- |             |                          |
|-------------|--------------------------|
| yek         | station                  |
| Soul Yek e  | to Seoul Station         |
| kanin kil   | the way to ('going way') |
| asimnikka } |                          |
| amnikka }   | do [you] know?           |
3. Soul Yek e kanin kil il asimnikka?
- Can you tell me how to get to Seoul Station? ( 'Do you know the way to Seoul Station?' )

B

- |           |                          |
|-----------|--------------------------|
| ttokpalo  | straight ahead, straight |
| kasipsiyo | (please) go              |
4. Ne, ttokpalo kasipsiyo.
- Go straight ahead.

A

- |              |              |
|--------------|--------------|
| yeki ese     | from here    |
| me(li)mnikka | is [it] far? |
5. Yeki ese memnikka?
- Is [it] far from here?

안 됩니다  
가깝습니다  
6. B: 아니요, 안 됩니다. 가깝습니다.

7. A: 대단히 고맙습니다.

괜찮습니다  
8. B: 아니요, 괜찮습니다.

(대화 B)

어디에  
가십니까, 갑니까  
9. 박: 어디에 가십니까?

정거장  
10. 김: 정거장에 갑니다.

정거장에서  
하겠습니까  
무엇을 하겠습니까  
11. 박: 정거장에서 무엇을 하겠습니까?

거기  
거기에서  
만나겠습니다  
친구

B

- an mǝmnita [it] is not far  
 kakkapsimnita/kakkapssimnita/ [it]'s near  
 6. Aniyō, an mǝmnita. Kakkapsimnita. No, it's not far. It's near(by).

A

- tǝtanhi very; very much  
 komapsimnita I'm grateful  
 7. Tǝtanhi komapsimnita. Thank you very much.

B

- kwǝnchanhsimnita [that]'s O.K.  
 8. Aniyō, kwǝnchanhsimnita. (No,) Not at all.

Dialogue B

A

- ǝti e in what place; to what place  
 kasimnikka }  
 kamnikka } do [you] go?  
 9. ǝti e kasimnikka? Where are you going? ('Where do you go?')

B

- cǝngkǝcang railroad station  
 10. Cǝngkǝcang e kamnita. I'[m] go[ing] to the station.

A

- cǝngkǝcang ǝsǝ at the station; from the station  
 hakessimnikka will you do?  
 muǝs (il) hakessimnikka what will you do?  
 11. Cǝngkǝcang ǝsǝ muǝs (il) What are you going there for? ('What are you going to do at the station?')  
 hakessimnikka?

12. 김 : 거기에서 친구를 만나겠습니다.
- 누구
13. 박 : 그 친구는 누구입니까?
- 그분
- 그분을
14. 김 : 제임스 선생입니다. 그분을 압니까?
- 모릅니다
- 학교 선생
15. 박 : 아니요, 모릅니다. 학교 선생입니까?
- 아닙니다
- 외교관
16. 김 : 아니요, 학교 선생이 아닙니다. 외교관입니다.

Additional Expressions for Classroom Use

17. 알겠습니까?
18. 예, 알겠습니다.
19. 아니요, 모르겠습니다.
20. 다시 한번 말씀 하십시오.
21. 잊어 버렸습니다., 잊었습니다.

B

- |                 |                      |
|-----------------|----------------------|
| kəki            | that place           |
| kəki esə        | at that place; there |
| mannakessimnita | [I] will meet        |
| chinku          | friend               |
12. Kəki esə chinku lil mannakessimnita. I'm going to meet a friend there.

A

- |      |                  |
|------|------------------|
| nuku | who; what person |
|------|------------------|
13. K1 chinku nin nuku imnikka? Who is he ('that friend')?

B

- |           |                               |
|-----------|-------------------------------|
| k1 pun    | he (honored); ('that person') |
| k1 pun il | him (as direct object)        |
14. Ceimsi Sənsəng imnita. K1 pun il amnikka? (He is) Mr. James. Do you know him?

A

- |                |                  |
|----------------|------------------|
| molimnita      | [I] do not know  |
| hakkyo sənsəng | (school) teacher |
15. Aniyo, molimnita. Hakkyo sənsəng imnikka? No, I don't know [him]. Is he a teacher?

B

- |           |                                     |
|-----------|-------------------------------------|
| an imnita | [he] is not                         |
| wekyokwan | diplomat; foreign service personnel |
16. Aniyo, hakkyo sənsəng i an imnita. Wekyokwan imnita. No, [he] is not a (school) teacher. [He] is in the foreign service.

Additional Expressions for Classroom Use

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 17. Alkessimnikka?                         | Do you understand? ('Will you know?')          |
| 18. Ne, alkessimnita.                      | Yes, I understand. ('Yes, I'll know.')         |
| 19. Aniyo, molikessimnita.                 | No, I don't understand. ('No, I'll not know.') |
| 20. Tasi (hanpən) malssim-hasipsiyo.       | Please say [it] once more.                     |
| 21. Ice pelyəssimnita. }<br>Icəssimnita. } | I forgot [it].                                 |

## NOTES ON DIALOGUES

(Numbers correspond to the sentence numbers in the dialogues.)

1. Yepose yo. 'Hello there!' ('Please look here.') is the informal polite equivalent of the less frequently used form Yeposipsiyo. Yepose yo. is said only when you try to get the attention of a passerby and is not said as the equivalent of the English greeting expression 'Hi!' or 'Hello.' Yepose yo! also occurs regularly when you make and/or receive a phone call.  
Kil com mule pokessimnita. ('I'll inquire [you] about the street a little.') is used when you ask someone for street directions.
2. The verb stem chac- means 'to look for (something, someone)', 'to find', 'to get (money at the bank)', 'to claim (something)', etc.
3. Seul Yek e kanin kil il asimnikka? means literally 'Do you know the street which goes to Seoul Station?' The phrase 'place noun + e kanin kil' is the equivalent of English 'the way to + place noun.'
5. The verb stem in Memnikka? 'Is [it] far?' is me(1)-. l in me(1)- is dropped when either -(1)mnita or -(1)mnikka ending is added to the stem.
13. Nuku 'who' or 'what person' is a noun. When nuku is used as the subject of a sentence, with the particle i/ka, it has the irregular form nuka. When other particles follow, the full form nuku occurs. For example, nuku lil 'whom', nuku wa 'with whom', nuku eke 'to whom', nuku e 'whose', etc.
14. Ki pun 'he (honored)' is the politer equivalent of ki salam ('that person'). Salam is a free noun, whereas pun occurs only as a post-noun.
15. The verb stem moli- 'do not know' is the negative of the verb stem a(1)- 'know'. When one of -(1)mnita, -(1)mnikka, -(1)psita and -(1)sipsiyo endings is added to the stem a(1)-, l is dropped and is not pronounced.



## GRAMMAR NOTES

## 1. Verbs: Action vs. Description and Intransitive vs. Transitive

Korean verbs fall into two main classes: Action Verbs and Description Verbs.

An action verb is used in sentences like 'X does something' or 'X takes a certain action', whereas a description verb is used in sentences like 'X is in such and such a state'. A Korean action verb corresponds generally to an English verb; a Korean description verb, to English 'be + adjective'.

The only difference between action and description verbs is that most description verbs do not occur in either propositative or imperative sentences. Otherwise, the forms of description verbs are similar to those of action verbs.

Korean verbs are further classified into another two main classes: Transitive and Intransitive. A transitive verb is one which may be preceded by an object, that is, noun + il/lil may precede the verb. There is no change in the verb itself. An intransitive verb is one which is never preceded by an object. Both transitive and intransitive verbs may be preceded by an emphasized subject, that is, noun + i/ka.

All description verbs are intransitive verbs; most action verbs are transitive, but some are intransitive and others are both transitive and intransitive.

Examples:

Group 1 (intransitive verbs)

Hakkyo ka <u>kakkapsimnita</u> .	'The school is near.'
Chæk i <u>cohsimnita</u> .	'The book is good.'
Yeki ese <u>tssakwan i me(l)mnikka?</u>	'Is the embassy far from here?'
Haksang i <u>kongpu-hamnita</u> .	'The student is studying.'
Hakkyo ka <u>sicak-hamnita</u> .	'School begins.'

Group 2 (transitive verbs)

Yenge lil <u>psumnita</u> .	'[I]'m learning English.'
Hankuk mal il <u>kalichimnita</u> .	'[I]'m teaching Korean.'
Yenge chæk il <u>i(l)kimnita</u> .	'[I] read an English book.'
Hakkyo lil <u>sicak-hamnita</u> .	'[I] begin school.'

Note that inflected forms (e.g. 'verbals') may occur as complete sentences. In Korean when the context or situation is clear as to the subject and/or topic of a sentence, the speaker often omits the subject or the topic, and the sentence consists of the verbal alone, or the verbal plus its modifiers and/or objects.

The topic/subject in the following examples may be omitted.

Examples:

(Sənsəng ɪn) ətɪ e kamnikka?	'Where are (you) going?'
(Cə nɪn) hakkyo e kamnita.	'(I) am going to school.'
Ne, (hakkyo ka) məmnita.	'Yes, [it] ('the school') is far.'

## 2. Future Tense in Korean

Tenses in a Korean sentence are indicated in verbals. The form -kess- is infixed between the verb stem and the verb ending to mark the future tense. There is a small class of forms which occur after verb stems but always before verb endings. We shall call them Verb Suffixes. The form -kess- is called the Future Tense Suffix. When a verbal is a statement sentence and includes -kess-, it indicates the speaker's intention for the future. If the verbal which includes -kess- is a question sentence, the speaker asks the addressee about his future intention or opinion. If the subject or the topic of the sentence is other than the speaker or the addressee, the sentence which includes -kess- denotes an opinion or presumption about the subject or the topic in the sentence. Examples;

(Cə nɪn) hakkyo e kakessɪmnita.	'I will go to school.'
(Cə ka) Yəngə lɪl pəukessɪmnita.	'I will study English.'
(Sənsəng ɪn) muəs ɪl hakessɪmnikka?	{ 'What are you going to do?'
	{ 'What will you do?'
Chinku lɪl mannakessɪmnikka?	'Are you going to meet a friend?'
Hakkyo ka kakkapkessɪmnikka?	'Will the school be near (do you think)?'
Kim Sənsəng ɪ cɪp e isskessɪmnita.	'Mr. Kim must be home (I suppose).'

## 3. Honorifics

Whenever the subject and/or the topic in the sentence is honored, a verb suffix -(ɪ)si- is added immediately after the verb stem. We shall call the suffix -(ɪ)si- the Honorific Suffix. When -(ɪ)si- and other suffixes such as the future tense suffix -kess- occur in the same verb, the honorific suffix -(ɪ)si- always precedes other suffixes. In an inflected form the honorific suffix is not used if the subject in the sentence is inferior to the speaker. Note that the speaker never honors himself, that is, the suffix -(ɪ)si- in a verbal does not occur when the subject and/or the topic is the speaker. -Si- occurs after a stem ending in a vowel; -isi- after a stem ending in a consonant. Compare:

a. ətɪ e kamnikka?	'Where are [you] going.'
ətɪ e kasɪmnikka?	'Where are [you] going?' (H)
ətɪ e kasikessɪmnikka?	'Where will [you] go?' (H)

- b. Mues il hamnikka? 'What do [you] do?'  
 Mues il hasimnikka? 'What do [you] do?' (H)  
 Mues il hasikessimnikka? 'What will [you] do?' (H)
- c. Kim Sensaeng i kalichimnita. 'Mr. Kim's teaching.'  
 Kim Sensaeng i kalichisimnita. 'Mr. Kim's teaching.' (H)  
 Kim Sensaeng i kalichisikessimnita. 'Mr. Kim will teach (I think).' (H)
- d. Ce salam in Yenge lil pœumnita. 'He's learning English.'  
 Ce salam in Yenge lil Pœusimnita. 'He's learning English.' (H)  
 Ce salam in Yenge lil pœusikessimnita. 'He will learn English.' (H)

4. Negative an

There are two ways of expressing negation in Korean statement and question sentences. One simple way is the use of the word an immediately before an inflected expression. However, with some verbs, an does not normally occur; another form of negation is used. (See Unit 4.) Compare:

- a. Hakkyo e kamnita. '[I] go to school.'  
 Hakkyo e an kamnita. '[I] don't go to school.'
- b. Kim Sensaeng i omnita. 'Mr. Kim's coming.'  
 Kim sensaeng i an omnita. 'Mr. Kim is not coming.'
- c. Ne, kalichimnita. 'Yes, [I] teach.'  
 Aniyo, an kalichimnita. 'No, [I] don't teach.'

5. Particle ese 'from', 'at', 'in', 'on'

A place nominal + ese denotes either dynamic location or point of departure for the following inflected expression depending on what verb follows after it. Examples:

- Ce nin Seul ese omnita. 'I'm coming from Seoul.'  
 Hakkyo ka cip ese memnita. 'The school is far from the house.'  
 Uli nin kyosil ese kongpu-hamnita. 'We study in the classroom.'  
 Cengkecang ese chinku lil mannakessimnita. 'I'll meet a friend at the station.'  
 Kim Sensaeng i Seul ese il-hamnita. 'Mr. Kim works in Seoul.'

Compare the above construction with place nominal + e in Unit 2. Before issimnita 'exists', a place nominal + e may occur but not a place nominal + ese.

6. Particle e 'to'

A place nominal + e followed by either ka- 'to go' or o- 'to come' indicates the direction of the action of the inflected expression. Compare e with lo/1lo in Unit 2, Grammar Note 2. Observe the examples:

Ce nin hakkyo e kamnita.

'I'm going to school.'

Ce e cip e osipsiyo.

'Please come to my house.'

Cengkəcang e kakessimnikka?

'Will you go to the station?'

Kim Sensaeng in Mikuk e an omnita.

'Mr. Kim is not coming to America.'

## DRILLS

## A. Substitution Drills

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. <u>eti</u> lil chacsimnikka?            | What (place) are [you] looking for?         |
| 2. <u>Mues</u> (il) chacsimnikka?          | What are you looking for?                   |
| 3. <u>eni hakkyo</u> (lil) chacsimnikka?   | What school are you looking for?            |
| 4. <u>eni haksang</u> (il) chacsimnikka?   | Which student are you looking for?          |
| 5. <u>eni kil</u> (il) chacsimnikka?       | Which street are you looking for?           |
| 6. <u>eni pakhwacem</u> (il) chacsimnikka? | Which department store are you looking for? |
| 7. <u>Nuku</u> (lil) chacsimnikka?         | Whom are you looking for?                   |
| 8. <u>eni kyosil</u> (il) chacsimnikka?    | Which classroom are you looking for?        |
| 9. <u>eni sensang</u> (il) chacsimnikka?   | Which teacher are you looking for?          |
| 10. <u>eni ai</u> (lil) chacsimnikka?      | Which child are you looking for?            |
| 11. <u>eni pun</u> (il) chacsimnikka       | Whom (H) are you looking for?               |

## B. Substitution Drill

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. <u>Seul Yek</u> e kanin kil il asimnikka?         | Do you know the way to Seoul Station?        |
| 2. <u>Seul Sicheng</u> e kanin kil il asimnikka?     | Do you know the way to Seoul City Hall?      |
| 3. <u>Cengkacang</u> e kanin kil il asimnikka?       | Do you know the way to the station?          |
| 4. <u>Pakhwacem</u> e kanin kil il asimnikka?        | Do you know the way to the department store? |
| 5. <u>Sicang</u> e kanin kil il asimnikka?           | Do you know the way to the market place?     |
| 6. <u>Kongwon</u> e kanin kil il asimnikka?          | Do you know the way to the park?             |
| *7. <u>Tapang</u> e kanin il asimnikka?              | Do you know the way to the tearoom?          |
| *8. <u>Siktang</u> e kanin kil il asimnikka?         | Do you know the way to the restaurant?       |
| *9. <u>Kim Sensang cip</u> e kanin kil il asimnikka? | Do you know the way to Mr. Kim's house?      |

## C. Substitution Drill

- |   |                             |
|---|-----------------------------|
| 1. Ttokpalo kasipsiyo.                  | Go straight ahead.          |
| 2. <u>Wen ccok ilo</u> kasipsiyo.       | Go to the left.             |
| 3. <u>Olin ccok ilo</u> kasipsiyo.      | Go to the right.            |
| *4. <u>I ccok ilo</u> kasipsiyo.        | Go this way (direction).    |
| *5. <u>Ce ccok ilo</u> kasipsiyo.       | Go that way (direction).    |
| 6. <u>Seul Yek ilo</u> kasipsiyo.       | Go to Seoul Station.        |
| 7. <u>Cengkechang ilo</u> kasipsiyo.    | Go to the railroad station. |
| 8. <u>Sicheng ccok ilo</u> kasipsiyo.   | Go toward the City Hall.    |
| 9. <u>Mikuk Tssakwan ilo</u> kasipsiyo. | Go to the U.S. Embassy.     |

## D. Substitution Drill

- |  |                                      |
|--|--------------------------------------|
| 1. Yeki ese memnikka?                  | Is it far from here?                 |
| 2. <u>Hakkyo</u> ese memnikka?         | Is it far from school?               |
| 3. <u>Cengkechang</u> ese memnikka?    | Is it far from the station?          |
| 4. <u>Mikuk Tssakwan</u> ese memnikka? | Is it far from the U.S. Embassy?     |
| 5. <u>Seul Yek</u> ese memnikka?       | Is it far from Seoul Station?        |
| 6. <u>Sicheng</u> ese memnikka?        | Is it far from the City Hall?        |
| *7. <u>Sangcem</u> ese memnikka?       | Is it far from the store?            |
| 8. <u>Pekhwacem</u> ese memnikka?      | Is it far from the department store? |
| *9. <u>Tapang</u> ese memnikka?        | Is it far from the tearoom?          |
| *10. <u>Kongwen</u> ese memnikka?      | Is it far from the park?             |
| *11. <u>Sicang</u> ese memnikka?       | Is it far from the market place?     |
| 12. <u>Mikuk</u> ese memnikka?         | Is it far from America?              |
| *13. <u>Uphyenkuk</u> ese memnikka?    | Is it far from the post office?      |
| *14. <u>Samusil</u> ese memnikka?      | Is it far from the office?           |
| *15. <u>Kikchang</u> ese memnikka?     | Is it far from the theatre?          |

## E. Substitution Drill

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. Na nin cəngkəcang e kamnita.                  | I['m] go[ing] to the railroad station.       |
| 2. Na nin <u>kongwen</u> e kamnita.              | I['m] go[ing] to the park.                   |
| 3. Na nin <u>kikcang</u> e kamnita.              | I['m] go[ing] to the theatre.                |
| 4. Na nin <u>inhəng</u> e kamnita.               | I['m] go[ing] to the bank.                   |
| 5. Na nin <u>sangcəm</u> e kamnita.              | I['m] go[ing] to the store.                  |
| 6. Na nin <u>Cungkuk siktang</u> e kamnita.      | I['m] go[ing] to a Chinese restaurant.       |
| 7. Na nin <u>Səul Uphənkuk</u> e kamnita.        | I['m] go[ing] to the Seoul Post Office.      |
| 8. Na nin <u>Hankuk inhəng</u> e kamnita.        | I['m] go[ing] to the Bank of Korea.          |
| 9. Na nin <u>Səul Pəkhwacəm</u> e kamnita.       | I['m] go[ing] to the Seoul Department Store. |
| *10. Na nin <u>təsakwan siktang</u> e kamnita.   | I['m] go[ing] to the Embassy dining hall.    |
| *11. Na nin <u>na e samusil</u> e kamnita.       | I['m] go[ing] to my office.                  |
| *12. Na nin <u>Ceimsi Sənsəng cip</u> e kamnita. | I['m] go[ing] to Mr. James' house.           |

## F. Substitution Drill

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Kəki esə muəs (il) <u>hakessimnikka?</u>                   | What are you going to do there?<br>( 'What will you do there?!') |
| 2. <u>Cəngkəcang</u> esə muəs (il) <u>hakessimnikka?</u>      | What are you going to do at the station?                         |
| 3. <u>Tapang</u> esə muəs (il) <u>hakessimnikka?</u>          | What are you going to do at the tea-room?                        |
| 4. <u>Kongwen</u> esə muəs (il) <u>hakessimnikka?</u>         | What are you going to do in the park?                            |
| 5. <u>Hakkyo</u> esə muəs (il) <u>hakessimnikka?</u>          | What are you going to do at school?                              |
| 6. Hakkyo esə muəs (il) <u>chackessimnikka?</u>               | What are you going to look for at school?                        |
| 7. Hakkyo esə muəs (il) <u>pəukessimnikka?</u>                | What are you going to study at school?                           |
| 8. Hakkyo esə muəs (il) <u>kalichikessimnikka?</u>            | What are you going to teach at school?                           |
| 9. Hakkyo esə muəs (il) <u>mal-hakessimnikka?</u>             | What are you going to say at school?                             |
| 10. Hakkyo esə muəs (il) <u>mule</u> <u>pokessimnikka?</u>    | What are you going to inquire about at school?                   |
| 11. Hakkyo esə muəs (il) <u>kongpu-</u> <u>hakessimnikka?</u> | What are you going to study at school?                           |
| 12. Hakkyo esə muəs (il) <u>ilkkessimnikka?</u>               | What are you going to read at school?                            |

## G. Substitution Drill

- |   |                                       |
|---|---------------------------------------|
| 1. K <sub>1</sub> chinku nin nuku imnikka?              | Who is that friend [of yours]?        |
| 2. <u>K<sub>1</sub> salam</u> in nuku imnikka?          | Who is that man?                      |
| 3. <u>Cə haksəng</u> in nuku imnikka?                   | Who is that student over there?       |
| 4. <u>Cə Mikuk salam</u> in nuku imnikka?               | Who is that American over there?      |
| 5. <u>Cə Ilpon salam</u> in nuku imnikka?               | Who is that Japanese over there?      |
| 6. <u>Cə pun</u> in nuku imnikka?                       | Who is that man (honored)?            |
| 7. <u>Cə Mikuk wekyokwan</u> in nuku imnikka?           | Who is that American diplomat?        |
| 8. <u>K<sub>1</sub> Hankuk haksəng</u> in nuku imnikka? | Who is the Korean student?            |
| 9. <u>Hankuk mal sensəng</u> in nuku imnikka?           | Who is the Korean (language) teacher? |
| 10. <u>Cə pun</u> in nuku imnikka?                      | Who is that lady?                     |
| 11. <u>Cə ai</u> nin nuku imnikka?                      | Who is that child?                    |

## H. Response Drill

Tutor: eti lil chacsimnikka? /Səul Yək/

'What (place) are you looking for?'  
/Seoul Station/

Student: Səul Yək il chacsimnita.

'I'm looking for Seoul Station.'

1. Muəs il chacsimnikka? /Hankuk mal  
chæk/

Hankuk mal chæk il chacsimnita.

2. eti e kasimnikka? /uphyenkuk/

Uphyenkuk e kamnita.

3. K<sub>1</sub> Mikuk salam in nuku imnikka?  
/Ceimsı/

Ceimsı imnita.

4. Sensəng in muəs hakessimnikka?  
/Hankuk mal kongpu/

(Na nin) Hankuk mal kongpu (lil)  
hakessimnita.

5. Cəngkəcang esə nuku lil  
manakessimnikka? /chinku/

Chinku lil manakessimnita.

6. Pəkhwacəm i eti e issimnikka?  
/uphyenkuk twi e/

Uphyenkuk twi e issimnita.

7. Kim Sensəng in hakkyo esə muəs il  
kalichimnikka? /Yəngə/

Yəngə lil kalichimnita.

8. əni kənmul i inhəng imnikka? /wen  
ccok kənmul/

Wen ccok kənmul i inhəng imnita.

9. eti esə chinku lil manakessimnikka?  
/tapang/

Tapang esə manakessimnita.

10. Səul Yək in eti lo kamnikka?  
/olin ccok/

Olin ccok ilo kamnita.



11. Nuka Hankuk mal il pæumnikka? Mikuk salam i pæumnita.  
/Mikuk salam/
12. Sænsæng samusil i eti e issimnikka? Tæsakwan kænmul e issimnita.  
/tæsakwan kænmul/

## I. Response Drill

Tutor: Hakkyo sænsæng imnikka? 'Is [he] a school teacher?'  
Student: Aniyo, (hakkyo sænsæng i) 'No, [he] is not.'  
an imnita.

1. I kæs i chæksang imnikka? Aniyo, (chæksang i) an imnita.
2. (Hakkyo ka) mæmnikka? Aniyo, an mæmnita.
3. Cængkæcang e kamnikka? Aniyo, an kamnita.
4. Ki pun il amnikka? Aniyo, molimnita.
5. Hankuk mal il pæumnikka? Aniyo, an pæumnita.
6. Chinku lil mannakessimnikka? Aniyo, an mannakessimnita.
7. Yøngæ lil kalichimnikka? Aniyo, an kalichimnita.
8. Hakkyo ka kakkapsimnikka? Aniyo, an kakkapsimnita.
9. Hakkyo e kakessimnikka? Aniyo, an kakessimnita.
10. Kil il mulæ pokessimnikka? Aniyo, an mulæ pokessimnita.
11. Yønphil il chackessimnikka? Aniyo, an chackessimnita.

## J. Grammar Drill (based on Grammar Note 2)

Tutor: Yøngæ lil pæumnikka? '[Are] you learn[ing] English?'

Student: Yøngæ lil pæukessimnikka? 'Will you learn English?'

1. Hakkyo e kamnikka? Hakkyo e kakessimnikka?
2. Muæs il hamnikka? Muæs il hakessimnikka?
3. Nuku lil mannamnikka? Nuku lil mannakessimnikka?
4. Ilpon mal il pæumnikka? Ilpon mal il pæukessimnikka?
5. Pækhwacæm il chacsimnikka? Pækhwacæm il chackessimnikka?
6. (Sænsæng in) cip e issimnikka? (Sænsæng in) cip e isskessimnikka?
7. Nuku lil pwepsimnikka? Nuku lil pwepkessimnikka?
8. Nuka Yøngæ lil kalichimnikka? Nuka Yøngæ lil kalichikessimnikka?

## K. Response Drill

- Tutor: Kongpu-hakessimnikka? 'Will you study?'
- Student: Ne, (na nin) kongpu-hakessimnita. 'Yes, I'll study.'
1. Hankuk mal il pæukessimnikka? Ne, (na nin) Hankuk mal il pæukessimnita.
  2. Cip e isskessimnikka? Ne (na nin) cip e isskessimnita.
  3. Chinku lil mannakessimnikka? Ne, (na nin) chinku lil mannakessimnita.
  4. Yængø lil kalichikessimnikka? Ne, (na nin) Yængø lil kalichikessimnita.
  5. inhæng e kakessimnikka? Ne, (na nin) inhæng e kakessimnita.
  6. Hakkyo e an kakessimnikka? Ne, (na nin) hakkyo e an kakessimnita.
  7. Kɪ chæk il chackessimnikka? Ne, (na nin) kɪ chæk il chackessimnita.
  8. Kil il mulø pokessimnikka? Ne, (na nin) kil il mulø pokessimnita.
  9. Kɪ kəs il hakessimnikka? Ne, (na nin) kɪ kəs il hakessimnita.
  10. Hankuk mal il mal-hakessimnikka? Ne, (na nin) Hankuk mal il mal-hakessimnita.

## L. Response Drill

- Tutor: Muəs il kongpu-hakessimnikka? 'What will you study?' /Chinese/  
/Cungkuk mal/
- Student: Cungkuk mal il kongpu-hakessimnita. 'I will study Chinese.'
1. eti e kasikessimnikka? /cængkæcang/ Cængkæcang e kakessimnita.
  2. eti esø chinku lil mannakessimnikka? Tapange esø mannakessimnita.  
/tapang/
  3. enɪ mal il pæukessimnikka? Hankuk mal il pæukessimnita.  
/Hankuk mal/
  4. Nuku e samusil il chackessimnikka? Kim Sænsæng e samusil il  
/Kim Sænsæng/ chackessimnita.
  5. Sænsæng ɪn cip esø muəs il (Cip esø) chæk il ilkkessimnita.  
hakessimnikka? /chæk/
  6. Tapang esø nuku lil mannakessimnikka? Chinku lil mannakessimnita.  
/chinku/
  7. Nuka Yængø lil kalichikessimnikka? Mikuk salam i kalichikessimnita.  
/Mikuk salam/

## M. Grammar Drill (as a level drill based on Grammar Note 3)

Tutor: Muēs il kongpu-hamnikka?	'What are you studying?'
Student: Muēs il kongpu-hasimnikka?	'What are you studying?'
1. eti e kamnikka?	eti e kasimnikka?
2. Muēs il hamnikka?	Muēs il hasimnikka?
3. eni mal il pəsumnikka?	eni mal il pəusimnikka?
4. Nuku lil chacsimnikka?	Nuku lil chacisimnikka?
5. Nuka Yəngə lil kalichimnikka?	Nuka Yəngə lil kalichisimnikka?
6. Səul Yək e kanin kil il amnikka?	Səul Yək e kanin kil il asimnikka?
7. Kɪ chinku nin nuku imnikka?	Kɪ chinku nin nuku isimnikka?
8. Cə pun in hakkyo sənsəng imnikka?	Cə pun in hakkyo sənsəng isimnikka?
9. (Sənsəng in) wekyokwan imnikka?	Sənsəng in wekyokwan isimnikka?
10. I salam il molimnikka?	I salam il molisimnikka?
11. Hankuk mal il mal-hamnikka?	Hankuk mal il mal-hasimnikka?

## N. Response Drill (as a level drill)

Tutor: Ceimsɪ Sənsəng in eti e kamnikka? /hakkyo/	'Where does Mr. James go?' /school/
Student: Hakkyo e kasimnita.	'He goes to school.'
1. Ceimsɪ Sənsəng in muēs il kongpu-hamnikka? /Hankuk mal/	Hankuk mal il kongpu-hasimnita.
2. Ceimsɪ Sənsəng in nuku lil chacsimnikka? /Pak Sənsəng/	Pak Sənsəng il chacisimnita.
3. Ceimsɪ Sənsəng in nuku lil mannamikka? /chinku/	Chinku lil mannasimnita.
4. Ceimsɪ Sənsəng in Səul Yək e kanin kil il amnikka? /aniyo/	Aniyo, molisimnita.
5. Ceimsɪ Sənsəng in Yəngə lil kalichimnikka? /aniyo/	Aniyo, an kalichisimnita.
6. Ceimsɪ Sənsəng in wekyokwan imnikka? /ne/	Ne, wekyokwan isimnita.
7. Ceimsɪ Sənsəng in Yəngə lil pəsumnikka? /aniyo/	Aniyo, an pəusimnita.
8. Ceimsɪ Sənsəng in Yəngə lil ilksimnikka? /aniyo/	Aniyo, an ilkisimnita.

## EXERCISES

## 1. Ask a passerby:

- a. if he knows the way to USIA.
- b. if it is near.
- c. if the building (over there) is the railroad station.
- d. if he is going in the direction of the City Hall.
- e. if the park is far.
- f. if the station is to the left of the market place.

## 2. Mr. Kim asks:

You answer that:

- |                                       |                               |
|---------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| a. where you're going.                | you're going to the station.  |
| b. what you'll do there.              | you'll meet a friend.         |
| c. who your friend is.                | he is an American.            |
| d. what your friend does.             | he is in the foreign service. |
| e. how you know him.                  | he is with the U.S. Embassy.  |
| f. if your friend speaks Korean.      | he speaks a little.           |
| g. if you know Mr. Park.              | you know him well.            |
| h. if you are a Korean teacher.       | you are not.                  |
| i. if you're going to learn Japanese. | you're not.                   |

## 3. Tell Pak Sənsəng the following:

1. The department store is near the street.
2. The classroom is in this building.
3. The park is behind my house.
4. The store is next to the theatre.
5. The bank is on the left side of the City Hall.
6. The market (place) is in front of the Chinese restaurant.
7. The USIS is this way.
8. The Ambassador's office is on your right.
9. The school building is next to the inn.
10. This is the map of that lady's child.

## 4. Find out the following information from Pak Sənsəng:

1. Which building is the department store.
2. Where he is going.
3. What Mr. James does.

4. Whom he's going to meet.
5. Who teaches Korean.
6. Which classroom he is looking for.
7. Who his friend is.
8. How he knows him.
9. If he knows the way to the City Hall.
10. If he is going to be home.

5. Tell Pak Sensang that:

1. you're looking for Kim's house.
2. you're in the foreign service.
3. you're going to meet James at the restaurant.
4. your office is not far from here.
5. you will be home.
6. you don't know that Korean's name.
7. this Korean lady is not { in the foreign service.  
a diplomat.
8. the Bank of Korea is straight ahead.
9. you're not going to come to school.
10. the post office is not near.

## 제 4 과 물건 사기

(대화 A )

- 어제  
갔습니까
1. 이 : 김 선생, 어제 어디에 갔습니까?
- 시내  
상점  
갔습니다
2. 김 : 시내 상점에 갔습니다.
- 샀어요
3. 이 : 무엇을 샀어요?
- 용품  
이상 용품
4. 김 : 이상 용품을 좀 샀습니다.
- 오늘  
또  
가겠어요  
안 가겠어요
5. 이 : 오늘은 시내에 또 안 가겠어요?
- 그 씨  
그 씨요  
채방

UNIT 4. Shopping  
BASIC DIALOGUES FOR MEMORIZATION

Dialogue ALee

- |  |                                      |
|--|--------------------------------------|
| æce                                    | yesterday                            |
| kassimnikka                            | did [you] go?                        |
| 1. Kim Sensæng, æce eti e kassimnikka? | Where did you go yesterday, Mr. Kim? |

Kim

- |                                  |                               |
|----------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| sinæ                             | downtown                      |
| sangcæm                          | store                         |
| kassessimnita                    | [I] went; [I] had gone        |
| 2. Sinæ sangcæm e kassessimnita. | [I] went to a store downtown. |

Lee

- |                     |                     |
|---------------------|---------------------|
| sassæ yo            | did [you] buy?      |
| 3. Mæs il sassæ yo? | What did [you] buy? |

Kim

- |                                       |                                    |
|---------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| yongphum                              | necessary goods                    |
| ilsang yongphum                       | daily necessities                  |
| 4. Ilsang yongphum il com sassimnita. | [I] bought some daily necessities. |

Lee

- |                                      |   |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| onil                                 | today   |
| tto                                  | again   |
| kakesse yo                           | will you go?  |
| an kakesse yo                        | ('will you not go?')  |
| 5. Onil in sinæ e tto an kakesse yo? | Are you going downtown again today?<br>( 'Will you not go downtown again?') |

Kim

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| kilsse }   | well; maybe                                       |
| kilsse yo }  |   |
| chækpang   | bookstore   |
| tillikessimnita  | [I]'ll stop by                                    |
| com  | a little; a little while                          |
| 6. Kilsse yo. Nan nin chækpang e com<br>tillikessimnita. | Maybe. I'll stop by a bookstore<br>(for a while). |

들르겠습니다

좀

6. 김 : 글썽해요. 나는 책방에 좀 들르겠습니다.

그럼

같이

나와

나와 같이

갑시다

7. 이 : 그럼, 나와 같이 갑시다.

그럼시다

그러합시다

사겠어요

8. 김 : 예, 그럼시다. 선생은 무엇을 사겠어요?

나도

보겠습니다

값

비쌉니까?

9. 이 : 나도 책을 좀 보겠습니다. 책 값이 비쌉니까?

그리

비싸지 않습니다

쌉니다

10. 김 : 아니요, 그리 비싸지 않습니다. 쌉니다.



Lee

kiləm	if so; then
kathi	together
na wa	with me
na wa kathi	(together) with me
kapsita	let us go

7. Kiləm, na wa kathi kapsita. Then, let's go together.

Kim

kiləhapsita }	let's do so
kiləpsita }	
sakessə yo	will you buy?

8. Ne, kiləpsita. Sənsəng in muəs il sakessə yo? Let's (do so). What are you going to buy?

Lee

na to	I also; me too
pokessimnita	I'll see [it]; I'll look at [it]
kaps	price
pissamnikka	is [it] expensive?

9. Na to chæk il com pokessimnita. I would like to see some books too. Chæk kaps i pissamnikka? ('I'll also see books a little.') Are books expensive?

Kim

kili	so; like that
pissaci anhsimnita/anssimnita/	[it] is not expensive
ssamnita	[it] is cheap

10. Aniyo, kili pissaci anhsimnita. No, [they]'re not so expensive. Ssamnita. [They] are [fairly] cheap.

Dialogue B

(--at the store--)

Cəmwən

esə	quickly; (please)
osipsiyo	come!
esə osipsiyo	(welcome!); come in

11. esə osipsiyo. Muəs il sasikessimnikka? Please come in. May I help you? ('What would you like to buy?')

(대화 B)

어서

오십시요

어서 오십시요

11. 점원 :           어서 오십시요. 무엇을 사시겠습니까?

여기에서

수건

팝니다, 팝읍니까

12. 이 :             여기에서 수건을 팝니까?

색

무슨 색

원하세요

13. 점원 :           예, 팝니다. 무슨 색을 원하세요.

노란 색

좋아합니다

14. 이 :             노란 색을 좋아합니다. 노란 것이 있어요?

여러 가지

어떻습니까

15. 점원 :           여러 가지가 있습니다. 이것이 어떻습니까?

얼마

좋습니다

16. 이 :             예, 좋습니다. 그거 얼마입니까?

Lee

- |               |                     |
|---------------|---------------------|
| yeki ese      | here; at this place |
| suken         | towel               |
| phalimnikka } |                     |
| phamnikka }   | do [you] sell?      |
12. Yeki ese sukən il phamnikka?  
Do you carry towels here? ('Do you sell towels here?')

Cəmwen

- |            |                |
|------------|----------------|
| musin      | what sort of   |
| sæk        | color          |
| wenhase yo | do [you] want? |
13. Ne, phamnita. Musin sæk il wenhase yo?  
Yes, we do. What color would you like? ('What sort of color do you want?')

Lee

- |           |                      |
|-----------|----------------------|
| nolan sæk | yellow color         |
| cohamnita | [I] like; [I] prefer |
14. Nolan sæk il cohamnita. Nolan kəs i isse yo?  
('[I] like yellow color.') Yellow, please. ('Do you have yellow ones?')

Cəmwen

- |               |                           |
|---------------|---------------------------|
| yelə kaci     | several kinds; many kinds |
| ettəhsımnikka | how is [it]?              |
15. Yelə kaci ka issımnita. I kəs i ettəhsımnikka?  
We have several kinds. How do you like this one? ('How is this one?')

Lee

- |            |               |
|------------|---------------|
| elma       | how much      |
| cohsımnita | [that]'s good |
16. Ne, cohsımnita. Kı kəs, elma imnikka?  
On, that's nice. How much is it?

Cəmwen

- |          |               |
|----------|---------------|
| osip     | 50            |
| osip Wen | fifty Won W50 |
17. Osip Wen e phamnita.  
W50. ('We sell it for W50')

- 오십  
오십 원
17. 점원 : 오십 원에 팝니다.
- 하나  
주십시오
18. 이 : 그거 하나 주십시오.
19. 점원 : 예, 여기(에) 있습니다.

Lee

hana  
cusipsiyo

one  
give [me]

18. Ki kəs, hana cusipsiyo.

Please give [me] one [of them].

Cəmwən

19. Ne, yəki (e) issımnita.

Here you are.

## NUMERALS (1)

1 il	11 sip-il	21 isip-il	31 samsip-il
2 i	12 sip-i	22 isip-i	40 sasip
3 sam	13 sip-sam	23 isip-sam	50 osip
4 sa	14 sip-sa	24 isip-sa	60 yuksip ~ nyuksip
5 o	15 sip-o	25 isip-o	70 chilsip
6 yuk	16 sip-yuk /simnyuk/	26 isip-yuk /isimnyuk/	80 phalsip
7 chil	17 sip-chil	27 isip-chil	90 kusip
8 phal	18 sip-phal	28 isip-phal	91 kusip-il
9 ku	19 sip-ku	29 isip-ku	99 kusip-ku
10 sip	20 i-sip	30 samsip	100 (il)pæk
101 pæk-il	200 ipæk	1,001 chən-il	
102 pæk-i	300 sampæk	1,011 chən-sip-il	
103 pæk-sam	400 sapæk	1,111 chən-pæk-sip-il	
104 pæk-sa	500 opæk	2,000 ichən	
105 pæk-o	600 yukpæk /nyukpæk/	3,000 samchən	
106 pæk-yuk	700 chilpæk	4,000 sachən	
107 pæk-chil	800 phalpæk	5,000 ochən	
108 pæk-phal	900 kupæk	6,000 yukchən ~ nyukchən	
109 pæk-ku	999 kupæk-kusip-ku	7,000 chilchən	
110 pæk-sip	1,000 (il)chən	10,000 (il)man	
	100,000 sipman /simman/	1,000,000 pækman /pəngman/	

수자 (1)

1	일	11	십 일	21	이십 일	31	삼십 일
2	이	12	십 이	22	이십 이	40	사십
3	삼	13	십 삼	23	이십 삼	50	오십
4	사	14	십 사	24	이십 사	60	육십
5	오	15	십 오	25	이십 오	70	칠십
6	육	16	십 육	26	이십 육	80	팔십
7	칠	17	십 칠	27	이십 칠	90	구십
8	팔	18	십 팔	28	이십 팔	91	구십 일
9	구	19	십 구	29	이십 구	99	구십 구
10	십	20	이십	30	삼십	100	(일)백

101	백 일	200	이백	1,001	천 일
102	백 이	300	삼백	1,011	천 십 일
103	백 삼	400	사백	1,111	천 백 십 일
104	백 사	500	오백	2,000	이천
105	백 오	600	육백	3,000	삼천
106	백 육	700	칠백	4,000	사천
107	백 칠	800	팔백	5,000	오천
108	백 팔	900	구백	6,000	육천
109	백 구	999	구백 구십 구	7,000	칠천
110	백 십	1,000	(일)천	10,000	(일)만
				100,000	십만
				1,000,000	백만

## NOTES ON DIALOGUES

(Numbers correspond to the sentence numbers.)

2. Sinŏ ('the inside of city') originally meant any part of a city which had walls around it. Today, it refers to the downtown area in general.
3. Sasse yo? 'Did [you] buy?' is the informal polite equivalent of the formal polite form Sassimnikka?
5. Tto 'again', 'also', 'too', is an adverb which occurs before a sentence, a verbal, or other words of a modifier class.
6. Kilsse yo. 'Well..' is a kind of hesitating response to or comment upon someone's question, statement, suggestion or command.
9. Chŏk kaps 'the price of the book' is a noun phrase which literally means 'book price'. Kaps 'price' occurs after certain nouns. For example, cip kaps 'the rent' or 'the price of a house', ppesi kaps 'bus fare', imsik kaps 'food price'.
10. Kili before verbs or words of a modifier class in a negative statement means '(not) so', '(not) very' or '(not)that'. In propositative, imperative and question sentences, it means 'like that', 'such a' or 'in such a way'.
11. ese osipsiyo. ('Come quickly.') is a general greeting expression for welcoming; it is commonly used by business people to customers.
12. Yeki ese X il/lil pha(l)mnikka? ('Do you sell X here?') is one common way of asking store clerks a certain item you want to buy. Yeki e X i/ka issimnikka? ('Do you have X here?' or 'Is there X here?') is another common question in such a situation. The stem of pha(l)mnikka? 'Do [you] sell?' is pha(l)-.
13. Musin 'what sort of', 'what', occurs before a noun, and asks about the type or the characteristics of the noun: musin chŏk 'what kind of book', musin mal 'what language', musin salam 'what kind of person', musin cip 'what type of house', musin cha 'what kind of car'.
14. Nolan 'yellow', hayan 'white', phalan 'blue', kkaman 'black', ppalkan 'red', are all modifier class words formed from the verb stems nola- 'to be yellow', haya- 'to be white', phala- 'to be blue', kkama(h)- 'to be black', ppalka- 'to be red', by the addition of the modifier ending -n/in/nin (See Unit 5). The verb stem cohaha- 'to like' has an unpredictable negative form: silhaha- 'to dislike'.

15. Yələ 'several', 'many' ('more than a few but not too many in number') is a numeral which may occur before free or post nouns only as a determinative: yələ kaci 'many kinds', yələ salam 'several people', yələ pun 'many people (H)'. Kaci 'kind' occurs only as a post-noun preceded by numerals of Korean origin, and never occurs after other modifiers. Examples:

<u>yələ kaci</u>	'several kinds'
<u>han kaci</u>	'one kind'
<u>tu kaci</u>	'two kinds'
<u>se kaci</u>	'three kinds'

In the verbal əttəhsimnikka? 'How is [it]?', əttəh- 'how is' is its verb stem, of which inflected forms are used only as question words. Most Korean question words are either nouns or adverbs.

16. The verb stem coh- 'to be good', 'to be nice', 'to be O.K.', has as its antonymous verb stem nappi- 'to be bad'. əlma imnikka? 'How much is [it]?' is a fixed expression when you ask about the price of something. əlma 'how much' occurs always as a noun and is never used as a modifier.

## GRAMMAR NOTES

## 1. Informal Polite Speech

We noticed in the Grammar Notes of Unit 2 that Formal Polite Speech is a level and/or style of speech. In standard Korean, there is another style and/or level of speech which is no less polite than the Formal Polite but is considered more casual and friendly. This style of speech is called Informal Polite Speech. Usually both styles are mixed in one's speech, but in general women tend to use more informal polite speech than men. Informal Polite Speech is often called Yo speech style, because any sentence which ends in the particle yo is Informal Polite Speech. Regardless of the sentence type (i.e. statement, question, imperative, propositative), yo at the end of an utterance is the sign that is an Informal Polite sentence.

When the particle yo occurs immediately after a verb which does not have a verb-ending but is inflected from the stem in a certain form ending in a vowel, the inflected form which precedes yo is called an Infinitive. Note that an infinitive is a word, whereas a verb stem is not a word. An infinitive is formed from a verb stem by a certain phonetic change at the end of the stem.

Infinitives are formed not only from verb stems but also from verb stem plus suffix(es), that is, verb stem + (1)si + (tense suffixes) can be made into infinitives by adding ə at the end of the suffixes. For example, the verb stem



ha- 'to do' + (suffixes) can have the following kinds of infinitive:

hæ (or hayæ), hasie (or hase), hakesse, hæsse (or hayesse), hasikesse, hasiæsse, etc.

For the time being, however, our term Infinitive refers to the inflected form without any suffix. Yo may be added to the infinitive to make an informal polite speech present form. The verbs we have had so far are listed below.

Compare:

	<u>Stem</u>	<u>Formal Polite Present statement</u>	<u>Informal Polite Present</u>
'to do'	ha-	hamnita	hæ yo
'to study'	kongpu-ha-	kongpu-hamnita	kongpu-hæ yo
'to pass by'	cina-	cinamnita	cina yo
'to exist'	iss-	issimnita	isse yo
'to learn'	pæu-	pæumnita	pæwæ yo
'to teach'	kalichi-	kalichimnita	kalichie yo
'to read'	ilk-	ilk(s)imnita	ilke yo
'to ask'	mule po-	mule pomnita	mule pwa yo
'to go'	ka-	kamnita	ka yo
'to be so'	kilæh-	kilæhsimnita	kilæhæ yo <u>or</u> kilæ yo
'to know'	a(1)-	amnita	alæ yo
'to look for'	chac-	chac(s)imnita	chace yo
'to be far'	mæ(1)-	mæmnita	mælæ yo
'to meet'	manna-	mannamnita	manna yo
'to come'	o-	omnita	wa yo
'to buy'	sa-	samnita	sa yo
'to stop by'	tilli-	tillimnita	tillæ yo
'to look at'	po-	pomnita	pwa yo <u>or</u> poa yo
'to be expensive'	pissa-	pissamnita	pissa yo
'to be cheap'	ssa-	ssamnita	ssa yo
'to sell'	pha(1)-	pha(1)imnita	phalæ yo
'to like'	cohaha-	cohamnita	coahæ yo
'to want'	wænha-	wænhamnita	wænhæ yo
'to get good'	coh-	cohsimnita	coha yo
'to give'	cu-	cumnita	cue yo

Note that the verbs which occur hereafter will be treated individually for the formation of Infinitives. Refer to the following rules and the glossary at the end of the book for the infinitive form of each verb.

Observe the following regularities in forming infinitives from verb stems. Do not try to memorize the rules at this point; rather it is simpler to memorize each inflected form as a separate word. It is not necessary to memorize the verbs listed below. Add yo to the infinitive to make informal polite speech:

- a. Stems ending in a or æ do not change:

ka-	ka yo	'goes'
sa-	sa yo	'buys'
sæ-	sæ yo	'stands'

Exception:

ha-	hæ yo <u>or</u> hayæ yo	'does'
-----	-------------------------	--------

- b. Stems ending in e, æ or we have alternative forms:

mæ-	mæ yo <u>or</u> mææ yo	'ties'
twe-	twe yo <u>or</u> tweæ yo	'becomes'

- c. Stems ending in o change o to wa:

o-	wa yo	'comes'
po-	pwa yo	'sees'

- d. Stems ending in i change i to æ:

khɪ-	khæ yo	'is big'
ssi-	sæ yo	'writes'

- e. Stems ending in u add æ:

cu-	cæ yo	'gives'
tu-	tæ yo	'places'

- f. The copula stem i- changes to iyæ or iyæ.

- g. Stems ending in i have three alternatives:

swi-	swiæ yo <u>or</u> swiyæ yo <u>or</u> swyæ yo	'rests'
masi-	masiæ yo <u>or</u> masiyæ yo <u>or</u> masyæ yo	'drinks'
kitali-	kitaliæ yo <u>or</u> kitaliyæ yo <u>or</u> kitalyæ yo	'waits (for)'
kallchi-	kallchiæ yo <u>or</u> kallchiyæ yo yo <u>or</u> kallchyæ yo	'teaches'

- h. Stems ending in consonants: these are divided into several groups on the basis of the morphophonemic changes of the final sounds.

Most consonant stems belong to Group 1, and are called a-adding stems; Group 2 stems are called a-adding stems; Group 3, we-replacing stems; Group 4, l-dropping stems; Group 5, l-doubling stems. Note that there is a small number of verbs which are not classed into one of the 5 groups. They will be treated separately as irregular verbs.

Group 1

mək-	məkə yo	'eats'
cuk-	cukə yo	'dies'
cap-	capə yo	'holds'
ip-	ipə yo	'wears'
nəlp-	nəlpə yo	'is wide'
pis-	pisə yo	'combs'
iss-	isse yo <u>or</u> isse yo	'exists'
əps-	əpsə yo <u>or</u> əpse yo	'does not exist'
pəs-	pəsə yo	'takes off (clothes, hats, shoes)'
alh-	alhə yo	'aches', 'gets sick'

Group 2

cop-	copa yo	'is narrow'
noph-	nopha yo	'is high'
pokk-	pokka yo	'roasts (beans)'
noh-	noha yo	'places', 'puts'

Group 3

swip-	swiwe yo	'is easy'
elyəp-	elyəwe yo	'is difficult'
kakkap-	kakkawe yo	'is near'
alimtap-	alimtawe yo	'is beautiful'

Group 4

mə(1)-	mələ yo	'is far'
ki(1)-	kilə yo	'is long(in length)'
a(1)-	alə yo	'knows'
sa(1)-	sələ yo	'lives'
mantı(1)-	mantilə yo	'makes'

Group 5

moli-	molla yo	'does not know'
-------	----------	-----------------

talli-	talla yo	'is different'
puli-	pulle yo	'calls'
hili-	hille yo	'flows'

## 2. Past Tenses

A past tense form of a Korean verb denotes either 'something was in such state' or 'something which has been done', or 'someone took such and such action'.

There are two past tenses in Korean: Simple Past and Remote Past. The simple past designates any action or description which has been finished before the speech takes place. The remote past denotes an action which was done or happened a relatively long time ago, or a description of a condition which ended a relatively long time ago. The remote past also is used to indicate the more remote of two or more past actions or descriptions occurring in the same context.

Past tenses in Korean are formed by infixing the suffixes -(a, e, ye)ss- for the Simple Past and -(a, e, ye)ssæss- for the Remote Past between verb stems and endings. We shall call the suffixes the Past Tense Suffixes. Depending on the final sound of a verb stem, a certain vowel change takes place between verb stem and the past tense suffix. The verb element preceding -ss(æss)- is identical with the infinitive form, so it may be simpler to consider that the past tense is formed by infixing -ss(æss)- between infinitive and ending.

Compare:

	<u>Stem</u>	<u>F. P.</u> <u>Present</u>	<u>Inf. P.</u> <u>Present</u>	<u>F.P.</u> <u>Past</u>	<u>Inf.P.</u> <u>Past</u>
'to do'	ha-	hamnita	hæ yo	hæssimnita	hæssæ yo
'to go'	ka-	kamnita	ka yo	kassimnita	kassæ yo
'to come'	o-	omnita	wa yo	wassimnita	wassæ yo
'to see'	po-	pomnita	pwa yo	pwassimnita	pwassæ yo
'to buy'	sa-	samnita	sa yo	sassimnita	sassæ yo
'to be cheap'	ssa-	ssamnita	ssa yo	ssassimnita	ssassæ yo
'to be expensive'	pissa-	pissamnita	pissa yo	pissassimnita	pissæ yo
'to pass by'	cina-	cinamnita	cina yo	cinassimnita	cinassæ yo
'to want'	wenha-	wenhamnita	wenhæ yo	wenhæssimnita	wenhæssæ yo
'to give'	cu-	cumnita	cuæ yo	cuæssimnita	cuæssæ yo
'to meet'	manha-	mannamnita	manha yo	mannassimnita	mannassæ yo
'to exist'	iss-	issimnita	isse yo	issæssimnita	issæssæ yo
'to read'	ilk-	ilksimnita	ilke yo	ilkæssimnita	ilkæssæ yo
'to be far'	mæ(1)-	mæmnita	mæle yo	mææssimnita	mææssæ yo

'to know'	a(l)-	amnita	alə yo	alessimnita	aləssə yo
'to be near'	kakkap-	kakkapsimnita	kakkawə yo	kakkawəssimnita	kakkawəssə yo
'to be different'	tali-	talimnita	talla yo	tallassimnita	talləssə yo
'not to know'	moli-	molimnita	molla yo	mollassimnita	molləssə yo

3. Particle to

To is a one-shape particle, which following a noun or another particle means 'also' or 'too' in an affirmative sentence; '(not) either' in a negative sentence. When to occurs after the object, topic, or emphasis subject of a sentence, the particles in/nin, il/lil, i/ka respectively are dropped.

Examples:

Na to amnita.	'I know [it], too.'
I kəs to chæk imnikka?	'Is this also a book?'
Ilpon mal to pəwəssimnita.	'[I] have studied Japanese also.'
Kim Sənsəng to molimnita.	'Mr. Kim doesn't know [it], either.'

4. Particle wa/kwa 'with', 'and'

Wa occurs after a word ending in a vowel; kwa after a word ending in a consonant. It occurs in the following two constructions:

- a. Personal noun + wa/kwa means 'with the P. N.'

Examples:

<u>Na wa</u> (kathl) kapsita.	'Let us go <u>with me</u> .'
<u>Chinku wa</u> mannassimnita.	'[I] met <u>with a friend</u> .'
<u>Kim Sənsəng kwa</u> okesə yo.	'I'll come <u>with Mr. Kim</u> .'

- b. Noun 1 + wa/kwa + Noun 2 means 'N 1 and N 2'

Examples:

chæk kwa yənphil	'a book and a pencil'
hakkyo wa cip	'a school and a house'

## 5. -ci + anhsimnita

-Ci is a verb ending which is added to a verb stem, or to a verb stem plus other suffix(es). Hereafter, we shall call such a verb form the ci form.

The ci form is an inflected word which occurs before a small class of words. The verb anh- 'not' occurs only after the ci form and is used to mean the verb in the ci form is in negative. The distinction of tenses, levels of speech may be made in the verb anh-.

Compare:

Kaci anh(s)imnita.	'[I] don't go.'
Kaci anh(s)imnikka?	'Don't [you] go?'
Kaci anhkessimnita.	'I will not go.'
Kaci anhæssimnita.	'I did not go.'
Kaci anhe yo.	'[I] don't go.'
Kaci anhkessø yo.	'[I]'ll not go.'
Kaci anhæssø yo.	'[I] didn't go.'

#### 6. Numerals

In Korean, there are two series of numbers, both of which occur either as free nouns or before a special class of nouns called Counters. One of the two series of the Korean numbers was borrowed from Chinese characters; the other is of Korean origin. The counters are a class of words which occur only as post-nouns preceded by numbers. Some counters occur after the character numbers; some occur after the numbers of Korean origin; others occur after both sets of numbers. Therefore, it is important to know which series of numbers a certain counter goes with. For example, the counter Wen 'Korean monetary unit' occurs only after the character numbers as do all other monetary units, whereas the counter sal 'year(s) old (age counter)' occurs only with the numbers of Korean origin. Some counters like kwæn 'book counter' occur after both series. In Unit 4 we have the numbers of the Chinese character origin, and in Unit 5 the numbers of Korean origin are listed. When the numbers of Korean origin are used as modifiers, the final sounds of the first four are dropped, thus making hana 'one' han, tul 'two' tu, ses 'three' se, nes 'four' ne. Others do not change (See Unit 5).

## DRILLS

## A. Substitution Drill

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. <u>əce</u> əti e kassımnikka?             | Where did [you] go yesterday?                                  |
| 2. <u>Onil</u> əti e kassımnikka?            | Where did [you] go today?                                      |
| *3. <u>Achim e</u> əti e kassımnikka?        | Where did [you] go in the morning?                             |
| *4. <u>Ohu e</u> əti e kassımnikka?          | Where did [you] go in the afternoon?                           |
| *5. <u>Cənyək e</u> əti e kassımnikka?       | Where did [you] go in the evening?                             |
| *6. <u>Pam e</u> əti e kassımnikka?          | Where did [you] go at night?                                   |
| *7. <u>Kıçəkke</u> əti e kassımnikka?        | Where did [you] go the day before yesterday?                   |
| *8. <u>Onil achim e</u> əti e kassımnikka?   | Where did [you] go this morning?                               |
| *9. <u>əce pam e</u> əti e kassımnikka?      | Where did [you] go last night?                                 |
| *10. <u>Kıçəkke ohu e</u> əti e kassımnikka? | Where did [you] go in the afternoon, the day before yesterday? |
| 11. <u>Onil ohu e</u> əti e kassımnikka?     | Where did [you] go this afternoon?                             |
| 12. Onil ohu e əti e <u>kakessımnikka</u> ?  | Where will [you] go this afternoon?                            |
| *13. <u>Nəil</u> əti e kakessımnikka?        | Where will [you] go tomorrow?                                  |
| *14. <u>Mole</u> əti e kakessımnikka?        | Where will [you] go the day after tomorrow?                    |
| *15. <u>Nəil pam e</u> əti e kakessımnikka?  | Where will [you] go tomorrow night?                            |

## B. Substitution Drill

- |   |                                    |
|---|------------------------------------|
| 1. <u>Ilsang yongphum</u> il sassımnita.    | [I] bought some daily necessities. |
| 2. <u>Chæk</u> il sassımnita.               | [I] bought a book.                 |
| 3. <u>Sukən</u> il sassımnita.              | [I] bought a towel.                |
| 4. <u>I kəs</u> il sassımnita.              | [I] bought this.                   |
| *5. <u>Nolan sukən</u> il sassımnita.       | [I] bought a yellow towel.         |
| *6. <u>Nolan sək yənphil</u> il sassımnita. | [I] bought a yellow pencil.        |
| 7. <u>Yələ kaci</u> lıl sassımnita.         | [I] bought several kinds.          |
| 8. <u>Nolan kəs</u> il sassımnita.          | [I] bought a yellow one.           |
| *9. <u>Ppalkan kəs</u> il sassımnita.       | [I] bought a red one.              |
| *10. <u>Hayan kəs</u> il sassımnita.        | [I] bought a white one.            |
| *11. <u>Phalan kəs</u> il sassımnita.       | [I] bought a blue one.             |
| *12. <u>Kkaman kəs</u> il sassımnita.       | [I] bought a black one.            |
| 13. <u>Hana</u> lıl sassımnita.             | [I] bought one.                    |
| 14. <u>Hankuk mal chæk</u> il sassımnita.   | [I] bought a Korean book.          |

## C. Substitution Drill

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Chæk kaps i pissamnikka?                   | Are the books expensive?                                 |
| 2. Chæk kaps i <u>ssamnikka</u> ?             | Are the books cheap?                                     |
| 3. Chæk kaps i <u>ettøhsimnikka</u> ?         | How expensive are books?                                 |
| 4. Chæk kaps i <u>kwænchanhsimnikka</u> ?     | Is the price of books reasonable ('not bad')?            |
| 5. Chæk kaps i <u>elma imnikka</u> ?          | How much is the book? ('What is the price of the book?') |
| 6. Chæk kaps i <u>kice kiløhsimnikka</u> ?    | Is the (price of) book just so?                          |
| 7. Chæk kaps i <u>pissamnikka</u> ?           | Are the books expensive?                                 |
| 8. <u>Cip kaps</u> i pissamnikka?             | Are the houses expensive?                                |
| 9. <u>Ilsang younphum kaps</u> i pissamnikka? | Are the daily necessities expensive?                     |
| *10. <u>Kutu kaps</u> i pissamnikka?          | Are the shoes expensive?                                 |
| *11. <u>Yangpok kaps</u> i pissamnikka?       | Are the suits expensive?                                 |

## D. Substitution Drill

- |  |                                       |
|--|---------------------------------------|
| 1. I suken sæk in nolahsimnita.            | The color of this towel is yellow.    |
| *2. I suken sæk in <u>ppalkahsimnita</u> . | The color of this towel is red.       |
| *3. I suken sæk in <u>hayahsimnita</u> .   | The color of this towel is white.     |
| *4. I suken sæk in <u>kkamahsimnita</u> .  | The color of this towel is black.     |
| *5. I suken sæk in <u>phalahsimnita</u> .  | The color of this towel is blue.      |
| *6. I suken sæk in <u>nuløhsimnita</u> .   | The color of this towel is yellowish. |
| *7. I suken sæk in <u>pulkimnita</u> .     | The color of this towel is reddish.   |
| *8. I suken sæk in <u>himnita</u> .        | The color of this towel is whitish.   |
| *9. I suken sæk in <u>kømsimnita</u> .     | The color of this towel is dark.      |
| *10. I suken sæk in <u>phulimnita</u> .    | The color of this towel is bluish.    |

## E. Substitution Drill

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. Musin sæk il wenhase yo?            | What color would you like? ('What color do you want?') |
| 2. <u>Musin suken</u> il wenhase yo?   | What kind of towels would you like?                    |
| 3. <u>Musin chæk</u> il wenhase yo?    | What books would you like?                             |
| 4. <u>Musin yønphil</u> il wenhase yo? | What kind of pencils would you like?                   |
| 5. <u>Musin sikye</u> lil wenhase yo?  | What kind of watches would you like?                   |
| 6. <u>Musin moca</u> lil wenhase yo?   | What kind of hats would you like?                      |
| 7. <u>Musin phen</u> il wenhase yo?    | What kind of pens would you like?                      |
| 8. Musin phen il <u>phamnikka</u> ?    | What kind of pens do you carry ('sell')?               |
| 9. Musin phen il <u>sakesse</u> yo?    | What kind of pens will you buy?                        |



10. Musin phen il cohahamnikka? What kind of pens do you prefer?  
 11. Musin phen il pokessimnikka? What kind of pens would you like to see?

## F. Substitution Drill

1. Yeki esə sukən il phamnikka? Do you carry towels here? ('Do you sell towels here?')
- \*2. Yeki esə yangpok il phamnikka? Do you carry suits here?
- \*3. Yeki esə son-sukən il phamnikka? Do you carry handkerchiefs here?
- \*4. Yeki esə yangmal il phamnikka? Do you carry socks here?
- \*5. Yeki esə kutu lil phamnikka? Do you carry shoes here?
- \*6. Yeki esə nekthai lil phamnikka? Do you carry neckties here?
- \*7. Yeki esə waisyassı lil phamnikka? Do you carry dress shirts here?
- \*8. Yeki esə kongchæk il phamnikka? Do you carry notebooks here?
- \*9. Yeki esə sinmun il phamnikka? Do you carry newspaper here?
- \*10. Yeki esə capci lil phamnikka? Do you carry magazines here?
- \*11. Yeki esə tampæ lil phamnikka? Do you carry cigarettes here?
- \*12. Yeki esə cito lil phamnikka? Do you carry maps here?

## G. Substitution Drill

1. I kəs i ettəhsimnikka? How do you like this? ('How is this?')
- \*2. I son-sukən (i) ettəhsimnikka? How do you like this handkerchief ('hand towel')?
3. I kutu (ka) ettəhsimnikka? How do you like these shoes?
4. I sikye (ka) ettəhsimnikka? How do you like this watch?
5. I waisyassı (ka) ettəhsimnikka? How do you like this dress shirt?
6. I kongchæk (i) ettəhsimnikka? How do you like this notebook?
7. I sinmun (i) ettəhsimnikka? How do you like this newspaper?
8. I capci (ka) ettəhsimnikka? How do you like this magazine?
9. I yangpok (i) ettəhsimnikka? How do you like this suit?
- \*10. I yangmal (i) ettəhsimnikka? How do you like these socks?
11. I sæk (i) ettəhsimnikka? How do you like this color?
12. I sangcəm (i) ettəhsimnikka? How do you like this store?
13. I pækhwacəm (i) ettəhsimnikka? How do you like this department store?
- \*14. I os (i) ettəhsimnikka? How do you like this { this dress?  
 { these clothes?
- \*15. I pang (i) ettəhsimnikka? How do you like this room?

## H. Substitution Drill

- |   |                                       |
|---|---------------------------------------|
| 1. <u>Ki kəs</u> , əlma imnikka?              | How much is that?                     |
| *2. <u>Cə moca</u> , əlma imnikka?            | How much is that hat?                 |
| *3. <u>Cə kkaman yangpok</u> , əlma imnikka?  | How much is that black suit?          |
| *4. <u>Cə hayan kutu</u> , əlma imnikka?      | How much are these white shoes?       |
| *5. <u>I nolān son-sukən</u> , əlma imnikka?  | How much is this yellow handkerchief? |
| *6. <u>I phalan yangmal</u> , əlma imnikka?   | How much are these blue socks?        |
| *7. <u>Ki hayan waisyassi</u> , əlma imnikka? | How much is the dress shirt?          |
| *8. <u>Ki ppalkan sukən</u> , əlma imnikka?   | How much is the red towel?            |
| *9. <u>Ki kkaman yangmal</u> , əlma imnikka?  | How much are the black socks?         |

## I. Substitution Drill

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. <u>I chæk</u> , əlma e phamnikka?             | How much do you sell this book for?<br>(At what price do you sell this book?) |
| *2. <u>Ki moca</u> , əlma e phamnikka?           | How much do you sell that hat for?  |
| *3. <u>Cə kkaman yangpok</u> , əlma e phamnikka? | How much do you sell that black suit for?                                     |
| *4. <u>Cə hayan kutu</u> , əlma e phamnikka?     | How much do you sell these white shoes for?                                   |
| *5. <u>I nolān son-sukən</u> , əlma e phamnikka? | How much do you sell this yellow handkerchief for?                            |
| *6. <u>I phalan yangmal</u> , əlma e phamnikka?  | How much do you sell these blue socks for?                                    |
| *7. <u>I hayan waisyassi</u> , əlma e phamnikka? | How much do you sell this dress shirts for?                                   |
| *8. <u>I ppalkan sukən</u> , əlma e phamnikka?   | How much do you sell this red towel for?                                      |
| *9. <u>Ki kkaman yangmal</u> , əlma e phamnikka? | How much do you sell those black socks for?                                   |

## J. Substitution Drill

- |   |                           |
|---|---------------------------|
| 1. <u>I moca nın o-sip Wən imnita.</u>        | This hat is W 50.         |
| 2. <u>Cə sikye (nın) i Wən imnita.</u>        | That watch is W 2.        |
| 3. <u>Ki kutu (nın) sa Wən imnita.</u>        | Those shoes are W 4.      |
| *4. <u>I mannyənphil (ın) yuk Wən imnita.</u> | This fountain pen is W 6. |
| *5. <u>Cə kilim (ın) phal Wən imnita.</u>     | That picture is W 8.      |
| *6. <u>Ki os (ın) sip Wən imnita.</u>         | That dress is W 10.       |
| 7. <u>I sinmun (ın) sip-il Wən imnita.</u>    | This newspaper is W 11.   |
| 8. <u>Cə capci (nın) sip-sam Wən imnita.</u>  | That magazine is W 13.    |
| 9. <u>Ki syassi (nın) sip-o Wən imnita.</u>   | That shirt is W 15.       |

10. I son-sukən (in) sip-chil Wən imnita. This handkerchief is W 17.  
 11. Cə iyca (nin) sip-ku Wən imnita. That chair is W 19.

K. Grammar Drill (as a response drill based on Grammar Note 2)

- Tutor: əce hakkyo e kassimnikka? 'Did you go to school yesterday?'  
 Student: Ne, kassimnita. 'Yes, I did.'
1. Moca lil sassimnikka? Ne, sassimnita.  
 2. Chækpang e tillessimnikka? Ne, tillessimnita.  
 3. Kim Sənsəng il mannassimnikka? Ne, mannassimnita.  
 4. K1 chæk il ilkəssimnikka? Ne, ilkəssimnita.  
 5. Pak Sənsəng i cip e issəssimnikka? Ne, cip e issəssimnita.  
 6. Haksəng il chacəssimnikka? Ne, (haksəng il) chacəssimnita.  
 7. Pak Sənsəng i Hankuk mal il kalichyəssimnikka? Ne, (Pak Sənsəng i) kalichyəssimnita.  
 8. Ceimsi Sənsəng il pwassimnikka? Ne, pwassimnita.  
 9. Cungkuk mal il pəwəssimnikka? Ne, (Cungkuk mal il) pəwəssimnita.  
 10. I yənphil il wənhəssimnikka? Ne, (k1 yənphil il) wənhəssimnita.  
 11. Kil il mule pwassimnikka? Ne, (kil il) mule pwassimnita.  
 12. K1 chæk il phalassimnikka? Ne, phalassimnita.  
 13. K1 sək il cohahəssimnikka? Ne, (k1 sək il) cohahəssimnita.

L. Response Drill

- Tutor: əce əti e kassimnikka? /sinə/ 'Where did you go yesterday?' /downtown/  
 Student: Sinə e kassimnita. '[I] went downtown.'
1. Muəs il sassimnikka? /ilsang yongphum/ Ilsang yongphum il sassimnita.  
 2. əce əti e tillessimnikka? /chækpang/ Chækpang e tillessimnita.  
 3. Musin sək il wənhəssimnikka? Nolan sək il wənhəssimnita.  
 /nolan sək/  
 4. Muəs i issəssimnikka? /yələ kaci/ Yələ kaci ka issəssimnita.  
 5. Nuku lil cohahəssimnikka? /Ceimsi/ Ceimsi lil cohahəssimnita.  
 6. K1 kəs, əlma e phaləssimnikka? O-sip Wən e phaləssimnita.  
 /o-sip Wən/  
 7. Nuka cip e wassimnikka? /Mikuk salam/ Mikuk salam i wassimnita.  
 8. Muəs il chacəssimnikka? /haksəng/ Haksəng il chacəssimnita.  
 9. Muəs il kongpu-həssimnikka? Hankuk mal il kongpu-həssimnita.  
 /Hankuk mal/

10. Muəs il pəwəssimnikka? /Ilpon mal/ Ilpon mal il pəwəssimnita.  
 11. Nuka Hankuk mal il kalichyössimnikka? Pak Sənsəng i kalichyössimnita.  
 /Pak Sənsəng/  
 12. ətə esə kɪ chæk il pwassimnikka? Sɪnə chækpang esə pwassimnita.  
 /sɪnə chækpang/

## M. Response Drill (based on Grammar Note 5)

- Tutor: Hakkyo e kamnikka? 'Do you go to school?'  
 Student: Aniyo, kaci anhsimnita. 'No, I don't (go).'
1. Hankuk mal il pəumnikka? Aniyo, pəuci anhsimnita.
  2. Chæk kaps i pissamnikka? Aniyo, pissaci anhsimnita.
  3. Cip kaps i ssamnikka? Aniyo, ssaci anhsimnita.
  4. Onil chækpang e tillimnikka? Aniyo, tillici anhsimnita.
  5. Kim Sənsəng il mannamnikka? Aniyo, mannaci anhsimnita.
  6. Kɪ chæk il ilksimnikka? Aniyo, ilkeci anhsimnita.
  7. Hankuk mal il mal-hamnikka? Aniyo, mal-haci anhsimnita.
  8. Pak Sənsəng i cip e issimnikka? Aniyo, (cip e) issci/icci/ anhsimnita.
  9. I sæk il cohahamnikka? Aniyo, cohahaci anhsimnita.
  10. Yəki esə chæk il phamnikka? Aniyo, pha(l)ci anhsimnita.
  11. I kəs il wənhamnikka? Aniyo, wənhaci anhsimnita.
  12. Hakkyo ka məmnikka? Aniyo, mə(l)ci anhsimnita.
  13. Təsakwan i kakkapsimnikka? Aniyo, kakkapci anhsimnita.

## N. Response Drill

- Tutor: Hakkyo e kakessimnikka? 'Are [you] going to school?'  
 Student: Aniyo, kaci anhkessimnita. ('Will you go to school?')  
 'No, [I]'m not (going).'  
 ('No, I'll not go.')
1. Hankuk mal il pəukessimnikka? Aniyo, pəuci anhkessimnita.
  2. Onil chækpang e tillikessimnikka? Aniyo, tillici anhkessimnita.
  3. Kim Sənsəng il mannakessimnikka? Aniyo, mannaci anhkessimnita.
  4. Kɪ chæk il ilkkessimnikka? Aniyo, ilkeci anhkessimnita.
  5. Hankuk mal il mal-hakessimnikka? Aniyo, mal-haci anhkessimnita.
  6. Kutu lɪl sakessimnikka? Aniyo, saci anhkessimnita.
  7. Moca lɪl phalkessimnikka? Aniyo, pha(l)ci anhkessimnita.
  8. Nolan syassɪ lɪl pokessimnikka? Aniyo, poci anhkessimnita.
  9. Kil il mulə pokessimnikka? Aniyo, mulə poci anhkessimnita.
  10. Kim Sənsəng il chackessimnikka? Aniyo, chacci anhkessimnita.

## O. Response Drill (based on Grammar Note 5 with Past Tense)

- Tutor: ece sinæ e kassimnikka? 'Did you go downtown yesterday?'
- Student: Aniyo, kaci anhessimnita. 'No, I didn't (go).'
1. Hankuk mal il pæwæssimnikka? Aniyo, pæuci anhessimnita.
  2. K1 chæk il ilkæssimnikka? Aniyo, ilkci anhessimnita.
  3. Kim Sænsæng il mannæssimnikka? Aniyo, mannaci anhessimnita.
  4. Kutu lil sassimnikka? Aniyo, saci anhessimnita.
  5. Kil il mulæ pwæssimnikka? Aniyo, mulæ poci anhessimnita.
  6. Kim Sænsæng il chacæssimnikka? Aniyo, (Kim Sænsæng il) chacci anhessimnita.
  7. Chæksang il phalæssimnikka? Aniyo, phalci anhessimnita.
  8. Samusil e tilæssimnikka? Aniyo, tillici anhessimnita.
  9. Sænsæng in Yængæ lil kalichyæssimnikka? Aniyo, kalichici anhessimnita.
  10. Hakkyo ka mælæssimnikka? Aniyo, mæ(1)ci anhessimnita.
  11. Chæk kaps i pissæssimnikka? Aniyo, pissaci anhessimnita.
  12. Phalan sæk il wænhæssimnikka? Aniyo, (phalan sæk il) wænhaci anhessimnita.
  13. Ceims1 Sænsæng il alæssimnikka? Aniyo, alci anhessimnita.

## P. Response Drill (as a level drill based on Grammar Note 1)

- Tutor: Hakkyo e ka yo? 'Do you go to school?'
- Student: Ne, (hakkyo e) ka yo. 'Yes, I do (go to school).'
1. Hankuk mal il kongpu-hæ yo? Ne, (Hankuk mal il) kongpu-hæ yo.
  2. Chæk kaps i ssa yo? Ne, (chæk kaps i) ssa yo.
  3. Yangpok i pissa yo? Ne, (yangpok i) pissa yo.
  4. Hakkyo ka mælæ yo? Ne, (hakkyo ka) mælæ yo.
  5. Cængkæcang i kakkawæ yo? Ne, (cængkæcang i) kakkawæ yo.
  6. Sænsæng in Mikuk salam iye yo? Ne, Mikuk salam iye yo.
  7. Sænsæng in cal issæ yo? Ne, cal issæ yo.
  8. Ceims1 Sænsæng in Yængæ lil mal-hæ yo? Ne, Yængæ lil mal-hæ yo.
  9. Sænsæng in cæ salam il alæ yo? Ne, (cæ salam il) alæ yo.
  10. Pækhwacæm i sichæng yæph e issæ yo? Ne, sichæng yæph e issæ yo.
  11. Yæki esæ suken il phalæ yo? Ne, (suken il) phalæ yo.
  12. Nolan sæk il wænhæ yo? Ne, (nolan sæk il) wænhæ yo.
  13. Hankuk mal il cohahæ yo? Ne, (Hankuk mal il) cohahæ yo.

- |  |                                   |
|--|-----------------------------------|
| 14. Onil chækpang e tillæ yo?          | Ne, (chækpang e) tillæ yo.        |
| 15. Ki chæk i coha yo?                 | Ne, (ki chæk i) coha yo.          |
| 16. Sangcæm il chacæ yo?               | Ne, sangcæm il chacæ yo.          |
| 17. Sængsæng in Hankuk mal il pæwæ yo? | Ne, cæ nin Hankuk mal il pæwæ yo. |
| 18. Kim Sænsæng i kalichie yo?         | Ne, Kim Sænsæng i kalichie yo.    |

## Q. Response Drill (as a level drill based on Grammar Note 1)

Tutor: Hakkyo e kamnikka? 'Do you go to school?'  
 Student: Ne, (hakkyo e) ka yo. 'Yes, I do ('go to school').

- |                                     |                             |
|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. Hankuk mal il kongpu-hamnikka?   | Ne, kongpu-hæ yo.           |
| 2. Chæk kaps i ssamnikka?           | Ne, ssa yo.                 |
| 3. Yangpok i pissamnikka?           | Ne, pissa yo.               |
| 4. Hakkyo ka mæmnikka?              | Ne, mælæ yo.                |
| 5. Cængkæcang i kakkapsimnikka?     | Ne, kakkawæ yo.             |
| 6. Sænsæng in Mikuk salam imnikka?  | Ne, Mikuk salam iye yo.     |
| 7. Kim Sænsæng in cip e issimnikka? | Ne, (cip e) issæ yo.        |
| 8. Cæ salam il amnikka?             | Ne, alæ yo.                 |
| 9. Yæki esæ sukæn il phamnikka?     | Ne, phalæ yo.               |
| 10. Kkaman sæk il wæhamnikka?       | Ne, kkaman sæk il wænhæ yo. |
| 11. I kyosil il cohahamnikka?       | Ne, cohahæ yo.              |
| 12. Haksæng il chacsimnikka?        | Ne, haksæng il chacæ yo.    |
| 13. Cæ salam il molimnikka?         | Ne, molla yo.               |

## R. Level Drill (based on Grammar Note 1)

Tutor: Hakkyo e kasimnikka? { 'Do you go to school?'  
 Student: Hakkyo e kase yo? { 'Are you going to school?'

- |   |                                     |
|---|-------------------------------------|
| 1. Hankuk mal il kongpu-hasimnikka?       | Hankuk mal il kongpu-hase yo?       |
| 2. Cungkuk mal il pæusimnikka?            | Cungkuk mal il pæuse yo?            |
| 3. Hankuk mal chæk il ilkisimnikka?       | Hankuk mal chæk il ilkise yo?       |
| 4. Kim Sænsæng in kutu lil sasimnikka?    | Kim Sænsæng in kutu lil sase yo?    |
| 5. Sænsæng i haksæng il chacsimnikka?     | Sænsæng i haksæng il chacise yo?    |
| 6. Annyæng-hasimnikka?                    | Annyæng-hase yo?                    |
| 7. Yocim ættæhke cinasimnikka?            | Yocim ættæhke cinase yo?            |
| 8. Ceimsi Sænsæng il asimnikka?           | Ceimsi Sænsæng il ase yo?           |
| 9. Onil Mikuk salam i Hankuk e osimnikka? | Onil Mikuk salam i Hankuk e ose yo? |

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 10. Yøngə sənsəng i Hankuk mal chæk il<br>ilkisimnikka? | Yøngə sənsəng i Hankuk mal chæk il<br>ilkise yo? |
| 11. Ceimsı Sənsəng i na e samusil e<br>tillisimnikka?   | Ceimsı Sənsəng i na e samusil e<br>tillise yo?   |
| 12. Pak Sənsəng in wekyokwan isimnikka?                 | Pak Sənsəng in wekyokwan ise yo?                 |

S. Response Drill (as a grammar drill based on Grammar Notes 2 and 5)  
(Answer in Informal Polite Speech for the Formal Polite using the stimulus  
/ne/ or /aniyo/.)

- |   |                                   |
|---|-----------------------------------|
| Tutor: Hakkyo e kakessimnikka? /aniyo/              | 'Are you going to school?' /no/   |
| Student: Aniyo, kaci anhkessə yo.                   | 'No, I'm not (going to go).'      |
| 1. Hankuk mal il kongpu-hakessimnikka?<br>/ne/      | Ne, kongpu-hakessə yo.            |
| 2. I chæk il ilkkessimnikka? /aniyo/                | Aniyo, ilkci anhkessə yo.         |
| 3. Mikuk salam chinku lil<br>mannakessimnikka? /ne/ | Ne, mannakessə yo.                |
| 4. Kil il mulə pokessimnikka? /aniyo/               | Aniyo, mulə poci anhkessə yo.     |
| 5. I chæksang il phalkessimnikka? /ne/              | Ne, phalkessə yo.                 |
| 6. Cə e samusil e tillikessimnikka?<br>/aniyo/      | Aniyo, tillici anhkessə yo.       |
| 7. Yøngə lil kalichikessimnikka? /ne/               | Ne, kalichikessə yo.              |
| 8. Cip e isskessimnikka/ikkessimnikka/?<br>/aniyo/  | Aniyo, (cip e) issci anhkessə yo. |

T. Response Drill (as a level drill based on Grammar Note 1)  
(Answer in Informal Polite Speech using the stimulus.)

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| Tutor: Kim Sənsəng in eti e<br>kasiəssimnikka? /sicang/ | 'Where did Mr. Kim go?' /market place/ |
| Student: Sicang e kassə yo.                             | '[He] went to the market place.'       |
| 1. Kim Sənsəng in eti e kasiəssimnikka?<br>/chækpang/   | Chækpang e kasiəssə yo.                |
| 2. Mues il sassimnikka? /Hankuk kilim/                  | Hankuk kilim il sassə yo.              |
| 3. Ceimsı Sənsəng i mues il mulə<br>pwassimnikka? /kil/ | Kil il mulə pwassə yo.                 |

4. Nuka sɛnsæŋg cip e tilɫɛssimnikka? Chinku ka tilɫɛssɛ yo.  
/chinku/
5. Sɛnsæŋg e yangpok əlma e sassimnikka? O-sip Wɛn e sassɛ yo.  
/o-sip Wɛn/
6. Kɪ Mikuk salam in nuku iyɛssimnikka? Ceimsɪ Sɛnsæŋg iyɛssɛ yo.  
/Ceimsɪ Sɛnsæŋg/
7. Sɛnsæŋg in əcɛ musin chæk il Ilpon mal chæk il ilkɛssɛ yo.  
ilkɛssimnikka? /Ilpon mal chæk/
8. I chæk, əlma e phalɛssimnikka? O-sip Wɛn e phalɛssɛ yo.  
/o-sip Wɛn/
9. Hankuk mal in nuka kalichyɛssimnikka? Pak Sɛnsæŋg i kalichyɛssɛ yo.  
/Pak Sɛnsæŋg/
10. Nuka Yəŋgɛ sɛnsæŋg iɛssimnikka? Mikuk yɛcɛ ka Yəŋgɛ sɛnsæŋg iɛssɛ yo.  
/Mikuk yɛcɛ/

U. Response Exercise (Answer the questions on the basis of the dialogues at the beginning of this Unit: Formal Polite question in Informal Polite and vice versa.)

Tutor: əcɛ ətɪ e kassimnikka? 'Where did you go yesterday?'

Student: Sinə sangcɛm e kassɛ yo. 'I went to a store downtown.'

1. Pəkhwacɛm esɛ muɛs il sassɛ yo?
2. Onil in sinə e an kakessimnikka?
3. Chæk kaps i pissa yo?
4. Chækpang esɛ sukən il phamnikka?
5. Musin sæk il wɛnhase yo?
6. Sɛnsæŋg in nolan waisyassɪ lɪl coɦahɛssimnikka?
7. Sɛnsæŋg e moca, əlma ye yo?
8. Sɛnsæŋg e kutu, əlma e sassimnikka?
9. Səul e os kaps i ssamnikka?
10. Sɛnsæŋg in onil achim e muɛs hakesɛ yo?
11. əcɛ cɛnyɛk e muɛs hɛssimnikka?
12. Onil pam e cip e isskessɛ yo?
13. əcɛ ohu e ətɪ e kassɛ yo?
14. Nəil nac e cɛ samusil e tillikessimnikka?
15. Sɛnsæŋg in yosə musin chæk il ilkɪsɛ yo?



## EXERCISES

Conduct the following conversations, once in Formal Polite Speech and once in Informal Polite Speech:

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| A. <u>You ask Mr. Kim:</u>                | <u>Mr. Kim answers:</u>                         |
| a. where he's going to go this afternoon. | that he's going to the market place.            |
| b. what he'll buy.                        | that he's going to buy some pictures.           |
| c. what kind of pictures he likes.        | that he likes Korean pictures.                  |
| d. what he's going to do at school.       | that he's going to study.                       |
| e. what books he's going to read.         | that he's going to read English books.          |
| f. where he'll stop by.                   | that he's going to stop by his friend's office. |
| g. who is going to teach English.         | that he (i.e. Mr. Kim) will teach it.           |
| h. whom he's going to meet.               | that he's going to meet a friend.               |
| i. where he's going to teach Korean.      | that he will teach [it] at a school.            |
| j. How much he is going to pay for shoes. | that he's going to pay ₩ 95.                    |
| k. where he'll be tonight.                | that he'll be in class.                         |
| <br>                                      |   |
| B. <u>Ask Mr. Kim:</u>                    | <u>Mr. Kim answers:</u>                         |
| a. if the books are expensive.            | that they are not (expensive).                  |
| b. if he's going downtown.                | that he is (going downtown).                    |
| c. if downtown is near.                   | that it is far.                                 |
| d. if he has black shoes.                 | that he doesn't.                                |
| e. if they sell many kinds.               | that they don't.                                |
| f. if they sell towels here.              | that they do.                                   |
| g. where Mr. Lee's office is.             | that he doesn't (know).                         |
| h. if he wants a pencil.                  | that he wants paper.                            |
| i. if he wants several kinds.             | that he does.                                   |
| j. if he'll drop in the school.           | that he won't.                                  |
| k. if he's looking for USIS.              | that he's looking for the Embassy.              |
| l. if he knows the way to Seoul Station.  | that he doesn't know.                           |
| m. where he went yesterday.               | that he went to a store.                        |
| n. what he bought.                        | that he bought some daily necessities.          |
| o. how much he paid for the pen.          | that he paid ₩ 35.                              |
| p. how much the book was.                 | that it was ₩ 55.                               |
| q. what color he liked.                   | that he liked blue color.                       |

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| r. what book he read yesterday.                   | that he read a Korean book.             |
| s. where he stopped by this morning.              | that he stopped by his friend's office. |
| t. who taught Korean.                             | that Mr. Park taught it.                |
| u. whom he met at school.                         | that he met an American teacher.        |
| v. what the man's name was.                       | that (it) was James.                    |
| w. what the American asked [him].                 | that he asked him for directions.       |
| x. how much the <u>camwen</u> sold this book for. | that he sold it for W 65.               |
| y. how much he paid for his shoes.                | that he paid W 73.                      |
| z. whom he looked for.                            | that he looked for his teacher.         |

## C. Say the following in Korean:

- |         |            |
|---------|------------|
| a. W 12 | i. W 103   |
| b. W 23 | j. W 214   |
| c. W 34 | k. W 358   |
| d. W 45 | l. W 893   |
| e. W 56 | m. W 2,539 |
| f. W 67 | n. W 7,927 |
| g. W 78 | o. W10,111 |
| h. W 89 | p. W11,123 |

## D. Mr. James asks the price of the following objects and you answer with the given price.

<u>Mr. James</u>	<u>You</u>
a. this yellow towel	W 28
b. that Seoul map	W 52
c. those red shoes	W 250
d. those black suits	W 3,210
e. these blue socks	W 8
f. that hat	W 79
g. that American watch	W 1,700
h. this dress shirt	W 95
i. your fountain pen	W 55
j. that chair	W 527
k. this woman's dress	W 250

E. Pak Sænsæng will respond with /Ne, kilæpsita./ 'Yes, let's do so.' when you propose to:

- |                                |                                 |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| a. go downtown with him.       | h. meet friends.                |
| b. see the picture.            | i. read that book.              |
| c. buy some daily necessities. | j. come again tomorrow.         |
| d. stop by a bookstore.        | k. learn Chinese.               |
| e. sell the house.             | l. stay at home.                |
| f. ask the street directions.  | m. find out that Korean's name. |
| g. find Mr. Kim.               |                                 |

## 제 5 과 물건 사기 (계속)

(대화 A)

(-책방에서-)

사전

좋은 사전

1. 김 : 실테합니다. 여기 좋은 사전이 있습니까?

영한 사전

사전 말입니까

2. 점원 : 영한 사전 말입니까?

3. 김 : 예.

4. 점원 : 예, 있습니다.

보여 주십시오

5. 김 : 좀 보여 주십시오.

자

6. 점원 : 자, 여기 있습니다.

어떤

어떤 사전

7. 김 : 이것은 어떤 사전입니까?

## UNIT 5. Shopping (Continued)

## BASIC DIALOGUES FOR MEMORIZATION

Dialogue A

(--Kim stopped by a bookstore--)

Kim

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| sacən  | dictionary  |
| cohın sacən  | a good dictionary                                 |
| 1. Sillye-hamnita. Yəki cohın sacən<br>ı issımnikka? | Excuse me. Do you have a good<br>dictionary here? |

Cəmwen

- |                                |  |
|--------------------------------|--|
| Yəng-Han sacən                 | English-Korean dictionary                      |
| sacən mal imnikka              | do you mean [a] dictionary?                    |
| 2. Yəng-Han sacən mal imnikka? | Do you mean an English-Korean diction-<br>ary? |

Kim

- |        |      |
|--------|------|
| 3. Ne. | Yes. |
|--------|------|

Cəmwen

- |                   |             |
|-------------------|-------------|
| 4. Ne, issımnita. | Yes, we do. |
|-------------------|-------------|

Kim

- |                        |  |
|------------------------|--|
| poyə cusipsiyo         | please show [me]                             |
| 5. Com poyə cusipsiyo. | May I see it? ('Please show [it to<br>me].') |

Cəmwen

- |                        |                                  |
|------------------------|----------------------------------|
| ca                     | well; here                       |
| 6. Ca, yəki issımnita. | Here you are! ('Here! [it] is.') |

Kim

- |                                  |  |
|----------------------------------|--|
| əttən                            | what kind of   |
| əttən sacən                      | what kind of dictionary  |
| 7. I kəs ın əttən sacən imnikka? | Is this a good dictionary? ('What<br>kind of dictionary is this?') |

대단히 좋습니다

그러나

다른 것

8. 점원 : 대단히 좋습니다. 그러나 다른 것도 있습니다.

어떻습니까

9. 김 : 다른 것은 어떻게습니까?

비싼 사전

그리고

큰 책

10. 점원 : 다른 것은 좀 비싼 사전입니다. 그리고 큰 책입니다.

작은 것

11. 김 : 나는 작은 것이 좋습니다. 이 작은 것을 사겠습니다.

또

필요합니까

12. 점원 : 또 다른 것이 필요합니까?

종이

펜과 종이

13. 김 : 아, 펜과 종이는 어디에서 팝니까?

Cəmwən

- tətanhi cohşımnita [it]'s very good  
 kıləna but; however  
 talın kəs different one; other one
8. Tətanhi cohşımnita. Kıləna, talın [It] is very good. But we also have  
 kəs to ıssımnita. another one.

Kim

- əttəşımnıkkə how is [it]?
9. Talın kəs ın əttəşımnıkkə? Is the other one good? ('How is the  
 other one?')

Cəmwən

- pıssan sacən [an] expensive dictionary  
 kılıko and  
 khın chæk a big book
10. Talın kəs ın com pıssan sacən The other one is [a] fairly expensive  
 ımnita. Kılıko, khın chæk (dictionary). And, [it]'s a big  
 ımnita. book.

Kim

- cakın kəs a small one
11. Na nın cakın kəs ı cohşımnita. A small one is fine for me. I'll  
 I cakın kəs ıl sakessımnita. take this small one.

Cəmwən

- tto again; besides; also  
 phılyo necessity; need  
 phılyo-hamnikka do [you] need?; is [something]  
 needed?
12. Tto takın kəs ı phılyo-hamnikka? Do you need anything else? ('Is  
 other thing also needed?')

Kim

- congı paper  
 phen kwa congı pen and paper
13. A, phen kwa congı nın eti, esə Oh, where can I buy a pen and paper?  
 pha(1)mnıkkə? ('As for pens and paper, where do  
 [they] sell?')

다음

다음 집

문방구점

14. 점원 : 다음 집이 문방구점입니다.

(대화 B)

(-문방구점에서-)

드릴까요

15. 점원 : 어서 오십시오. 무엇을 드릴까요?

16. 김 : 종 이와 펜이 있습니까?

원하십니까

17. 점원 : 예, 있습니다. 종이는 무슨 종이를 원하세요?

타이프 종이

18. 김 : 타이프 종이를 원합니다.

두 가지

두 가지 종이

19. 점원 : 아, 그러세요? 두 가지 종이가 있습니다.

20. 김 : 얼마예요?



Cəmwən

- |              |                              |
|--------------|------------------------------|
| taim         | next; next time              |
| taim cip     | the next door ('next house') |
| munpangkucəm | stationary shop              |
14. Taim cip i munpangkucəm imnita.      There's a stationary shop next door.  
       ('Next door is a stationary shop.')

Dialogue B

(--Kim enters next door--)

Cəmwən

- |              |                       |
|--------------|-----------------------|
| tilil kka yo | shall [I] give [you]? |
|--------------|-----------------------|
15. əsə osipsiyo. Məs il tilil      Come in. What would you like? ('What  
     kka yo?                              shall I give you?')

Kim

16. Congi wa phen i issimnikka?      Do you have paper and pens?

Cəmwən

- |               |                |
|---------------|----------------|
| wənhasimnikka | do [you] want? |
|---------------|----------------|
17. Ne, issimnita. Congi nin musın      Yes, we have. What kind of paper do  
     congı lıl wənhase yo?                      you want?

Kim

- |               |                  |
|---------------|------------------|
| thaiphı congı | typewriter paper |
|---------------|------------------|
18. Thaiphı congı lıl wənhamnita.      I want typewriter paper.

Cəmwən

- |               |                    |
|---------------|--------------------|
| tu kaci       | two kinds          |
| tu kaci congı | two kinds of paper |
19. A, kiləse yo? Tu kaci congı ka      Fine. ('Oh, is that so?') We have two  
     issimnita.                                      kinds of typewriter paper.

Kim

20. əlma (i)ye yo?                      How much are [they]?

한 가지

손

손 장

오십 원

21. 점원 : 한 가지는 손 장에 칠십 원입니다. 그리고,  
다른 것은 오십 원에 팝니다.

더

더 싸니다

더 싼 거

좀 더 싼 거

없어요

22. 김 : 좀 더 싼 것은 없어요?

지금

23. 점원 : 예, 좀 더 싼 것은 지금 없습니다.

그러면

오십 원 짜리

24. 김 : 그러면, 오십 원 짜리를 주십시오.

Cəmwən

- |           |                            |
|-----------|----------------------------|
| han kaci  | one kind                   |
| swin      | fifty                      |
| swin cang | fifty sheets; fifty pieces |
| o-sip Wən | ₩50                        |
21. Han kaci nin swin cang e chil-sip Wən imnita. Kılıko, talın kəs in o-sip Wən e phamnita. One (kind) is ₩70 for 50 sheets, and the other is ₩50. ('We sell it for ₩50.')

Kim

- |                 |                                   |
|-----------------|-----------------------------------|
| tə              | more                              |
| tə ssamnita     | [it]'s cheaper                    |
| tə ssan kəs     | cheaper one; cheaper kind         |
| com tə ssan kəs | a little cheaper one              |
| əpsə yo         | don't [you] have?; isn't [there]? |
22. Com tə ssan kəs in əpsə yo? Don't you have anything cheaper?

Cəmwən

- |       |     |
|-------|-----|
| cikim | now |
|-------|-----|
23. Ne, tə ssan kəs in cikim əpsımnita. No, not right now. ('We don't have a cheaper kind now.')

Kim

- |                 |                                |
|-----------------|--------------------------------|
| kıləmyən        | then; if so                    |
| o-sip Wən ccali | ₩50 worth; in the value of ₩50 |
24. Kıləmyən, o-sip Wən ccali lıl cusipsiyo. Then I'll take the 50 Won kind. ('Then give me the ₩50's.')

## 수자 (2)

1	하나	11	열 하나	21	스물 하나
2	둘	12	열 둘	29	스물 아홉
3	셋	13	열 셋	30	스물
4	넷	14	열 넷	40	마흔
5	다섯	15	열 다섯	50	쉰
6	여섯	16	열 여섯	60	예순
7	일곱	17	열 일곱	70	일흔(이른)
8	여덟	18	열 여덟	80	여든
9	아홉	19	열 아홉	90	아흔
10	열	20	스물(스무)	99	아흔 아홉
100	(일)백	200	이백	300	삼백
101	백 하나	210	이백 열	401	사백 하나
102	백 둘	220	이백 스물	502	오백 둘
103	백 셋	230	이백 스물셋	603	육백 셋
104	백 넷	240	이백 마흔	704	칠백 넷
105	백 다섯	250	이백 쉰	805	팔백 다섯
106	백 여섯	260	이백 예순	906	구백 여섯
107	백 일곱	270	이백 일흔	911	구백 열 하나
108	백 여덟	280	이백 여든	922	구백 스물 둘
109	백 아홉	290	이백 아흔	1,000	(일)천
119	백 열 아홉	300	삼백	10,000	(일)만

## NUMERALS (2)

1 han(a)	11 yel-han(a)	21 simul-han(a)
2 tu(1)	12 yel-tu(1)	29 simul-ahop
3 se(s)	13 yel-se(s)	30 {selhin selin
4 ne(s)	14 yel-ne(s)	40 mahin
5 tasəs	15 yel-tasəs	50 swin
6 yesəs	16 yel-yəsəs	60 yesun
7 ilkop	17 yel-ilkop	70 il(h)in
8 {yətəl yətə(1)p	18 yel-yətəl	80 yətin
9 ahop	19 yel-ahop	90 ahin
10 yel	20 simu(1)	99 ahin-ahop
100 (il)-pæk	200 ipæk	300 sampæk
101 pæk-han(a)	210 ipæk-yel	401 sapæk-han(a)
102 pæk-tu(1)	220 ipæk-simul	502 opæk-tu(1)
103 pæk-se(s)	230 ipæk-selhin	603 yukpæk-se(s)
104 pæk-ne(s)	240 ipæk-mahin	704 chilpæk-ne(s)
105 pæk-tasəs	250 ipæk-swin	805 phalpæk-tasəs
106 pæk-yəsəs	260 ipæk-yesun	906 kupæk-yəsəs
107 pæk-ilkop	270 ipæk-il(h)in	911 kupæk-yel-han(a)
108 pæk-yətəl(yətəp)	280 ipæk-yətin	922 kupæk-simul-tu(1)
109 pæk-ahop	290 ipæk-ahin	1,000 (il)chən
119 pæk-yel-ahop	300 sampæk	10,000 (il)man

## NOTES ON DIALOGUES

(Numbers correspond to the sentence numbers.)

1. Yeki (e) X i/ka issimnikka? ('Is there X here?') is another expression commonly used in the situations similar to Yeki esə X il/lil phamnikka? ('Do [you] sell X at this place?'). It means something like 'Do you carry X here (where X is a certain thing you want to buy)?'. Cohin 'good, nice' is a noun-modifier word which is formed from the verb stem coh- 'to be good' (See Grammar Note 1).
2. Mal imnikka? 'Do you mean...?' is always immediately preceded by something. The affirmative response to X mal imnikka? 'Do you mean X?' is Ne, X mal imnita. 'Yes, I mean X.' Yeng-Han 'English-Korean' is the contracted form of either Yengə Hankuk mal 'English-Korean language' or Yengkuk Hankuk 'Britian-Korea'. This kind of contraction in one word made out of two or more words appears often in Korean. In each case, the first syllables of the words are brought together to make the contraction. Examples: Han-Yeng 'Korea(n)-English (Britian)', Han-Il 'Korea(n)-Japan(ese)', Cung-Tok 'Sino-German', Han-Mi 'Korea-U.S.'.
6. Ca 'well', 'here!' occurs always at the beginning of the sentence followed by a pause to signify that the speaker is going to suggest or produce something.
7. etten 'what sort of' is a question noun-modifier word which denotes the quality or characteristics of the following noun. Compare with musin 'what kind of' which denotes the type, essence or denomination of the following noun.
8. Talin 'different', 'other' is a noun-modifier word which is formed from the verb stem tali- 'to be different'.
10. Kiliko 'And' occurs at the beginning of the sentence and is followed by a pause.
11. The verb stem of the noun-modifier word cakin 'small' is cak- 'to be small in size'; cək- means 'to be little in quantity'.
12. The verb stem philyo-ha- 'to be needed', 'to be necessary', is an intransitive verb which may be preceded by the emphasized subject but never by an object. Examples:

Talin kəs i philyo-hamnita.

'[I] need another one' ('A different thing is needed'.)

Chæk i philyo-hamnikka?

'Do you need a book?' ('Is a book needed?')

14. Taim 'the next time', 'next' occurs either as a free noun or as a determinative.
15. The verb stem tilli- 'to give' is the politest equivalent of cu-. A sentence which ends in -(1)l kka yo? is always a question sentence (See Grammar Note 2).
22. Të 'more', '-er' occurs immediately before description verbs or other adverbs (See Grammar Note 3). The antonym of të is the adverb tël 'less..'.  
 24. Ccali 'worth', 'value' is a post-noun which occurs only after a stated amount of money. If followed by another noun, the phrase ending in ccali describes the value of the noun. If not followed by another noun, the phrase ending in ccali indicates the denomination of money in the stated amount. Examples:

pæk Wën ccali sikye

a watch which is ₩100 worth

o-sip Wën ccali moca

a hat which is ₩50 worth

sip Wën ccali

₩10 bill

o-sip Pul ccali

\$50 bill

#### GRAMMAR NOTES

##### 1. -n/in/nin

The verb ending -n/in/nin is added to a verb stem, or to a verb stem plus other suffix(es): -n is added to a description verb stem which ends in a vowel; -in to a description verb stem which ends in a consonant; -nin, to an action verb stem. The inflected form which ends in -n/in/nin occurs only before a noun as a modifier of the noun, and never alone nor before other classes of words. It shows only the present action or state of the modified noun. We shall call the words of this class Present Noun-Modifier Words and the -n/in/nin ending the Present Noun-Modifier Ending. Examples:

##### Group 1

pissan sikye

'(an) expensive watch'

mën hakkyo

'a school which is far'

nolan yënphil

'(a) yellow pencil'

kkamhan moca

'(a) black hat'

Group 2

cohin chæk	'(a) good book'
copin kil	'(a) narrow street'
nəlpin kyosil	'(a) large classroom'

Group 3

kanin salam	'a man who is going'
canin ai	'a sleeping child'
kalichinin yəca	'a woman who is teaching'
chæk il ilknin haksəng	'a student who is reading a book'
nə ka pəunin mal	'the language that I'm learning'

2. -l/il kka yo? 'Shall I...?', 'Shall we...?', 'Will [it]... (do you think)?'

The construction -l/il kka yo? occurs only as a final form of a question sentence. If the subject or the topic in the sentence is the speaker, he asks the addressee's consent or permission for the action he is going to take. If the subject or the topic of the sentence includes both the speaker and addressee, the speaker asks the addressee whether he is interested in doing something. If the subject or the topic in the sentence is other than the speaker or the speaker plus addressee, the speaker asks the addressee for his opinion about the possibility of the action or description occurring in the future. Note: -l is added to a stem ending in a vowel; -il to a stem ending in a consonant (See Grammar Note 3, Unit 9). Examples:

Tapang e kal kka yo?	{ 'Shall I go to the tearoom?'
	{ 'Shall we go to the tearoom?'
Sənsəng cip e tillil kka yo?	{ 'Shall I stop by your house?'
	{ 'Shall we stop by the teacher's house?'
Kim Sənsəng i ol kka yo?	'Will Mr. Kim come?'
Hakkyo ka məl kka yo?	'(Do you think) the school will be far?'

3. Adverbs

Adverbs are a class of words which may or may not be inflected. They occur before and modify other inflected expressions (i.e. verbals, noun-modifiers, sentences, other adverbs). This class of words is distinguished from noun-modifiers (See Grammar Note 1) which occur only before nouns. There are some nouns which occur sometimes as adverbs also. For examples: are two kinds of adverbs: (1) one kind may be separated by a pause from the subsequent inflected expressions, and (2) the other kind occur without pause as



an integral part of an inflected expressions. The adverbs of group (1) are called Sentence Adverbs; those of the group (2), simply Adverbs. We have had so far the following kinds of adverbs.

kiliko 'and'; kiləna 'but'; kiləmyən 'then'; ne 'yes'; aniyo 'no'; əttəhke 'how'; tto 'again', 'also'; kili '(not) so', 'in such a way'; com 'a little'; əse 'please', 'quickly'; ttokpalo 'straight ahead'; cal 'well', etc.

Some of these adverbs occur at the beginning of sentences which succeed always other sentences: others occur before inflected expressions which do not need to be preceded by other sentences.

(a). tə 'more', '-er' and təl 'less'

Tə and təl occur without pause before noun-modifier words, verbals or other adverbs. They denote the comparative degree of the following descriptive expression. Compare:

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. Kɪ kəs i cohsmnita.                                 | '[It] is good.'                                  |
| Kɪ kəs i tə cohsmnita.                                 | '[It] is better.'                                |
| Kɪ kəs i təl cohsmnita.                                | '[It] is poorer.'                                |
| 2. I chæk i pissamnita.                                | 'This book is expensive.'                        |
| I chæk i tə pissamnita.                                | 'This book is more expensive.'                   |
| I chæk i təl pissamnita.                               | 'This book is less expensive.'                   |
| 3. əlyəun mal  | '[a] difficult language'                         |
| tə əlyəun mal  | '[a] more difficult language'                    |
| təl əlyəun mal   | '[a] less difficult language'                    |
| 4. Kim Sənsəng i Yəngə lil cal hamnita.                | 'Mr. Kim speaks English well.'                   |
| Kim Sənsəng i Yəngə lil tə cal hamnita.                | 'Mr. Kim speaks English better.'                 |
| Kim Sənsəng i (Ceimsɪ pota) Yəngə lil təl cal hamnita. | 'Mr. Kim speaks English less well (than James).' |

(b). tətanhi 'very'

Tətanhi 'very' occurs without pause before noun-modifiers, verbals or other adverbs. Compare:

- |                                 |                                |
|---------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. Chæk i pissamnita.           | 'The book is expensive.'       |
| Chæk i tətanhi pissamnita.      | 'The book is very expensive.'  |
| 2. Ssan kutu lil sasse yo.      | '[I] bought cheap shoes.'      |
| Tətanhi ssan kutu lil sasse yo. | '[I] bought very cheap shoes.' |

3. Kim Sənsəng i Yəngə lil cal                    'Mr. Kim speaks English well.'  
       mal-hæ yo.  
 Kim Sənsəng i Yəngə lil tətənhī                'Mr. Kim speaks English very well.'  
       cal mal-hæ yo.

4. Counters: cang, can, kwən, kæ, pun, malī, pəl, tæ

In Unit 4, we noticed that certain counters such as Wən 'Korean monetary unit' occur only after numerals of character origin. The counters cang, can, kwən, kæ, pun, etc. are some of the commonly used counters which occur only after Korean numerals.

(a). Cang is used in counting such things as paper, letters, towels, sheets, flat glasses, etc.

- |                         |                            |
|-------------------------|----------------------------|
| thaipi congī tasəs cang | '5 sheets of typing paper' |
| phyenci tu cang         | 'two letters'              |
| tamyo se cang           | 'three blankets'           |

(b). Can is used in counting cups or glasses of liquid.

- |                |                       |
|----------------|-----------------------|
| khəphi han can | 'a cup of coffee'     |
| sul tu can     | 'two glasses of wine' |

(c). Kwən is used in counting books.

- |                                |                                    |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| yəkṣa chək yələ kwən           | 'several volumes of history books' |
| Yəngə chək tu kwən il səsə yo. | 'I bought two English books.'      |

(d). Kæ is used in counting common object nouns such as pencils, desks, chairs, etc.

- |                               |                              |
|-------------------------------|------------------------------|
| Yənphil han kæ cuse yo.       | 'Give me a pencil.'          |
| Chəksang i tasəs kæ issə yo.  | 'There are five desks.'      |
| Iyca ka myech* kæ issimnikka? | 'How many chairs are there?' |

\*myech 'how many' is a determinative which occurs before counters as a question word.

(e). Pun or salam is used in counting persons. Pun is the honorific equivalent of salam.

- |                      |                     |
|----------------------|---------------------|
| sənsəng se pun       | 'three teachers'    |
| haksəng tu salam     | 'two students'      |
| Mikuk salam yələ pun | 'several Americans' |

(f). Mali is used in counting animals.

mal han mali	'one horse'
so tu mali	'two cattle'
kæ se mali	'three dogs'
koyangi ne mali	'four cats'

(g). Pel is used in counting suits.

yangpok tu pel	'two suits'
----------------	-------------

(h). Tæ is used in counting vehicles, airplanes, machines, etc.

catongcha yelæ tæ	'several automobiles'
pihængki se tæ	'three airplanes'

Note that all the counters occur typically after the determinative myech 'how many?'. Also note that in Korean things are counted in the following manner:  
Nominal + Numeral + Counter.

## DRILLS

## A. Substitution Drills

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. Yeki Hankuk mal sacen i issimnikka?           | Do you have a Korean dictionary here?          |
| 2. Yeki <u>Yeng-Han</u> sacen (i) issimnikka?    | Do you have an English-Korean dictionary here? |
| 3. Yeki <u>thaiphi cong</u> i (ka) issimnikka?   | Do you have typewriter paper here?             |
| 4. Yeki <u>munpangkucem</u> (i) issimnikka?      | Is there a stationary shop here?               |
| 5. Yeki <u>yale kaci cong</u> i (ka) issimnikka? | Do you have several kinds of paper here?       |
| 6. Yeki <u>cohin sacen</u> (i) issimnikka?       | Do you have a good dictionary here?            |
| 7. Yeki <u>ettan sacen</u> (i) issimnikka?       | What kind of dictionary do you have here?      |
| 8. Yeki <u>taln kes</u> (i) issimnikka?          | Do you have a different one here?              |
| 9. Yeki <u>khin chæk</u> (i) issimnikka?         | Do you have a big book here?                   |
| 10. Yeki <u>cakin sacen</u> (i) issimnikka?      | Do you have a small dictionary here?           |
| 11. Yeki <u>pissan sacen</u> (i) issimnikka?     | Do you have any expensive dictionaries here?   |
| 12. Yeki <u>ssan cong</u> i (ka) issimnikka?     | Do you have cheap paper here?                  |

## B. Substitution Drill

- |                                      |   |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| 1. Yeng-Han sacen mal imnikka?       | Do you mean an English-Korean dictionary? |
| 2. <u>I cip</u> mal imnikka?         | Do you mean this house?                   |
| 3. <u>Pissan cong</u> i mal imnikka? | Do you mean expensive paper?              |
| 4. <u>Yale kaci</u> mal imnikka?     | Do you mean several kinds?                |
| 5. <u>Khin sukæn</u> mal imnikka?    | Do you mean a big towel?                  |
| 6. <u>Mikuk salam</u> mal imnikka?   | Do you mean the Americans?                |
| 7. <u>eni kes</u> mal imnikka?       | Which do you mean?                        |
| 8. <u>Musin sacen</u> mal imnikka?   | What dictionary do you mean?              |
| *9. <u>ence</u> mal imnikka?         | When do you mean?                         |
| 10. <u>Nuku</u> mal imnikka?         | Whom do you mean?                         |
| 11. <u>Muæs</u> mal imnikka?         | What do you mean?                         |
| 12. <u>eti</u> mal imnikka?          | Where do you mean?                        |
| 13. <u>ettænke</u> mal imnikka?      | How do you mean?                          |
| 14. <u>Myæch salam</u> mal imnikka?  | How many people do you mean?              |

## C. Substitution Drill

- |   |                                   |
|---|-----------------------------------|
| 1. Kɪ kəs, com poyə cusipsiyo.                  | Please show [me] that.            |
| *2. <u>Cə kilim</u> , com poyə cusipsiyo.       | Please show [me] that picture.    |
| 3. <u>Kɪ capci</u> , com poyə cusipsiyo.        | Please show me that magazine.     |
| 4. <u>Cə sinmun</u> , com poyə cusipsiyo.       | Please show me that newspaper.    |
| 5. <u>Nolan yangmal</u> , com poyə cusipsiyo.   | Please show me some yellow socks. |
| 6. <u>Phalan kəs</u> , com poyə cusipsiyo.      | Please show me a blue one.        |
| 7. <u>Kkamhan kutu</u> , com poyə cusipsiyo.    | Please show me some black shoes.  |
| 8. <u>Hayan waisyassi</u> , com poyə cusipsiyo. | Please show me some white shirts. |
| 9. <u>Ppalkan os</u> , com poyə cusipsiyo.      | Please show me a red dress.       |

## D. Substitution Drill

- |  |                                    |
|--|------------------------------------|
| 1. Talin kəs to issimnita.             | [We] also have a different one(s). |
| 2. <u>Cohin kəs</u> to issimnita.      | [We] also have a good one.         |
| 3. <u>Pissan kəs</u> to issimnita.     | [We] also have an expensive one.   |
| 4. <u>Ssan kəs</u> to issimnita.       | [We] also have a cheap one.        |
| 5. <u>Khın kəs</u> to issimnita.       | [We] also have a big one.          |
| 6. <u>Cakin kəs</u> to issimnita.      | [We] also have a small one.        |
| 7. <u>Nolan kəs</u> to issimnita.      | [We] also have a yellow one.       |
| 8. <u>Ppalkan kəs</u> to issimnita.    | [We] also have a red one.          |
| 9. <u>Phalan kəs</u> to issimnita.     | [We] also have a blue one.         |
| *10. <u>Kathın kəs</u> to issimnita.   | [We] also have the same thing.     |
| *11. <u>Alimtaun kəs</u> to issimnita. | [We] also have a beautiful one.    |
| *12. <u>Yeppin kəs</u> to issimnita.   | [We] also have a pretty one.       |
| *13. <u>Nəlpin kəs</u> to issimnita.   | [We] also have a wide one.         |
| *14. <u>Copin kəs</u> to issimnita.    | [We] also have a narrow one.       |

## E. Substitution Drill

- |   |                                 |
|---|---------------------------------|
| 1. Talin kəs in <u>əttəhsımnikka?</u>     | How is the other one?           |
| 2. Talin kəs in <u>əlma imnikka?</u>      | How much is the other one?      |
| 3. Talin kəs in <u>cohsımnikka?</u>       | Is the other one good?          |
| 4. Talin kəs in <u>nappımnikka?</u>       | Is the other one bad?           |
| 5. Talin kəs in <u>khımnikka?</u>         | Is the other one big?           |
| 6. Talin kəs in <u>caksımnikka?</u>       | Is the other one small?         |
| 7. Talin kəs in <u>əpsımnikka?</u>        | Don't you have a different one? |
| 8. Talin kəs in <u>ıssımnikka?</u>        | Do you have another one?        |
| 9. Talin kəs in <u>talımnikka?</u>        | Is the other one different?     |
| *10. Talin kəs in <u>alımtapsımnikka?</u> | Is the other one beautiful?     |
| *11. Talin kəs in <u>yepımnikka?</u>      | Is the other one pretty?        |
| *12. Talin kəs in <u>nə(1)psımnikka?</u>  | Is the other one wide?          |
| *13. Talin kəs in <u>çopsımnikka?</u>     | Is the other one narrow?        |
| *14. Talin kəs in <u>kathsımnikka?</u>    | Is the other one the same?      |
| *15. Talin kəs in <u>swıpsımnikka?</u>    | Is the other one easy?          |
| *16. Talin kəs in <u>əlyəpsımnikka?</u>   | Is the other one difficult?     |

## F. Substitution Drill

- |  |                                      |
|--|--------------------------------------|
| 1. Talin kəs i philyo-hamnikka?                    | Do [you] need anything else?         |
| 2. <u>Yəng-Han sacən</u> (i) philyo-hamnikka?      | Do you need an E-K dictionary?       |
| 3. <u>Han-Yəng sacən</u> (i) philyo-hammikka?      | Do you need a K-E dictionary?        |
| 4. <u>Phen kwa congı</u> (ka) philyo-hamnikka?     | Do you need a pen and paper?         |
| 5. <u>Chəksang kwa ıyca</u> (ka) philyo-hamnikka?  | Do you need a desk and a chair?      |
| 6. <u>Moca wa kutu</u> (ka) philyo-hamnikka?       | Do you need a hat and shoes?         |
| 7. <u>Yəphil kwa kongchək</u> (i) philyo-hamnikka? | Do you need a pencil and a notebook? |
| 8. <u>Sacən kwa congı</u> (ka) philyo-hamnikka?    | Do you need a dictionary and paper?  |

## G. Substitution Drill

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. Phen kwa congī nīn ətī ešə<br>phamnikka?                      | Where can I buy pens and paper?<br>( 'Where do [they] sell pens and<br>paper? ' ) |
| 2. <u>Yangmal</u> (kwa) <u>yangpok</u> in ətī ešə<br>phamnikka?  | Where can I buy socks and suits?  |
| 3. <u>Sinmum</u> (kwa) <u>capci</u> nīn ətī ešə<br>phamnikka?    | Where can I buy newspapers and<br>magazines?                                      |
| 4. <u>Sikye</u> (wa) <u>son-sukən</u> in ətī ešə<br>phamnikka?   | Where can I buy watches and hand-<br>kerchiefs?                                   |
| 5. <u>Congī</u> (wa) <u>phen</u> in ətī ešə<br>phamnikka?        | Where can I buy paper and pens?   |
| 6. <u>Yangmal</u> (kwa) <u>kutu</u> nīn ətī ešə<br>phamnikka?    | Where can I buy socks and shoes?  |
| 7. <u>Chæksang</u> (kwa) <u>lyca</u> nīn ətī ešə<br>phamnikka?   | Where can I buy tables and chairs?  |
| 8. <u>Moca</u> (wa) <u>kutu</u> nīn ətī ešə phamnikka?           | Where can I buy hats and shoes?   |
| 9. <u>Yenphil</u> (kwa) <u>kongchæk</u> in ətī ešə<br>phamnikka? | Where can I buy pencils and note-<br>books?                                       |

## H. Substitution Drill

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. Muəs il tīlīl kka yo?                      | What would you like? ( 'What shall I<br>give you? ' ) |
| 2. <u>ənī chæk</u> (il) tīlīl kka yo?         | Which book would you like?                            |
| 3. <u>Musīn sæk</u> (il) tīlīl kka yo?        | What color would you like?                            |
| 4. <u>Talīn kəs</u> (il) tīlīl kka yo?        | Would you like a different one?                       |
| 5. <u>Tə ssan congī</u> (līl) tīlīl kka yo?   | Would you like cheaper paper?                         |
| 6. <u>Tə pissan sikyo</u> (līl) tīlīl kka yo? | Would you like a more expensive<br>watch?             |
| 7. <u>Tə cohīn kəs</u> (il) tīlīl kka yo?     | Would you like a better one?                          |
| 8. <u>Tə cakīn kəs</u> (il) tīlīl kka yo?     | Would you like a smaller one?                         |
| 9. <u>Tə khīn kəs</u> (il) tīlīl kka yo?      | Would you like a bigger one?                          |
| 10. <u>Tə hayān kəs</u> (il) tīlīl kka yo?    | Would you like a whiter one?                          |

## I. Transformation Drill (based on Grammar Note 1)

Tutor: Chæk i pissamnita.	'The book is expensive.'
Student: Pissan chæk i issimnita.	'There's an expensive book.'
1. Sacæn i cohsimnita.	Cohin sacæn i issimnita.
2. Cip i khimnita.	Khin cip i issimnita.
3. Mannyenphil i caksimnita.	Cakin mannyenphil i issimnita.
4. Yangpok i kkamhamnita.	Kkamhan yangpok i issimnita.
5. Waisyassi ka hayamnita.	Hayan waisyassi ka issimnita.
6. Yenphil i nolahsimnita.	Nolan yenphil i issimnita.
7. Os i ppalkahsimnita.	Ppalkan os i issimnita.
8. Sicang i kakkapsimnita.	Kakkaun sicang i issimnita.
9. Kilim i alimtapsimnita.	Alimtaun kilim i issimnita.
10. Kyosil i nelpsimnita.	Nelpin kyosil i issimnita.
11. Samusil i copsimnita.	Copin samusil i issimnita.
12. Sæk i talimnita.	Talin sæk i issimnita.
13. Sacæn i pissamnita.	Pissan sacæn i issimnita.
14. Kilim i kathsimnita.	Kathin kilim i issimnita.
15. Chæk i swipsimnita.	Swiun chæk i issimnita.
16. Mal i ælyepsimnita.	ælyeun mal i issimnita.

## J. Transformation Drill (based on Grammar Note 1)

Tutor: Haksæng i kongpu-hamnita.	'A student (is) study(ing).'
Student: Kongpu-hanin haksæng i issimnita.	'There is a student who is studying.'
1. Salam i omnita.	Onin salam i issimnita.
2. Mikuk salam i Hankuk mal il (mal-) hamnita.	Hankuk mal il (mal-)hanin Mikuk salam i issimnita.
3. Hankuk haksæng i Mikuk e kamnita.	Mikuk e kanin Hankuk haksæng i issimnita.
4. Sænsæng i Yøngø lil kalichimnita.	Yøngø lil kalichinin sænsæng i issimnita.
5. Puin i kutu lil samnita.	Kutu lil sanin puin i issimnita.
6. Ai ka chæk il ilksimnita.	Chæk il ilknin ai ka issimnita.
7. Mikuk yeca ka kil il mulø pomnita.	Kil il mulø ponin Mikuk yeca ka issimnita.



- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 8. Hankuk yəca ka Cungkuk mal il kalichimnita. | Cungkuk mal il kalichinin Hankuk yəca ka issimnita. |
| 9. Haksəng i ki pun il amnita.                 | Ki pun il anin haksəng i issimnita.                 |
| 10. Yəca ka kilim il pomnita.                  | Kilim il ponin yəca ka issimnita.                   |

## K. Response Drill (based on Grammar Note 4)

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| Tutor: Congi ka myəch cang issimnikka?<br>/tu(1)/       | 'How many sheets of paper are there?<br>/two/ |
| Student: Tu cang issimnita.                             | 'There are two sheets [of paper]!'            |
| 1. Sənsəng i myəch pun issimnikka?<br>/se(s)/           | Se pun issimnita.                             |
| 2. Yənpil il myəch kə sassimnikka?<br>/tasəs/           | Tasəs kə sassimnita.                          |
| 3. Haksəng i myəch salam issimnikka?<br>/ne(s)/         | Ne salam issimnita.                           |
| 4. Mikuk haksəng i myəch salam kongpu-hamnikka? /ilkop/ | Ilkop salam (i) kongpu-hamnita.               |
| 5. Kyosil e yəca ka myəch kə issimnikka?<br>/ahop/      | Ahop kə issimnita.                            |
| 6. Yəki e chək i myəch kwən issimnikka?<br>/yəl-se(s)/  | Yəl-se kwən issimnita.                        |
| 7. Khophi lil myəch can masimnikka?<br>/yələ/           | Yələ can masimnita.                           |
| 8. Hakkyo e kyosil i myəch kə issimnikka? /simu(1)/     | Simu kə issimnita.                            |
| 9. Kə lil myəch mali pwassimnikka?<br>/tasəs/           | Tasəs mali pwassimnita.                       |
| 10. Yangpok il myəch pəl sassimnikka?<br>/tu(1)/        | Tu pəl sassimnita.                            |

L. Expansion Drill (Supply the proper counter /pun, salam, kǎe, cang, kwǎn/ and expand the sentence as in the example.)

Tutor: Sǎnsǎng i issimnita. /hana/	'There is (a) teacher.' /one/
Student: Sǎnsǎng i han pun issimnita.	'There is one teacher.'
1. Yǎnphil i issimnita. /tul/	Yǎnphil i tu kǎe issimnita.
2. Haksǎng i issimnita. /nes/	Haksǎng i ne salam issimnita.
3. Congi ka issimnita. /yǎsǎs/	Congi ka yǎsǎs cang issimnita.
4. Chǎksang il sassimnita. /tasǎs/	Chǎksang il tasǎs kǎe sassimnita.
5. Sinmun il sassimnita. /hana/	Sinmun il han cang sassimnita.
6. Kyosil e ilya ka issimnita. /ilkop/	Kyosil e ilya ka ilkop kǎe issimnita.
7. Yǎngǎ chǎk il sakessimnita. /yǎtǎl/	Yǎngǎ chǎk il yǎtǎl kwǎn sakessimnita.
8. Na nin achim e khǎphi lil masimnita. /se(s)/	Na nin achim e khǎphi lil se can masimnita.
9. Congi lil cusipsiyo. /tul/	Congi lil tu cang cusipsiyo.
10. Mikuk salam il pwassimnita. /ses/	Mikuk salam il se salam pwassimnita.

M. Response Drill (Use tǎtanhi in the proper place.)

Tutor: Kǐ sacǎn i cohsimnikka?	'Is that dictionary good?'
Student: Ne, tǎtanhi cohsimnita.	'Yes, [it] is very good.'
1. Kǐ chǎk i pissamnikka?	Ne, tǎtanhi pissamnita.
2. Cǎngkǎcang i kakkapsimnikka?	Ne, tǎtanhi kakkapsimnita.
3. Hankuk yǎca ka yeppimnikka?	Ne, tǎtanhi yeppimnita.
4. Samusil i copsimnikka?	Ne, tǎtanhi copsimnita.
5. I chǎk i talimnikka?	Ne, tǎtanhi talimnita.
6. Cǎ kutu ka kkamahsimnikka?	Ne, tǎtanhi kkamahsimnita.
7. Han-Yǎng sacǎn i philyo-hamnikka?	Ne, tǎtanhi philyo-hamnita.
8. Pak Sǎnsǎng i cal kalichimnikka?	Ne, tǎtanhi cal kalichimnita.
9. Ceimsi Sǎnsǎng i Yǎngǎ lil cal (mal-)hamnikka?	Ne, tǎtanhi cal (mal-)hamnita.
10. Os i ppalkahsimnikka?	Ne, tǎtanhi ppalkahsimnita.

## N. Response Drill

Tutor: Muēs ɪl tɪlɪl kka yo? /khal/

'What would you like? ('What shall I give you?') /knife/

Student: Khal ɪl cusipsiyo.

'Please give [me] a knife.'

1. ɛnɪ chæk ɪl tɪlɪl kka yo? /Hankuk mal sacən/

Hankuk mal sacən ɪl cusipsiyo.

2. Musɪn sæk ɪl tɪlɪl kka yo? /phalan sæk/

Phalan sæk ɪl cusipsiyo.

3. Talɪn kəs ɪl tɪlɪl kka yo? /kɪ kəs/

Kɪ kəs ɪl cusipsiyo.

4. Pɪssan yənphɪl ɪl tɪlɪl kka yo? /com ssan kəs/

Com ssan kəs ɪl cusipsiyo.

5. Yəng-Han sacən ɪl tɪlɪl kka yo? /Han-Yəng sacən/

Han-Yəng sacən ɪl cusipsiyo.

6. Cakɪn sukən ɪl tɪlɪl kka yo? /khɪn son-sukən/

Khɪn son-sukən ɪl cusipsiyo.

7. Nolan sæk yangmal ɪl tɪlɪl kka yo? /kkaman yangmal/

Kkaman yangmal ɪl cusipsiyo.

8. Mikuk moca lɪl tɪlɪl kka yo? /Ilpon moca/

Ilpon moca lɪl cusipsiyo.

## O. Response Drill

Tutor: Cip e kal kka yo?

{ 'Should I go home?'  
'Do you want me to go home?'

Student: Ne, kasipsiyo.

'Yes, you should ('please go').'

1. I chæk ɪl sal kka yo?

Ne, sasipsiyo.

2. Kim Sənsəng ɪl mannal kka yo?

Ne, mannasipsiyo.

3. Kil ɪl mule pol kka yo?

Ne, mule posipsiyo.

4. Yəki e issɪl kka yo?

Ne, { issɪsipsiyo.  
{ kyesipsiyo.

5. I chæk ɪl phal(ɪl) kka yo?

Ne, phalɪsipsiyo.

6. Yəng-Han sacən ɪl tɪlɪl kka yo?

Ne, cusipsiyo.

7. Kilim ɪl kilɪl kka yo?

Ne, kilɪsipsiyo.

8. Sənsəng cip e tɪlɪl kka yo?

Ne, tɪllɪsipsiyo.

9. Kɪ aɪ lɪl chacɪl kka yo?

Ne, chacɪsipsiyo.

10. I chæk ɪl ilkɪl kka yo?

Ne, ilkɪsipsiyo.

## P. Response Drill.

Tutor: Hakkyo lo kal kka yo? /cip/	'Shall we go to school?' /house/
Student: Cip ilo kapsita.	'Let 's go to the house, [instead].'
1. Hankuk mal il pæul kka yo? /Yængə/	Yængə lil pæupsita.
2. Pækhwacəm esə sal kka yo? /sangcəm/	Sangcəm esə sapsita.
3. Kim Sənsəng il mannal kka yo? /Ceimsı Sənsəng/	Cemisı Sənsəng il mannapsita.
4. Onil pækhwacəm e tillil kka yo? /næil/	Næil tillipsita.
5. Onil in Cungkuk mal il (mal-)hal kka yo? /Yængə/	Yængə lil (mal-)hapsita.
6. Sinumn il ilkil kka yo? /capci/	Capci lil ilkipsita.
7. Kyosil esə kongpu-hal kka yo? /samusil/	Samusil esə kongpu-hapsita.
8. Cenyek e samusil e issil kka yo? /cip/	Cip e issipsita.

Q. Response Drill (Answer the question in Informal Polite Speech beginning with Aniyo.)

Tutor: Hakkyo e kassimnikka?	'Did you go to school?'
Student: Aniyo, kaci anhəsə yo.	'No, I didn't (go).'
1. Kı sacən i cohşimnikka?	Aniyo, cohci anhe yo.
2. Cakin kəs il sakessimnikka?	Aniyo, saci anhkesə yo.
3. Tto talın kəs i philyo-hamnikka?	Aniyo, philyo-haci anhe yo.
4. Phen kwa congı lil phaləssimnikka?	Aniyo, phalcı anhəsə yo.
5. Congı lil wənhasimnikka?	Aniyo, wənhaci anhe yo.
6. Sinə e munpangkucəm i issəssimnikka?	Aniyo, əpəsə yo.
7. Kil il mulə pwassimnikka?	Aniyo, mulə poci anhəsə yo.
8. Tə ssan kəs in əpsimnikka?	Aniyo, issə yo.
9. Yəki esə phen il pha(11)mnikka?	Aniyo, phalcı anhe yo.
10. Chæk kaps i ssamnikka?	Aniyo, ssacı anhe yo.
11. Yəng-Han sacən i issimnikka?	Aniyo, əpsə yo.
12. Nolan sək il cohahamnikka?	Aniyo, cohahacı anhe yo.

## R. Grammar Drill

Tutor: I kəs i issimnita. /talın kəs/

Student: Talın kəs to issimnikka?

'[We] have this.' /a different one/

'Do you have any others?'

'Do you have a different one, too?'

1. Cakın chæk i cohsimnita. /khin chæk/

Khin chæk to cohsimnikka?

2. Congi ka philyo-hamnita. /yənphil/

Yənphil to philyo-hamnikka?

3. I kəs ın pissamnita. /cə kəs/

Cə kəs pissamnikka?

4. Na nın Hankuk mal ıl pəumnita.

Ceimsi to Hankuk mal ıl pəumnikka?

/Ceimsı/

5. Sukən ıl sassimnita. /yangpok/

Yangpok to sassimnikka?

6. Sacən ıl wənhamnita. /capci/

Capci to wənhamnikka?

7. Yəki esə kutu lıl phamnita. /moca/

Yəki esə moca to phamnikka?

8. Pak Sənsəng i kalichimnita.

I Sənsəng to kalichimnikka?

/I Sənsəng/

9. Ceimsı Sənsəng ıl mannamnita.

Chinku to mannamnikka?

/chinku/

10. Hankuk mal i swipci anhsimnita.

Ilpon mal to swipci anhsimnikka?

/Ilpon mal/

11. Hankuk mal ıl mal-haci anhsimnita.

Cungkuk mal to mal-haci anhsimnikka?

/Cungkuk mal/

## S. Grammar Drill

Tutor: Hakkyo ka məmnita. /sinæ/

Student: Sinæ to məmnita.

'The shcool is far.' /downtown/

'Downtown is far, too.'

1. Chæk i philyo-hamnita. /yənphil/

Yənphil to philyo-hamnita.

2. I kəs i issimnita. /talın kəs/

Talin kəs to issimnita.

3. Na nın Yəngə lıl mal-hamnita.

Ceimsı to Yəngə lıl mal-hamnita.

/Ceimsı/

4. Na nın Hankuk mal ıl kalichimnita.

Na nın Yəngə to kalichimnita.

/Yəngə/

5. Khin sacən i cohsimnita. /cakın

Cakın sacən to cohsimnita.

sacən/

6. Moca lıl sal kka hamnita. /kutu/

Kutu to sal kka hamnita.

7. Yəki esə capci lıl pha(lı)mnita.

Yəki esə sinmun to pha(lı)mnita.

/sinmun/

8. Kyosil i nəlphsimnita. /samusil/

Samusil to nəlphsimnita.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 9. Mikuk yæca nin alimtapsimnita.<br>/Hankuk yæca/          | Hankuk yæca to alimtapsimnita.                |
| 10. Kim Sænsæng il chacsimnita.<br>/I Sænsæng/              | I Sænsæng to chacsimnita.                     |
| T. Grammar Drill  |   |
| Tutor: Mikuk pæsakwan i kakkapsimnita.<br>/Mikuk Kongpowæn/ | 'The U.S. Embassy is near.' /USIA/            |
| Student: Mikuk Kongpowæn i tæ<br>kakkapsimnita.             | 'USIA is nearer.'                             |
| 1. Yænphil i pissamnita. /mannyænphil/                      | Mannyænphil i tæ pissamnita.                  |
| 2. I kilim i alimtapsimnita. /cæ<br>kilim/                  | Cæ kilim i tæ alimtapsimnita.                 |
| 3. Hankuk mal kyosil i nælpsimnita.<br>/Cungkuk mal kyosil/ | Congkuk mal kyosil i tæ nælpsimnita.          |
| 4. Næ moca ka cohsimnita. /Kim Sænsæng<br>moca/             | Kim Sænsæng moca ka tæ cohsimnita.            |
| 5. Ilpon mal i swipsimnita. /Cungkuk<br>mal/                | Cungkuk mal i tæ swipsimnita.                 |
| 6. Cungkuk mal i ælyæpsimnita. /Hankuk<br>mal/              | Hankuk mal i tæ ælyæpsimnita.                 |
| 7. Khin sacæn i ssamnita. /cakin<br>sacæn/                  | Cakin sacæn i tæ ssamnita.                    |
| 8. Ilpon in caksimnita. /Hankuk/                            | Hankuk in tæ caksimnita.                      |
| 9. Na nin sinmun il cohahamnita.<br>/capci/                 | Na nin capci lil tæ cohahamnita.              |
| 10. Pak Sænsæng in Yængæ lil cal<br>hamnita. /Kim Sænsæng/  | Kim Sænsæng in (Yængæ lil) tæ cal<br>hamnita. |

## U. Response Exercise (Answer the question based on reality.)

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| Tutor: Yənphil kwa chæk in ənı kəs<br>i tē pissamnikka?                      | 'Which one is more expensive, a<br>pencil or a book?' |
| Student: Chæk i tē pissamnita.   | 'A book is more expensive.'                           |
| 1. Yəngə wa Hankuk mal in ənı mal i<br>tē swipsimnikka?                      | Yəngə ka tē swipsimnita.                              |
| 2. Hankuk mal kyosil kwa Cungkuk mal<br>kyosil in ənı kəs i tē nelpsimnikka? | Cungkuk mal kyosil i tē nelpsimnita.                  |
| 3. Yəngə wa Hankuk mal in ənı mal i<br>tē əlyəpsimnikka?                     | Hankuk mal i tē əlyəpsimnita.                         |
| 4. Hankuk kwa İlpon in eti ka tē<br>caksimnikka?                             | Hankuk i tē caksimnita.                               |
| 5. Kim Sənsəng kwa Pak Sənsəng in<br>nuka Yəngə lıl tē cal hamnikka?         | Kim Sənsəng i tē cal hamnita.                         |
| 6. Sənsəng e yangpok kwa moca nin ənı<br>kəs i tē ssamnikka?                 | Moca ka tē ssamnita.                                  |
| 7. Nyuyok kwa Wəsingthon in eti lıl<br>tē cohahamnikka?                      | Wəsingthon il tē cohahamnita.                         |

## V. Transformation Drill

- |                                      |  |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| Tutor: I chæk i ssamnita.            | 'This book is cheap.'                        |
| Student: Tē ssan chæk i issimnita.   | 'There's a cheaper one (book).'              |
| 1. I kilim i alimtapsimnita.         | Tē alimtawn kilim i issimnita.               |
| 2. I kyosil i nelpsimnita.           | Tē nelpin kyosil i issimnita.                |
| 3. I samusil i copsimnita.           | Tē copin samusil i issimnita.                |
| 4. I sacən i cohsimnita.             | Tē cohın sacən i issimnita.                  |
| 5. I mal i swipsimnita.              | Tē swiwn mal i issimnita.                    |
| 6. I kyosil i caksimnita.            | Tē cakın kyosil i issimnita.                 |
| 7. I chæk i əlyəpsimnita.            | Tē əlyəun chæk i issimnita.                  |
| 8. I manyənphil i ssamnita.          | Tē ssan manyənphil i issimnita.              |
| 9. I kəs il cohahamnita.             | Tē cohahanın kəs i issimnita.                |
| 10. I pun i (Yəngə lıl) cal hamnita. | (Yəngə lıl) tē cal hanın pun i<br>issimnita. |

## EXERCISES

1. Mr. Kim asks you:

- a. to show him the dictionary.
- b. to give him that.
- c. to go downtown together.
- d. to study Korean together.
- e. if you know him.
- f. if Korean is difficult.
- g. if you have read a book.
- h. if she teaches Korean.
- i. to buy this suit.

You respond:

- 'Which one do you mean?'
- 'What do you mean?'
- 'When do you mean?'
- 'Where do you mean?'
- 'Who(m) to you mean?'
- 'Yes, it is.'
- 'What kind of book do you mean?'
- 'Who do you mean?'
- 'How much do you want?'

2. You ask the store-clerk:

- a. if he carries any good K-E dictionary.
- b. to show you one.
- c. how it is.
- d. how the other one is.
- e. which one is better.
- f. if the bigger one is more expensive.
- g. where they sell fountain-pens and notebooks.
- h. how much they charge for a cup of coffee.
- i. if the department stores also carry magazines and newspapers.

He replies:

- 'Yes, we do.'
- 'Here you are.'
- 'It's very good, but we have another kind.'
- 'It's a little larger one.'
- 'They are the same.'
- 'The price is also the same.'
- '(They sell) at the stationary-store.'
- 'W20.'
- 'Yes, they do.'

## 3. Ask Mr. Kim:

- a. How many cups of coffee he drinks in the morning.
- b. How many students there are.
- c. How many books he has read.
- d. How many chairs there are in the room.
- e. How many sheets of paper he needs.
- f. How many colors he wants.
- g. How many hats he'll buy.
- h. How many teachers he has.



- i. How many suits he has.
  - j. How many horses there are on the street.
4. Tell Pak Sænsæng that:
- a. You like a bigger one.
  - b. You want a little more expensive watch.
  - c. You need a pencil and paper.
  - d. A beautiful woman came to your house.
  - e. There is no English-Korean dictionary here.
  - f. French is easy, but Korean is very difficult
  - g. The sotre on the left is a stationary shop, and the building on the right is a department store.
  - h. The dictionary is small, but it is a very good one.
  - i. The small one is fine for you, but you need the other one, too.
  - j. You are studying Korean, and your friend is teaching German.
  - k. You met a pretty Korean girl.
  - l. There is a child who is reading a newspaper.
  - m. You know an American who speaks Korean.
  - n. You don't know the lady who is buying shoes.
  - o. You have learned Korean, but you don't speak well.
  - p. Korean is not easy, but you like it.
  - q. Mr. Park doesn't speaks Chinese, but he reads it well.

## 제 6 과 시간

(대화 A)

지금

몇, 몇

몇 시

1. A: 지금 몇 시예요?

여덟 시

오 분

오 분 전

2. B: 여덟 시 오 분 전입니다.

일

시작

시작합니다

3. A: 몇 시에 일이 시작합니다?

아침

여덟 시 삼십 분

4. B: (아침) 여덟 시 삼십 분에 시작합니다.

하루

시간

몇 시간

5. A: 그럼, 하루에 몇 시간 일을 하세요?

## UNIT 6. Time

## BASIC DIALOGUES FOR MEMORIZATION

Dialogue AA

- |                      |                  |
|----------------------|------------------|
| cikim                | now              |
| myæch<br>mech/met/ } | how many?; what? |
| myæch-si/myæssi/     | what time        |
1. Cikim myæch-si (i)ye yo?                      What time is it (now)?

B

- |                       |                                |
|-----------------------|--------------------------------|
| yætəl(p)-si/yætəlssi/ | 8 o'clock                      |
| o pun                 | 5 minute(s)                    |
| o pun cən             | 5 minutes of; 5 minutes before |
2. Yætəl(p)-si o pun cən imnita.                      It's five minutes before 8.

A

- |                |                                   |
|----------------|-----------------------------------|
| il             | work; job                         |
| sicak          | beginning                         |
| sicak-hamnikka | do [you] begin?; does [it] begin? |
3. Myæch-si e il i sicak-hamnikka?                      What time do you start work? ('What times does work begin?')

B

- |                        |         |
|------------------------|---------|
| achim                  | morning |
| yætəl(p)-si samsip pun | 8:30    |
4. (Achim) yætəl(p)-si samsip pun e sicak-hamnita.                      I start at 8:30. ('It begins at 8:30 a.m.')

A

- |                        |                 |
|------------------------|-----------------|
| halu                   | one day         |
| sikan                  | time; hour      |
| myæch sikan/myæssikan/ | how many hours? |
5. Kıləm, halu e myæch sikan il il hase yo?                      How many hours do you work a day (then)?

- 여덟 시간(동안)  
입합니다
6. B: 여덟 시간(동안) 입합니다.
- 대개  
집에
7. A: 대개 몇 시에 집에 가세요?
- 다섯 시 쯤  
사무실  
떠납니다  
사무실을 떠납니다
8. B: 대개 다섯 시 쯤 사무실을 떠납니다.
- (대화 B)
- 며칠
9. A: 오늘이 며칠이지요?
- 삼월  
일일
10. B: 삼월 일일입니다.
- 달  
이 달  
벌써
11. A: 이 달이 벌써 삼월입니까?

B

- |  |                           |
|--|---------------------------|
| yətəl(p) sikan (tongan)                | for eight hours           |
| il-hamnita                             | [I] work                  |
| 6. Yətəl(p) sikan (tongan) il-hamnita. | I work (for) eight hours. |

A

- |                                   |                                   |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| tækæ                              | usually                           |
| cip e                             | to the house; home                |
| 7. Tækæ myəch-si e cip e kase yo? | What time to you usually go home? |

B

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| tasəs-si ccim                                | around 5 o'clock                            |
| samusil                                      | office                                      |
| ttenamnita                                   | [I] leave                                   |
| samusil il ttenamnita                        | [I] leave office                            |
| 8. Tækæ tasəs-si ccim samusil il ttenamnita. | I usually leave my office around 5 o'clock. |

Dialogue BA

- |                           |                                  |
|---------------------------|----------------------------------|
| myəchil                   | what day?; what date?; some days |
| 9. Onil i myəchil ici yo? | What's today's date?             |

B

- |                           |                           |
|---------------------------|---------------------------|
| Sam-wəl                   | March                     |
| il il                     | the 1st(day of the month) |
| 10. Sam-wəl il il imnita. | (It's) March 1st.         |

A

- |                                    |   |
|------------------------------------|---|
| tal                                | month; moon   |
| i tal                              | this month  |
| pəlsə                              | already   |
| 11. I tal i pəlsə Sam-wəl imnikka? | Is it March already? ('Is this month already March?') |

- 이월  
이십 팔일
12. B: 예, 그렇습니다. 어제가 이월 이십 팔일이었습니다.
- 무슨 요일
13. A: 그러면, 오늘이 무슨 요일이예요?
- 목요일
14. B: 목요일입니다.
- 일하러
- 일하러 갑니다
15. A: 어제 일하러 갔습니까?
16. B: 아니요, 일하러 가지 않았습니다.
- 주일
- 이주일
- 사흘
- 지난 사흘
- 지난 사흘 동안
- 쉬었습니다
17. 이 주일에는 지난 사흘 동안 쉬었습니다.
- 왜요
- 몸
- 아프니까
- (몸이) 아팠니까
18. A: 왜요? 몸이 아팠니까?

- B
- I-wəl  
isip-phal il
12. Ne, kiləhsımnita. əce ka I-wəl  
isip-phal il iəssımnita.
- B
- February  
28th (of the month)
- Yes, it is. Yesterday was February  
28th.
- A
- musın yoil
13. Kiləmyən, onıl i musın yoil iye  
yo?
- A
- what day of the week?  
What day of the week is it (today),  
then?
- B
- Mokyoil
14. Mokyoil imnita.
- B
- Thursday  
[It's] Thursday.
- A
- il-halə  
il-halə kamnita
15. əce il-halə kassımnikka?
- A
- in order to work; to work  
[I] go to work  
Did [you] go to work yesterday?
- B
16. Anıyo, il-halə kaci anhəssımnita.  
cuil  
i cuil  
sahıl  
cinan sahil  
cinan sahil tongan  
swiəssımnita
- B
- No, I didn't (go to work).  
week  
this week  
three days  
last three days  
for the last three days  
[I] rested; [I] took a rest
17. I cuil e nin cinan sahil tongan  
swiəssımnita.
- B
- This week I took three days off.  
(<sup>1</sup>As for in this week I took a rest  
for the last three days.)
- A
- wə yo  
mom  
aphımnikka
- A
- how come?; why?  
body  
are [you] sick?; are [you]  
hurt?  
were [you] sick?
18. Wə yo? Mom i aphaessımnikka?
- A
- Why? Were you sick?

휴가

받으셨습니다

19. B:

아니요, 휴가를 받으셨습니다.



B

hyuka

patəssəssimnita

19. Aniyō. Hyuka lil patəssəssimnita.

vacation

[I] received, [I] had received

No. I took a vacation.

## NOTES ON DIALOGUES

(Numbers correspond to the sentence numbers.)

1. Myæch and its variant mæch 'how many', 'what', 'some', occurs either as a free noun or as a determinative. Before counters or certain nouns in question sentences, it means 'how many' or 'what'; in a statement sentence it means 'some'. As a free noun myæch means 'how many' in a question sentence, and 'some' or 'several' in a statement sentence. Myæch plus certain counters make up (question) noun phrases. For example, myæch-si 'what time' is a noun phrase which is used only in asking time. Each phrase of this type should be memorized as a phrase. Myæch is pronounced as /myəs/ before s; /myən/ before n; /myət/ before t, etc. When a vowel follows, the final sound ch is released and forms a syllable with the following vowel: myæch-si/myæssi/ 'what time', myæch salam/myæssalam/ 'how many people', myæch nal/myännal/ 'how many days', myæch tal/myättal/ 'how many months', myæch i/myæchi/ 'how many (as a subject)' in Myæch i isse yo? 'How many are there?'.  
9

2. Pun 'minute' is a time counter which occurs only after numerals of Chinese character origin. N numeral + pun designates either a point in time or a duration of time. Example:

<u>han-si o pun</u>	'5 minutes after 1 o'clock'
<u>o pun</u>	'five minutes'

3. The verb stem sicak-ha- 'to begin' is formed from the noun sicak 'the beginning' by adding ha-. Sicak-ha- is used either as a transitive verb or as an intransitive verb. Compare:

Il i sicak-hamnita.	'The work begins.'
Il il sicak-hamnita.	'[I] begin the work.'

The antonym of sicak-ha- is either kkith-na- 'to end', 'to be over' (intransitive verb), or kkith-næ- 'to finish' (transitive verb).  
11

5. Kilæm 'then' is the contracted form of kilæmyæn 'if so' which is a sentence adverbial. Both forms occur at the beginning of a sentence and are followed by a pause. Sikan 'hour', 'time', occurs either as a time counter or as a free noun. As a counter after Korean numerals sikan means 'hour': han sikan 'one hour', tu sikan 'two hours', se sikan 'three hours', myæch sikan 'how  
13

many hours', yəle sikan 'many hours', etc. As a free noun, it means 'time':  
Sikan i issimnikka? 'Do you have time?'

Il-ha- 'to work' is a verb stem formed from the noun il 'work', 'job'. The  
 antonym of il-ha- is no(l)- 'not to work', 'to play', 'to loaf'.

6. Tongan 'for', 'during' is a post-noun. The nominal that precedes usually  
 is a time expression, and 'time expression + tongan' is an adverbial  
 expression. Example: han sikan tongan 'for an hour', halu tongan 'for one  
 day', il pun tongan 'for one minute', Il-wəl tongan 'during January', ki  
tongan 'in the meantime'.
8. Ccim 'about', 'around' is a post-noun which occurs after other nominal  
 expressions (e.g. time, place names, quality or quantity expressions) and  
 denotes approximation of the preceding expressions. Examples:

han tal ccim	'about one month'
han tal tongan ccim	'for about one month'
Il-wəl ccim	'around January'
han sikan ccim	'about an hour'

The antonym of the verb stem ttəna- 'to leave' is tah- 'to arrive'.

9. Myəchil 'what date', 'some days' is one word; not a two-word compound of  
myəch + il.
11. The opposite word for pəlsse 'already' is acik '(not) yet' which also means  
 'still'. Compare:
- |  |                              |
|--|------------------------------|
| Hakkyo ka acik sicak-haci<br>anhəssimnita. | 'School has not begun yet.'  |
| Cə nin acik Hankuk mal il<br>pəumnita.     | 'I'm still studying Korean.' |
13. Yoil 'day of the week' occurs as a post-noun after certain nouns or  
 determinatives. Examples: ən1 yoil 'which day of the week', musin yoil  
 'what day of the week'.

14. Mokyoil 'Thursday' is one word. So is Ilyoil 'Sunday', Welyoil 'Monday', Hwayoil 'Tuesday', Suyoil 'Wednesday', Kimyoil 'Friday', Thoyoil 'Saturday'.
17. Halu 'one day', sahil 'three days' belong to a small class of one-word time expressions which enumerate days: halu 'one day', ithil 'two days', sahil 'three days', nahil 'four days', tassæ 'five days', yæssæ 'six days', ile 'seven days', yetile 'eight days', ahile 'nine days', yelhil 'ten days'. This class of time expressions also is used infrequently to designate days of the month.
19. Hyuka 'vacation', 'leave' is distinguished from panghak 'school vacation'.

## GRAMMAR NOTES

1. Time counters: nyen 'year', hæ 'year', -wəl 'month', tal 'month', cuil 'week', il 'day', nal 'day', -si 'o'clock', sikan 'hour', pun 'minute'. Korean time counters are classed in two groups: (a) those which occur after the numerals of Korean origin, and (b) those which occur after numerals of Chinese character origin. It is imperative to know the series of numerals with which each time counter is used.

The counters hæ 'year', tal 'month', cuil 'week', nal 'day', -si 'o'clock', sikan 'hour' occur after numerals of Korean origin.

The counters nyen 'year', -wəl 'month', il 'day', pun 'minute' occur after numerals of Chinese character origin.

The above time counters are divided into three sub-classes without regard to the series of numerals with which they occur:

(a) Those which name:

1. the calendar months..... -wəl
2. hours..... -si

(b) Those which count:

1. the number of months..... tal
2. the number of weeks..... cuil
3. the number of hours..... sikan
4. the number of days (for only 20 days, 30 days, 40 days, 50 days, 60 days)..... nal

(c) Those which either:

1. name calendar years or enumerate years..... nyən
2. name dates or enumerate days..... il
3. specify the minutes or enumerate the minutes..... pun

Note that expressions of time in Korean are listed from the largest unit to the smallest unit: that is, in the order of year, month, day, hours, minute and second.

Note 1: Cuil 'week' is preceded by either set of numerals.

Note 2: **For** the words expressing the number of days from 1 day to 10 days, see number 17 of Notes on Dialogues in this Unit.

Note 3: The two time counters -wəl and -si are added to the numbers with a hyphen to signify that they occur only as parts of words which are expressions of time, i.e., -wəl for the names of months and -si for the hours of a day, respectively.

## 2. -ci yo?

We noticed in Unit 4 that the ci form occurs before the verb anh- 'not'. The ci form immediately followed by yo? (i.e. -ci yo?) occurs as an informal polite question sentence final form. If -ci yo? occurs without a preceding question word, the speaker expects the addressee to answer yes; if -ci yo? follows after a question word in the same sentence it simply substitutes for -(1)mnikka? or (infinitive) + yo?. Compare: Give attention to the final intonations.

### Group 1

Kim Sənsəng i Yəngə lil mal-haci yo?	'Mr. Kim speaks English, doesn't he?'
Hakkyo ka məlci yo?	'The school is far, isn't it?'
Hankuk mal i əlyəpci yo?	'Korean is difficult, isn't it?'
Sənsəng in Mikuk salam ici yo?	'You are an American, aren't you?'

### Group 2

I kəs i muəs ici yo?	'What's this?'
Hakkyo ka əti e issci yo?	'Where is the school?'
Nuku lil mannassci yo?	'Whom did [you] meet?'
Myech-si e il il sicak-haci yo?	'(At) What time do [you] begin the work?'

Note that -ci yo may also occur as an informal polite final form of a statement, propositative or imperative sentence. We will learn more about it later.

3. -(1)l̥ə 'in order to-'

The verb ending -(1)l̥ə is added to an action verb stem, or to an action verb stem plus honorific suffix -(1)si: -l̥ə is added to a stem ending in a vowel and -il̥ə to a stem ending in a consonant. Tense suffixes do not occur in the inflected form ending in -(1)l̥ə. The (1)l̥ə form denotes that the following inflected expression in the same sentence occurs for the purpose of the action inflected by the -(1)l̥ə form. The verbs which follow the -(1)l̥ə form are usually ka- 'to go', o- 'to come', or tani- 'to attend'. Examples:

Na nin chæk (il) ilkil̥ə hakkyo e tillikess̥ə yo.	'I will stop by school to read books.'
Chinku lil mannal̥ə wassimnita.	'I came to meet a friend.'
Hankuk mal il p̥əul̥ə hakkyo e tanimnita.	'I am attending school to learn Korean.'
Chæk (il) sal̥ə sin̥ə e an kakes̥ə yo?	'Wouldn't you go downtown to buy books?'

## 4. Adverb phrases

In Unit 1 we learned that two or more nouns make up Noun Phrases, and that they occur as though they were one noun. Note that a noun phrase is used as a nominal. In Unit 5, we defined Adverbs. (See Grammar Notes 3, Unit 5.) If two or more words occur together and are used as if they were one adverb we shall call them Adverb Phrases. Hereafter, we shall use the term Adverbial for any word or phrase which occurs in a position where an adverb may be substituted. Note that some adverbials also occur as nominals but most adverbials are used only as adverbials. Nouns + particles are often used as adverb phrases. Example

## (a) Question Adverb Phrases:

ət̥i es̥ə	'from where ('from what place') or where ('at what place!')
ət̥i e } ət̥i lo }	'to (or toward) where ('to what place!')
ət̥i kkaci	'(as far as) where'
nuku wa	'with whom'
nuku eke	'(to) whom'
əlma e	'(for) how much ('at what price!')
əlma tongan	'(for) how long'
əlma na	'how (much)'
ənce kkaci	'until when'
ənce put̥h̥ə	'from (or since) when'
myech-si e	'(at) what time'

myæchil e	'(on) what date'
musin } tal e	'(in) what month'
ənɪ }	
musin } hæ e	'(in) what year'
ənɪ }	
musin yoil e	'(on) what day of the week'
myæch sikan tongan	'(for) how many hours'
myæch pun tongan	'(for) how many minutes'
myæchil tongan	'(for) how many days'
myæch tal tongan	'(for) how many months'
myæch nyæn } tongan	'(for) how many years'
myæch hæ }	

## (b) Time Adverb Phrases

achim e	'in the morning'
nac e	'at noon'
ohu e	'in the afternoon'
cənyək e	'in the evening'
pam e	'at night'
onil achim e	'this morning'
næll nac e	'tomorrow noon'
molæ ohu e	'in the afternoon of the day after tomorrow'
kilphi cənyək e	'in the evening of two days after tomorrow'
æce pam e	'last night'
i tal e	'this month'
i cuil e	'this week'
cinan cuil e	'last week'
cinan tal e	'last month'
talm hæ e	'next year'
talm tal e	'next month'
talm cuil e	'next week'

## DRILLS

## A. Substitution Drill

- |                               |                                    |
|-------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1. <u>Myæch-si</u> imnikka?   | What time is [it]?                 |
| 2. <u>Myæchil</u> imnikka?    | What date is [it]?                 |
| *3. <u>Musin hæ</u> imnikka?  | What year is [this]?               |
| 4. <u>Musin yoil</u> imnikka? | What day (of the week) is [it]?    |
| 5. <u>Musin tal</u> imnikka?  | What month is [it]?                |
| 6. <u>æni cuil</u> imnikka?   | Which week (of the month) is [it]? |
| *7. <u>Musin nal</u> imnikka? | What date }<br>What day } is [it]? |
| 8. <u>ænce</u> imnikka?       | When will it be?                   |

## B. Substitution Drill

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. Onil i myæchil ici yo?                    | What's the date today?                      |
| 2. <u>Næil</u> (i) myæchil ici yo?           | What's the date tomorrow?                   |
| 3. <u>Mole</u> (ka) myæchil ici yo?          | What's the date the day after tomorrow?     |
| 4. <u>Kilphi</u> (ka) myæchil ici yo?        | What's the date two days after tomorrow?    |
| 5. <u>æce</u> (ka) myæchil ici yo?           | What was the date yesterday?                |
| 6. <u>Kicække</u> (ka) myæchil ici yo?       | What was the date the day before yesterday? |
| 7. <u>Ki cæn nal</u> (i) myæchil ici yo?     | What was the date the day before that?      |
| 8. <u>Næil</u> (i) myæchil ici yo?           | What is the date tomorrow?                  |
| 9. <u>Næil</u> (i) <u>musin yoil</u> ici yo? | What day (of the week) is it tomorrow?      |
| 10. <u>Næil</u> (i) <u>musin nal</u> ici yo? | What day is it tomorrow?                    |



## C. Substitution Drill

- |                                    |                     |
|------------------------------------|---------------------|
| 1. Onil in <u>Suyoil</u> imnita.   | Today is Wednesday. |
| *2. Onil in <u>Welyoil</u> imnita. | Today is Monday.    |
| *3. Onil in <u>Hwayoil</u> imnita. | Today is Tuesday.   |
| *4. Onil in <u>Mokyoil</u> imnita. | Today is Thursday.  |
| *5. Onil in <u>Kimyoil</u> imnita. | Today is Friday.    |
| *6. Onil in <u>Thoyoil</u> imnita. | Today is Saturday.  |
| *7. Onil in <u>Ilyoil</u> imnita.  | Today is Sunday.    |
| 8. Onil in <u>Suyoil</u> imnita.   | Today is Wednesday. |

## D. Substitution Drill

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. <u>Cikim</u> i <u>myeoch-si</u> imnikka?         | What time is it now?                    |
| 2. <u>Onil</u> (i) <u>myeochil</u> imnikka?         | What date is it today?                  |
| *3. <u>Kimnyen</u> (i) <u>musin hae</u> imnikka?    | What year is it this year?              |
| *4. <u>I hae</u> (ka) <u>musin hae</u> imnikka?     | What year is it this year?              |
| 5. <u>aece</u> (ka) <u>musin yoil</u> imnikka?      | What day of the week was yesterday?     |
| 6. <u>I tal</u> (i) <u>musin tal</u> imnikka?       | What month is this month?               |
| *7. <u>Cinan tal</u> (i) <u>musin tal</u> imnikka?  | What month was last month?              |
| 8. <u>Naeil</u> (i) <u>musin nal</u> imnikka?       | What day is tomorrow?                   |
| 9. <u>ence</u> (ka) <u>Suyoil</u> imnikka?          | When is Wednesday?                      |
| *10. <u>Cangnyen</u> (i) <u>musin hae</u> imnikka?  | What year was last year?                |
| 11. <u>I cuil</u> (i) <u>eni cuil</u> imnikka?      | Which week (of the month) is this week? |
| *12. <u>Naenyen</u> (i) <u>musin hae</u> imnikka?   | What year is next year?                 |
| *13. <u>Taim hae</u> (ka) <u>musin hae</u> imnikka? | What year is next year?                 |
| *14. <u>Taim tal</u> (i) <u>eni tal</u> imnikka?    | What month is next month?               |
| *15. <u>Taim cuil</u> (i) <u>eni cuil</u> imnikka?  | Which week of the month is next week?   |

## E. Substitution Drill

- |  |                             |
|--|-----------------------------|
| 1. Onil in Il-wel il il imnita.                | Today is January first.     |
| 2. Onil in <u>I-wel i il</u> imnita.           | Today is February second.   |
| 3. Onil in <u>Sam-wel sam il</u> imnita.       | Today is March third.       |
| 4. Onil in <u>Sa-wel sa il</u> imnita.         | Today is April fourth.      |
| 5. Onil in <u>O-wel o il</u> imnita.           | Today is May fifth.         |
| 6. Onil in <u>Yu-wel yuk il</u> imnita.        | Today is June sixth.        |
| 7. Onil in <u>Chil-wel chil il</u> imnita.     | Today is July seventh.      |
| 8. Onil in <u>Phal-wel phal il</u> imnita.     | Today is August eight.      |
| 9. Onil in <u>Ku-wel ku il</u> imnita.         | Today is September ninth.   |
| 10. Onil in <u>Si-wel sip il</u> imnita.       | Today is October tenth.     |
| 11. Onil in <u>Sipil-wel sip-il il</u> imnita. | Today is November eleventh. |
| 12. Onil in <u>Sipi-wel sip-i il</u> imnita.   | Today is December twelveth. |

## F. Substitution Drill

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Cikim in yetelp-si imnita.                     | It is 8 o'clock now.                       |
| 2. <u>Onil</u> (in) <u>Welyoil</u> imnita.        | Today is Monday.                           |
| 3. <u>Næil</u> (in) <u>Hwayoil</u> imnita.        | Tomorrow is Tuesday.                       |
| 4. <u>Mole</u> (nin) <u>Suyoil</u> imnita.        | The day after tomorrow is Wednesday.       |
| 5. <u>Cikim</u> (in) <u>Sam-wel</u> imnita.       | Now it's March.                            |
| 6. <u>æce</u> (nin) <u>Ilyoil</u> imnita.         | Yesterday was Sunday.                      |
| 7. <u>Kicække</u> (nin) <u>isip il</u> imnita.    | The day before yesterday was the 20th.     |
| 8. <u>Kilphi</u> (nin) <u>I-wel il il</u> imnita. | Two days after tomorrow is February first. |

## G. Substitution Drill

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. Myæch-si e il i sicak-hamnikka?          | What time do you start work?<br>(!What time does your work begin?!) |
| 2. <u>Myæchil</u> e il i sicak-hamnikka?    | What date will you start work?                                      |
| 3. <u>Musin yoil</u> e il i sicak-hamnikka? | What day (of the week) will you start work?                         |
| 4. <u>æni cuil</u> e il i sicak-hamnikka?   | Which week (of the month) will you start work?                      |
| 5. <u>Musin tal</u> e il i sicak-hamnikka?  | What month will you start work?                                     |
| 6. <u>Musin nal</u> e il i sicak-hamnikka?  | What day will you start work?                                       |

- |  |                                    |
|--|------------------------------------|
| 7. <u>ence il i</u> sicak-hamnikka?          | When will you start work?          |
| 8. <u>ence hakkyo (ka)</u> sicak-hamnikka?   | When does school start?            |
| 9. <u>ence kongpu (ka)</u> sicak-hamnikka?   | When will your studies begin?      |
| 10. <u>ence hyuka (ka)</u> sicak-hamnikka?   | When does your vacation begin?     |
| *11. <u>ence samu (ka)</u> sicak-hamnikka?   | When is your office going to open? |
| *12. <u>ence panghak (i)</u> sicak-hamnikka? | When does (school) vacation begin? |
| *13. <u>ence suæp (i)</u> sicak-hamnikka?    | When does the class begin?         |
| *14. <u>ence suæp (i) kkith-namnikka?</u>    | When does the class end?           |
| *15. <u>ence suæp (i) kkith-nassimnikka?</u> | When was the class over?           |

## H. Substitution Drill

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. <u>Yætæl-si</u> e sicak-hamnita.              | [It] begins at 8 o'clock.                    |
| 2. <u>Phal pun</u> e sicak-hamnita.              | [It] begins in 8 minutes.                    |
| 3. <u>Phal il</u> e sicak-hamnita.               | [It] begins on the 8th.                      |
| 4. <u>Phal-wæl</u> e sicak-hamnita.              | [It] begins in August.                       |
| 5. <u>Yætæl(p)-si pan</u> e sicak-hamnita.       | [It] begins at 8:30.                         |
| 6. <u>Achim ilkop-si</u> e sicak-hamnita.        | [It] begins at 7 in the morning.             |
| 7. <u>Cenyæk yæsæs-si</u> e sicak-hamnita.       | [It] begins at 6 in the evening.             |
| 8. <u>Ohu tasæs-si pan</u> e sicak-hamnita.      | [It] begins at 5:30 in the afternoon.        |
| 9. <u>Suyoil pam ahop-si</u> e sicak-hamnita.    | [It] begins at 9 o'clock in Wednesday night. |
| 10. <u>Tasæs-si sip pun cæn</u> e sicak-hamnita. | [It] begins at 10 minutes to 5 o'clock.      |

## I. Substitution Drill

- |   |                           |
|---|---------------------------|
| 1. K1 salam in <u>il-halæ</u> kassimnita.               | He went to work.          |
| 2. K1 salam in <u>Kongpu-halæ</u> kassimnita.           | He went to study.         |
| 3. K1 salam in <u>chæk (il) salæ</u> kassimnita.        | He went to buy a book.    |
| 4. K1 salam in <u>Hankuk mal (il) pæulæ</u> kassimnita. | He went to learn Korean.  |
| 5. K1 salam in <u>chinku (il) mannalæ</u> kassimnita.   | He went to meet a friend. |
| 6. K1 salam in <u>il (il) chacilæ</u> kassimnita.       | He went to find a job.    |

- |   |                                  |
|---|----------------------------------|
| 7. K1 salam in <u>kil (11) mulə polə</u><br>kassimnita.     | He went to ask directions.       |
| 8. K1 salam in <u>chæk (11) ilkilə</u><br>kassimnita.       | He went to read books.           |
| 9. K1 salam in <u>hyuka (111) patilə</u><br>kassimnita.     | He's gone to ask for a vacation. |
| 10. K1 salam in <u>Yəngə (111) kalichilə</u><br>kassimnita. | He went to teach English.        |
| 11. K1 salam in Yəngə (111) kalichilə<br><u>wassimnita.</u> | He came to teach English.        |
| 12. K1 salam in Yəngə (111) kalichilə<br><u>omnita.</u>     | He comes to teach English.       |

## J. Substitution Drill

- |   |                                    |
|---|------------------------------------|
| 1. I cuil e il-hæssimnita.              | [We] worked this week.             |
| 2. <u>I tal</u> e il-hæssimnita.        | [We] worked this month.            |
| 3. <u>Cinan tal</u> e il-hæssimnita.    | [We] worked last month.            |
| 4. <u>Cinan cuil</u> e il-hæssimnita.   | [We] worked last week.             |
| 5. <u>Cinan hæ</u> e il-hæssimnita.     | [We] worked last year.             |
| 6. <u>Cinan Suyoil</u> e il-hæssimnita. | [We] worked last Wednesday.        |
| 7. <u>Onil achim</u> e il-hæssimnita.   | [We] worked this morning.          |
| 8. <u>Onil cənyək</u> e il-hæssimnita.  | [We] worked this evening.          |
| 9. <u>Onil pam</u> e il-hæssimnita.     | [We] worked tonight.               |
| 10. <u>Onil ohu</u> e il-hæssimnita.    | [We] worked this afternoon.        |
| 11. <u>əce pam</u> e il-hæssimnita.     | [We] worked last night.            |
| 12. <u>əce nac</u> e il-hæssimnita.     | [We] worked yesterday at noontime. |

## K. Substitution Drill

- |   |                                 |
|---|---------------------------------|
| 1. ənce Hankuk mal il pəwæssimnikka?                    | When did [you] study Korean?    |
| *2. <u>Nuka</u> Hankuk mal il pəwæssimnikka?            | Who studied Korean?             |
| 3. <u>əti esə</u> Hankuk mal il pəwæssimnikka?          | Where did [you] study Korean?   |
| *4. <u>Wə</u> Hankuk mal il pəwæssimnikka?              | Why did [you] study Korean?     |
| 5. <u>Myəch salam 1</u> Hankuk mal il<br>pəwæssimnikka? | How many people studied Korean? |

6. elma e Hankuk mal il pæwæssimnikka? How much did you pay for studying Korean?
7. ettæhkhe Hankuk mal il pæwæssimnikka? How did you study Korean?
- \*8. Nuku wa Hankuk mal il pæwæssimnikka? With whom did you study Korean?
- \*9. elma tongan Hankuk mal il pæwæssimnikka? How long did you study Korean?
- \*10. Myæchil tongan Hankuk mal il pæwæssimnikka? How many days have you studied Korean?
- \*11. Myæch sikan tongan Hankuk mal il pæwæssimnikka? How many hours have you studied Korean?
- \*12. Myæch cuil tongan Hankuk mal il pæwæssimnikka? How many weeks have you studied Korean?
- \*13. Myæch tal tongan Hankuk mal il pæwæssimnikka? How many months have you studied Korean?

## L. Substitution Drill

1. Sahl tongan cip esæ swiæssimnita. I stayed ('rested') at home for three days.
2. Se sikan tongan cip esæ swiæssimnita. I stayed at home for three hours.
3. Sam pun tongan cip esæ swiæssimnita. I stayed at home for three minutes.
4. Se cuil tongan cip esæ swiæssimnita. I stayed at home for three weeks.
5. Sam cuil tongan cip esæ swiæssimnita. I stayed at home for three weeks.
- \*6. Sæk cuil tongan cip esæ swiæssimnita. I stayed at home for three weeks.
- \*7. Sæk tal tongan cip esæ swiæssimnita. I stayed at home for three months.
8. Sam nyæn tongan cip esæ swiæssimnita. I stayed at home for three years.
9. Yelæ nal tongan cip esæ swiæssimnita. I stayed at home for several days.
10. Se sikan pan tongan cip esæ swiæssimnita. I stayed at home for three hours and a half.
11. Se cuil pan tongan cip esæ swiæssimnita. I stayed at home for three weeks and a half.
12. Sæk tal pan tongan cip esæ swiæssimnita. I stayed at home for three months and a half.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 13. <u>Ne cuil pan</u> tongan cip esə<br>swiəssimnita.   | I stayed at home for four weeks and<br>a half. |
| 14. <u>Sa cuil pan</u> tongan cip esə<br>swiəssimnita.   | I stayed at home for four weeks and<br>a half. |
| *15. <u>Nək cuil pan</u> tongan cip esə<br>swiəssimnita. | I stayed at home for four weeks and<br>a half. |

## M. Substitution Drill

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| *1. (Cə nin) Səul e <u>halu</u> tongan<br>issəssimnita.        | I was ( <u>or</u> stayed) in Seoul for one<br>day. |
| *2. (Cə nin) Səul e <u>ithil</u> tongan<br>issəssimnita.       | I was in Seoul for two days.                       |
| 3. (Cə nin) Səul e <u>sahil</u> tongan<br>issəssimnita.        | I was in Seoul for three days.                     |
| *4. (Cə nin) Səul e <u>nahil</u> tongan<br>issəssimnita.       | I was in Seoul for four days.                      |
| *5. (Cə nin) Səul e <u>tassə</u> tongan<br>issəssimnita.       | I was in Seoul for five days.                      |
| *6. (Cə nin) Səul e <u>yəssə</u> tongan<br>issəssimnita.       | I was in Seoul for six days.                       |
| *7. (Cə nin) Səul e <u>ile</u> tongan<br>issəssimnita.         | I was in Seoul for seven days.                     |
| *8. (Cə nin) Səul e <u>yətile</u> tongan<br>issəssimnita.      | I was in Seoul for eight days.                     |
| *9. (Cə nin) Səul e <u>ahile</u> tongan<br>issəssimnita.       | I was in Seoul for nine days.                      |
| *10. (Cə nin) Səul e <u>yelhil</u> tongan<br>issəssimnita.     | I was in Seoul for ten days.                       |
| *11. (Cə nin) Səul e <u>yel-halu</u> tongan<br>issəssimnita.   | I was in Seoul for eleven days.                    |
| *12. (Cə nin) Səul e yel-halu tongan<br><u>məmuləssimnita.</u> | I stayed in Seoul for eleven days.                 |

## N. Substitution Drill

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. Səul e halu tongan issəsimnita.                             | [I] stayed in Seoul for one day.                   |
| 2. <u>Wəshingthon</u> e <u>ithil</u> tongan<br>issəsimnita.    | [I] stayed in Washington for two days.             |
| 3. <u>Ilpon</u> e <u>sahlil</u> tongan issəsimnita.            | [I] stayed in Japan for three days.                |
| 4. <u>Pusan</u> e <u>nahil</u> tongan issəsimnita.             | [I] stayed in Pusan for four days.                 |
| 5. <u>Inchən</u> e <u>tassə</u> tongan issəsimnita.            | [I] stayed in Inchon for five days.                |
| 6. <u>Mikuk</u> e <u>yəssə</u> tongan issəsimnita.             | [I] stayed in America for six days.                |
| 7. <u>Cungkuk</u> e <u>ile</u> tongan issəsimnita.             | [I] stayed in China for seven days.                |
| 8. <u>Yəngkuk</u> e <u>yətile</u> tongan issəsimnita.          | [I] stayed in England for eight days.              |
| 9. <u>Nam-Han</u> e <u>ahile</u> tongan issəsimnita.           | [I] stayed in South-Korea for nine days.           |
| 10. <u>Puk-Han</u> e <u>yelhil</u> tongan<br>issəsimnita.      | [I] stayed in North-Korean for ten days.           |
| 11. <u>Nyuyok</u> e <u>yəl-halu</u> tongan<br>issəsimnita.     | [I] stayed in New York for eleven days.            |
| 12. <u>Tokil</u> e <u>yəl-sahlil</u> tongan<br>issəsimnita.    | [I] stayed in Germany for thirteen days.           |
| 13. <u>Pullansə</u> e <u>yəl-tassə</u> tongan<br>issəsimnita.  | [I] stayed in France for fifteen days.             |
| 14. <u>Ssolyen</u> e <u>yəl-ile</u> tongan<br>issəsimnita.     | [I] stayed in the Soviet Union for seventeen days. |
| *15. <u>Kulapha</u> e <u>yəl-ahile</u> tongan<br>issəsimnita.  | [I] stayed in Europe for nineteen days.            |
| *16. <u>Nammi</u> e <u>simu nal</u> tongan issəsimnita.        | [I] stayed in South America for twenty days.       |
| *17. <u>Ithæli</u> e <u>simu-halu</u> tongan<br>issəsimnita.   | [I] stayed in Italy for twenty-one days.           |
| *18. <u>Wellam</u> e <u>simu-ithil</u> tongan<br>issəsimnita.  | [I] stayed in Vietnam for twenty-two days.         |
| *19. <u>Thækuk</u> e <u>simu-sahlil</u> tongan<br>issəsimnita. | [I] stayed in Thailand for twenty-three days.      |
| *20. <u>Hwalan</u> e <u>simu-nahlil</u> tongan<br>issəsimnita. | [I] stayed in Holland for twenty-four days.        |
| *21. <u>Hocu</u> e <u>simu-tassə</u> tongan<br>issəsimnita.    | [I] stayed in Australia for twenty-five days.      |
| *22. <u>Into</u> e <u>simu-yəssə</u> tongan<br>issəsimnita.    | [I] stayed in India for twenty-six days.           |
| *23. <u>Təman</u> e <u>simu-ile</u> tongan issəsimnita.        | [I] stayed in Taiwan for twenty-seven days.        |

## 0. Response Drill

Tutor: Cikim myəch-si imnikka? /yəl-si pan/	'What time is it now?' /10:30/
Student: Yəl-si pan imnita.	'[It]'s 10:30.'
1. Onil i myəchil imnikka? /O il/	O il imnita.
2. Myəch-si e il i sicak-hamnikka? /ahop-si/	Ahop si e sicak-hamnita.
3. əce ka musin yoil iəssimnikka? /Mokyoil/	Mokyoil iəssimnita.
4. ənce hakkyo ka kkith-namnikka? /ohu tasəs-si/	Ohu tasəs-si e kkith-namnita.
5. Myəch sikan tongan il (il) hamnikka? /yətəl(p) sikan/	Yətəl(p) sikan tongan il hamnita.
6. Sənsəng in musin yoil e sicang e kamnikka? /Thoyoil/	Thoyoil e sicang e kamnita.
7. əlma tongan Hankuk mal il pəwəssimnikka? /tu tal/	Tu tal tongan (Hankuk mal il) pəwəssimnita.
8. Myəch salam i Hankuk mal il mal- hamnikka? /yələ salam/	Yələ salam i mal-hamnita.
9. Onil in myəch-si e cip e kamnikka? /ohu ne-si/	Ohu ne-si e (cip e) kamnita.
10. əni tal e Hankuk mal kongpu ka sicak-həssimnikka? /Chil-wəl/	Chil-wəl e sicak-həssimnita.
11. ənce hyuka lil patkəssimnikka? /taim tal/	Taim tal e (hyuka lil) patkəssimnita.
12. Onil cənyək e nuku lil mannakəssimnikka? /chinku/	Chinku lil mannakəssimnita.



P. Response Exercise (Answer the question in Informal Polite Speech based on reality.)

Tutor: Yocim muəs hase yo?

'What are you doing these days?'

Student: Təsakwan esə il-hæ yo.

'I'm working at the Embassy.'

1. Onil i myəchil iye yo?
2. əce ka musin yoil iyəsə yo?
3. ənce Hankuk mal kongpu sicak-həsə yo?
4. Halu e myəch sikan Hankuk mal il pəuse yo?
5. Sənsəng in əlma toŋan təsakwan esə il-həsə yo?
6. Musin yoil e təkə sicang e kase yo?
7. Nuka Hankuk mal il kalichyə yo?
8. Haksəng i myəch salam issə yo?
9. Sənsəng e yangpok əlma e sassə yo?
10. əlma tongan Hankuk e issəsə yo?
11. Myəch-si e samusil e tillikəsə yo?

Q. Grammar Drill (Change the sentence ending -(i)mnikka? to -ci yo?)

Tutor: Onil i myəchil imnikka?

'What's the date today?'

Student: Onil i myəchil ici yo?

'What's the date today?'

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Muəs il cohahamnikka?                    | Muəs il cohahaci yo?                   |
| 2. Nuka Hankuk mal il kalichimnikka?        | Nuka Hankuk mal il kalichici yo?       |
| 3. ənce hakkyo ka sicak-hamnikka?           | ənce hakkyo ka sicak-haci yo?          |
| 4. Myəch-si e il i kkith-namnikka?          | Myəch-si e il i kkith-naci yo?         |
| 5. əni sangcəm esə sikye lil phamnikka?     | əni sangcəm esə sikye lil phalci yo?   |
| 6. K1 kutu, əlma e sassimnikka?             | K1 kutu, əlma e sassci yo?             |
| 7. əlma tongan Hankuk mal il pəwəssimnikka? | əlma tongan Hankuk mal il pəwəssci yo? |
| 8. əce ka musin yoil iəssimnikka?           | əce ka musin yoil iəssci yo?           |
| 9. Sənsəng in əni nala esə wassimnikka?     | Sənsəng in əni nala esə wassci yo?     |
| 10. Tangsin in musin nala e kamnikka?       | Tangsin in musin nala e kaci yo?       |

## R. Transformation Drill (based on Grammar Note 2)

Tutor: Yetel(p)-si e il i sicak-hamnita. '[I] start work at 8 o'clock.' ('The work begins at eight o'clock.')

Student: Yetel(p)-si e il i sicak-haci yo? 'You start work at 8 o'clock, don't you?' ('The work begins at 8, doesn't it?')

- |   |                                     |
|---|-------------------------------------|
| 1. Tasəs-si e cip e kamnita.            | Tasəs-si e cip kaci yo?             |
| 2. Təsakwan i məmnita.                  | Təsakwan i məlci yo?                |
| 3. Mom i aphimnita.                     | Mom i aphici yo?                    |
| 4. Yetel(p) sikan il il hamnita.        | Yetel(p) sikan il il haci yo?       |
| 5. Onil i Sam-wəl il il imnita.         | Onil i Sam-wəl il il ici yo?        |
| 6. Kiləhsimnita.                        | Kiləhci yo?                         |
| 7. Ceimsi Sənsəng il asimnita.          | Ceimsi Sənsəng il asici yo?         |
| 8. Pak Sənsəng il molisimnita.          | Pak Sənsəng il molisici yo?         |
| 9. Taim tal e hyuka lil patsimnita.     | Taim tal e hyuka lil patci yo?      |
| 10. Yəki esə son-sukən il phamnita.     | Yəki esə son-sukən il phalci yo?    |
| 11. Chæk kaps i pissamnita.             | Chæk kaps i pissaci yo?             |
| 12. Ki ica ka kwəanchanhsimnita.        | Ki ica ka kwəanchanhci yo?          |
| 13. Kim Sənsəng e samusil e tillimnita. | Kim Sənsəng e samusil e tillici yo? |
| 14. Kkaman sək il cohahamnita.          | Kkaman sək il cohahaci yo?          |

## S. Combination Drill (based on Grammar Note 3)

Tutor. Na nin hakkyo e kamnita. Kongpu-hamnita. 'I['m] go[ing] to school.' 'I['m] study[ing].'

Student. Na nin hakkyo e kongpu-halə kamnita. 'I['m] go[ing] (to school) to study.'

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. Na nin samusil e kamnita. Il-hamnita.                      | Na nin (samusil e) il-halə kamnita.               |
| 2. Na nin pəkhwacəm e kamnita. Chæk il samnita.               | Na nin (pəkhwacəm e) chæk il salə kamnita.        |
| 3. Na nin kyosil e kamnita. Chæk il ilksimnita.               | Na nin (kyosil e) chæk il ilkilə kamnita.         |
| 4. Na nin cəngkəcang e kamnita. Chinku Chinku lil mannamnita. | Na nin (cəngkəcang e) chinku lil mannalə kamnita. |
| 5. Na nin hakkyo e kamnita. Hankuk mal il pəumnita.           | Na nin (hakkyo e) Hankuk mal il pəulə kamnita.    |

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 6. Na nin cikim cip e kamnita.<br>Swimnita.                 | Na nin cikim cip e swilə kamnita.                      |
| 7. Na nin sinə e kamnita. Chinku e<br>samusil e tillimnita. | Na nin (sinə e) chinku e samusil e<br>tillilə kamnita. |
| 8. Na nin tapang e kamnita. Cha lll<br>masimnita.           | Na nin (tapang e) cha lll masilə<br>kamnita.           |

T. Response Exercise (Answer the questions based on reality.)

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Cikim myəch-si imnikka?                      | 'What time is it?'                           |
| 2. Onil i myəchil imnikka?                      | 'What's the day today?'                      |
| 3. Cikim in musin tal imnikka?                  | 'What month is it (now)?'                    |
| 4. Onil i musin yoil imnikka?                   | 'What day of the week is it today?'          |
| 5. Myəch-si e il i sicak-hamnikka?              | 'What time do you start working?'            |
| 6. Myəch-si e hakkyo ka kkith-namnikka?         | 'What tome does the school end?'             |
| 7. ənce Hankuk e kasimnikka?                    | 'When are you going to Korea?'               |
| 8. əlma tongan Hankuk mal il<br>pəwəssimnikka?  | 'How long have you studied Korean?'          |
| 9. Musin yoil e sicang e kamnikka?              | 'What (week)day do you go to the market?'    |
| 10. Halu e myəch sikan tongan il-<br>hamnikka?  | 'How many hours a day do you work?'          |
| 11. əlma tongan Hankuk e kyesyessimnikka?       | 'How long have you been in Korea?'           |
| 12. Myəch tal tongan Səul e<br>isskessimnikka?  | 'How many months will you stay in<br>Korea?' |
| 13. Myəch nyən tongan Səul e<br>isskessimnikka? | 'How many years will you stay in<br>Seoul?'  |

U. Response Drill (Use ccim in the proper place in your answer.)

- Tutor:  ence il il sicak-hamnikka?                    'When will you start work?' /the 5th/  
          /o il/
- Student:  O il ccim sicak-hamnita.                    'I begin work around the fifth.'
1.  elma tongan Səul e isskessimnikka?            Han tal ccim isskessimnita.  
      /han tal/
  2.  Musin yoil e pəkhwacəm e kakessə yo?        Kimyoil ccim (pəkhwacəm e) kakessə yo.  
      /Kimyoil/
  3.  Myəch tal tongan Hankuk mal il                Yəsəs tal ccim pəəəssə yo.  
      pəəwəssə yo? /yəsəs tal/
  4.  Myəch-si e cip il ttənamnikka?                Ahop-si ccim ttənamnita.  
      /ahop-si/
  5.  əni tal e Hankuk mal kongpu ka                Taim tal ccim kkith-namnita.  
      kkith-namnikka? /taim tal/
  6.  Myəch sikan tongan il il hamnikka?            Təkəə ahop sikan ccim il il hamnita.  
      /təkəə ahop sikan/
  7.  Myəchil tongan hyuka lil                        Yəlhil ccim (hyuka lil) patəssimnita.  
      patəssimnikka? /yəlhil/
  8.  Myəch-si e tapang e tillikessə yo?            Cənyək ilkop-si ccim tillikessə yo.  
      /cənyək ilkop-si/

## V. Response Drill

- Tutor:  I tal i Sam-wəl iye yo.                        'This (month) is March.'
- Student:  Pəlsə Sam-wəl imnikka?                'Is [it] already March?'
- Tutor:  Ne, kiləhsimnita.                            'Yes, it is.'
1.  Hakkyo ka sicak-həssə yo.                        Pəlsə sicak-həssimnikka?  
      Ne, kiləhsimnita.
  2.  Il i kkith-nassə yo.                                Pəlsə kkith-nassimnikka?  
      Ne, kiləhsimnita.
  3.  Cə nin ki il il kkith-nəssə yo.                Pəlsə kkith-nəssimnikka?  
      Ne, kiləhsimnita.
  4.  Pihəngki ka ttənassə yo.                        Pəlsə ttənassimnikka?  
      Ne, kiləhsimnita.
  5.  Kicha ka han-si e tahassə yo.                Pəlsə tahassimnikka?  
      Ne, kiləhsimnita.

- |   |                          |
|---|--------------------------|
| 6. Cə nin pəlsə məkəssə yo.<br>Ne, kiləhsimnita.  | Pəlsə məkəssimnikka?     |
| 7. Onil i Kimyoil iye yo.<br>Ne, kiləhsimnita.    | Pəlsə Kimyoil imnikka?   |
| 8. Hakkyo ka kkith-nassə yo.<br>Ne, kiləhsimnita. | Pəlsə kkith-nassimnikka? |

## W. Response Drill

Tutor: Hakkyo ka pəlsə sicak-  
həssimnikka?

'Has the school already started?'

Student: Aniyo, acik sicak-haci  
anhəssimnita.

'No, it hasn't started yet.'

- |   |                                   |
|---|-----------------------------------|
| 1. Ppesi ka pəlsə ttənassimnikka?                     | Aniyo, acik ttənaci anhəssimnita. |
| 2. I tal i pəlsə Sa-wəl imnikka?                      | Aniyo, acik Sa-wəl i an imnita.   |
| 3. Pihəngki ka pəlsə tahassimnikka?                   | Aniyo, acik tahci anhəssimnita.   |
| 4. Pəlsə məkəssimnikka?                               | Aniyo, acik məkci anhəssimnita.   |
| 5. Achim sinmun il pəlsə ilkəssimnikka?               | Aniyo, acik ilkeci anhəssimnita.  |
| 6. Hyuka lil pəlsə patəssimnikka?                     | Aniyo, acik patci anhəssimnita.   |
| 7. Hankuk mal sənsəng il pəlsə<br>mannassimnikka?     | Aniyo, acik mannaci anhəssimnita. |
| 8. Catongcha lil pəlsə sassimnikka?                   | Aniyo, acik saci anhəssimnita.    |
| 9. Ki chək il Ceimsi eke cuəssimnikka?                | Aniyo, acik cuci anhəssimnita.    |
| 10. Ki yənphil il Kim Sənsəng eke<br>tilliəssimnikka? | Aniyo, acik tillici anhəssimnita. |

## EXERCISES

1. Pak Sensaeng has asked what time it is. Give the following answers.
  - a. It's 8 o'clock.
  - b. It's 8:25.
  - c. It's 5 after 9.
  - d. It's 7:35.
  - e. It's 20 before 10.
  - f. It's a quarter to three.
  - g. It's about 2:30.
  - h. It's 6:28 in the morning.
  - i. It's 4 in the afternoon.
  - j. It's 7:43 in the evening.
  - k. It's 2 minutes after 10 at night.
2. Using a paper clock, practice asking and answering questions on time.
3. Using a calendar, practice asking and answering questions pertaining to dates, months and days of the week.
4. Ask Kim Sensaeng the following questions:
  1. What time it is now.
  2. What date it is today.
  3. What day of the week it is today.
  4. What year this is.
  5. What year last year was.
  6. What month last month was.
  7. What month next month will be.
  8. What year next year will be.
  9. What month this month is.
  10. What day tomorrow will be.
  11. What time he starts working in the morning.
  12. How many hours he works a day.
  13. How long he has been in America.
  14. How long he has taught Korean.
  15. How many days a week he comes to school.
  16. How many weeks the students have studied Korean.
  17. How many months the students will be in Washington.
  18. How many years he has lived in Washington.

5. Instructor says that he bought things at the following prices; the student repeats after the instructor with the book closed.

- |          |            |
|----------|------------|
| 1. W 56  | 16. W 813  |
| 2. W 72  | 17. W1,390 |
| 3. W 69  | 18. W2,917 |
| 4. W 91  | 19. W3,027 |
| 5. W 35  | 20. W4,014 |
| 6. W 98  | 21. W7,878 |
| 7. W 79  | 22. W3,427 |
| 8. W126  | 23. W4,592 |
| 9. W254  | 24. W4,760 |
| 10. W348 | 25. W8,352 |
| 11. W473 | 26. W7,265 |
| 12. W627 | 27. W6,327 |
| 13. W565 | 28. W5,279 |
| 14. W758 | 29. W9,822 |
| 15. W893 | 30. W6,789 |

## 제 7 과 시간(계속)

오셨습니까

1. 박 : 제임스 선생, 언제 한국에 오셨습니까?

이년, 두 해

전에

이년 전에, 두 해 전에

2. 제임스 : 이년 전에 왔습니다.

그 전

그 전에는

무슨 일

3. 박 : 아, 그러세요? 그 전에는 무슨 일을  
했습니까?

그 전에도

외교관으로

4. 제임스 : 그 전에도 외교관으로 있었습니다.

이번

처음

5. 박 : 이번이 한국에 처음인가요?

두 번

두 번째

왔습니다



## UNIT 7. Time (Continued)

## BASIC DIALOGUE FOR MEMORIZATION

Park

- osiæssimnikka  
1. Ceimsi Sænsæng, ænce Hankuk e  
osiæssimnikka?

did [you] come?

When did you come to Korea, Mr. James?

James

tu hæ }  
i nyæn }  
cæn e  
i nyæn } cæn e  
tu hæ }

two years

before; previously; ago

two years ago

2. I nyæn cæn e wassimnita.

(I came) two years ago.

Park

- ki cæn  
ki cæn e nin  
musin il  
3. A kilæse yo? Ki cæn e nin musin  
il il hæssimnikka?

before that; the previous time

before then

what kind of job

(Oh, is that so?) What did you do before that? ('What kind of work did you do before then?')

James

- ki cæn e to  
wekyokwan ilo  
4. Ki cæn e to wekyokwan ilo  
issæssimnita.

before that time also

as a diplomat

I was in the foreign service before, too. ('I exited as a diplomat before that time, too.')

Park

- i pæn  
chæim  
5. I pæn i Hankuk e chæim in ka yo?

this time

first; the first time

Is the [your] first time in Korea?

6. 제임스 : 아니지요. 이번이 두 번 째입니다.  
전에도 왔었습니다.

그 때

그 때에

무엇하러

7. 박 : 그 때에는 무엇하러 왔었어요?

천구백오십 일 년

군대

8. 제임스 : 그 때는 천구백오십 일 년이었습니다.  
나는 그 때에 군대에 있었습니다.

언제 즈음

돌아 가세요

9. 박 : 언제 즈음 미국에 돌아 가세요?

후에

한 달 후에

떠나려고 합니다

10. 제임스 : 한 달 후에 떠나려고 합니다.

무엇으로

11. 박 : 무엇으로 가시겠어요?

배

배로

가기가 합니다

James

- tu pen twice  
 tu pen ccæ the second time; for the second time  
 wassæssimnita [I] came; [I] had come
6. An ici yo. I pen i tu pen ccæ No, this is my second time. I've  
 imnita. Cæn e to wassæssimnita. been here before. ('I came before,  
 too.')

Park

- ki ttæ that time  
 ki ttæ e at that time  
 muæs hale to do what?; what for?
7. K1 ttæ e nin muæs hale wassæssæ What were you doing here then?  
 yo? ('What for did you come at that  
 time?')

James

- chæn-kupæk-osip-il nyæn the year 1951  
 kuntæ military
8. K1 ttæ nin chæn-kupæk-osip-il That was 1951. I was in the service.  
 nyæn iyæssimnita. Na nin ki ('I was in the military at that  
 ttæ e kuntæ e issæssimnita. time.')

Park

- ænce ccim about when  
 tola kase yo do [you] go back?
9. ænce ccim Mikuk e tola kase yo? When are [you] going back to America?

James

- hu e later; afterward  
 han tal hu e one month later  
 ttænalyeko hamnita [I]'m going to leave
10. Han tal hu e ttænalyeko hamnita. I'm going to leave in a month (from  
 now.)

Park

- muæs ilo by what means
11. Muæs ilo kasikesse yo? How are you going? ('By what means  
 will you go?')

12. 제임스 : 이번에는 배로 가가 합니다.
- 지난 번  
비행기
13. 박 : 지난 번에 비행기로 왔어요?
- 했습니다
14. 제임스 : 예, 비행기를 했습니다.
- 한국에서  
미국까지  
얼마나  
걸립니까
15. 박 : 한국에서 미국까지 (시간이) 얼마나 걸립니까?
- 스무 날  
섭흔 시간 쯤
16. 제임스 : 배로는 대개 스무 날 걸립니다. 그리고,  
비행기로는 섭흔 시간 쯤 걸립니다.

James

- pæ  
pæ lo  
kal kka hamnita
12. I pən e nɪn, pæ lo kal kka hamnita.
- ship; boat  
by boat; by ship  
[I]'m thinking of going;  
( '[I] intend to go' )  
This time, I'm (thinking of) going by boat.

Park

- cinan pən  
pihængki
13. Cinan pən e pihængki lo wasse yo?
- last time  
airplane  
Did you come by air (last time)?

James

- thassimnita
14. Ne, pihængki lil thassimnita.
- [I] rode; [I] got on; [I] took  
Yes, I flew. ( 'I got on airplane, ' )

Park

- Hankuk esə  
Mikuk kkaci  
elma na  
kəllimnikka
15. Hankuk esə Mikuk kkaci (sikan i) elma na kəllimnikka?
- from Korea  
as far as America; to America  
how long; how much  
does it take?  
How long does it take to get to America (from Korea)?

James

- simu nal  
səlhin sikan ccim
16. Pæ lo nɪn ~~taekə~~ simu nal kəllimnita. Kiliko, pihængki lo nɪn səlhin sikan ccim kəllimnita.
- twenty days  
about thirty hours  
It usually takes 20 days by boat and (about) 30 hours by plane.

## NUMERAL PHRASES

(a) 한 번

두 번

세 번

네 번

다섯 번

여섯 번

일곱 번

여덟 번

아홉 번

열 번

(b) 첫 번째

둘 번째

셋 번째

넷 번째

다섯 번째

여섯 번째

일곱 번째

여덟 번째

아홉 번째

열 번째

(c) 처음 - 첫 번째

두 번째

세 번째

네 번째

다섯 번째

여섯 번째

일곱 번째

아홉 번째

열 번째

(d) 이 배 - 두 배

삼 배 - 세 배

사 배 - 네 배

오 배 - 다섯 배

육 배 - 여섯 배

칠 배 - 일곱 배

팔 배 - 여덟 배

구 배 - 아홉 배

십 배 - 열 배

## NUMERAL PHRASES

(a)		(b)	
han pən	'once'	chə(s) ccæ	{ 'first' 'the first'
tu pən	'twice'	tu(l) ccæ	{ 'second' 'the second'
se pən	'three times'	se(s) ccæ	{ 'third' 'the third'
ne pən	'four times'	ne(s) ccæ	{ 'fourth' 'the fourth'
tasəs pən	'five times'	tasəs ccæ	{ 'fifth' 'the fifth'
yəsəs pən	'six times'	yəsəs ccæ	{ 'sixth' 'the sixth'
ilkop pən	'seven times'	ilkop ccæ	{ 'seventh' 'the seventh'
yətəlp pən	'eight times'	yətəl(p) ccæ	{ 'eighth' 'the eighth'
ahop pən	'nine times'	ahop ccæ	{ 'ninth' 'the ninth'
yəl pən	'ten times'	yəl ccæ	{ 'tenth' 'the tenth'
(c)		(d)	
chəim } chəs pən ccæ }	'the first time'	i pæ } tu pæ }	{ 'two times' 'twice'
tu pən	{ 'the second time 'the second'	sam pæ } se pæ }	{ 'three times'
se pən ccæ	{ 'the third time 'the third'	sa pæ } ne pæ }	{ 'four times'
ne pən ccæ	{ 'the fourth time 'the fourth'	o pæ } tasəs pæ }	{ 'five times'
tasəs pən ccæ	{ 'the fifth time 'the fifth'	yuk pæ } yəsəs pæ }	{ 'six times'
yəsəs pən ccæ	{ 'the sixth time 'the sixth'	chil pæ } ilkop pæ }	{ 'seven times'
ilkop pən ccæ	{ 'the seventh time 'the seventh'	phal pæ } yətəlp pæ }	{ 'eight times'
yətəlp pən ccæ	{ 'the eighth time 'the eighth'	ku pæ } ahop pæ }	{ 'nine times'
ahop pən ccæ	{ 'the ninth time 'the ninth'	sip pæ } yəl pæ }	{ 'ten times'
yəl pən ccæ	{ 'the tenth time' 'the tenth'		





## GRAMMAR NOTES

## 1. Numeral Phrases

In Unit 7 we have 4 series of numeral phrases: (a) han pen 'once', tu pen 'twice', se pen 'three times'...; (b) chæs ccæ 'first' or 'the first', tu(1) ccæ 'second' or 'the second', se(s) ccæ 'third' or 'the third'...; (c) chæim or chæs pen ccæ 'the first time' or 'first', tu pen ccæ 'the second time' or 'second'...; (d) i pæ or tu pæ 'two times' or 'twice', sam pæ or se pæ 'three times', sa pæ or ne pæ 'four times'..., etc.

The numerals of series (a) occur as adverbial phrases and are used to denote the frequency of action of the subsequent inflected expressions; the numerals of series (b) occur before other nominals or by themselves and denote order within a sequence; the numerals of series (c) occur as noun or adverbial phrases and denote order within a sequence of occurrences or points of time; the numerals of series (d) occur as noun or adverbial phrases and denote multiplication in quantity, quality, size or degree of the subsequent inflected expressions. Examples are provided in drills.

2. Particle lo/ilo 'as', 'in the capacity', 'by means of'

In Unit 2 we noticed that the particle lo/ilo after a place name indicates the direction of the following inflected expression. Lo/ilo occurring after other types of nominals denotes that the nominal is a capacity or means of subject or topic of the sentence. Examples:

a. Title names + lo/ilo 'as', 'in the capacity of'

sensæng ilo	'as a teacher'
tæsa lo	'as an ambassador'
kongpokwan ilo	'an as information officer'

b. Transportation names + lo/ilo 'by means of'

ppesi lo	'by bus'
kicha lo	'by train'
catongcha lo	'by automobile'
pihængki lo	'by airplane'
hapsing ilo	'by jitney'
cæncha lo	'by streetcar'

Other nominal + lo/ilo 'in', 'by', 'with'

Yəngə lo	'in English'
inkhi lo	'in ink'
yənphil lo	'with pencil'
ton ilo	'with money'
hyənkim ilo	'in cash'

3. -n/in/nin ka yo?

The construction -n/in/nin ka yo? occurs only as the final form of a question sentence. This construction is a kind of informal polite speech which can be substituted for previously learned Formal or Informal Polite Speech question forms. -n/in/nin is added to a verb stem or to a verb stem plus other suffixes: -n is added to a description verb stem ending in a vowel; -in to a description verb stem ending in a consonant; -nin to an action verb stem. (For the selection of -n, -in or -nin, see the rules for the formation of present noun-modifier ending, Unit 5.) Compare:

Cə yəca ka yeppin ka yo?	} 'Is that woman pretty?'
Cə yəca ka yeppimnikka?	
Cə yəca ka yeppe yo?	

4. -(1)lyəko

The verb ending -(1)lyəko is added to a verb stem or to a verb stem plus the honorific suffix -(1)si-. Tense suffixes do not occur before the -(1)lyəko ending. The inflected form ending in -(1)lyəko (or simply the -(1)lyəko form) occurs in two constructions:

(a) -(1)lyəko + ha- 'be going to-', 'intend to-'

The construction -(1)lyəko immediately followed by the verb ha- indicates that the subject or topic of the sentence intends a future action.

Examples:

Hankuk e kalyəko hamnita.	{ '[I] intend to go to Korea.'
	{ '[I]'m going to go to Korea.'
Yəngə lil kalichilyəko həssimnita.	{ '[I] was going to teach English.'
	{ '[I] intended to teach English.'
Kim Sənsəng in nəil ttənaləyeko hamnikka?	'Is Mr. Kim going to leave tomorrow?'

(b) -(1)lyəko + other than ha-

In the above construction, the -(1)lyəko form which may be followed by a pause denotes that the following inflected expression in the same sentence occurs for the purpose of the action inflected by the -(1)lyəko form. Compare this construction with the -(1)lɛ form (Unit 6, G.N. 3). Examples:

Hankuk e kalyəko, Hankuk mal	'In order to go to Korea, [I]
il pæwə yo.	am studying Korean.'
Chæk il salyəko, sinæ chækpang	'[I] stopped by a bookstore
e tillessimnita.	downtown to buy books.'

5. -(1)l kka ha-

In Unit 3, we had the construction -(1)l kka yo? as a sentence final question form. The construction -(1)l kka immediately followed by ha- without a pause occurs in a statement sentence and denotes the speaker's intention for future action of the verb in the -(1)l form. The English equivalent for -(1)l kka ha- is either 'be thinking of doing something' or 'intend to do something'. The tenses and/or levels of speech for the whole construction are generated in ha-. Examples:

I pən e nin pæ lo kal kka hamnita.	'This time, I'm thinking of going by boat.'
Næil kkaci Səul e issil kka hæ yo.	'I intend to stay in Seoul until tomorrow.'
Na to ki ttæ e ttənal kka hæssimnita. Kiləna....	'I was thinking of leaving at that time, too, but....'

6. Particle kkaci 'to', 'as far as', 'until', 'till', 'by'.

Kkaci occurs either after a place name or a time name:

(a) Place name + kkaci denotes the destination or goal for the following inflected expression. Examples:

Pusan kkaci kakesse yo.	'I will go as far as Pusan.'
Səul esə Inchən kkaci əlma na mələ yo?	'How far is it from Seoul to Pusan?'

(b) Time name + kkaci denotes the final limit of action for the following inflected expressions.

næil kkaci	'until tomorrow' or 'by tomorrow'
onil kkaci	'till now' or 'by now'
han-si kkaci	'by one o'clock'

## 7. Inflected forms and Verb Phrases

We have noticed that each inflected form of a verb is used in certain ways. For example, the verb stem ka- 'to go' is inflected in many ways by adding endings to it. So far we have had the following types of inflections built on the stem ka- 'to go'. Note that a hyphen is inserted between the stem and the ending to distinguish them:

ka-mnita	ka-nin
ka-mnikka	ka-l
ka-psita	ka-lyəko
ka-sipsiyo	ka-lə
ka-ci	ka-ko

Each Korean verb is inflected in numerous forms. Many of these inflected forms are followed by other inflected forms. Some may be followed by other classes of words, namely nouns or particles. Therefore, it is important to know how each inflected form is used, e.g. whether as a verbal or as a modifier of another class of words. In Unit 4, we were introduced to the inflected form to which the particle yo can be added to make Informal Polite Speech. Remember that this form is called the Infinitive. An Infinitive is, then, distinguished from other inflected forms because it is not a verb stem + a certain ending, but instead is formed by a certain morphophonemic change in the final sound of the verb stem.

There are some verbs which occur without pause one after another. For example, mule po-ta 'inquires', alə po-ta 'finds out', tola ka-ta 'goes back', tola o-ta 'comes back', etc. In such cases, the first verb occurs always in an infinitive form while the second verb may occur in any inflected form.

Such second verb is called the Auxiliary Verb and the first verb the Principal Verb. Any compound of principal verb + auxiliary verb is a Verb Phrase. Many of the principal verbs and auxiliary verbs that occur in verb phrases also occur independently or together with other principal or auxiliary verbs in other verb phrases, but some do not. Each verb phrase is not a simple combination of the separate meanings of its two parts: it is a compound deriving its unique indivisible meaning from both its parts. For instance, a(1)- means 'know', and po- means 'see', but alə po- means 'to find out'. Therefore, each verb phrase must be learned separately for its own unique meaning. Study the following examples:

mule po-ta	'inquires'
alə po-ta	'finds out'
məkə po-ta	'tries (eating food)'

ipe po-ta	'tries on (clothes)'
na ka-ta	'goes out'
tile ka-ta	'goes in'
olla ka-ta	'goes up'
tola ka-ta	'goes back'
nælie ka-ta	'goes down'
na o-ta	'comes out'
tile o-ta	'comes in'
tola o-ta	'comes back'
olla o-ta	'comes up'
nælie o-ta	'comes down'
towa cu-ta	'gives help'
ale cu-ta	'recognizes (one's ability)'
pillie cu-ta	'loans, lends'

## DRILLS

## A. Substitution Drill

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. ənce Hankuk e osiəssimnikka?                | When did you come to Korea?              |
| 2. ənce <u>Mikuk</u> e osiəssimnikka?          | When did you come to the United States?  |
| 3. ənce <u>Səul</u> e osiəssimnikka?           | When did you come to Seoul?              |
| 4. ənce <u>ce samusil</u> e osiəssimnikka?     | When did you come to my office?          |
| 5. ənce <u>yəki</u> e osiəssimnikka?           | When did you come here?                  |
| 6. <u>Myəch-si</u> e yəki e osiəssimnikka?     | What time did you come here?             |
| 7. <u>Muəs ilo</u> yəki e osiəssimnikka?       | How ('by what means') did you come here? |
| 8. <u>Musin il lo</u> yəki e osiəssimnikka?    | On what business did you come here?      |
| 9. <u>Muəs hale</u> yəki e osiəssimnikka?      | Why ('to do what') did you come here?    |
| 10. <u>Nuku wa</u> yəki e osiəssimnikka?       | With whom did you come here?             |
| 11. <u>Myəch-si ccim</u> yəki e osiəssimnikka? | Around what time did you come here?      |

## B. Substitution Drill

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Il nyən cən e wassimnita.                | [I] came [here] one year ago.            |
| 2. <u>Halu</u> cən e wassimnita.            | [I] came [here] yeaterday ('a day ago'). |
| 3. <u>Han sikan</u> cən e wassimnita.       | [I] came [here] one hour ago.            |
| 4. <u>Sam cuil</u> cən e wassimnita.        | [I] came [here] three weeks ago.         |
| 5. <u>Sək tal</u> cən e wassimnita.         | [I] came [here] three months ago.        |
| 6. <u>Yələ tal</u> cən e wassimnita.        | [I] came [here] several months ago.      |
| * 7. <u>əlma</u> cən e wassimnita.          | [I] came [here] some time ago.           |
| * 8. <u>Myəchil</u> cən e wassimnita.       | [I] came [here] some days ago.           |
| * 9. <u>Myəch tal</u> cən e wassimnita.     | [I] came [here] some months ago.         |
| *10. <u>Myəch nyən</u> cən e wassimnita.    | [I] came [here] some years ago.          |
| *11. <u>Myəch cuil</u> cən e wassimnita.    | [I] came [here] some weeks ago.          |
| 12. Myəch cuil cən e <u>ttenassimnita</u> . | [He] left [here] some weeks ago.         |
| *13. Myəch cuil cən e <u>tahassimnita</u> . | [He] arrived [here] some weeks ago.      |

## C. Substitution Drill

- |   |                                     |
|---|-------------------------------------|
| 1. I nyen cən e yəki e wassə yo.                    | I came here two years ago.          |
| 2. <u>Ithil</u> cən e <u>cip</u> e wassə yo.        | I came home two days ago.           |
| 3. <u>Tu sikan</u> cən e <u>samusil</u> e wassə yo. | I came to my office two hours ago.  |
| 4. <u>I cuil</u> cən e <u>Səul</u> e wassə yo.      | I came to Seoul two weeks ago.      |
| 5. <u>Tu tal</u> cən e <u>Mikuk</u> e wassə yo.     | I came to America two months ago.   |
| 6. <u>Yələ nal</u> cən e <u>yəki</u> e wassə yo.    | I came here several days ago.       |
| 7. <u>I-sip il</u> cən e <u>Pusan</u> e wassə yo.   | I came to Pusan twenty days ago.    |
| 8. <u>Tu hæ</u> cən e <u>Wəsington</u> e wassə yo.  | I came to Washington two years ago. |
| *9. <u>Myəchil</u> cən e <u>sinaə</u> e wassə yo.   | I came to town some days ago.       |

## D. Substitution Drill

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. Cə nin wekyokwan ilo issimnita.                  | I am in the foreign service. ('I exist as a diplomat.') |
| 2. Cə nin <u>sənsəng</u> ilo issimnita.             | I am a teacher.   |
| 3. Cə nin <u>haksəng</u> ilo issimnita.             | I am a student.   |
| * 4. Cə nin <u>təsa</u> lo issimnita.               | I am an ambassador.                                     |
| * 5. Cə nin <u>yəngsa</u> lo issimnita.             | I am a consul.  |
| 6. Cə nin <u>kongpokwan</u> ilo issimnita.          | I am an information officer.                            |
| * 7. Cə nin <u>kunin</u> ilo issimnita.             | I am in the military service.                           |
| * 8. Cə nin <u>kongmuwen</u> ilo issimnita.         | I am a {civil servant.<br>government employee.          |
| 9. Cə nin <u>cəmwən</u> ilo issimnita.              | I am a store clerk.                                     |
| *10. Cə nin <u>samuwen</u> ilo issimnita.           | I am a clerk.   |
| *11. Cə nin <u>pişə</u> lo issimnita.               | I am a secretary.                                       |
| *12. Cə nin pişə lo <u>il-hamnita</u> .             | I work as a secretary.                                  |
| *13. Cə <u>yəca</u> nin pişə lo <u>il-hamnita</u> . | She ('that woman') works as a secretary.                |

## E. Substitution Drill

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. I nyen cən kkaci wekyokwan ilo<br>issəssimnita.                  | [I] was in the foreign service until<br>two years ago. |
| 2. <u>Sahl</u> cən kkaci <u>sənsəng</u> (ilo)<br>issəssimnita.      | [I] was a teacher until three days<br>ago.             |
| 3. <u>Se sikan</u> cən kkaci <u>haksəng</u> (ilo)<br>issəssimnita.  | [I] was a student until three hours<br>ago.            |
| 4. <u>Ne cuil</u> cən kkaci <u>kunin</u> (ilo)<br>issəssimnita.     | [I] was in the military service<br>until 4 weeks ago.  |
| 5. <u>Tasəs tal</u> cən kkaci <u>təsa</u> (lo)<br>issəssimnita.     | [I] was an ambassador until 5 months<br>ago.           |
| 6. <u>Sipo il</u> cən kkaci <u>yəngsa</u> (lo)<br>issəssimnita.     | [I] was a consul until 15 days ago.                    |
| 7. <u>Yələ hæ</u> cən kkaci <u>pişə</u> (lo)<br>issəssimnita.       | [I] was a secretary until several<br>years ago.        |
| 8. <u>əlma</u> cən kkaci <u>kongmuwən</u> (ilo)<br>issəssimnita.    | [I] was a civil servant until some<br>time ago.        |
| 9. <u>Han tal</u> cən kkaci <u>cəmwən</u> (ilo)<br>issəssimnita.    | [I] was a store clerk until one month<br>ago.          |
| 10. <u>Yəhlil</u> cən kkaci <u>wekyokwan</u> (ilo)<br>issəssimnita. | [I] was in the foreign service until<br>10 days ago.   |

## F. Substitution Drill

- |   |                                     |
|---|-------------------------------------|
| 1. I pən i Hankuk e cheim in ka yo?                   | Is this your first time in Korea?   |
| 2. I pən i Hankuk e <u>tu pən ccə</u> in<br>ka yo?    | Is this your second time in Korea?  |
| 3. I pən i Hankuk e <u>se pən ccə</u> in ka<br>yo?    | Is this your third time in Korea?   |
| 4. I pən i Hankuk e <u>ne pən ccə</u> in ka<br>yo?    | Is this your fourth time in Korea?  |
| 5. I pən i Hankuk e <u>tasəs pən ccə</u> in<br>ka yo? | Is this your fifth time in Korea?   |
| 6. I pən i Hankuk e <u>yəsəs pən ccə</u> in<br>ka yo? | Is this your sixth time in Korea?   |
| 7. I pən i Hankuk e <u>ilkop pən ccə</u><br>in ka yo? | Is this your seventh time in Korea? |



8. I pən 1 Hankuk e yetəlp pən ccæ      Is this your eighth time in Korea?  
in ka yo?
9. I pən 1 Hankuk e myəch pən ccæ      How many times have you been in  
in ka yo?      Korea?

## G. Substitution Drill

1. Kim Sənsəng 1l han pən mannassimnita.      [I] met Mr. Kim once.
2. Pak Sənsəng 1l tu pən mannassimnita.      [I] met Mr. Pak twice.
3. I Sənsəng 1l se pən mannassimnita.      [I] met Mr. Lee three times.
4. Ceimsi Sənsəng 1l tasəs pən      [I] met Mr. James five times.  
mannassimnita.
5. Chwe Sənsəng 1l yələ pən      [I] met Mr. Choe many times.  
mannassimnita.
6. Ki salam 1l yələ pən pwassimnita.      [I] saw him many times.
7. Hankuk mal 1l yələ pən      [I] taught Korean on many occasions.  
kalichiəssimnita.
8. Kil 1l yələ pən mule pwassimnita.      [I] inquired about street directions  
many times.
9. Ki 1l 1l yələ pən həssimnita.      [I] did the work many times.
10. Han-Yəng sacən 1l yələ pən      [I] wanted a K-E dictionary many  
wənhəssimnita.      times.
11. Mikuk 1l yələ pən tənassimnita.      [I] left America many times.
- \*12. Cha 1l1 yələ pən phalassimnita.      [I] sold cars many times.
- \*13. Catongcha 1l1 yələ pən sassimnita.      [I] bought many automobiles.
- \*14. Gungkuk 1msik 1l yələ pən      [I] have eaten Chinese food many  
məkəssimnita.      times.

## H. Substitutuoŋ Drill

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. K $\dot{1}$ ttæ e (na nin) k $\dot{u}$ ttæ e<br>issæssimnita.                     | At that time I was in the military.       |
| 2. <u>Han sikan cæn e</u> (na nin) <u>samusil</u><br>e issæssimnita.                 | An hour ago I was in the office.          |
| 3. <u>Sip pun cæn e</u> (na nin) <u>cip e</u><br>issæssimnita.                       | Ten minutes ago I was at home.            |
| 4. <u>Han cuil cæn e</u> (na nin) <u>Søul e</u><br>issæssimnita.                     | One week ago I was in Seoul.              |
| 5. <u>Tu(1) tal cæn e</u> (na nin) <u>Wæsingthon</u><br>e issæssimnita.              | Two months ago I was in Washington.       |
| 6. <u>Onil achim e</u> (na nin) <u>Mikuk</u><br><u>Kongpowæn e</u> issæssimnita.     | This morning I was at USIS.               |
| *7. <u>æce cænæk e</u> (na nin) <u>yængsakwan</u><br>e issæssimnita.                 | Last evening I was at the Consulate.      |
| 8. <u>K<math>\dot{1}</math> nal pam e</u> (na nin) <u>kongwæn e</u><br>issæssimnita. | That night I was in the park.             |
| 9. <u>Ilyoil ohu e</u> (na nin) <u>kikcang e</u><br>issæssimnita.                    | Sunday afternoon I was at the<br>theatre. |
| 10. <u>K<math>\dot{1}</math> ttæ e</u> (na nin) <u>siktang e</u><br>issæssimnita.    | At that time I was at a restaurant.       |

## I. Substitution Drill

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. Han tal hu e ttænalyæko hamnita.            | I'm going to leave one month from<br>now.      |
| 2. <u>Han cuil hu e</u> ttænalyæko hamnita.    | I'm going to leave one week from<br>now.       |
| 3. <u>Il nyæn hu e</u> ttænalyæko hamnita.     | I'm going to leave one year from<br>now.       |
| 4. <u>Han sikan hu e</u> ttænalyæko hamnita.   | I'm going to leave in an hour.                 |
| 5. <u>Il pun hu e</u> ttænalyæko hamnita.      | I'm going to leave in a minute.                |
| 6. <u>I pun hu e</u> ttænalyæko hamnita.       | I'm going to leave in two minutes.             |
| * 7. <u>I sam pun hu e</u> ttænalyæko hamnita. | I'm going to leave in two or three<br>minutes. |
| * 8. <u>I sam il hu e</u> ttænalyæko hamnita.  | I'm going to leave in two or three<br>days.    |
| * 9. <u>Sam sa il hu e</u> ttænalyæko hamnita. | I'm going to leave in three or four<br>days.   |

- \*10. Sa o il hu e ttənalyəko hamnita. I'm going to leave in four or five days.
- \*11. I sam cuil hu e ttənalyəko hamnita. I'm going to leave in two or three weeks.

## J. Substitution Drill

1. Pihængki lo kal kka hamnita. I'm thinking of going by airplane.
2. Pæ lo kal kka hamnita. I'm thinking of going by ship.
- \* 3. Ppəsi lo kal kka hamnita. I'm thinking of going by bus.
4. Cha lo kal kka hamnita. I'm thinking of going by car.
- \* 5. Thækssi lo kal kka hamnita. I'm thinking of going by taxi.
- \* 6. Kicha lo kal kka hamnita. I'm thinking of going by train.
7. Catongcha lo kal kka hamnita. I'm thinking of going by automobile.
- \* 8. Cəncha lo kal kka hamnita. I'm thinking of going by streetcar.
9. Hapsing ilo kal kka hamnita. I'm thinking of going by jitney.

## K. Substitution Drill

1. Pihængki lo Səul e kakessimnikka? Will you go to Seoul by airplane?
2. Ppəsi lo Inchen e kakessimnikka? Will you go to Incheon by bus?
3. Cha lo Pusan e kakessimnikka? Will you go to Pusan by car?
4. Pæ lo Ilpon e kakessimnikka? Will you go to Japan by ship?
5. Pihængki lo Mikuk e kakessimnikka? Will you go to America by airplane?
6. Kicha lo Nyuyok e kakessimnikka? Will you go to New York by train?
7. Catongcha lo sinə e kakessimnikka? Will you go to downtown by automobile?
8. Cəncha lo sicang e kakessimnikka? Will you go to the market place by streetcar?

## L. Substitution Drill

1. Hankuk esə Mikuk kkaci əlma na kəllimnikka? How long does it take to go to America from Korea?
2. Səul esə Inchen kkaci əlma na kəllimnikka? How long does it take to go to Incheon from Seoul?
3. Hakkyo esə cip kkaci əlma na kəllimnikka? How long does it take from school to your house?

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 4. <u>Sinæ</u> esə <u>cəngkəcang</u> kkaci əlma na<br>kəllimnikka?          | How long does it take from downtown<br>to the station?        |
| 5. <u>Təsakwan</u> esə <u>Mikuk Kongpowən</u> kkaci<br>əlma na kəllimnikka? | How long does it take from the<br>Embassy to USIS?            |
| 6. <u>Cip</u> esə <u>sichəng</u> kkaci əlma na<br>kəllimnikka?              | How long does it take from your<br>house to the City Hall?    |
| 7. <u>Samusil</u> esə <u>siktang</u> kkaci əlma<br>na kəllimnikka?          | How long does it take from your<br>office to the restaurant?  |
| 8. <u>Yəki</u> esə <u>kikcang</u> kkaci əlma na<br>kəllimnikka?             | How long does it take from here to<br>the theatre?            |
| 9. <u>Uphyənkuk</u> esə <u>tapang</u> kkaci əlma<br>na kəllimnikka?         | How long does it take from the post<br>office to the tearoom? |
| 10. <u>Yəki</u> esə <u>Mikuk</u> kkaci əlma na<br>kəllimnikka?              | How long does it take from here to<br>America.                |

## M. Substitution Drill

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Yəki esə Mikuk kkaci əlma (na)<br>kəllimnikka?                       | How long does it take to go from<br>here to America?         |
| 2. Yəki esə Mikuk kkaci <u>myəchil (ina)</u><br>kəllimnikka?            | How many days does it take to go<br>from here to America?    |
| 3. Yəki esə Mikuk kkaci <u>myəch tal</u><br><u>(ina)</u> kəllimnikka?   | How many months does it take to go<br>from here to America.  |
| 4. Yəki esə Mikuk kkaci <u>myəch cuil</u><br><u>(ina)</u> kəllimnikka?  | How many weeks does it take to go<br>from here to America?   |
| 5. Yəki esə Mikuk kkaci <u>myəch sikan</u><br><u>(ina)</u> kəllimnikka? | How many hours does it take to go<br>from here to America?   |
| 6. Yəki esə Mikuk kkaci <u>myəch pun</u><br><u>(ina)</u> kəllimnikka?   | How many minutes does it take to<br>go from here to America? |
| 7. Yəki esə Mikuk kkaci <u>əlma (na)</u><br>kəllimnikka?                | How long does it take to go from<br>here to America?         |

## N. Transformation Drill (based on Grammar Note 4)

Tutor: Na nin pihængki lo kakessimnita.	'I'll go by airplane.'
Student: Na to pihængki lo kalyëko hæ yo.	'I'm also planning to go by airplane.'
1. Na nin næil tola kakessimnita.	Na to næil tola kalyëko hæ yo.
2. Na nin pæ lil thakessimnita.	Na to pæ lil thalyëko hæ yo.
3. Na nin i sam il hu e ttënakessimnita.	Na to i sam il hu e ttënalalyëko hæ yo.
4. Na nin Mikuk yangpok il sakessimnita.	Na to Mikuk yangpok il salalyëko hæ yo.
5. Na nin han cuil tongan Sëul e isskessimnita.	Na to han cuil tongan Sëul e issilyëko hæ yo.
6. Na nin taim tal e tto okessimnita.	Na to taim tal e tto olyëko hæ yo.
7. Na nin chinku lil mannakessimnita.	Na to chinku lil mannalyëko hæ yo.
8. Na nin hyuka lil patkessimnita.	Na to hyuka lil patilyëlo hæ yo.
9. Na nin cha lil phalkessimnita.	Na to cha lil phallyëko hæ yo.
10. Na nin tapang e tillikessimnita.	Na to tapang e tillilyëko hæ yo.
11. Na nin Ilyoil e swikessimnita.	Na to Ilyoil e swilyëko hæ yo.

## O. Response Drill

Tutor: Pihængki lo kakessë yo?	'Will you go by airplane?'
Student: Ne, pihængki lo kalyëko hamnita.	'Yes, I'm planning (to go) by airplane.'
1. Næil tola kakessë yo?	Ne, næil tola kalyëko hamnita.
2. Pæ lil thakessë yo?	Ne, pæ lil thalyëko hamnita.
3. I sam il hu e ttënakessë yo?	Ne, i sam il hu e ttënalalyëko hamnita.
4. Han tal tongan Sëul e isskessë yo?	Ne, han tal tongan (Sëul e) issilyëko hamnita.
5. Taim tal e tto okessë yo?	Ne, taim tal e tto olyëko hamnita.
6. Hyuka lil patkessë yo?	Ne, hyuka lil patilyëko hamnita.
7. Cha lil phalkessë yo?	Ne, phallyëko hamnita.
8. Tapang e tillikessë yo?	Ne, tillilyëko hamnita.
9. Ilyoil e swikessë yo?	Ne, swilyëko hamnita.
10. Cungkuk mal kongpu lil sicak-hakessë yo?	Ne, sicak-halyëko hamnita.

## P. Response Drill (based on Grammar Note 5)

- Tutor: Han tal hu e ttənalyəko hase yo? 'Are you going to leave in a month?'
- Student: Ne, han tal hu e ttənəl kka hamnita. 'Yes, I'm thinking of leaving in a month.'
1. I pən e nɪn pihəŋki lɪl thalyəko hase yo? Ne, (i pən e nɪn) pihəŋki lɪl thal kka hamnita.
  2. Cə kənmul aph esə nəlilyəko hase yo? Ne, cə kənmul aph esə nəlɪl kka hamnita.
  3. Nənyən e Wəsingthon e tola olyəko hase yo? Ne, nənyən e (Wəsingthon e) tola ol kka hamnita.
  4. Onɪl cənyək e sɪnə e na kalyəko hase yo? Ne, (onɪl cənyək e sɪnə e) na kal kka hamnita.
  5. Han tal hu e tola kalyəko hase yo? Ne, han tal hu e tola kal kka hamnita.
  6. Sɪchəŋ esə alə polyəko hase yo? Ne, sɪchəŋ esə alə pol kka hamnita.
  7. Taim cuil e hyuka lɪl patilyəko hase yo? Ne, taim cuil e hyuka lɪl patɪl kka hamnita.
  8. Sənsəŋ ɪn catongcha lɪl phalyəko hase yo? Ne, (cə nɪn catongcha lɪl) phal kka hamnita.

## Q. Response Drill

- Tutor: Muəs ɪl sakəsə yo? /kutu/ 'What are you going to buy?' /shoes/  
Student: Kutu lɪl salyəko hamnita. 'I'm planning to buy shoes.'
1. ənce sɪcak-hakəsə yo? /han cuil hu e/ Han cuil hu e sɪcak-halyəko hamnita.
  2. Nuku lɪl mannakəsə yo? /Hankuk salam chinku/ Hankuk salam chinku lɪl mannalyəko hamnita.
  3. ənce kkaci kɪ ɪl ɪl kkɪth-nəkəsə yo? /taim cuil/ Taim cuil kkaci kkɪth-nəlyəko hamnita.
  4. əlma e sənsəŋ cha lɪl phalkəsə yo? /sam-man Wən/ Sam-man Wən e phallyəko hamnita.
  5. Muəs ɪlo Hankuk e kakəsə yo? /pihəŋki/ Pihəŋki lo kalyəko hamnita.

6. eni tal e hyuka lil patkesse yo? /phal-wəl/ Phal-wəl e patilyəko hamnita.
7. elma tongan Mikuk esə cinækesse yo? /i nyən ccim/ I nyən ccim Mikuk esə cinælyəko hamnita.  
( 'I'm going to spend about two years in America.' )
8. Taim pən e eni nal il pæukesse yo? /swiwn mal/ Swiwn mal il pæulyəko hamnita.

R. Grammar Drill (Change -(i)mnikka? to -n/in/nin ka yo? based on Grammar Note 3.)

- Tutor: Hankuk e chəim imnikka? 'Is [this your] first time in Korea?'  
Student: Hankuk e chəim in ka yo? 'Is [this your] first time in Korea?'
1. Kim Sənsəng il asimnikka? Kim Sənsəng il asinin ka yo?  
2. Ceimsı Sənsəng i Hankuk mal il ilksimnikka? Ceimsı Sənsəng i Hankuk mal il ilknin ka yo?  
3. ənce Mikuk e tola kasimnikka? ənce Mikuk e tola kasinin ka yo?  
4. Han tal hu e ttənamnikka? Han tal hu e ttənanin ka yo?  
5. Pə lil thasimnikka? Pə lil thasinin ka yo?  
6. Mikuk kkaci əlma na kəllimnikka? Mikuk kkaci əlma na kəllinin ka yo?  
7. Hakkyo ka məmnikka? Hakkyo ka mən ka yo?  
8. Cə yəca nin Mikuk salam imnikka? Cə yəca nin Mikuk salam in ka yo?  
9. Hankuk mal i philyo-hamnikka? Hankuk mal i philyo-han ka yo?  
10. Sənsəng in mom i aphimnikka? Sənsəng in mom i aphin ka yo?  
11. Cungkuk mal i swipsimnikka? Cungkuk mal i swiun ka yo?  
12. Kı kilim i alimtapsimnikka? Kı kilim i alimtaun ka yo?  
13. Mikuk yəca ka yeppimnikka? Mikuk yəca ka yeppin ka yo?

## S. Response Drill

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| Tutor: Hankuk e chæim in ka yo?<br>/ne/                 | 'Is [this your] first time in Korea?<br>/yes/ |
| Student: Ne, chæim iye yo.                              | 'Yes, [this] is [my] first time [in Korea].'  |
| 1. Kim Sænsæng il asinin ka yo?<br>/aniyo/              | Aniyo, molla yo.                              |
| 2. Ceimsi Sænsæng i Hankuk mal il<br>ilknin ka yo? /ne/ | Ne, ilkæ yo.                                  |
| 3. ænce Mikuk e tola kasinin ka yo?<br>/taim hæ/        | Taim hæ e tola ka yo.                         |
| 4. Han tal hu e Sæul il ttænanin<br>ka yo? /aniyo/      | Aniyo, (han tal hu e) ttænacï anh<br>yo.      |
| 5. Pæ lil thanin ka yo? /ne/                            | Ne, pæ lil tha yo.                            |
| 6. Mikuk kkacï sahil kællinin ka<br>yo? /ne/            | Ne, sahil kælliyæ yo.                         |
| 7. Hakkyo ka kakkaun ka yo? /aniyo/                     | Aniyo, kakkapcï anhæ yo.                      |
| 8. Cæ yæca nin Hankuk salam in ka<br>yo? /ne/           | Ne, Hankuk salam iye yo.                      |
| 9. Ilpon mal to ælyæun ka yo? /aniyo/                   | Aniyo, ælyæpcï anhæ yo.                       |
| 10. Tangsin in mom i aphin ka yo?<br>/ne/               | Ne, (mom i) ap hæ yo.                         |
| 11. Cungkuk mal i swiun ka yo? /aniyo/                  | Aniyo, swipcï anhæ yo.                        |
| 12. I kilim i alimtaun ka yo? /ne/                      | Ne, (kï kilim i) alimtawæ yo.                 |

## T. Response Drill

- |   |                                       |
|---|---------------------------------------|
| Tutor: Muæs ilo hakkyo e wassimnikka?<br>/catongcha/        | 'How did you come to school?' /car/   |
| Student: Catongcha lo wassimnita.                           | 'I came by car.'                      |
| 1. ænce Hankuk e wassimnikka?<br>/chæn-ku-pæk-yuk-sip nyæn/ | Chæn-ku-pæk-yu-sip nyæn e wassimnita. |
| 2. Sænsæng in æti esæ il-hasimnikka?<br>/Mikuk Kongpowæn/   | Mikuk Kongpowæn esæ il-hamnita.       |
| 3. Mikuk Tæsakwan e muæs ilo issimnikka?<br>/yængsa/        | Yængsa lo issimnita.                  |



- |  |                             |
|--|-----------------------------|
| 4. Cip esə samusil kkaci əlma na<br>kəllimnikka? /i-sip-o pun/ | I-sip-o pun kəllimnita.     |
| 5. Han cuil e myəchil tongan il-haci<br>yo? /tassə/            | Tassə tongan il-hamnita.    |
| 6. Halu e myəch sikan kongpu-haci<br>yo? /yəsəs sikan/         | Yəsəs sikan kongpu-hamnita. |
| 7. əlma tongan Hankuk mal il<br>pəwəssci yo? /tu tal/          | Tu tal tongan pəwəssimnita. |
| 8. Muəs ilo yəki e wassimnikka?<br>/pihəngki/                  | Pihəngki lo wassimnita.     |

U. Response Exercise (Answer the questions in Informal Polite speech based on the fact.)

1. ənce Hankuk e wassə yo?
2. Muəs ilo wassə yo?
3. Cikim əti esə il-hase yo?
4. Kəki esə muəs ilo issise yo?
5. əlma tongan kəki esə il-həsse yo?
6. Musin il il hase yo?
7. Achim e muəs ilo il-halə ose yo?
8. Catongcha lo sikan i əlma na kəlliyə yo?
9. Myəch-si e cip e kase yo?
10. Hankuk mal myəch tal tongan pəwəssə yo?
11. Halu e myəch sikan kongpu-haci yo?
12. Hakkyo esə sənsəng cip kkaci ppəsi lo əlma na kəllici yo?

## EXERCISES

1. Tell the following story to Mr. Park once in Formal Polite and once in Informal Polite Speech.

You came to Korea two year ago. This is not your first time but second time in Korea. The first time was in 1951. At that time, you were in the military service. This time you have been here as a foreign service officer. Now, you're going to go back to America in one month. Last time you flew to Korea but you intend to go by boat this time. It usually takes 10 to 18 days (to go) to America by boat, and about 23 hours by plane.

2. Find out the following information from Mr. James (or Mr. Park)
  - a. When he came to Korea (or to America.)
  - b. How ('by what means of transportation') he came.
  - c. Where he is working.
  - d. In what capacity he works there.
  - e. How long he has been there.
  - f. What kind of work he does.
  - g. By what means he goes to work in the morning.
  - h. How long it takes.
  - i. How far it is from his house to the office.
  - j. What time he usually goes home.
  - k. How many hours a day he works.
  - l. How many days it takes to go to America (or Korea) by boat.
  - m. How many years he's going to live in Seoul (or Washington.)
  - n. How many weeks he has studied Korean.
  - o. What time he usually leaves home in the morning.
3. Using maps and/or a geometrical globe, practice asking and answering questions on how long it takes from one given geographical point to another by a given mode of transportation. The geographical points may include two place names within a city or building as well as countries.

4. Tell Mr. Park that:
- a. You have been to Korea several times.
  - b. This is your third time in Seoul.
  - c. Today is the fourth day of the week.
  - d. Korean is your second foreign language.
  - e. This week is your fifth week in Korean studies.
  - f. Seoul is three times larger than Pusan.
  - g. You were in the military service 8 years ago.
  - h. Mr. Brown was an ambassador until three months ago.
  - i. You are going to leave for America three weeks from now.
  - j. You stayed in South Korea for five days.
  - k. You came to work by streetcar this morning.

## 제 8 과 입에 관해서

(대화 A)

1. 이 : 선생은 요새 무엇(을) 하세요?  
 날  
 날마다  
 학교에 다닙니다
2. 제임스 : 날마다 학교에 다닙니다.  
 무엇(을) 배우러
3. 이 : 무엇을 배우러 (학교에) 다니세요?  
 배우려고
4. 제임스 : 한국 말을 배우려고 다닙니다.  
 배우기  
 쉽니까
5. 이 : 한국 말을 배우기 쉽습니까?  
 그리  
 재미  
 재미 있습니다
6. 제임스 : 아니요, 그리 쉽지 않습니다. 그러나,  
 재미 있습니다.

UNIT 8. Talking About One's Work  
BASIC DIALOGUES FOR MEMORIZATION

Dialogue A

Lee

1. Sənsəng in yosə muəs (il) hase yo? What are you doing these days?

James

nal day  
nal mata everyday  
hakkyo e tanimnita [I]'m attending school

2. Nal mata hakkyo e tanimnita. I go to school everyday.

Lee

muəs (il) pəule ('to learn what'); ('what to learn?')

3. Muəs (il) pəule (hakkyo) tanise yo? What are you studying? ('What to learn do you go to school?')

James

pəulyeko in order to learn

4. Hankuk mal il pəulyeko tanimnita. I'm studying Korean. ('I'm attending in order to learn Korean.')

Lee

pəuki learning; to learn  
swipsimnikka is it easy?

5. Hankuk mal (il) pəuki swipsimnikka? Is Korean easy? ('Is it easy to learn Korean?')

James

kili so; in such a way; not so  
cæmi fun  
cæmi issimnita [it]'s interesting ('there's fun')

6. Aniyo, kili swipci ahhsimnita. No, it's not very easy. But it's interesting.  
Kiləna, cæmi issimnita.

7. 이 : 선생은 독일 말을 하세요?

조금

(말) 할 수 있습니다

읽지 못 합니다

8. 제임스 : 예, 조금 (말) 할 수 있습니다. 그러나,  
읽지 못 합니다.

더

어렵습니다

9. 이 : 독일 말과 한국 말은 어느 말이 배우기(가)  
더 어렵습니까?

독일 말보다

10. 제임스 : 한국 말이 독일 말보다 더 어렵습니다.

(대화 B)

오래간만입니다

이즘

재미가 어떻습니까

11. 김 : 오래간만입니다. 이즘 일에 재미가  
어떻습니까?

덕분에

12. 제임스 : 덕분에 재미 있습니다. 선생은 어떠세요?

분주합니다

13. 김 : 저는 요즘 좀 분주합니다.

7. Lee  
Sensæng in Tokil mal il hase yo? Do you speak German?

- James  
cokim a little  
(mal-)hal su issimnita [I] can speak  
i(1)kci mot hamnita [I] cannot read  
8. Ne, cokim (mal-)hal su issimnita. Yes, I can speak [it] a little. I  
Kilæna, ilkci mot hamnita. can't read [it], though.

- Lee  
tæ more  
elyepsimnikka is [it] difficult?  
9. Tokil mal kwa Hankuk mal in æni Which (language) is more difficult  
mal i pæuki (ka) tæ elyepsimnikka? to learn, German or Korean?

- James  
Tokil mal pota than German  
10. Hankuk mal i Tokil mal pota Korean is more difficult than  
tæ elyepsimnita. German.

Dialogue B

- Kim  
olæ kan man imnita long time no see  
icim these days  
cæmi ka ættæsimnikka ('how is fun?')  
11. Olæ kan man imnita. Icim il e I haven't seen you for some time.  
cæmi ka ættæsimnikka? How is your job coming along  
(these days)? ('How is fun at  
work these days?')

- James  
tækpun e ('at your favor')  
12. Tækpun e cæmi issimnita. Sensæng I'm doing fine, thank you. And how  
in ættese yo? about you?

- 그런데  
근무  
근무 하십니까
14. 제임스 : 그런데, 요새는 어디 근무 하십니까?
- 전에  
말하지 않았습니까  
회사
15. 김 : 아, 제가 전에 말하지 않았습니까? 지금  
반도 회사에 근무 합니다.
- 주요
16. 제임스 : 무슨 일을 주요 하세요?
- 보통  
사무  
사무를 봅니다
17. 김 : 보통 사무를 봅니다.
- 오래  
오래 동안
18. 제임스 : 아, 그러세요? 그 회사에서 오래 동안  
일했습니까?
- 한 삼 년  
되었습니다
19. 김 : 한 삼 년 되었습니다.



Kim

- punchuhamnita  
13. Cə nin yocım com punchuhamnita.

[I]'m busy; [I]'m hectic  
I'm a little busy these days.

James

- kilən te  
kinmu  
kinmu-hasimnikka  
14. Kilən te, yosə nin əte kinmu-  
hasimnikka?

by the way  
( 'working' )  
do [you] work?  
Where do you work (these days), by  
the way?

Kim

- cən e  
mal-haci anhəssimnikka  
hwesa  
15. A, ce kan cən e mal-haci  
anhəssimnikka? Cikim Panto  
Hwesa e kinmu-hamnita.

previously  
didn't [I] say?  
company; business firm  
Oh, didn't I tell you before? I  
work at the Bando Company (now).

James

- culo  
16. Musın il il culo hase yo?

mainly; mostly  
What kind of work do you do mainly?

Kim

- pothong  
samu  
samu lıl pomnita  
17. Pothong samu lıl pomnita.

ordinary; ordinarily  
office work  
[I] do office work  
I do ordinary office work.

James

- olə  
olə tongan  
18. A, kiləse yo? Kıl hwesa esə olə  
tongan il-həssimnikka?

a long time  
for a long time  
Is that so? Have you worked there  
( 'at that company' ) for a long  
time?

Kim

- han sam nyən  
tweəssimnita  
19. Han sam nyən tweəssimnita.

about 3 years; approximately  
3 years  
[it] has been; [it] became  
I've been there for about three years.

## NOTES ON DIALOGUES

(Numbers correspond to the sentence numbers.)

2. The verb tani- denotes the action of 'going and coming regularly'. Examples:
- |                            |                            |
|----------------------------|----------------------------|
| Na nin hakkyo e tanimnita. | { 'I am attending school.' |
|                            | { 'I go to school.'        |
| Ppəsi ka tanimnita.        | 'Buses are running.'       |
4. Pæulyəko and pæule mean the same. Their use is determined by environment: pæulyəko occurs before ha- and most other verbs, while pæule occurs before only a few verbs (usually ka-, o-, and tani-). (See Grammar Note 3 of Unit 6 and Grammar Note 4 of Unit 7.)
6. Cæmi iss-ta 'is interesting' is a usage which literally means 'fun exists' or 'there is fun'. Cæmi (ka) issimnita which may precede a subject or a topic occurs as an intransitive expression with or without the particle ka after cæmi. Examples:
- |                                |  |
|--------------------------------|--|
| Hakkyo ka cæmi (ka) issimnita. | 'I enjoy school.' ('School is interesting.') |
| I chæk i cæmi (ka) issimnikka? | 'Is this book interesting?'                  |
8. The negative equivalent of Hal su issimnita. 'is able to do' is Hal su əpsimnita. 'is unable to do'. Haci mot hamnita '[I] cannot do' is a substitute for Hal su əpsimnita. (See Grammar Note 3.)
11. Olækan man imnita. ('It's only a long time.') is a standard expression used under the same circumstances as its English equivalent, 'I haven't seen you for some time.' or 'Long time no see.'
14. Place name + e + kinmu-ha-ta and place name + esə + il-ha-ta both mean 'works at + place name'. Note that the verb kinmu-ha- takes the particle e when preceded by a place name while the verb il-ha- takes the particle esə when preceded by a place name.
17. Pothong is used either as a sentence adverb or as a noun, or as a determinative. When pothong is a free noun it means 'usual thing'; as determinative it means 'usual', 'average', 'ordinary'; as an adverb, it means 'usually', 'ordinarily', 'generally'. Compare:

Ki kəs i pothong imnita.	'That's common. ('That is the usual thing.')
Ki pun in pothong salam imnita.	{ 'He is an average person.' 'He is an ordinary man.'
Pothong, achim il məkci anhsimnita.	'Generally, [I] don't eat breakfast.'

18. Olə 'a long time' and olə tongan 'for a long time' both occur either as a nominal or as an adverbial.
19. Han 'about' occurs before numerals and is a determinative which denotes approximation of the following numeral expressions. Compare han with ccim which occurs always after numeral expressions (Unit 6). The verb stem twə- is an intransitive verb which after a title name means 'to become' and after a period of time denotes elapsing.

Samu is a noun which means 'office work'; pothong samu 'general clerical office work'. Smau (lil) po-ta which literally means 'looks at office work' is an fixed usage, meaning 'does office work'.

## GRAMMAR NOTES

1. -ki

The verb ending -ki is added to a verb stem, or to a verb stem plus other suffixes. An inflected form ending in -ki occurs only in the positions where nominals occur (e.g., in the positions of emphasized subject, topic or object). Since this form occupies only in nominal positions, we shall call it Nominalized Verb or simply the ki form, and the -ki ending Nominalizing Verb-Ending. Note that the ki form occurs mostly before description verbs and rarely before action verbs. Examples:

Hankuk mal (il) pəuki (ka) cəmi issimnita.	'Learning Korean is interesting.'
Yəngə (lil) kalichiki (ka) əlyəpsimnikka?	'Is teaching English difficult?'
Nal i cohki (lil) palamnita.	'I hope that the weather is nice.'
Hankuk mal (il) kongpu-haki (lil) wənamnita.	'I want to study Korean.'

2. Particle mata

Mata 'every', 'each' occurs after a period of time or the name of an object, and means either 'each' or 'every'. A nominal + mata is used as an adverbial phrase. Examples:

Uli nin sikan mata suəp i issə yo.	'We have class every hour.'
Welyoil mata pi ka omnita.	'It rains every Monday.'
Hæ mata Nyuyok e kaci yo?	'You go to New York every year, don't you?'
Salam mata ilim i talimnita.	'Each man has a different name.'
Hakkyo mata Yəngə lil kalichimnita.	'All the schools teach English.' ( 'Each school teaches English.' )

3. -(1)l su iss- 'can' vs. -(1)l su əps- 'cannot'

The construction -(1)l su iss- ('[There] is a way to do.') is the Korean equivalent of English 'can' or 'is able to'. The verb stem to which -(1)l is added is the equivalent of the English verb which occurs after either can or be able to. Tenses, levels and/or styles of speech are generated in the verb iss-. Compare:

Kal su issimnita.	'[I] can go.'
Kal su issəssimnita.	'[I] could go.'
Kal su issəssəssimnita.	'[I] could go.'
Kal su isskessə yo.	'[I] will be able to go.'
Kal su issə yo.	'[I] can go.'
Kal su issəssə yo.	'[I] could go.'

The negative equivalent of -(1)l su iss- is either -(1)l su əps- or -ci mot ha-. Compare:

Kal su əpsimnita. }	'[I] cannot go.'
Kaci mot hamnita. }	

Note that mot 'cannot' is an adverb which occurs in the following two constructions (a) and (b) which are the same in meaning:

(a) mot + an inflected expression:

Mot without pause before an inflected expression is used to denote either 'inability' or 'impossibility' of an action or description of the subject or topic in the sentence for the following expression.

(b) -ci + mot + ha-:

The ci form of an action verb plus mot followed by ha- is used to denote either 'inability' or 'impossibility' of an action of the subject or

topic in the sentence for the verb preceding mot. Compare:

- |                                  |   |                          |
|----------------------------------|---|--------------------------|
| 1. Cə nin mot kamnita.           | } | 'I cannot go.'           |
| Cə nin kaci mot hamnita.         |   |                          |
| 2. Cə nin Hankil il mot ilke yo. | } | 'I cannot read Hankil.'  |
| Cə nin Hankil il ilkci mot       |   |                          |
| hæ yo.                           |   |                          |
| 3. Kim Sənsəng i mot wassimnita. | } | 'Mr. Kim couldn't come.' |
| Kim Sənsəng i oci mot            |   |                          |
| həssimnita.                      |   |                          |

In either of the above two constructions, tenses and levels of speech are generated in the verb which occurs immediately after mot. Compare mot with the adverb an which is used before an inflected expression to denote simple negation of the following expression (See Unit 3). Note that the construction, the -ci form of a description verb + mot ha-, is synonymous with either -ci anh- or an + a description verb. We will learn more about this in further units.

#### 4. Particle pota 'than', 'more than'

Pota follows a nominal X with which another nominal, Y, is being compared. Nominal Y may be followed by a description verb which may be preceded by tə 'more'. Examples:

- |   |   |  |
|---|---|--|
| Tokile pota Hankuke ka tə əlyəpsimnita. | } | 'Korean is more difficult than German.'          |
| Hankuke ka Tokile pota tə əlyəpsimnita. |   |  |
| I chæk pota tə ssan chæk in əpsimnita.  |   | 'We don't have a cheaper book than this (book).' |
| əce pota onil il tə cohahamnita.        | } | '[I] like today better than yesterday.'          |
| Onil il əce pota tə cohahamnita.        |   |  |

## DRILLS

## A. Substitution Drill

- |   |                               |
|---|-------------------------------|
| 1. Cə nin nal mata hakkyo e kamnita.            | I go to school every day.     |
| 2. Cə nin <u>Wəlyoil</u> mata hakkyo e kamnita. | I go to school every Monday.  |
| 3. Cə nin <u>achim</u> mata hakkyo e kamnita.   | I go to school every morning. |
| 4. Cə nin <u>cənyək</u> mata hakkyo e kamnita.  | I go to school every evening. |
| 5. Cə nin <u>tal</u> mata hakkyo e kamnita.     | I go to school every month.   |
| 6. Cə nin <u>cuil</u> mata hakkyo e kamnita.    | I go to school every week.    |
| 7. Cə nin <u>hæ</u> mata hakkyo e kamnita.      | I go to school every year.    |
| 8. Cə nin <u>sikan</u> mata hakkyo e kamnita.   | I go to school every hour.    |
| 9. Cə nin <u>pam</u> mata hakkyo e kamnita.     | I go to school every night.   |

## B. Substitution Drill

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. Na nin nal mata hakkyo e kamnita.                   | I go to school everyday.                 |
| 2. Na nin <u>cuil</u> mata <u>Səul</u> e kamnita.      | I go to Seoul every week.                |
| 3. Na nin <u>Ilyoil</u> mata <u>tapang</u> e kamnita.  | I go to a tearoom every Sunday.          |
| 4. Na nin <u>pam</u> mata <u>siktang</u> e kamnita.    | I go to a restaurant every night.        |
| 5. Na nin <u>cənyək</u> mata <u>kikcang</u> e kamnita. | I go to the theatre every evening.       |
| 6. Na nin <u>achim</u> mata <u>samusil</u> e kamnita.  | I go to the office every morning.        |
| 7. Na nin <u>Thoyoil</u> mata <u>sicang</u> e kamnita. | I go to the market place every Saturday. |
| 8. Na nin <u>sikan</u> mata <u>kyosil</u> e kamnita.   | I go to the classroom every hour.        |
| 9. Na nin <u>tal</u> mata <u>inhəng</u> e kamnita.     | I go to the bank every month.            |

## C. Substitution Drill

- |  |                                     |
|--|-------------------------------------|
| 1. Salam mata Yenge l1l <u>pæulyeko</u><br><u>hamnita.</u>       | Everybody intends to learn English. |
| 2. Salam mata Yenge l1l <u>kalichilyeko</u><br><u>hamnita.</u>   | Everybody intends to teach English. |
| 3. Salam mata Yenge l1l <u>alyeko</u><br><u>hamnita.</u>         | Everybody intends to know English.  |
| 4. Salam mata Yenge l1l <u>mal-halyeko</u><br><u>hamnita.</u>    | Everybody intends to speak English. |
| 5. Salam mata Yenge l1l <u>ilkilyeko</u><br><u>hamnita.</u>      | Everybody intends to read English.  |
| *6. Salam mata Yenge l1l <u>ssilyeko</u><br><u>hamnita.</u>      | Everybody intends to write English. |
| 7. Salam mata Yenge l1l <u>kongpu-halyeko</u><br><u>hamnita.</u> | Everybody intends to study English. |
| 8. Salam mata Yenge l1l <u>mal-hal su</u><br><u>issimnita.</u>   | Everybody can speak English.        |
| 9. Salam mata Yenge l1l <u>mal-haci</u><br><u>anhsimnita.</u>    | Not everybody speaks English.       |
| 10. Salam mata Yenge l1l <u>kalichil su</u><br><u>epsimnita.</u> | Not everybody can teach English.    |
| 11. Salam mata Yenge l1l <u>kalichici mot</u><br><u>hamnita.</u> | Not everybody can teach English.    |

## D. Substitution Drill

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. Salam mata Yenge l1l <u>pæumnita.</u>                           | Everybody learns English.                         |
| 2. <u>Hakkyo</u> mata Yenge il <u>kalichimnita.</u>                | All the schools teach English.                    |
| 3. <u>Sensæng</u> mata Yenge l1l <u>amnita.</u>                    | All the teachers know English.                    |
| 4. <u>Haksæng</u> mata Yenge l1l <u>kongpu-</u><br><u>hamnita.</u> | Each student studies English.                     |
| 5. <u>Tæsa</u> mata Yenge l1l <u>cal hamnita.</u>                  | Every ambassador speaks good English.             |
| 6. <u>Wekyokwan</u> mata Yenge l1l<br><u>ilksimnita.</u>           | Everyone in the foreign service<br>reads English. |
| 7. <u>Ai</u> mata Yenge l1l <u>pæulyeko</u><br><u>hamnita.</u>     | Every child intends to learn English.             |

- |   |                                      |
|---|--------------------------------------|
| 8. <u>Sensæng</u> mata Yøngø lil <u>(mal-)hal</u><br><u>su issimnita.</u> | All the teachers can speak English.  |
| 9. <u>Sensæng</u> mata Yøngø lil <u>mal-haci mot</u><br><u>hamnita.</u>   | Not every teacher can speak English. |
| 10. <u>Sensæng</u> mata Yøngø lil <u>kalichil su</u><br><u>epsimnita.</u> | Not every teacher can teach English. |
| 11. <u>Sensæng</u> mata Yøngø lil <u>konpu-haci</u><br><u>anhsimnita.</u> | Not every teacher studies English.   |

## E. Substitution Drill

- |   |                                  |
|---|----------------------------------|
| 1. Hankuk mal pæuki swipsimnikka?                           | Is learning Korean easy?         |
| 2. Hankuk mal <u>kalichiki</u> swipsimnikka?                | Is teaching Korean easy?         |
| 3. Hankuk mal <u>(mal-)haki</u> swipsimnikka?               | Is speaking Korean easy?         |
| 4. Hankuk mal <u>i(l)kki</u> swipsimnikka?                  | Is reading Korean easy?          |
| 5. Hankuk mal <u>ssiki</u> swipsimnikka?                    | Is writing Korean easy?          |
| 6. Hankuk mal <u>kongpu-haki</u> swipsimnikka?              | Is studying Korean easy?         |
| 7. Hankuk mal kongpu-haki <u>elyepsimnikka?</u>             | Is studying Korean difficult?    |
| 8. Hankuk mal kongpu-haki <u>cæmi</u><br><u>issimnikka?</u> | Is studying Korean interesting?  |
| 9. Hankuk mal kongpu-haki<br><u>kwæchanhsimnikka?</u>       | Is studying Korean all right?    |
| 10. Hankuk mal kongpu-haki<br><u>cohahamnikka?</u>          | Do you like studying Korean?     |
| 11. Hankuk mal kongpu-haki <u>consimnikka?</u>              | Is learning Korean, O.K.?        |
| 12. Hankuk mal kongpu-haki <u>ettæhsimnikka?</u>            | How do you like studying Korean? |



## F. Substitution Drill

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. Cə nin Panto Hwesa e kinmu-hamnita.           | I work<br>I am employed } at Bando Company. |
| 2. Cə nin <u>Mikuk Təsakwan</u> e kinmu-hamnita. | I work at the US Embassy.                   |
| 3. Cə nin <u>Səul Sichəng</u> e kinmu-hamnita.   | I work at Seoul City Hall.                  |
| 4. Cə nin <u>Hankuk inhəng</u> e kinmu-hamnita.  | I work at the Bank of Korea.                |
| 5. Cə nin <u>Pusan Uphyənku</u> e kinmu-hamnita. | I work at the Pusan Post Office.            |
| 6. Cə nin <u>Panto Hothel</u> e kinmu-hamnita.   | I work at the Bando Hotel.                  |
| 7. Cə nin <u>Mikuk Cəngpu</u> e kinmu-hamnita.   | I work for the US Government.               |
| 8. Cə nin <u>sinə sangcəm</u> e kinmu-hamnita.   | I work at a store downtown.                 |
| 9. Cə nin <u>Səul pəkhwacəm</u> e kinmu-hamnita. | I work at Seoul Department Store.           |

## G. Substitution Drill

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Il i cəmi issimnita.                   | [My] work is interesting.                                |
| 2. <u>Hakkyo</u> ka cəmi issimnita.       | {School is interesting.<br>I enjoy school.               |
| 3. <u>Kongpu</u> ka cəmi issimnita.       | {Studying is interesting.<br>I enjoy studying.           |
| 4. <u>Chək</u> i cəmi issimnita.          | This book is interesting.                                |
| 5. <u>Hankuk mal</u> i cəmi issimnita.    | Korean is interesting.                                   |
| 6. <u>Cə salam</u> i cəmi issimnita.      | He ('that man') is interesting.                          |
| 7. <u>Il-haki</u> ka cəmi issimnita.      | {I enjoy working. ('It's interesting to<br>to work.')    |
|   | {Working is interesting.                                 |
| 8. <u>Kongpu-haki</u> ka cəmi issimnita.  | {I enjoy studying.<br>Studying is interesting.           |
| 9. <u>Chək i(l)kki</u> ka cəmi issimnita. | {I enjoy reading books.<br>Reading books is interesting. |
| *10. <u>Munce</u> ka cəmi issimnita.      | The problem is interesting.                              |

## H. Substitution Drill

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. Yenge l1l com (mal-)hal su issimnita.               | I can speak a little English.              |
| *2. <u>Wekuke</u> l1l com (mal-)hal su<br>issimnita.   | I can speak foreign languages a<br>little. |
| *3. <u>Cungkuke</u> l1l com (mal-)hal su<br>issimnita. | I can speak a little Chinese.              |
| *4. <u>Tokile</u> l1l com (mal-)hal su<br>issimnita.   | I can speak a little German.               |
| *5. <u>Ilpone</u> l1l com (mal-)hal su<br>issimnita.   | I can speak a little Japanese.             |
| *6. <u>Pullanse</u> l1l com (mal-)hal su<br>issimnita. | I can speak a little French.               |
| *7. <u>Ssolyene</u> l1l com (mal-)hal su<br>issimnita. | I can speak a little Russian.              |
| *8. <u>Ithælie</u> l1l com (mal-)hal su<br>issimnita.  | I can speak a little Italian.              |
| *9. <u>Sepanae</u> l1l com (mal-)hal su<br>issimnita.  | I can speak a little Spanish.              |

## I. Substitution Drill

- |   |                           |
|---|---------------------------|
| 1. Cə nin Yenge l1l ssici mot hamnita.                    | I can't write in English. |
| 2. Cə nin <u>ilim</u> il ssici mot hamnita.               | I can't write [my] name.  |
| 3. Cə nin <u>Hankil</u> il ssici mot hamnita.             | I can't write Hankul.     |
| 4. Cə nin <u>Tokile</u> l1l ssici mot<br>hamnita.         | I can't write in German.  |
| 5. Cə nin <u>Pullanse</u> l1l ssici mot<br>hamnita.       | I can't write in French.  |
| 6. Cə nin <u>Ssolyene</u> l1l ssici mot<br>hamnita.       | I can't write in Russian. |
| 7. Cə nin <u>Ithælie</u> l1l ssici mot<br>hamnita.        | I can't write in Italian. |
| 8. Cə nin <u>Hankuke</u> l1l ssici mot<br>hamnita.        | I can't write in Korean.  |
| 9. Cə nin Hakuke l1l <u>ilkei mot</u><br><u>hamnita</u> . | I can't read in Korean.   |

10. Cə nin Hankukə lɪl mal-haci mot  
hamnita. I can't speak Korean.
11. Cə nin Hankukə lɪl pəuci mot  
hamnita. I can't learn Korean.
12. Cə nin Hankukə lɪl kalichici mot  
hamnita. I can't teach Korean.
- \*13. Cə nin Hankukə lɪl alci mot  
hamnita. I don't know Korean. ('I can't know Korean.')
- \*14. Cə nin Hankukə lɪl ssici mot  
hamnita. {I can't use Korean.  
I can't write Korean.

## J. Substitution Drill

1. Hankuk mal i Tokil mal pota tɛ  
əlyɛpsimnita. Korean is more difficult than German.
2. Cungkuk mal i Yəngə pota tɛ  
əlyɛpsimnita. Chinese is more difficult than English.
3. Pullanse mal i Ithəli mal pota  
tɛ əlyɛpsimnita. French is more difficult than Italian.
4. Ssolyən mal i Hankuk mal pota  
tɛ əlyɛpsimnita. Russian is more difficult than Korean.
5. Ilpon mal i Ssolyən mal pota tɛ  
əlyɛpsimnita. Japanese is more difficult than Russian.
6. Yəngə ka Tokil mal pota tɛ  
əlyɛpsimnita. English is more difficult than German.
7. Yəngə ka Tokil mal pota tɛ  
swipsimnita. English is easier than German.
8. Yəngə ka Tokil mal pota tɛ  
cəmi issimnita. English is more interesting than German.
9. Yəngə ka Tokil mal pota tɛ  
pokcap-hamnita. English is more complicated than German.
- \*10. Yəngə ka Tokil mal pota tɛ  
cəmi əpsimnita. English is less interesting than German.
- \*11. Yəngə ka Tokil mal pota tɛ  
kantan-hamnita. English is simpler than German.

## K. Substitution Drill

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. Musin il il <u>culo</u> hase yo?          | What (kind of work) do you do mainly?                                  |
| 2. Musin il il <u>nal mata</u> hase yo?      | What (kind of work) do you do every-day?                               |
| 3. Musin il il <u>kiløhke</u> hase yo?       | {What are you working at so hard?<br>What are you doing in such a way? |
| 4. Musin il il <u>pothong</u> hase yo?       | What do you usually do?  |
| 5. Musin il il <u>kili</u> hase yo?          | What are you doing so hard?  |
| * 6. Musin il il <u>manhi</u> hase yo?       | What do you do mostly?   |
| 7. Musin il il <u>cenyek mata</u> hase yo?   | What do you do every evening?  |
| 8. Musin il il <u>tækæ</u> hase yo?          | What do you usually do?  |
| * 9. Musin il il <u>ciklm puthæ</u> hase yo? | What [are] you [going to] do from now on?                              |
| 10. Musin il il <u>næil kkaci</u> hase yo?   | What [are] you [going to] do until tomorrow?                           |
| 11. Musin il il <u>kl ttæ e</u> hase yo?     | What [are] you [going to] do at that time?                             |

## L. Substitution Drill

- |  |                                  |
|--|----------------------------------|
| 1. Cæn e mal-haci anhæssimnikka?           | Didn't [I] tell [you] before?    |
| 2. Cæn e <u>kaci</u> anhæssimnikka?        | Didn't [you] go [there] before?  |
| 3. Cæn e <u>saci</u> anhæssimnikka?        | Didn't [you] buy [it] before?    |
| 4. Cæn e <u>mannaci</u> anhæssimnikka?     | Didn't [we] meet before?         |
| 5. Cæn e <u>pæuci</u> anhæssimnikka?       | Didn't [you] learn [it] before?  |
| 6. Cæn e <u>ilkci</u> anhæssimnikka?       | Didn't [you] read [it] before?   |
| 7. Cæn e <u>cohci</u> anhæssimnikka?       | Wasn't [it] nice before?         |
| *8. Cæn e <u>poci</u> anhæssimnikka?       | Didn't [you] see [it] before?    |
| *9. Cæn e <u>kkith-næci</u> anhæssimnikka? | Didn't [you] finish [it] before? |

## M. Substitution Drill

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. (Han) <u>sam nyen</u> ccim tweæssimnita.     | It's been about three years.            |
| 2. (Han) <u>sam cuil</u> ccim tweæssimnita.     | It's been about three weeks.            |
| 3. (Han) <u>se sikan</u> ccim tweæssimnita.     | It's been about three hours.            |
| 4. (Han) <u>sək tal</u> ccim tweæssimnita.      | It's been about three months.           |
| 5. (Han) <u>sam pun</u> ccim tweæssimnita.      | It's been about three minutes.          |
| 6. (Han) <u>sa nyen pan</u> ccim tweæssimnita.  | It's been about four and a half years.  |
| 7. (Han) <u>ne sikan pan</u> ccim tweæssimnita. | It's been about four and a half hours.  |
| 8. (Han) <u>nək tal pan</u> ccim tweæssimnita.  | It's been about four and a half months. |

## N. Substitution Drill

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Kim Sənsəng in <u>wekyokwan</u> (i)<br>tweæssimnita.       | Mr. Kim became a diplomat.             |
| 2. Kim Sənsəng in <u>kunin</u> (i)<br>tweæssimnita.           | Mr. Kim became a soldier.              |
| 3. Kim Sənsəng in <u>təsa</u> (ka)<br>tweæssimnita.           | Mr. Kim became an ambassador.          |
| 4. Kim Sənsəng in <u>yəngsa</u> (ka)<br>tweæssimnita.         | Mr. Kim became a consul.               |
| * 5. Kim Sənsəng in <u>Təthongyəng</u> (i)<br>tweæssimnita.   | Mr. Kim became the President.          |
| * 6. Kim Sənsəng in <u>hakca</u> (ka)<br>tweæssimnita.        | Mr. Kim became a scholar.              |
| * 7. Kim Sənsəng in <u>təhak kyosu</u> (ka)<br>tweæssimnita.  | Mr. Kim became a college professor.    |
| * 8. Kim Sənsəng in <u>təhak kangsa</u> (ka)<br>tweæssimnita. | Mr. Kim became a college instructor.   |
| * 9. Kim Sənsəng in <u>kongpokwan</u> (i)<br>tweæssimnita.    | Mr. Kim became an information officer. |
| * 10. Kim Sənsəng in <u>thongyəkwan</u> (i)<br>tweæssimnita.  | Mr. Kim became an interpreter.         |
| * 11. Kim Sənsəng in <u>sinmun kica</u> (ka)<br>tweæssimnita. | Mr. Kim became a journalist.           |
| * 12. Kim Sənsəng in <u>lysa</u> (ka)<br>tweæssimnita.        | Mr. Kim became a doctor.               |

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| *13. Kim Sænsæng in <u>sacang</u> (i)<br>tweæssimnita.          | Mr. Kim became a president (of the company). |
| *14. Kim Sænsæng in <u>pyenhosa</u> (ka)<br>tweæssimnita.       | Mr. Kim became a lawyer.                     |
| *15. Kim Sænsæng in <u>kyængchal(kwan)</u> (i)<br>tweæssimnita. | Mr. Kim became a policeman.                  |

## O. Grammar Drill

Tutor: Hankuk mal i ælyæpsimnita.  
/Tokil mal/

'Korean is difficult.' /German/

Student: Tokil mal in tæ ælyæwæ yo.

'German is more difficult.'

1. Tokil mal i swipsimnita.  
/Pullansæ mal/

Pullansæ mal in tæ swiwæ yo.

2. Yæng-Han sacæn i pissamnita.  
/Han-Yæng sacæn/

Han-Yæng sacæn in tæ pissa yo.

3. Sæul i khimnita. /Nyuyok/

Nyuyok in tæ khæ yo.

4. Sæul e mulkæn kaps i ssamnita.  
/Pusan/

Pusan e mulkæn kaps in tæ ssa yo.

5. Kim Sænsæng cip i kakkapsimnita.  
/Pak Sænsæng cip/

Pak Sænsæng cip in tæ kakkawæ yo.

\*6. Catongcha ka copsimnita.  
/pihængki/

Pihængki nin tæ copa yo.

7. Hankuk yæca ka yeppimnita. /Mikuk  
yæca/

Mikuk yæca nin tæ yeppæ yo.

8. Ilpon i cakın nala imnita.  
/Hankuk/

Hankuk in tæ cakın nala iye yo.

## P. Expansion Drill

Tutor: Tokil mal i swipsimnita..  
/Pullansə mal/

Student: Tokil mal i Pullansə mal  
pota tē swipsimnita.

1. Hankuk i caksimnita. /Ilpon/
2. Pusan i memnita. /Inchen/
3. Kicha ka cal tanimnita. /pihængki/
4. Yəngə ka əlyəpsimnita. /Hankuk mal/
5. Hankuk yəca ka alimtapsimnita.  
/Cungkuk yəca/
6. Kim Sənsəng i yəngə lil cal  
hamnita. /Ceimsi Sənsəng/
7. Khin sacən il cohahamnita. /cakin  
sacən/
8. Səul e salam i manhi issimnita.  
/Wəsingthon/

'German is easy.' /French/

'German is easier than French.'

- Hankuk i Ilpon pota tē caksimnita.  
Pusan i Inchen pota tē memnita.  
Kicha ka pihængki pota tē cal  
tanimnita.  
Yəngə ka Hankuk mal pota tē  
əlyəpsimnita.  
Hankuk yəca ka Cungkuk yəca pota  
tē alimtapsimnita.  
Kim Sənsəng i Ceimsi Sənsəng pota  
Yəngə lil tē cal hamnita.  
Khin sacən il cakin sacən pota tē  
cohahamnita.  
Səul e Wəsingthon pota tē salam i  
manhi issimnita.

## Q. Response Drill

Tutor: Yəngə lil mal-hal su isse yo?

Student: Ne, (Yəngə lil) mal-hal su  
issimnita.

1. Hankil il ilkil su isse yo?
2. Hakkyo e kal su isse yo?
3. Yəngə lil kalichil su isse yo?
4. Onil cip e issil su isse yo?
5. Cikim kil il mulə pol su isse yo?
6. Nəil il-hal su isse yo?
7. Samusil e tillil su isse yo?
8. K1 catongcha lil phal su isse yo?

'Can you speak English?'

'Yes, I can (speak).'

- Ne, (Hankil il) ilkil su issimnita.  
Ne, (hakkyo e) kal su issimnita.  
Ne, (Yəngə lil) kalichil su  
issimnita.  
Ne, (onil) cip e issil su issimnita.  
Ne, (cikim kil il) mulə pol su  
issimnita.  
Ne, (nəil) il-hal su issimnita.  
Ne, (samusil e) tillil su issimnita.  
Ne, (k1 catongcha lil) phal su  
issimnita.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 9. Ohu e ttənal su issə yo?                      | Ne, (ohu e) ttənal su issimnita.                     |
| 10. Ppəsı lıl thal su issə yo?                   | Ne, (ppəsı lıl) thal su issimnita.                   |
| 11. Taim tal puthe hakkyo e tanıl su<br>issə yo? | Ne, (taim tal puthe hakkyo e) tanıl<br>su issimnita. |
| 12. Nəıl kkacı il il kkıth-nəl su i<br>issə yo?  | Ne, nəıl kkacı (il il) kkıth-nəl su<br>issimnita.    |
| 12. Kı il il cıkım sicak-hal su<br>issə yo?      | Ne, (kı il il) cıkım sicak-hal su<br>issimnita.      |

## R. Response Drill

Tutor: Hakkyo e kal su issimnikka?

'Can you go to school?'

Student: Aniyo, (hakkyo e) kal su  
          əpsimnita.

'No, I cannot (go).'

1. Hankıl il ilkil su issimnikka?
2. Yəngə lıl kalıchıl su issimnikka?
3. Onıl cip e issıl su issimnikka?
4. Cıkım kil il mulə pol su  
    issimnikka?
5. Nəıl il-hal su issimnikka?
6. Samusıl e tıllıl su issimnikka?
7. Kıl catongcha lıl phal su issimnikka?
8. Ohu e ttənal su issimnikka?
9. Mikuk esə hakkyo e tanıl su  
    issimnikka?

Aniyo, (Hankıl il) ilkil su  
          əpsimnita.Aniyo, (Yəngə lıl) kalıchıl su  
          əpsimnita.

Aniyo, (cip e) issıl su əpsimnita.

Aniyo, (kil il) mulə pol su  
          əpsimnita.

Aniyo, il-hal su əpsimnita.

Aniyo, tıllıl su əpsimnita.

Aniyo, phal su əpsimnita.

Aniyo, ttənal su əpsimnita.

Aniyo, tanıl su əpsimnita.



## S. Response Drill

Tutor: Hakkyo e kal su epsimnikka?

'Can't you go to school?'

Student: Ne, kaci mot hamnita.

'No, I can't (go).'

1. Yenge lil mal-hal su epsimnikka?

Ne, mal-haci mot hamnita.

2. Hankil il ilkil su epsimnikka?

Ne, ilkci mot hamnita.

3. Tokil mal il kalichil su  
epsimnikka?

Ne, kalichici mot hamnita.

4. Onil nœ samusil e tllilil su  
epsimnikka?

Ne, tllilici mot hamnita.

5. Nœil il-hal su epsimnikka?

Ne, (nœil) il-haci mot hamnita.

6. Cha lil phal su epsimnikka?

Ne, phalci mot hamnita.

7. Ohu e ttenal su epsimnikka?

Ne, ttenaci mot hamnita.

8. Nœil kkaci il il kkith-nœil su  
epsimnikka?Ne, (nœil kkaci) khith-nœici mot  
hamnita.9. Mikuk esœ hakkyo e tanil su  
epsimnikka?Ne, (Mikuk esœ hakkyo e) tanici mot  
hamnita.

## T. Response Drill

Tutor: Hakkyo ka mœmnikka?

'Is the school far?'

Student: Aniyō, kili mœlci anhsimnita.

'No, it's not so far.'

1. Haksœng i manhsimnikka?

Aniyō, kili manhci anhsimnita.

2. Sicang e mulken i pissamnikka?

Aniyō, kili pissaci anhsimnita.

3. inhœng i kakkapsimnikka?

Aniyō, kili kakkapci anhsimnita.

4. I kilim i alimtapimnikka?

Aniyō, kili alimtapci anhsimnita.

5. Ki pun i Ssolyœn mal il cal  
hamnikka?

Aniyō, kili cal haci anhsimnita.

6. Tangsœn in cœ yœca lil cohahamnikka?

Aniyō, kili cohahaci anhsimnita.

7. Hankuk mal kyosil i khimnikka?

Aniyō, kili khici anhsimnita.

8. Sikan i manhi kœllimnikka?

Aniyō, kili manhi kœllici  
anhsimnita.

9. Ssolyœn mal i pœuki swipsimnikka?

Aniyō, kili swipci anhsimnita.

10. Cœ tokil yœca ka yeppimnikka?

Aniyō, kili yeppici anhsimnita.

11. Sensœng in cikim puncuhamnikka?

Aniyō, kili puncuhaci anhsimnita.

12. Yenge lil kalichiki œlyœpsimnikka?

Aniyō, kili œlyœpci anhsimnita.

13. Yœng-Han sacœn i philyœ-hamnikka?

Aniyō, kili philyœ-haci anhsimnita.

## U. Response Drill (Answer the question using /pəlsə/ in the proper place.)

Tutor: Kim Sənsəng i ttenasse yo?

'Has Mr. Kim left?'

Student: Ne, (Kim Sənsəng i) pəlsə  
ttenassimnita.

'Yes, he has laready left.'

1. Ki il il kkith-nəsse yo?

Ne, (ki il il) pəlsə kkith-nəssimnita.

2. Yəngə sənsəng il mannasse yo?

Ne, (Yəngə sənsəng il) pəlsə  
mannassimnita.

3. Han sam nyən ccim tweesse yo?

Ne, pəlsə han sam nyən ccim  
tweessimnita.

4. Haksəng i kicha e thasse yo?

Ne, (haksəng i) pəlsə (kicha e)  
thassimnita.5. Hankuk mal kongpu lil sicak-həsse  
yo?Ne, (Hankuk mal kongpu lil) pəlsə  
sicak-hassimnita.

6. Onil i Suyoil iye yo?

Ne, (Onil i) pəlsə Suyoil imnita.

7. Pak Sənsəng in il-hale kasse yo?

Ne, (Pak Sənsəng in) pəlsə il-hale  
kassimnita.

8. Sənsəng in hyuka lil patesse yo?

Ne, pəlsə (hyuka lil) patəssimnita.

9. Com swiesse yo?

Ne, pəlsə swiəssimnita.

10. Kicha ka cəngkəcang e tahasse yo?

Ne, pəlsə (cəngkəcang e)  
tahassimnita.

## V. Response Drill (Answer the question using /acik/ in the proper place.)

Tutor: Kim Sənsəng i pəlsə  
ttenassimnikka?

'Has Mr. Kim left already?'

Student: Aniyo, (Kim Sənsəng i) acik  
ttenaci anhesse yo?

'No, he's not left yet.'

1. Hakkyo ka pəlsə kkith-nassimnikka?

Aniyo, (hakkyo ka) acik kkith-naci  
anhesse yo.2. Yəngə sənsəng il pəlsə  
mannassimnikka?Aniyo, (Yəngə sənsəng il) acik  
mannaci anhesse yo.

3. Pəlsə sam nyən i tweəssimnikka?

Aniyo, acik (sam nyən i) tweci  
anhesse yo.4. Hankuk mal kongpu lil pəlsə sicak-  
həssimnikka?Aniyo, (Hankuk mal kongpu lil) aci  
sicak-haci anhesse yo.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 5. Pak Sənsəŋ in pəlsə il-halə<br>kassimnikka?     | Aniyo, (Pak Sənsəŋ in) acik (il-halə) kacı anhəsə yo.  |
| 6. Sənsəŋ in pəlsə hyuka lil<br>patəssimnikka?     | Aniyo, (Acik hyuka lil) patci anhəsə yo.               |
| 7. Kicha ka pəlsə cəngkəcang e<br>tahassimnikka?   | Aniyo, (kicha ka) acik (cəngkəcang e) tahci anhəsə yo. |
| 8. Pihəngki ka pəlsə ttənassimnikka?               | Aniyo, (pihəngki ka) acik ttənaci anhəsə yo.           |
| 9. Kī il il pəlsə kkith-nəssimnikka?               | Aniyo, (kī il il) acik kkith-nəci anhəsə yo.           |
| 10. Kim Sənsəŋ i pəlsə yəngsa ka<br>tweəssimnikka? | Aniyo, (Kim Sənsəŋ i) acik yəngsa ka tweci anhəsə yo.  |

## EXERCISES

1. Tell the following story to Mr. Park that:
  - (a) You are attending school these days to study Korean. Learning Korean is not so easy but it is interesting. Foreign languages are necessary for you. You can speak German a little but cannot read it well. Korean is more difficult to study than German.
  - (b) Mr. Lee is a little busy these days. He didn't tell you before, but he is employed at the Bando Company, where he does ordinary office work. And, he has lots of work everyday. He has been with the Company for about three months now. He likes his job very much.
  
2. James wants to know what Mr. Kim, you friend, is. Tell him that Mr. Kim has become a(n):
 

a. soldier	i. President of a company
b. ambassador	j. Consul
c. the President	k. clerk
d. professor	l. scholar
e. journalist	m. interpreter
f. (medical) doctor	n. information officer
g. lawyer	o. secretary
h. college professor	p. police(man)
	q. civil servant



5. Make short statements in which the following expressions are included:

- a. cuil mata
- b. kilī
- c. tē
- d. culo
- e. pothong
- f. olæ (tongan)
- g. kilēhke
- h. cikim puthē
- i. nēil kkaci
- k. pēlsse
- k. acik

## 제 9 과      영화 구경

(대화 A)

영화

1. 미쓰 츠 :      오늘 저녁에 영화 보러 안 가겠어요?

참

좋은 생각

2. 미쓰 부타운 :      아, 그거, 참 좋은 생각입니다. 어디에 좋은  
영화가 있어요?

국제

국제극장

(영화를) 상영합니다

상영하고 있습니다

3. 미쓰 츠 :      국제극장에서 미국 영화를 상영하고 있습니다.

보고 싶습니다

4. 미쓰 부타운 :      나는 한국 영화를 보고 싶습니다.

5. 미쓰 츠 :      한국 영화를 좋아하세요?

가끔

6. 미쓰 부타운 :      예, 가끔 보러 가지요.

다

듣습니다, 들읍니다

알어 듣습니다

7. 미쓰 츠 :      한국 말을 다 알아 듣습니까?

## UNIT 9. Going to the Movies

## BASIC DIALOGUES FOR MEMORIZATION

Dialogue A

(Miss Choi and Miss Brown work in the same office.)

Miss Choi

- yenghwa [the] movies  
 1. Onil cenyek e yenghwa pole Wouldn't you like to go to see a  
 an kakessə yo? movie tonight?

Miss Brown

- cham really; very  
 cohin saengkak good idea; good thought  
 2. A, k1 kəs, cham cohin saengkak Oh, that's a very good idea. Is  
 imnita. eti e cohin yenghwa ka there a good movie on? ('Is there  
 isse yo? a good movie somewhere?')

Miss Choi

- kukce international  
 Kukce Kikcang International Theatre  
 (yenghwa l1l) sangyeng-hamnita [they] show movies  
 sangyeng-hako issimnita movies are being shown  
 3. Kukce Kikcang esə Mikuk yenghwa l1l [They] are showing an American  
 sangyeng-hako issimnita. movie at the Interantional  
 Theatre.

Miss Brown

- poko siphsimnita/sipssimnita/ I want to see; I'd like to see  
 4. Na n1n Hankuk yenghwa l1l poko I want to see a Korean movie.  
 siphsimnita.

Miss Choi

5. Hankuk yenghwa l1l cohahase yo? Do you like Korean movies?

Miss Brown

- kakkim sometimes  
 6. Ne, kakkim pole kaci yo. Yes, I go to see [them] sometimes.

아어 듣지 못 합니다

그러지만

연습

연습합니다

8. 미쓰 부타운 : 아니요, 다 아어 듣지 못 합니다. 그렇지만, 좋은 연습입니다.

(대화 B)

뜸

9. RA : 뜸이 있습니까?

바뻐니다

10. RB : 왜요? 좀 바뻐니다.

무슨 이로

그렇게

늘

11. RA : 무슨 이로 그렇게 늘 바버요?

할 이

피

많습니다

12. RB : 오늘은 할 이이 피 많습니다.

그래서

나하고

구경

구경합니다, 구경합니다



Miss Choi

ta  
titsimnita }  
tilimnita }  
alə titsimnikka

all  
[I] hear; [I] listen to  
do you comprehend?; do you  
understand?

7. Hankuk mal il ta alə titsimnikka? Do you understand Korean (language) thoroughly?

Miss Brown

alə titci mot hamnita  
  
kiləchi man  
yənsip  
yənsip-hamnita

I don't understand; I can't  
understand  
however; nevertheless  
practice  
[I] practice

8. Aniyə, ta alə titci mot hamnita. No, I don't understand it all. But  
Kiləhci man, cohin yənsip imnita. it's good practice.

Dialogue BRoommate A

thim  
9. Thim }  
Sikan } i issimnikka?

free time; spare time  
Are you free now? ('Do you have  
spare time?')

Roommate B

pappimnita  
10. Wə yo? Com pappimnita.

[I]'m busy  
I'm a little busy, why?

Roommate A

musin il lo  
kiləhke  
nil  
11. Musin il lo kiləhke nil pappə  
yo?

why ('with what kind of business')  
so; that way; in such a way  
all the time; always  
How come you are so busy all the  
time? ('With what business you  
are always busy?')

13. RA: 그래서, 나하고 구경 안 가겠어요?  
미안하지만  
나 갑니다  
나 갈 수 없습니다
14. RB: 미안하지만, 오늘은 나 갈 수 없습니다.
15. RA: 그럼, 내일은 나와 같이 나 갈 수 있겠어요?
16. RB: 예, 내일은 바쁘지 않습니다. 내일 같이 나 갑시다.
17. RA: 그러면, 내일 까지 기다리게어요.

Roommate B

hal il	work to do; something to do
phək	very; quite
manhsimnita	[there]'re many; [there]'re plenty

12. Onil in hal il i phək manhsimnita. I have a lot of things to do today.

Roommate A

kilæ sə	therefore; so
na hako	with me
kukyəng	show; sightseeing
kukyəng kamnita }	[I] go to a show; [I] go sight-
kukyəng-hamnita }	seeing; [I] look around

13. Kilæ sə, na hako kukyəng an kakesse yo? Then, you won't go to a show with me?

Roommate B

mianhaci man	I'm sorry but...
na kamnita	[I] go out
na kal su əpsimnita	[I] cannot go out

14. Mianhaci man, onil in na kal su əpsimnita. I'm sorry but I can't go out today.

Roommate A

15. Kiləm, næil in na wa kathi na kal su isskessə yo? Will you be able to go out with me tomorrow, then?

Roommate B

16. Ne, næil il pappici anhkessimnita. Næil kathi na kapsita. Yes, I will not be busy tomorrow. Let's go out together tomorrow.

Roommate A

- |                |             |
|----------------|-------------|
| kitalikessə yo | [I]'ll wait |
|----------------|-------------|
17. Kiləmyən, næil kkaci kitalikessə yo. Well, then, I'll wait until tomorrow.

## NOTES ON DIALOGUES

(Numbers correspond to the sentence numbers in the dialogues.)

2. Cham 'really', 'very' is an adverb which occurs without pause before description verbs or other adverbs. It denotes intensification of the qualities of the following expression. Cham followed by a pause also occurs as a sentence adverb which means 'by the way'.
  
7. Ta 'all', 'in all', 'thoroughly' is an adverb which occurs before inflected expressions (mostly verbals or sentences) to denote either completion or entirety. Alə til- ~ alə til- 'to understand', 'to comprehend' is a verb phrase which implies that someone 'listens and understands through ears'. The second verb in the verb phrase occurs in an alternative form tit- or til- which means 'listen to-' as an independent verb. In standard Korean, tit- occurs only in the following inflected forms: titsimnita/titsimnikka and titkessimnita/titkessimnikka; til- occurs elsewhere. Note that there are a few verb stems which are called the t-l alternative stems to which tit- ~ til- belongs. The inflections of this class of verbs are the same as tit- ~ til-.
  
8. Yənsip 'practice' is a noun. Its verb form yənsip-ha- 'to practice' occurs as a transitive verb.
  
9. Thim 'spare time', 'free time' is a free noun.
  
11. Nil 'always' is synonymous with hangsang 'all the time', ənce na 'all the time', ənce tinci 'all the time' and hangsi 'always'.
  
12. Phək 'quite', 'considerably', 'comparatively' is an adverb which occurs only before description verbs or other adverbs. It is used to imply that the degree of the following expression is more than the speaker's expectation.

## GRAMMAR NOTES

1. -ko

The verb ending -ko may be added to a verb stem, or to a stem plus other suffixes. However, if either the verb iss- or siph- succeeds without pause immediately after it, tense suffixes do not occur before the -ko ending. Since the inflected form ending in -ko (or simply the ko form) occurs always before other inflected expressions it is often called the Korean Gerund. The ko form occurs in the following three constructions:

(a) -ko + iss- 'be ---ing'

An action verb ending in -ko + iss-, denotes that the action of the verb in the ko form is in the process of occurring, or in the state of being. Tenses and/or levels of speech may be generated in iss- but not in the ko form. Examples:

Cə nin ki yəca lɪl salang-hako issə yo.	'I am in love with her.' ('As for me, I'm in the process of loving that woman.')
Hankuk mal ɪl pəuko issimnita. ki ttæ e Səul esə salko issəsə yo.	'[I] am studying Korean (now).' '[I] was living in Seoul at that time.'

(b) -ko + siph- and -ko siphe ha- 'want to-' and 'wants to-'

The verb siph- occurs only after the ko form. The construction -ko + siph- denotes the desire or hope of the sentence subject or topic for the action of the verb in the ko form. If the subject or topic in the sentence is other than the speaker or addressee -ko + siphe ha- is used. The tenses and/or levels of speech may be generated in the verb siph- or siphe ha-. Examples:

Cə nin yəngħwa lɪl poko siphsimnita.	'I want to see a movie.'
Chinku lɪl mannako siphe yo?	'Do you want to meet a friend?'
Ceɪmsɪ ka Yəngə lɪl kalichiko siphe hamnita.	'James wants to teach English.'

(c) -ko + verbs other than iss- or siph-

The ko form which may be followed by a pause also occurs before another inflected expression. The honorific and tense suffixes may be added to the ko form, but if the subject or topic is the same for both verbs, tense suffixes occur only in the final verb. This construction (i.e. -ko followed by another verb) denotes that two actions and/or descriptions are expressed one after another with the one in the ko form occurring or being stated first. Examples:

Hankuk mal i ɛlyɛpko, Yəngə nin swipsimnita.	'Korean is difficult and English is easy.'
Kim Sənsəng in tæsa ka tweəssko, na nin kyosu ka tweəssə yo.	'Mr. Kim became an ambassador, and I became a professor.'
Cə nin mal il pæuko, wekuk e kako siphsimnita.	'I want to study the language and then go to a foreign country.'

2. -ci man '...but'

Man is a particle which, preceded by a nominal or an adverbial, means simply 'only', i.e. N + man 'only N'. The ci form + man which may be followed by a pause occurs before another inflected expression to denote that some contradictory further explanation or remark will follow in the following inflected expression. Examples:

Kakkyo ka mɛlci man, sikan i kili manhi kɛllici anhsimnita.	'The school is far, but it doesn't take much time.'
Cə nin Hankuk mal il pæuci man, cə chinku nin Ilpon mal il kalichie yo.	'I am studying Korean, but my friend is teaching Japanese.'

3. -l/l

We called the inflected form ending in -n/in/nin before a nominal the Present Noun-Modifier Word. (See Unit 5, Grammar Note 1.) The inflected form ending in -(1)l also occurs as a modifier of the following nominal, to denote the future action or description of, or for, the nominal. We shall call such an inflected form the Prospective Noun-Modifier Word, and the ending -(1)l the Prospective Modifier Ending. -il is added to a consonant stem and -l to a vowel stem. The future tense suffix -kess- does not occur before -(1)l. Examples:

<u>Ttenal kicha</u> ka issimnita.	{ 'There is a <u>train which will leave</u> .'
	{ 'There is a <u>train to leave</u> .'

<u>Næ ka ilkil chæk i</u> əpsə yo.	'There is no <u>book which I will read.</u> '
Onil <u>mannaŋ salam i</u> nuku iei yo?	'Who is the <u>man that [you] will meet</u> today?'
<u>Hal il i</u> manhsimnita.	'[I] have a lot <u>work to do.</u> '

4. Particle hako 'with', 'as', 'and'

Hako is an one-shape particle which can be substituted for the particle wa/kwa. (See Grammar Note 4, Unit 4.) Like wa/kwa, hako occurs in two constructions:

- (a) Nominal + hako 'with Nominal', 'as Nominal', 'with Nominal'  
 Nominal + hako, which may occur before an inflected expression, is an adverbial expression.

<u>Kim Sənsəng hako</u> (kathi) kakesse yo.	'I'll go <u>with Kim.</u> '
<u>Chinku hako</u> mal-həsse yo.	'I talked <u>with a friend.</u> '
<u>i kəs hako</u> kathin chæk	'a book the same as this' ('the same book <u>as this</u> ')

- (b) Nominal 1 + hako + Nominal 2 = 'N1 and N2'  
 chæk hako yənpʰil 'a book and a pencil'  
 onil hako næil 'today and tomorrow'

## DRILLS

## A. Substitution Drill

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. Onil cənyək e yəngħwa pole an kakesse yo?                  | Wouldn't you like to go to see movies this evening?                 |
| *2. Onil cənyək e <u>mulkən sale</u> an kakesse yo?           | Wouldn't you like to go for shopping ('to buy goods') this evening? |
| 3. Onil cənyək e <u>kukyəng-halə</u> an kakesse yo?           | Wouldn't you like to go to see a show this evening?                 |
| 4. Onil cənyək e <u>chinku mannalə</u> an kakesse yo?         | Wouldn't you like to go to meet friends this evening?               |
| 5. Onil cənyək e <u>Hankuk mal pəule</u> an kakesse yo?       | Wouldn't you like to go to study Korean this evening?               |
| 6. Onil cənyək e <u>Hankuk mal yənsip-halə</u> an kakesse yo? | Wouldn't you like to go to practice Korean this evening?            |
| *7. Onil cənyək e <u>untong-halə</u> an kakesse yo?           | Wouldn't you like to go for exercise this evening?                  |
| *8. Onil cənyək e <u>sanpo-halə</u> an kakesse yo?            | Wouldn't you like to take a walk this evening?                      |
| 9. Onil cənyək e <u>sinsə kukyəng-halə</u> an kakesse yo?     | Wouldn't you like to go sightseeing downtown this evening?          |
| *10. Onil cənyək e <u>chum chulə</u> an kakesse yo?           | Wouldn't you like to go for dancing this evening?                   |
| *11. Onil cənyək e <u>sicang pole</u> an kakesse yo?          | Wouldn't you like to go for food shopping this evening?             |

## B. Substitution Drill

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. Kukce Kikcang esə Mikuk yəngħwa l1l sangyəng-hako issimnita.         | American movies are being shown at the International Theatre. |
| 2. Kukce Kikcang esə <u>Hankuk yəngħwa</u> l1l sangyəng-hako issimnita. | Korean movies are being shown at the International Theatre.   |
| 3. Kukce Kikcang esə <u>Ilpon yəngħwa</u> l1l sangyəng-hako issimnita.  | Japanese movies are being shown at the International Theatre. |
| 4. Kukce Kikcang esə <u>Tokil yəngħwa</u> l1l sangəng-hako issimnita.   | German movies are being shown at the International Theatre.   |



- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 5. Kukce Kikcang esə <u>Ithæli yəngghwa</u><br>lil sangyeng-hako issimnita.         | Italian movies are being shown at<br>the International Theatre. |
| 6. Kukce Kikcang esə <u>Pullansə yəngghwa</u><br>lil sangyeng-hako issimnita.       | French movies are being shown at the<br>International Theatre.  |
| 7. Kukce Kikcang esə <u>wekuk yəngghwa</u><br>lil sangyeng-hako issimnita.          | Foreign movies are being shown at<br>the International Theatre. |
| 8. Kukce Kikcang esə <u>Yəngkuk yəngghwa</u><br>lil sangyeng-hako issimnita.        | British movies are being shown at<br>the International Theatre. |
| 9. <u>Səul Kikcang esə</u> <u>Yəngkuk yəngghwa</u><br>lil sangyeng-hako issimnita.  | British movies are being shown at<br>the Seoul Theatre.         |
| 10. <u>Sinæ Kikcang esə</u> <u>Yəngkuk yəngghwa</u><br>lil sangyeng-hako issimnita. | British movies are being shown at<br>a theatre downtown.        |

## C. Substitution Drill

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Na nin Hankuk yəngghwa lil poko<br>siphsimnita.      | I want to see Korean movies.                   |
| 2. Na nin <u>Səul sinæ</u> lil poko<br>siphsimnita.     | I want to see downtown Seoul.                  |
| 3. Na nin <u>wekuk yangpok</u> il poko<br>siphsimnita.  | I want to see foreign (made) suits.            |
| 4. Na nin <u>Han-Yəng sacən</u> il poko<br>siphsimnita. | I want to see a Korean-English<br>dictionary.  |
| 5. Na nin <u>Kukce Kikcang</u> il poko<br>siphsimnita.  | I want to see the International<br>Theatre.    |
| 6. Na nin <u>yele kaci</u> lil poko<br>siphsimnita.     | I want to see many kinds.                      |
| 7. Na nin <u>Mikuk Təsa</u> lil poko<br>siphsimnita.    | I want to see the American Ambassador.         |
| 8. Na nin <u>Tokil kunin</u> il poko<br>siphsimnita.    | I want to see German soldiers.                 |
| 9. Na nin <u>hwesa sacang</u> il poko<br>siphsimnita.   | I want to see the president of the<br>company. |
| 10. Na nin <u>yəngsa pise</u> lil poko<br>siphsimnita.  | I want to see the secretary to the<br>consul.  |

## D. Substitution Drill

- |   |                                 |
|---|---------------------------------|
| 1. Na nin yenghwa l1l poko siphe yo.                  | I want to see a movie.          |
| 2. Na nin <u>Hankuk e kako</u> siphe yo.              | I want to go to Korea.          |
| 3. Na nin <u>i chæk il sako</u> siphe yo.             | I want to buy this book.        |
| 4. Na nin <u>Yenge l1l kalichiko</u> siphe yo         | I want to teach English.        |
| *5. Na nin <u>Hankuk yeksa l1l ilkko</u><br>siphe yo. | I want to read Korean history.  |
| 6. Na nin <u>catongcha l1l phalko</u> siphe<br>yo.    | I want to sell [my] car.        |
| 7. Na nin <u>yeca chinku l1l mannako</u><br>siphe yo. | I want to meet my girl friend.  |
| 8. Na nin <u>tapang e tilliko</u> siphe<br>yo.        | I want to stop by a tearoom.    |
| 9. Na nin sinæ l1l <u>kukyeng-hako</u> siphe<br>yo.   | I want to look around downtown. |

## E. Substitution Drill

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. Kakkim yenghwa (l1l) pole kaci<br>yo.                    | Sometimes I go to see the movies.               |
| 2. <u>N1l</u> yenghwa (l1l) pole kaci yo.                   | I always go to (see) the movies.                |
| *3. <u>Hangsang</u> yenghwa (l1l) pole kaci<br>yo.          | I go to (see) the movies all the<br>time.       |
| *4. <u>Ttæ ttæ lo</u> yenghwa (l1l) pole kaci<br>yo.        | I go to (see) the movies<br>occasionally.       |
| 5. <u>Pam mata</u> yenghwa (l1l) pole kaci<br>yo.           | I go to (see) the movies every night.           |
| 6. <u>Cuil mata</u> yenghwa (l1l) pole kaci<br>yo.          | I go to (see) the movies every week.            |
| 7. <u>Han cuil e han pen</u> yenghwa (l1l)<br>pole kaci yo. | I go to (see) the movies once a<br>week.        |
| 8. <u>Han tal e tu pen</u> yenghwa (l1l)<br>pole kaci yo.   | I go to (see) the movies twice a<br>month.      |
| 9. <u>Il nyen e se pen</u> yenghwa (l1l)<br>pole kaci yo.   | I go to (see) the movies three<br>times a year. |
| *10. <u>Cacu</u> yenghwa (l1l) pole kaci yo.                | I go to (see) the movies frequently.            |

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| *11. <u>Cumal mata</u> yenghwa (lil) pole<br>kaci yo. | I go to (see) the movies every week-<br>end. |
| *12. <u>Mæil</u> yenghwa (lil) pole kaci yo.          | I go to (see) the movies everyday.           |
| *13. <u>Mæcu(il)</u> yenghwa (lil) pole kaci yo.      | I go to (see) the movies every week.         |
| *14. <u>Mæwæl</u> yenghwa (lil) pole kaci yo.         | I go to (see) the movies every month.        |
| *15. <u>Mænyen</u> yenghwa (lil) pole kaci yo.        | I go to (see) the movies every year.         |

## F. Substitution Drill

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. Onil in <u>hal il</u> i manhsimnita.                | I have a lot of things to do today.                 |
| 2. Onil in <u>ilkil chæk</u> (i) manhsimnita.          | I have a lot of books to read today.                |
| 3. Onil in <u>manna salam</u> (i) manhsimnita.         | I have a lot of people to meet today.               |
| 4. Onil in <u>ol salam</u> (i) manhsimnita.            | There are a lot of people to come<br>today.         |
| 5. Onil in <u>kitail salam</u> (i)<br>manhsimnita.     | There are a lot of people to wait<br>for today.     |
| 6. Onil in <u>ttenal pæ</u> (ka) manhsimnita.          | There are a lot of ships which will<br>leave today. |
| 7. Onil il <u>sal mulkæn</u> (i) manhsimnita.          | There are a lot of things to buy<br>today.          |
| 8. Onil in <u>kalichil haksæng</u> (i)<br>manhsimnita. | There are a lot of students to<br>teach today.      |
| 9. Onil in <u>mule pol mal</u> (i)<br>manhsimnita.     | I have a lot of things to ask about<br>today.       |
| 10. Onil in <u>tillil sangcæm</u> (i)<br>manhsimnita.  | There are many stores to stop by<br>today.          |
| 11. Onil in <u>sicak-hal il</u> (i)<br>manhsimnita.    | I have a lot of work to begin today.                |
| *12. Onil in <u>ssil phyenci</u> (ka)<br>manhsimnita.  | I have a lot of letters to write<br>today.          |

## G. Substitution Drill

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. Mianhaci man, cikim <u>nal kal su</u><br><u>epsimnita.</u>                           | I'm sorry but I cannot go out now.                  |
| 2. Mianhaci man, cikim <u>hal su</u><br><u>epsimnita.</u>                               | I'm sorry but I cannot do [it] now.                 |
| 3. Mianhaci man, cikim <u>kitalil su</u><br><u>epsimnita.</u>                           | I'm sorry but I cannot wait for<br>[you] now.       |
| 4. Mianhaci man, cikim <u>ttenal su</u><br><u>epsimnita.</u>                            | I'm sorry but I cannot leave now.                   |
| 5. Mianhaci man, cikim ( <u>Hankuk mal</u><br><u>il</u> ) <u>kalichil su epsimnita.</u> | I'm sorry but I cannot teach (Korean)<br>now.       |
| 6. Mianhaci man, cikim <u>kathi kal su</u><br><u>epsimnita.</u>                         | I'm sorry but I cannot go with [you]<br>now.        |
| 7. Mianhaci man, cikim ( <u>tangsin cip</u><br><u>e</u> ) <u>tillil su epsimnita.</u>   | I'm sorry but I cannot stop by<br>(your house) now. |
| 8. Mianhaci man, cikim <u>il il sicak-hal</u><br><u>su epsimnita.</u>                   | I'm sorry but I cannot start work<br>now.           |
| 9. Mianhaci man, cikim <u>kukyeng kal</u><br><u>su epsimnita.</u>                       | I'm sorry but I cannot go sight-<br>seeing now.     |
| 10. Mianhaci man, cikim <u>cip e issil</u><br><u>su epsimnita.</u>                      | I'm sorry but I cannot be at home<br>now.           |
| 11. Mianhaci man, cikim <u>tola kal su</u><br><u>epsimnita.</u>                         | I'm sorry but I cannot go back<br>now.              |
| *12. Mianhaci man, cikim <u>tola ol su</u><br><u>epsimnita.</u>                         | I'm sorry but I cannot come back<br>now.            |
| *13. Mianhaci man, cikim <u>tile ol su</u><br><u>epsimnita.</u>                         | I'm sorry but I cannot come in<br>now.              |
| *14. Mianhaci man, cikim <u>tile kal su</u><br><u>epsimnita.</u>                        | I'm sorry but I cannot go in now.                   |
| *15. Mianhaci man, cikim <u>na ol su</u><br><u>epsimnita.</u>                           | I'm sorry but I cannot come out<br>now.             |
| *16. Mianhaci man, cikim <u>na kal su</u><br><u>epsimnita.</u>                          | I'm sorry but I cannot go out<br>now.               |
| *17. Mianhaci man, cikim <u>olla ol su</u><br><u>epsimnita.</u>                         | I'm sorry but I cannot come up now.                 |
| *18. Mianhaci man, cikim <u>olla kal su</u><br><u>epsimnita.</u>                        | I'm sorry but I cannot go up now.                   |

## H. Substitution Drill

- |  |                                     |
|--|-------------------------------------|
| 1. Hankuk mal i cæmi issimnita.                      | Korean is interesting.              |
| 2. <u>Yenge</u> (ka) cæmi issimnita.                 | English is interesting.             |
| 3. <u>Chæk (1l) i(1)kki</u> (ka) issimnita.          | Reading books is interesting.       |
| 4. <u>Sëul e salki</u> (ka) cæmi issimnita.          | Living in Seoul is interesting.     |
| 5. <u>Mal pæuki</u> (ka) cæmi issimnita.             | Learning a language is interesting. |
| 6. <u>Il-haki</u> (ka) cæmi issimnita.               | Working is interesting.             |
| 7. <u>Kalichiki</u> (ka) cæmi issimnita.             | Teaching is interesting.            |
| 8. <u>Hakkyo e taniki</u> (ka) cæmi issimnita.       | Attending school is interesting.    |
| 9. <u>lnæng e kinmu-haki</u> (ka) cæmi<br>issimnita. | Working in a bank is interesting.   |
| 10. <u>Thipi poki</u> (ka) cæmi issimnita.           | Watching TV is interesting.         |

## I. Substitution Drill

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. Na wa kathi kakesse yo?                                       | Will you go with me?                              |
| 2. <u>Chinku</u> (wa) kathi <u>okesse yo?</u>                    | Will you come with a friend?                      |
| 3. <u>Sænsæng</u> (kwa) kathi <u>mækkesse yo?</u>                | Will you eat with [your] teacher?                 |
| 4. <u>Cæ yæca</u> (wa) kathi <u>na kakesse yo?</u>               | Will you go out with that girl?                   |
| 5. <u>Puin</u> (kwa) kathi <u>tillikesse yo?</u>                 | Will you stop by with your wife?                  |
| 6. <u>Pise</u> (wa) kathi <u>mal-hakesse yo?</u>                 | Will you talk with your secretary?                |
| *7. <u>Mikuk Tæsa</u> (wa) kathi <u>insa-hakesse<br/>yo?</u>     | Will you greet with the American<br>Ambassador?   |
| 8. <u>Kunin</u> (kwa) kathi <u>nolkesse yo?</u>                  | Will you play with a soldier?                     |
| 9. <u>Yængsa</u> (wa) kathi <u>ttenakesse yo?</u>                | Will you leave with the consul?                   |
| 10. <u>Yæca chinku</u> (wa) kathi <u>kukyæng<br/>kakesse yo?</u> | Will you go sightseeing with your<br>girl friend? |
| 11. <u>Uli</u> (wa) kathi <u>okesse yo?</u>                      | Will you come with us?                            |
| 12. <u>Yæhaksæng</u> (kwa) kathi <u>na kakesse<br/>yo?</u>       | Will you go out with a girl student?              |
| 13. <u>æmeni</u> (wa) kathi <u>tola kakesse<br/>yo?</u>          | Will you go back with your mother?                |
| 14. <u>Tæthongyæng</u> (kwa) kathi <u>tola okesse<br/>yo?</u>    | will you come back with the President?            |

## J. Substitution Drill

- |   |                                |
|---|--------------------------------|
| 1. Kim Sənsəng kwa kathi <u>mal-</u><br><u>hasipsiyo.</u>         | Please talk with Mr. Kim.      |
| 2. Kim Sənsəng kwa kathi <u>kongpu-</u><br><u>hasipsiyo.</u>      | Please study with Mr. Kim.     |
| 3. Kim Sənsəng kwa kathi <u>yəki esə</u><br><u>kitalisipsiyo.</u> | Please wait here with Mr. Kim. |
| 4. Kim Sənsəng kwa kathi <u>k1 kəs il</u><br><u>ilkisipsiyo.</u>  | Please read it with Mr. Kim.   |
| 5. Kim Sənsəng kwa kathi <u>il-hasipsiyo.</u>                     | Please work with Mr. Kim.      |
| 6. Kim Sənsəng kwa kathi <u>sicak-</u><br><u>hasipsiyo.</u>       | Please start with Mr. Kim.     |
| 7. Kim Sənsəng kwa kathi <u>pəusipsiyo.</u>                       | Please study with Mr. Kim.     |

## K. Transformation Drill

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| Tutor: Uli nin Hankuk mal il kongpu-<br>hamnita.          | 'We study Korean.'  |
| Student: Uli nin Hankuk mal il kongpu-<br>hako issimnita. | 'We're studying Korean now.'  |
| 1. Cikim hakkyo e kamnita.                                | Cikim hakkyo e kako issimnita.<br>( '[I]'m on [my] way to school now.') |
| 2. Kikcang esə Mikuk Yənghwa l1l<br>sangyəng-hamnita.     | Kikcang esə Mikuk Yənghwa l1l<br>sangyəng-hako issimnita.               |
| 3. Ai ka thipi l1l pomnita.                               | Ai ka thipi l1l poko issimnita.   |
| 4. Sənsəng i kalichimnita.                                | Sənsəng i kalichiko issimnita.  |
| 5. Nal mata Hankuk mal il pəumnita.                       | Nal mata Hankuk mal il pəuko<br>issimnita.                              |
| 6. Cohin sacən il wənhamnita.                             | Cohin sacən il wənhako issimnita.                                       |
| 7. Kim Sənsəng in wekuk salam il<br>mannamnita.           | Kim Sənsəng in wekuk salam il<br>mannako issimnita.                     |
| 8. Na nin Kim Sənsəng cip il<br>chacsimnita.              | Na nin Kim Sənsəng cip il chacko<br>issimnita.                          |
| 9. Ceimsi Sənsəng in Mikuk təsakwan<br>esə il-hamnita.    | Ceimsi Sənsəng in Mikuk təsakwan<br>esə il-hako issimnita.              |

## L. Response Drill

Tutor: Pak Sənsəng in Hankuk mal il  
kalichyə yo?

'Does Mr. Park teach Korean?'

Student: Ne, cikim kalichiko issimnita.

'Yes, he's teaching [it] now.'

1. Ceimsi Sənsəng i təsakwan esə il-hə  
yo?

Ne, cikim təsakwan esə il-hako  
issimnita.

2. Kicha ka ttena yo?

Ne, cikim ttenako issimnita.

3. Salam til i pihəngki lil tha yo?

Ne, cikim thako issimnita.

4. Mikuk təsə ka pihəngki esə nəlyə  
yo?

Ne, cikim nəliko issimnita.

5. Tangsin in hakkyo e tanyə yo?

Ne, cikim taniko issimnita.

6. Chinku lil kitalyə yo?

Ne, cikim kitaliko issimnita.

7. Səul yək e kanin kil il alə yo?

Ne, cikim alko issimnita.  
( 'Yes, I'm aware of it now.' )

8. Hankuk mal il manhi pəwə yo?

Ne, cikim manhi pəuko issimnita.

9. Kim Sənsəng il chacə yo?

Ne, cikim chacko issimnita.

10. Kikcang esə Mikuk yəngwa lil  
sangyeng-hə yo?

Ne, cikim sangyeng-hako issimnita.

11. Hankuk mal il yənsip-hə yo?

Ne, cikim yənsip-hako issimnita.

## M. Response Drill

Tutor: Ki ttə e Hankuk mal il kongpu-  
hako issəssimnikka?

'Were you studying Korean at that  
time?'

Student: Ne, ni ttə e Hankuk mal il  
kongpu-hako issəssə yo.

'Yes, I was studying Korean at that  
time.'

1. Ki ttə e hakkyo e kako issəssimnikka?

Ne, ki ttə e hakkyo e kako issəssə  
yo.

2. Ki ttə e Mikuk yəngwa lil  
sangyeng-hako issəssimnikka?

Ne, ki ttə e Mikuk yəngwa lil  
sangyeng-hako issəssə yo.

3. Ki ttə e Yəngə lil kalichiko  
issəssimnikka?

Ne, ki ttə e Yəngə lil kalichiko  
issəssə yo.

4. Ki ttə e wekuk salam il mannako  
issəssimnikka?

Ne, ki ttə e wekuk salam il mannako  
issəssə yo.

5. Ki ttə e Kim Sənsəng cip il chacko  
issəssimnikka?

Ne, ki ttə e Kim Sənsəng cip il  
chacko issəssə yo.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 6. K1 ttæ e Mikuk tæsakwan esə<br>il-hako issəssimnikka? | Ne, k1 ttæ e Mikuk tæsakwan esə<br>il-hako issəsə yo. |
| 7. K1 ttæ e yəngħwa l1l poko<br>issəssimnikka?           | Ne, k1 ttæ e yəngħwa l1l poko issəsə<br>yo.           |
| 8. K1 ttæ e Mikuk esə hakkyo e taniko<br>issəssimnikka?  | Ne, k1 ttæ e Mikuk esə hakkyo e<br>taniko issəsə yo.  |
| 9. K1 ttæ e chinku l1l kitaliko<br>issəssimnikka?        | Ne, k1 ttæ e chinku l1l kitaliko<br>issəsə yo.        |
| 10. K1 ttæ e kicha esə næliko<br>issəssimnikka?          | Ne, k1 ttæ e kicha esə næliko<br>issəsə yo.           |

## N. Response Drill

Tutor: Muəs il salyəkə hamnikka?  
/moca/

'What are you going to buy?' /hat/

Student: Moca l1l sako siphsimnita.

'I want } to buy a hat.'  
'I'd like }

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. Nuku l1l mannalyəkə hamnikka?<br>/Ceimsi Sənsəng/         | Ceimsi Sənsəng il mannako siphsimnita.       |
| 2. eti esə il-halyəkə hamnikka?<br>/Mikuk Tæsakwan/          | Mikuk Tæsakwan esə il-hako<br>siphsimnita.   |
| 3. ənce Wəsingthon il ttənalyəkə<br>hamnikka? /taim tal/     | Taim tal e ttənako siphsimnita.              |
| 4. Musin yoil e sicang e kalyəkə<br>hamnikka? /Thoyoil/      | Thoyoil e kako siphsimnita.                  |
| 5. əlma tongan Hankuk mal il pəulyəkə<br>hamnikka? /yəl tal/ | Yəl tal tongan pəuko siphsimnita.            |
| 6. Musin yəngħwa l1l polyəkə hamnikka?<br>/Hankuk yəngħwa/   | Hankuk yəngħwa l1l poko siphsimnita.         |
| 7. Onil əte issilyəkə hamnikka? /cip/                        | Cip e issko siphsimnita.                     |
| 8. eti e tillilyəkə hamnikka? /chinku<br>samusil/            | Chinku samusil e tilliko siphsimnita.        |
| 9. əni tal e hyuka l1l patilyəkə<br>hamnikka? /Phal-wəl/     | Phal-wəl e (hyuka l1l) patko<br>siphsimnita. |
| 10. eti esə nælilyəkə hamnikka?<br>/sichəng aph/             | Sichəng aph esə næliko siphsimnita.          |



11. Mues ilo Hankuk e kalyeko hamnikka? Pihængki lo kako siphsimnita.  
/pihængki/
12. ence ccim Mikuk e tola kalyeko I nyen hu e tola kako siphsimnita.  
hamnikka? /i nyen hu/

## 0. Transformation Drill

- Tutor: Ceimsi nin Sæul ese sal(1)yeko hamnita. 'James intends to live in Seoul.'
- Student: Cemisi nin Sæul ese salko siphe hæ yo. 'James wants to live in Seoul.'
1. Kim Sænsæng in onil yæng-hwa lil polyeko hamnita. Kim Sænsæng in onil yæng-hwa lil poko siphe hæ yo.
2. Hankuk haksæng i Mikuk hakkyo e tanilyeko hamnita. Hankuk haksæng i Mikuk hakkyo e taniko siphe hæ yo.
3. Chwe Sænsæng in Sæul e halu tongan issilyeko hamnita. Chwe Sænsæng in Sæul e halu tongan issko siphe hæ yo.
4. Haksæng in næil sinæ e na kalyeko hamnita. Haksæng in næil sinæ e na kako siphe hæ yo.
5. Salam til in wekuk il kukyeng-halyeko hamnita. Salam til in wekuk il kukyeng-hako siphe hæ yo.
6. Pak Sænsæng in Yængæ lil kalichilyeko hamnita. Pak Sænsæng in Yængæ lil kalichiko siphe hæ yo.
7. Ki salam in Hankuk inhæng ese il-halyeko hamnita. Ki salam in Hankuk inhæng ese il-hako siphe hæ yo.
8. Cæ e chinku nin hyuka lil patilyeko hamnita. Cæ e chinku nin hyuka lil patko siphe hæ yo.

## P. Response Drill

Tutor: Kim Sənsəng in Yəngə lil  
pəuko siphe hæ yo?

'Does Mr. Kim want to study English?'

Student: Ne, phək pəuko siphe hamnita.

'Yes, [he] wants to study [it] very much.'

1. Ki chinku nin hyuka lil patko  
siphe hæ yo?

Ne, phək patko siphe hamnita.

2. Ki salam in Hankuk inhəng e kinmu-  
hako siphe hæ yo?

Ne, (Hankuk inhəng e) phək kinmu-  
hako siphe hamnita.

3. Pak Sənsəng in Hankuk mal il  
kalichiko siphe hæ yo?

Ne, phək kalichiko siphe hamnita.

4. Chwe Sənsəng in khəphi lil masiko  
siphe hæ yo?

Ne, phək masiko siphe hamnita.

5. Kim Sənsəng in tampə lil phiuko  
siphe hæ yo?

Ne, phək phiuko siphe hamnita.

6. Hankuk haksəng i Mikuk hakkyo e  
taniko siphe hæ yo?

Ne, phək taniko siphe hamnita.

7. Haksəng i Hankuk mal il yənsip-  
hako siphe hæ yo?

Ne, phək yənsip-hako siphe hamnita.

8. Cə ai ka lætiyo lil titko siphe  
hæ yo?

Ne, phək titko siphe hamnita.

## Q. Response Drill

Tutor: Kim Sənsəng in Yəngə lil  
kalichiko siphe hamnikka?

'Does Mr. Kim want to teach English?'

Student: Aniyo, kalichiko siphe haci  
anhə yo.

'No, he doesn't (want to teach).'

1. Ki yəca ka kıkəng e kako siphe  
hamnikka?

Aniyo, kako siphe haci anhə yo.

2. Ki chinku ka hyuka lil patko  
siphe hamnikka?

Aniyo, patko siphe haci anhə yo.

3. Chwe Sənsəng in khəphi lil masiko  
siphe hamnikka?

Aniyo, masiko siphe haci anhə yo.

4. Hankuk haksəng til i Mikuk hakkyo  
e taniko siphe hamnikka?

Aniyo, (Mikuk hakkyo e) taniko  
siphe haci anhə yo.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 5. Ceimsi Sənsəng i Mikuk tæsa ka<br>tweko siphe hamnikka? | Aniyo, (Mikuk tæsa ka) tweko siphe<br>haci anhe yo. |
| 6. Ki salam i mal il mule poko siphe<br>hamnikka?          | Aniyo, mule poko siphe haci anhe<br>yo.             |
| 7. Mikuk yəngsa ka Mikuk e tola kako<br>siphe hamnikka?    | Aniyo, tola kako siphe haci anhe<br>yo.             |
| 8. Cə ai ka Yəngə chæk il ilkko siphe<br>hamnikka?         | Aniyo, ilkko siphe haci anhe yo.                    |

## R. Grammar Drill

Tutor: Hankuk mal i əlyəpsimnita.  
Kiləhci man, cəmi issimnita.

'Korean is difficult. However, it's  
interesting.'

Student: Hankuk mal i əlyəpci man,  
cəmi issimnita.

'Korean is difficult but it is  
interesting.'

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Hankuk mal il pəumnita. Kiləhci<br>man, swipci anhsimnita.                             | Hankuk mal il pəuci man, swipci<br>anhsimnita.                           |
| 2. Na nin pə lo kamnita. Kiləhci<br>man, Kim Sənsəng in kicha lo<br>kamnita.              | Na nin pə lo kaci man, Kim Sənsəng<br>in kicha lo kamnita.               |
| 3. Pihəngki ka ttenamnita. Kiləhci<br>man, ppəsi nin tahsimnita.                          | Pihəngki ka ttenaci man, ppəsi nin<br>tahsimnita.                        |
| 4. Cə nin pappimnita. Kiləhci man,<br>talin salam in pappici anhsimnita.                  | Cə nin pappici man, talin salam in<br>pappici anhsimnita.                |
| 5. Hankuk mal il alə titsimnita.<br>Kiləhci man, ilkei mot hamnita.                       | Hankuk mal il alə titci man, ilkei<br>mot hamnita.                       |
| 6. I kilim il cohahamnita. Kiləhci<br>man, phək pissamnita.                               | I kilim il cohahaci man, phək<br>pissamnita.                             |
| 7. Haksəng i manhsimnita. Kiləhci<br>man, sənsəng in əpsimnita.                           | Haksəng i manhci man, sənsəng in<br>əpsimnita.                           |
| 8. Nal mata ki yəca lil kitalimnita.<br>Kiləhci man, ki yəca nin oci<br>anhsimnita.       | Nal mata ki yəca lil kitalici man,<br>ki yəca nin oci anhsimnita.        |
| 9. Pak Sənsəng in Hankuk inhəng e<br>kinmu-hamnita. Kiləhci man,<br>puncuhaci anhsimnita. | Pak Sənsəng in Hankuk inhəng e kinmu-<br>haci man, puncuhaci anhsimnita. |

10. Il e cæmi ka issimnita. Kıləhci  
man, hal il i phək manhsimnita.

Il e cæmi ka issci man, hal il i  
phək manhsimnita.

#### S. Transformation Drill

Tutor: Kicha ka ohu e ttenamnita.

'A train is leaving in the afternoon.'

Student: Ohu e ttenal kicha ka  
issimnita.

'There's a train which will leave  
in the afternoon.'

1. Onil haksæng i omnita.
2. Ohu e chinku lıl mannamnita.
3. Chæk il samnita.
4. Il il sicak-hamnita.
5. Ppesi lıl thamnita.
6. Hakkyo e tanimnita.
7. Hankuk mal chæk il ilksimnita.
8. Cip esə yəca lıl kitalimnita.
9. Han-si e kicha ka tahsimnita.

- Onil ol haksæng i issimnita.  
Ohu e mannal chinku ka issimnita.  
Sal chæk i issimnita.  
Sicak-hal il i issimnita.  
Thal ppesi ka issimnita.  
Tanil hakkyo ka issimnita.  
Ilkil Hankuk mal chæk i issimnita.  
Cip esə kitalil yəca ka issimnita.  
Han-si e tahl kicha ka issimnita.

#### T. Completion Exercise

Tutor: Hankuk mal il əlyəpci man,

'Korean is difficult but...'

Student: Hankuk mal il əlyəpci man,  
cæmi issimnita.

'Korean is difficult but it's  
interesting.'

1. Yəngwa lıl cohahaci man,
2. Sikan i əpsci man,
3. Hankuk mal il pəuci man,
4. Kicha ka ttenaci man,
5. Pihængki nin tahci man,
6. Kıl yəca lıl mannaci man,
7. Hakkyo e tanici man,
8. Yocim com puncuhaci man,
9. Hankuk mal il alə titci man,
10. Onil hal il i issci man,
11. Cikim chinku lıl kitalici man,
12. Mikuk esə salko siphci man,
13. Hankil il ilkei mot haci man,

14. Na nin Mikuk salam ici man,  
15. Onil mom i com aphici man,

## U. Combination Drill

Tutor: Kicha nin ttenasse yo. Ppesi  
nin tahasse yo.

'The train has left. The bus has  
arrived.'

Student: Kicha nin ttenassko, ppesi  
nin tahasse yo.

'The train has left and the bus has  
arrived.'

1. Ce nin Yenge lil pæwæ yo. Ceimsi  
nin Hankuk mal il kongpu-hæ yo.
2. æce Hankuk imsik il mækessæ yo.  
Onil in Cungkuk imsik il mækkessæ  
yo.
3. Na nin Hankuk yenghwa lil cohahæ  
yo. Miss Chwe nin Ilpon  
yenghwa lil poko siphe hæ yo.
4. Na nin puncuhæ yo. Ce chinku nin  
sikan i manhi issæ yo.
5. Tæhak pyengwæn in kakkawæ yo.  
(The University hospital is near.)  
Cungang Tosækwæn in com mæle  
yo.  
(The Central Library is a  
little far.)

Ce nin Yenge lil pæuko, Ceimsi nin  
Hankuk mal il kongpu-hæ yo.  
æce Hankuk imsik il mækæssko, onil  
in Cungkuk imsik il mækkæssæ yo.

Na nin Hankuk yenghwa lil cohahako,  
Miss Chwe nin Ilpon yenghwa lil  
poko siphe hæ yo.

Na nin puncuhako, ce chinku nin  
sikan i manhi issæ yo.

Tæhak pyengwæn in kakkapko, Cungang  
Tosækwæn in com mæle yo.

## EXERCISES

1. Tell Miss Choe: (Once in Formal Polite and once in Informal Polite Speech)
  - a. that you want to see Korean movies.
  - b. that you are practicing Korean now.
  - c. that you are not free now.
  - d. that you don't understand Korean well.
  - e. that you have lots of things to do.
  - f. that you are busy all the time.
  - g. that you have a friend to meet this afternoon.
  - h. that you can't go out tonight.
  - i. that you were waiting for Miss Brown at that time.
  - j. that learning a language is not interesting.
  - k. that you have many letters to write.
  - l. that you cannot finish the work by 4 o'clock.
  - m. that you go to see the Korean movies occasionally.
  - n. that American movies are shown at the International Theatre twice a month.
  - o. that you don't want to go out frequently.
  - p. that your girl friend doesn't want to take a walk.
  - q. that the students were eating in the dining hall.
  - r. that you cannot come out now.
  - s. that the children cannot come in the room now.
  - t. that you cannot go into the military (service).
  - u. that your wife cannot go up the building on foot.
  - v. that you are coming up the street.
  - w. that there are many students but not many teachers.
  - x. that German is easy and Korean is hard.
  - y. that you want to go out to see movies but you don't have time.
  - z. that the housing is expensive and is not good.
  - z1. You cannot go back to School now.
  - z2. Your Korean friend came back from the U.S.

2. You ask Miss Brown:
- a. what she wants to see.
  - b. what she would like to do today.
  - c. where the American movies are being shown.
  - d. how she likes (or how it is) living in Seoul.
  - e. how long she is going to stay in Korea (or in Washington).
  - f. if she can go out with you tonight.
  - g. if she wouldn't go dancing on the coming Saturday.
  - h. if she goes for food shopping everyday.
  - i. if she likes sports.
  - j. if she doesn't want to sightsee downtown.
  - k. if she can't wait for you.
- Miss Brown answers:
- 'I'd like to see your new car.'
  - 'I want to stay home.'
  - 'They are being shown at the Central Theatre.'
  - 'Not too bad.'
  - 'About three or four years.'
  - 'I'd like to but I cannot go out tonight.'
  - 'I'm sorry but I'll be busy that day.'
  - 'No, twice a week.'
  - 'Yes, I do very much.'
  - 'I have already done some sightseeing downtown.'
  - 'Why not. I'll wait for you.'

## 제 10 과 시내 구경

먼저

가고 싶습니까

1. 김 : 어디에 먼저 가고 싶습니까?

2. 스미스 : 다방에 먼저 들릅시다.

누구

(누구) 만날 사람

3. 김 : 누구 만날 사람이 있습니까?

커피 한 잔

마시면

마셨으면 좋겠습니다

4. 스미스 : 커피 한 잔 마셨으면 좋겠습니다.

가면

5. 김 : 먼저 시내로 갑시다. 시내에 가면 좋은  
다방이 많이 있습니다.

이 부근

6. 스미스 : 이 부근에는 다방이 없어요?

있어도

그리 좋지 않습니다

7. 김 : 이 부근에 다방이 있어도 그리 좋지 않습니다.



## UNIT 10. Going Around the Town

## BASIC DIALOGUE FOR MEMORIZATION

- Kim
- mence  
kako siphsimnikka  
1. eti e mence kako sipsimnikka?
- first; above all  
do you want to go  
Where do you want to go first?
- Smith
2. Tapang e mence tillipsita.
- Let's stop by a tearoom first.
- Kim
- nuku  
(nuku) mannal salam  
3. Nuku mannal salam i issimnikka?
- anybody; somebody; who?  
somebody to meet  
Are you meeting anyone? ('Do you have anyone to meet?')
- Smith
- khèphi han can  
masimyen  
masyæssimyen cohkessimnita  
4. Khèphi han can masyæssimyen cohkessimnita.
- a cup of coffee  
if [I] drink  
(if [I] drank, [it]'ll be nice)  
I'd like to have a cup of coffee.  
( 'If I drank a cup of coffee, it would be nice.')
- Kim
- kamyen  
5. Mence sinæ lo kapsita. Sinæ e kamyen, cohin tapang i manhi issimnita.
- if [we] go  
Let's go downtown first. There are good tearooms downtown. ('If [we] go downtown there are a lot of tearooms.')
- Smith
- i pukin  
6. I pukin e nin tapang i æpsæ yo?
- this area; this vicinity  
Aren't there any tearooms in this area?

얼마나  
얼마나 먼지가  
시내까지

8. 스미스 : 여기에서 시내까지 얼마나 먼지가?

아주  
걸어서

9. 김 : 아주 가깝습니다. 걸어서 십오분쯤 걸립니다.

버스나 전차  
다닙니다

10. 스미스 : 버스나 전차는 다니지 않습니까?

합승

11. 김 : 왜요? 버스, 전차, 택시, 그리고 합승도 있습니다.

그것들  
그(것들) 중에서  
어느 편  
제일  
편리  
편리합니다  
제일 편리합니다

12. 스미스 : 그(것들) 중에서 어느 편이 제일 편리한가요?

Kim

issə to

even though there are; there  
are but...

kili cohci anhsimnita

[it] is not so good

7. I pukin e tapang i issə to, kili  
cohci anhsimnita.

[Yes], there are [some], but they  
are not very good.

Smith

əlma na

how; how much

əlma na mənnikka

how far is [it]?

sinə kkaci

as far as downtown

8. Yəki esə sinə kkaci əlma na  
mənnikka?

How far is downtown from here?

Kim

acu

really; very; extremely

kələ sə

on foot

9. Acu kakkapsimnita. Kələ sə  
sip-o pun ccim kəllimnita.

It is very close. It only takes  
about fifteen minutes to walk.

Smith

ppəsi na cəncha

bus or streetcar

tanimnita

('[I] go and come regularly.')

10. Ppəsi na cəncha nin tanici  
anhsimnikka?

Aren't there any buses or streetcars  
running?

Kim

həpsing

jitney

11. Wə yo? Ppəsi, cəncha, thəkssi,  
kiliko həpsing to issimnita.

Yes, there are. ('Why?') There  
are buses, streetcars, taxis and  
even jitneys.

바릅니다

가장 바릅니다

바르고 편리합니다

13. 김 : 합승이 가장 바르고 (가장) 편리합니다.

자주

얼마나 자주

다니는가요

14. 스미스 : 예, 그렇습니까? 합승은 얼마나 자주 다니는가요?

십오분에 한 번

번잡합니다

15. 김 : 대개 십오분에 한 번 있지만, 아침과 저녁에는 좀 번잡합니다.

Smith

- |                      |                         |
|----------------------|-------------------------|
| k1 kəs tɪl           | they; those (things)    |
| k1 (kəs tɪl) cʊŋ esə | among them; among those |
| ənɪ phyən            | which side; which way   |
| ceɪl                 | number one              |
| phyɛlli              | convenience             |
| phyɛlli-hamnɪtə      | [it]'s convenient       |
| ceɪl phyɛlli-hamnɪtə | [it]'s most convenient  |
12. K1 (kəs tɪl) cʊŋ esə ənɪ phyən  
i ceɪl phyɛlli-hamnikkə?
- Which is the most convenient (among them)? ('Among those things which one is the most convenient?')

Kim

- |                         |                            |
|-------------------------|----------------------------|
| ppalɪmnɪtə              | [it]'s fast ; [it]'s quick |
| kacang ppalɪmnɪtə       | [it]'s fastest             |
| ppalɪko phyɛlli-hamnɪtə | [it]'s fast and convenient |
13. Hapsɪŋ i kacang ppalɪko, (kacang)  
phyɛlli-hamnɪtə.
- A jitney is the fastest and the most convenient.

Smith

- |               |                   |
|---------------|-------------------|
| cacu          | frequently; often |
| əlma na cacu  | how often?        |
| tanɪnɪn ka yo | does [it] run?    |
14. Ne, kɪləhsɪmnɪkkə? Hapsɪŋ ɪn  
əlma na cacu tanɪnɪn ka yo?
- Is that right? How often do the jitneys run?

Kim

- |                     |  |
|---------------------|--|
| sɪp-o pʊn e han pən | every fifteen minutes ('once at 15 minutes') |
| pəncap-hamnɪtə      | [it]'s crowded                               |
15. ~~Tækə~~ sɪp-o pʊn e han pən ɪssɪ  
man, aɪm kwa çənyək e nɪn  
com pəncap-hamnɪtə.
- They usually run every fifteen minutes but they are rather crowded in the morning and in the evening.

## NOTES ON DIALOGUES

(Numbers correspond to the sentence numbers in the dialogue.)

1. Məncə 'first', 'ahead', is an adverb which occurs before verbs and denotes priority for the following inflected expressions. Məncə followed by a pause also occurs as a sentence adverb, meaning 'in the first place', 'above all'.
  
3. Nuku mǎnnal salam i issimnikka? 'Are you meeting somebody?' ('Is there anybody to meet?') ends in a rising intonation with a stress on the first syllable of mǎnnal.
  
4. Khəphi han can masyessimyən cohkessimnita. ('If [I] drank a cup of coffee, [it] will be good.') occurs with or without a pause after the -(i)myən form. The pattern -(a, ə)ssimyən cohkessimnita, which is the -(i)myən form with the past tense suffix plus the verb coh- in the future tense, is used to express the desire of the speaker or the addressee (See Grammar Note 1).
  
6. Pukin 'vicinity' is a post-noun which, together with the preceding noun, makes a noun phrase:
 

i pukin	'this area', 'this vicinity'
hakkyo pukin	'the vicinity of the school'
  
9. Acu 'very', 'extremely' is an adverb which occurs before description verbs or other adverbs, and denotes the extreme degree of the following inflected expressions. Kələ sə 'on foot' is an adverbial phrase. Kələ is the infinitive of the verb kəl- 'to walk'; sə is a particle. (We will learn more about the particle sə later.) Kələ sə here should be memorized as it is as the Korean equivalent of the English phrase 'on foot'.
  
12. Til is a post-noun which occurs after a countable nominal and denotes plurality. Til does not occur after a numeral expression and/or a numeral + counter. In other words, if the nominal is specified by number, til is not used. Cung is a post-noun which occurs in the following types of adverbial phrases.

- (a) Name of time + cung + e { 'during' / 'in' } + the name of time'
- Il-wəl cung e { 'in January' / 'during January' }
- onil cung e 'within today'
- kimnyən cung e { 'in this year' / 'within this year' }
- (b) Countable Noun + cung + esə 'among + Countable Noun'
- hakkyo til cung esə 'among the schools'
- nala cung esə 'among the countries'

15. Pəncap-ha-ta 'is crowded' is an intransitive verb which may be preceded by a place name or a mode of transportation as the subject or topic of the sentence.

- Kil i pəncap-hamnita. 'The street is crowded.'
- Kikcang i pəncap-hæ yo? 'Is the theatre crowded?'
- Kyothong i pəncap-hamnita. 'There is a traffic jam.'

## GRAMMAR NOTES

1. -myən/ımyən 'if (when) X does something', 'if (when) X is such and such'
- The inflected form ending in -(1)myən (or simply the -(1)myən form) which may be followed by a pause occurs before another inflected expression. The honorific and/or tense suffixes may occur in the -(1)myən form; -myən is added to a stem ending in a vowel and -ımyən to a stem ending in a consonant. The -(1)myən form indicates that the condition or time of the action or description takes place for the following inflected expression. Examples:

- Pi ka omyən, cip e isskessə yo. 'If it rains, I will be home.'
- Hankuk e kamyən, Səul esə kınmu-  
hako siphsimnita. { 'If I go to Korea' / 'When I go to Korea' } I'd like to  
work in Seoul.'
- Wəsington e omyən, ce cip e to  
ose yo. 'If you come to Washington, come to my house, too.'

Remember that the pattern -(a,ə)ssımyən cohkessımnita. ('If [I] did..., [it] will be good.') is used to express the speaker's wish or desire.

2. Infinitive + to 'even though\_\_\_,' 'although\_\_\_,'

In Unit 5 we learned that the particle to after a nominal means 'also', 'too', 'even'. To occurs not only after nominals but also after a small number of inflected forms. Most Korean particles occur after nominals, but note that there also is a small class of particles which occur after other classes of words (e.g. inflected words). The construction Infinitive + to, followed by a pause occurring before another inflected expression, denotes concession to the following inflection expression. The tense suffixes may occur in the Infinitive which precedes to. Compare Infinitive + to with the construction -ci man 'but' for its meaning. Note that the pattern Infinitive + to + cohsimnikka?/ Inf. + to + kwanchanhsimnikka? ('Even if [I] do.., is it o.k.?!') is used to get permission or consent from the addressee. In English the pattern 'May I...?' is usually used as the equivalent of the above Korean pattern. The usual 'yes' response to Infinitive + to + cohsimnikka? is Ne, Infinitive + to + cohsimnita. 'Yes, you man...'. 'No' response is either -ci masipsiyo or -ci anhın kes i cohkessimnita. (See Grammar Notes, Unit 11.) Examples:

Sinæ e tapang i issæ to, kil cohci anhsimnita.	'Even though there are tearooms, [they] are not very good.'
Pi ka wa to, hakkyo e kakesse yo.	'Even if it rains, I will go to school.'
Cæ yæca lil han pæn mannasæ to, ilim il molimnita.	'Although I met her once I don't know [her] name.'
Hwesa ka com mælæ to, kælæ sæ il-halæ tanimnita.	'My office is a little far, but I go to work on foot.'
Kyosil esæ khæphi lil masiæ to cohsimnikka?	'May I drink coffee in the class- room?'

3. Ceil } 'the most\_\_\_'  
Kacang }

The adverb ceil (or its equivalent kacang) occurs before a verbal, noun-modifier word or another adverb, and denotes the superlative degree of the following expression. Compare:

(a) Hapsing i phyelli-hamnita.	'Jitney is convenient.'
Hapsing i tæ phyelli-hamnita.	'Jitney is more convenient.'
Hapsing i {kacang } phyelli- {ceil }	'Jitney is most convenient.'
hamnita.	



- |                                 |                               |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| (b) yeppin yæca                 | '(a) pretty woman'            |
| tæ yeppin yæca                  | 'prettier woman'              |
| ceil } yeppin yæca              | 'the prettiest woman'         |
| kacang }                        |                               |
| (c) Ceimsi ka Hankuk mal il cal | 'James speaks Korean well.'   |
| hamnita.                        |                               |
| Ceimsi ka Hankuk mal il tæ      | 'James speaks Korean better.' |
| cal hamnita.                    |                               |
| Ceimsi ka Hankuk mal il         | 'James speaks Korean best.'   |
| ceil }                          |                               |
| kacang } cal hamnita.           |                               |

4. Particle na/ina

Na occurs after a nominal ending in a vowel; ina after a nominal ending in a consonant. Na/ina occurs in the following constructions:

- (a) Nominal 1 + na/ina + Nominal 2 'N 1 or N 2', 'either N 1 or N 2'  
Between two nominals na/ina denotes selection of one of the two, N 1 or N 2.

- |                             |                                    |
|-----------------------------|------------------------------------|
| Yænphil ina mannyænphil il  | 'Give me a pencil or pen.'         |
| cusipsiyo.                  |                                    |
| Onil ina næil i cohsimnita. | 'Either today or tomorrow is O.K.' |
| Wælyoil ina Hwayoil e tola  | 'Please come back either Monday or |
| osipsiyo.                   | Tuesday.'                          |

- (b) Question Nominal + na/ina = adverbial phrases

- |              |                                 |
|--------------|---------------------------------|
| muæs ina     | { 'anything'                    |
|              | { 'whatever [it] may be'        |
| nuku na      | { 'anybody'                     |
|              | { 'whoever [he] may be'         |
| ænce na      | { 'anytime'                     |
|              | { 'whenever [it] may be'        |
| æti na       | { 'anywhere'                    |
|              | { 'no matter where [it] may be' |
| elma na      | { 'how much'                    |
|              | { 'how long'                    |
| elma na cacu | 'how often'                     |

(c) Nominal + na/ina, followed by an inflected expression, denotes choice of the nominal among others for the following inflected expression.

Onil in yenghwa na pole  
kapsita.

'Let's go to see, say, movies.'

Khaphi ka epsimyen, hongcha  
na hal kka yo?

'If they don't have coffee, shall  
we have, say, black tea?'

Ca, onil in kukyeng ina kaci  
yo.

'Say, how about going to a show  
today.'

## DRILLS

## A. Substitution Drill

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Məncə tapang e tillipsita.                     | Let's stop by a tearoom first.                     |
| 2. Məncə <u>nə samusil</u> e tillipsita.          | Let's stop by my office first.                     |
| 3. Məncə <u>Kukuce Uphyənkuk</u> e tillipsita.    | Let's stop by the International Post Office first. |
| 4. Məncə <u>hakkyo chəkpang</u> e tillipsita.     | Let's stop by the campus bookstore first.          |
| *5. Məncə <u>Cungkuk ımsıkcəm</u> e tillipsita.   | Let's stop by a Chinese restaurant first.          |
| *6. Məncə <u>Səul Təhakkyo</u> e tillipsita.      | Let's stop by Seoul University first.              |
| *7. Məncə <u>pakmulkwən</u> e tillipsita.         | Let's stop by the museum first.                    |
| *8. Məncə <u>kyəngchalse</u> e tillipsita.        | Let's stop by the police station first.            |
| *9. Məncə <u>Səul Koting Hakkyo</u> e tillipsita. | Let's stop by the Seoul High School first.         |
| *10. Məncə <u>pyəngwən</u> e tillipsita.          | Let's stop by the hospital first.                  |
| *11. Məncə <u>tosəkwan</u> e tillipsita.          | Let's stop by the library first.                   |
| *12. Məncə <u>yakpang</u> e tillipsita.           | Let's stop by the drugstore first.                 |
| *13. Məncə <u>tongmul-wən</u> e tillipsita.       | Let's stop by the zoo first.                       |
| *14. Məncə <u>kyohwe</u> e tillipsita.            | Let's stop by the church first.                    |

## B. Substitution Drill

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. Mannal salam i ıssımnıkkə?               | Are you meeting anyone? ('Do you have anyone to meet?')         |
| 2. <u>Hal il</u> (i) ıssımnıkkə?            | Do you have any work to do?                                     |
| 3. <u>Pol yəngwha</u> (ka) ıssımnıkkə?      | Are there any movies to see?                                    |
| 4. <u>Tıllıl tapang</u> (i) ıssımnıkkə?     | Is there a tearoom to stop by?                                  |
| 5. <u>Sal kəs</u> (i) ıssımnıkkə?           | Is there anything to buy?                                       |
| 6. <u>Ilkıl chək</u> (i) ıssımnıkkə?        | Do you have a book to read?                                     |
| 7. <u>Masil khəphi</u> (ka) ıssımnıkkə?     | Is there any coffee to drink?                                   |
| 8. <u>Tanıł hakkyo</u> (ka) ıssımnıkkə?     | Is there a school for you to attend?                            |
| 9. <u>Kıtalıł salam</u> (i) ıssımnıkkə?     | Are you waiting for anyone? ('Do you have anyone to wait for?') |
| *10. <u>Kukyəng-hal te</u> (ka) ıssımnıkkə? | Is there any place for sightseeing?                             |

## C. Substitution Drill

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. Kyøphi han can masyæssimyen<br>cohkessimnita.         | I'd like to have a cup of coffee.<br>( '[It]'ll be nice if [I] drank<br>coffee.') |
| 2. <u>Hakkyo e kassimyen</u> cohkessimnita.              | I'd like to go to school.   |
| 3. <u>Ceimsi lil mannassimyen</u><br>cohkessimnita.      | I'd like to meet James.   |
| 4. <u>Tapang e tillessimyen</u> cohkessimnita.           | I'd like to stop by a tearoom.  |
| 5. <u>Yønghwa lil pwassimyen</u> chokessimnita.          | I'd like to see a movie.  |
| 6. <u>Tapang i issæssimyen</u> cohkessimnita.            | I wish there were tearooms.   |
| 7. <u>Kim Sænsøng i wassimyen</u><br>cohkessimnita.      | I wish Mr. Kim came.  |
| 8. <u>Onil ttænassimyen</u> cohkessimnita.               | I'd like to leave today.  |
| 9. <u>Søul Tøhakkyo e tanæssimyen</u><br>cohkessimnita.  | I'd like to attend Seoul University.  |
| 10. <u>Pullansø mal il pæwæssimyen</u><br>cohkessimnita. | I'd like to study French.   |
| 11. <u>Hankuk il kukyøng-hæssimyen</u><br>cohkessimnita. | I'd like to see Korea.  |
| 12. <u>Cip i kakkawæssimyen</u> cohkessimnita.           | I wish my house were near.  |
| 13. <u>Cip kaps i ssassimyen</u> cohkessimnita.          | I wish the rent were cheap.   |

## D. Substitution Drill

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. Sinø e cohin tapang i manhi issø<br>yo.                       | There are many nice tearooms down-<br>town.        |
| 2. <u>Søul</u> e cohin <u>hakkyo</u> ka manhi issø<br>yo.        | There are many good schools in Seoul.              |
| 3. <u>Hankuk</u> e cohin <u>pækhwacæm</u> i manhi<br>issø yo.    | There are many good department stores<br>in Korea. |
| 4. <u>Nyuyok</u> e cohin <u>kikcang</u> i manhi<br>issø yo.      | There are many good theatres in New<br>York.       |
| 5. <u>Wøsingthon</u> e cohin <u>tosækwan</u> i<br>manhi issø yo. | There are many good libraries in<br>Washington.    |
| 6. <u>Yøki</u> e cohin <u>pakmulkwan</u> i manhi<br>issø yo.     | There are many good museums here.                  |
| 7. <u>Køki</u> e cohin <u>imsikcæm</u> i manhi<br>issø yo.       | There are many good restaurants<br>there.          |

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 8. <u>I pukin</u> e <u>cohin yakpang</u> i manhi<br>isse yo.              | There are many good drug stores in<br>this vicinity.                           |
| 9. <u>S ul pukin</u> e <u>cohin koting hakkyo</u> ka<br>manhi isse yo.    | There are many good high schools in<br>Seoul area.                             |
| 10. <u>Nyuyok pukin</u> e <u>cohin py ngw n</u> i<br>manhi isse yo.       | There are many good hospitals in<br>New York area.                             |
| 11. <u>Pusan pukin</u> e <u>cohin t hakkyo</u> ka<br>manhi isse yo.       | There are many good universities in<br>Pusan area.                             |
| *12. <u>T ku pukin</u> e <u>cohin cunghakkyo</u><br>ka manhi isse yo.     | There are many good junior high<br>Schools in Taeku area.                      |
| *13. <u>S ul T hak pukin</u> e <u>cohin sohakkyo</u><br>ka manhi isse yo. | There are many good elementary<br>schools in the vicinity of Seoul<br>College. |

## E. Substitution Drill

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. I pukin e tapang i  ps  yo?                                   | Aren't there any tearooms in this<br>area?                  |
| 2. <u>T sakwan pukin</u> e <u>imsikc m</u> i  ps <br>yo?         | Aren't there any restaurants around<br>the Embassy?         |
| 3. <u>C ngk cang pukin</u> e <u>kyohwe</u> ka<br> ps  yo?        | Aren't there any churches around<br>the station?            |
| 4. <u>Yakpang pukin</u> e <u>py ngw n</u> i  ps <br>yo?          | Aren't there any clinics around<br>the drug store?          |
| *5. <u>Ky ngchals  pukin</u> e <u>c phanso</u> ka<br> ps  yo?    | Aren't there any courts around the<br>police station?       |
| 6. <u>S ul T hakkyo pukin</u> e <u>pakmulkwan</u><br>i  ps  yo?  | Aren't there any museums around<br>Seoul University?        |
| 7. <u>Tos kwan pukin</u> e <u>cunghakkyo</u> ka<br> ps  yo?      | Aren't there any middle schools<br>around the library?      |
| 8. <u>Pakmulkwan pukin</u> e <u>koting hakkyo</u><br>ka  ps  yo? | Aren't there any high schools<br>around the museum?         |
| 9. <u>Py ngw n pukin</u> e <u>sohakkyo</u> ka  ps <br>yo?        | Aren't there any elementary schools<br>around the hospital? |

## F. Substitution Drill

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. Hakkyo pukin e nin tapang i<br>epsimnita.                            | There are no tearooms around the<br>school.                   |
| 2. <u>Pyəngwən</u> pukin e nin <u>yakpang</u> i<br>epsimnita.           | There are no drug stores around the<br>hospital.              |
| 3. <u>Səul Təhakkyo</u> pukin e nin <u>chəkpang</u><br>i epsimnita.     | There are no bookstores around Seoul<br>University.           |
| 4. <u>Hwesa</u> pukin e nin <u>imsikcəm</u> i<br>epsimnita.             | There are no restaurants around the<br>company.               |
| 5. <u>Koting hakkyo</u> pukin e nin <u>sohakkyo</u><br>ka epsimnita.    | There are no elementary schools<br>around the high school.    |
| 6. <u>Sohakkyo</u> pukin e nin <u>cunghakkyo</u> ka<br>epsimnita.       | There are no middle schools around<br>the elementary schools. |
| 7. <u>Pakmulkwən</u> pukin e nin <u>kongwən</u><br>i epsimnita.         | There are no parks around the museum.                         |
| 8. <u>Mikuk Təsakwən</u> pukin e nin <u>sangcəm</u><br>i epsimnita.     | There are no stores around the U.S.<br>Embassy.               |
| 9. <u>Mikuk Yəngsakwən</u> pukin e nin <u>inhəng</u><br>i epsimnita.    | There are no banks around the U.S.<br>Consulate.              |
| 10. <u>Mikuk Kongpowən</u> pukin e nin <u>uphyənkuk</u><br>i epsimnita. | There is no post office around USIS.                          |
| *11. <u>Upkyənkuk</u> pukin e nin <u>cəphanso</u><br>ka epsimnita.      | There are no courts around the post<br>office.                |

## G. Substitution Drill

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. <u>Sinə</u> kkaci əlma na məmnikka?                | How far is downtown [from here]?               |
| 2. <u>Səul yək</u> kkaci əlma na<br>məmnikka?         | How far is it to Seoul Station?                |
| 3. <u>Cungkuk imsikcəm</u> kkaci əlma na<br>məmnikka? | How far is it to a Chinese restaurant?         |
| 4. <u>Hankuk inhəng</u> kkaci əlma na<br>məmnikka?    | How far is it to the Bank of Korea?            |
| 5. <u>Panto Kwesa</u> kkaci əlma na məmnikka?         | How far is it to the Bando Company?            |
| 6. <u>Kukce Kikcang</u> kkaci əlma na<br>məmnikka?    | How far is it to the International<br>Theatre? |

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 7. <u>Səul Təhakkyo tosekwan</u> kkaci əlma<br>na mənnikka? | How far is it to the Seoul University<br>library?     |
| 8. <u>Təhak Pyəngwən kənmul</u> kkaci əlma<br>na mənnikka?  | How far is it to the University<br>Hospital building? |
| 9. <u>Ceil kakkaun kongwən</u> kkaci əlma na<br>mənnikka?   | How far is it to the nearest park?                    |

## H. Substitution Drill

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. <u>Hakkyo</u> ka əlma na mənnikka?                                | How far is the school?                                    |
| 2. <u>Cip</u> i əlma na <u>kakkapsimnikka</u> ?                      | How near is the house?                                    |
| 3. <u>Pihəngki</u> ka əlma na <u>ppalimnikka</u> ?                   | How fast is the airplane?                                 |
| 4. <u>Cəncha</u> ka əlma na <u>nilimnikka</u> ?                      | How slow is the streetcar?                                |
| 5. <u>Hapsing</u> i əlma na <u>phyəlli-hamnikka</u> ?                | How convenient is the jitney?                             |
| 6. <u>Kil</u> i əlma na <u>pəncap-hamnikka</u> ?                     | How crowded is the street?                                |
| *7. <u>Munce</u> ka əlma na <u>kantan-hamnikka</u> ?                 | How simple is the problem?                                |
| *8. <u>Munpəp</u> i əlma na <u>pokcap-hamnikka</u> ?                 | How complicated is the grammar?                           |
| *9. <u>Iyca</u> ka əlma na <u>phyənhamnikka</u> ?                    | How comfortable is the chair?                             |
| *10. <u>Kyothong</u> i əlma na <u>pulphyən-</u><br><u>hamnikka</u> ? | How inconvenient is the trans-<br>portation (or traffic)? |
| *11. <u>San</u> i əlma na <u>nophsimnikka</u> ?                      | How high is the mountain?                                 |
| *12. <u>Kənmul</u> i əlma na <u>nacimnikka</u> ?                     | How low is the building?                                  |
| *13. <u>Tali</u> ka əlma na <u>ki(1)mnikka</u> ?                     | How long (length) is the bridge?                          |
| *14. <u>Mul</u> i əlma na <u>kiphsimnikka</u> ?                      | How deep is the water?                                    |
| *15. <u>Hakki</u> ka əlma na <u>cca(1)psimnikka</u> ?                | How short is the semester?                                |
| *16. <u>Muke</u> ka əlma na <u>mukəpsimnikka</u> ?                   | How heavy is the weight?                                  |
| *17. <u>Chəksang</u> i əlma na <u>kapyəpsimnikka</u> ?               | How light (weight) is the table?                          |
| *18. <u>Pang</u> i əlma na <u>pa(1)ksimnikka</u> ?                   | How light is the room?                                    |
| *19. <u>Kyosil</u> i əlma na <u>ətupsimnikka</u> ?                   | How dark is the classroom?                                |
| *20. <u>Tosi</u> ka əlma na <u>nəlpsimnikka</u> ?                    | How large is the city?                                    |

## I. Substitution Drill

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. Sinæ kkaci kələ sə sip-o pun ccim kəllimnita.                            | It takes about 15 minutes to walk downtown.   |
| 2. Sinæ kkaci <u>catongcha lo</u> sip-o pun ccim kəllimnita.                | It takes about 15 minutes to go downtown by car.                                    |
| *3. <u>Siwe</u> kkaci catongcha lo sip-o pun ccim kəllimnita.               | It takes about 15 minutes to go to the suburb by car.                               |
| 4. Siwe kkaci catongcha lo <u>i-sip-o pun ccim</u> kəllimnita.              | It takes about 25 minutes to go to the suburb by car.                               |
| 5. Siwe kkaci <u>cəncha lo i-sip-o</u> pun ccim kəllimnita.                 | It takes about 25 minutes by street-car to go to the suburb.                        |
| 6. <u>Sinmunsa</u> kkaci cəncha lo i-sip-o ccim kəllimnita.                 | It takes about 25 minutes by street-car to go to the newspaper publishing company.  |
| 7. Sinmunsa kkaci cəncha lo <u>pan sikan ccim</u> kəllimnita.               | It takes about half an hour by streetcar to go to the newspaper publishing company. |
| 8. Sinmunsa kkaci <u>kələ sə</u> pan sikan ccim kəllimnita.                 | It takes about half an hour on foot to go to the newspaper publisher.               |
| 9. <u>Mikuk Kongpowən tosekwan</u> kkaci kələ sə pan sikan ccim kəllimnita. | It takes about half an hour on foot to go to the USIS library.                      |
| 10. Mikuk Kongpowən tosekwan kkaci kələ sə pan sikan ccim <u>twemnita</u> . | It's about half an hour (walk) to the USIS library.                                 |
| 11. Mikuk Kongpowən tosekwan kkaci kələ sə pan sikan ccim <u>kamnita</u> .  | You [have to] go about half an hour on foot to get to the USIS library.             |

## J. Substitution Drill

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. Ppəsı na cəncha nin tanici anhsimnikka?                       | Aren't there any buses or streetcars running?   |
| 2. <u>Hapsing</u> ina <u>thækssi</u> nin tanici anhsimnikka?     | Aren't there any jitneys or taxis running?      |
| 3. <u>Pæ</u> na <u>pihængki</u> nin tanici anhsimnikka?          | Aren't there any ships or airplanes running?    |
| 4. <u>Kicha</u> na <u>catongcha</u> nin tanici anhsimnikka?      | Aren't there any trains or automobiles running? |
| *5. <u>Catongcha</u> na <u>hwamulcha</u> nin tanici anhsimnikka? | Aren't there any cars or cargo trains running?  |



- |  |  |
|--|--|
| *6. <u>Hwamulcha</u> na <u>hwamulsən</u> in tanici<br>anhsimnikka?           | Aren't there any cargo trains or<br>cargo ships running?         |
| *7. <u>Hwamulsən</u> ina <u>kisən</u> in tanici<br>anhsimnikka?              | Aren't there any cargo ships or<br>steamships running?           |
| *8. <u>Kisən</u> ina <u>kæksən</u> in tanici<br>anhsimnikka?                 | Aren't there any steamships or<br>passenger ships running?       |
| *9. <u>Hwamulcha</u> na <u>hwamul catongoha</u><br>nin tanici anhsimnikka?   | Aren't there any cargo trains or<br>trucks running?              |
| *10. <u>Kæksən</u> ina <u>kækcha</u> nin tanici<br>anhsimnikka?              | Aren't there any passenger ships or<br>passenger trains running? |
| *11. <u>Kiphæng (cha)</u> na <u>Wanhæng (cha)</u><br>nin tanici anhsimnikka? | Aren't there any express (trains)<br>or local (trains) running?  |

## K. Substitution Drill

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. Hapsing i <u>cacu</u> tanimnita.                   | Jitneys run frequently.                           |
| 2. Hapsing i <u>kakkim</u> tanimnita.                 | Jitneys run sometimes.                            |
| 3. Hapsing i <u>nll</u> tanimnita.                    | Jitneys run all the time.                         |
| 4. Hapsing i <u>hangsang</u> tanimnita.               | Jitneys run all the time.                         |
| 5. Hapsing i <u>ence na</u> tanimnita.                | Jitneys run {any time.<br>{all the time.          |
| 6. Hapsing i <u>manhi</u> tanimnita.                  | Jitneys run a lot.                                |
| *7. Hapsing i <u>ttæ ttæ lo</u> tanimnita.            | Jitneys run {occasionally.<br>{from time to time. |
| *8. Hapsing i <u>ittakim</u> tanimnita.               | Jitneys run {off and on.<br>{once in a while.     |
| 9. Hapsing i <u>han sikan e han pen</u><br>tanimnita. | Jitneys run every hour.                           |
| 10. Hapsing i <u>halu e tu pen</u> tanimnita.         | Jitneys run twice a day.                          |

## L. Substitution Drill

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. əlma na cacu hapsing 1 tanimnikka?                        | How often do the jitneys run?                  |
| 2. əlma na cacu <u>tapang e kamnikka?</u>                    | How often do you go to a tearoom?              |
| 3. əlma na cacu <u>pækhwacəm e tillimnikka?</u>              | How often do you stop by the department store? |
| 4. əlma na cacu <u>yəca chinku lil mannarnnikka?</u>         | How often do you meet your girl friend?        |
| 5. əlma na cacu <u>ppəsi lil thamnikka?</u>                  | How often do you take the bus?                 |
| 6. əlma na cacu <u>mom 1 aphimnikka?</u>                     | How often are you sick?                        |
| 7. əlma na cacu <u>hyuka lil patsimnikka?</u>                | How often do you take leave?                   |
| 8. əlma na cacu <u>cip esə swimnikka?</u>                    | How often do you stay home ('rest home')?      |
| 9. əlma na cacu <u>yəngħwa lil pomnikka?</u>                 | How often do you see movies?                   |
| 10. əlma na cacu <u>yəngħwa pole kamnikka?</u>               | How often do you go to see movies?             |
| 11. əlma na cacu <u>Mikuk yəngħwa lil sangyəng-hamnikka?</u> | How often do [they] show American movies?      |
| *12. əlma na cacu <u>sə waisyassi ka philyo-hamnikka?</u>    | How often do you need new (dress) shirt?       |
| 13. əlma na cacu <u>yangpok il samnikka?</u>                 | How often do you buy suits?                    |

## M. Substitution Drill

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. Ppəsi (ka) Pəncap-hamnita.            | Buses are crowded.  |
| 2. <u>Cəncha</u> (ka) pəncap-hamnita.    | Streetcars are crowded.                                     |
| 3. <u>Kikcang</u> (1) pəncap-hamnita.    | Theatres are crowded.                                       |
| 4. <u>Kicha</u> (ka) pəncap-hamnita.     | Trains are crowded.   |
| 5. <u>Tapang</u> (1) pəncap-hamnita.     | Tearooms are crowded.                                       |
| 6. <u>Siktang</u> (1) pəncap-hamnita.    | Restaurants are crowded.                                    |
| 7. <u>Cəngkəcang</u> (1) pəncap-hamnita. | The station is crowded.                                     |
| 8. <u>Kil</u> (1) pəncap-hamnita.        | The streets are crowded.                                    |
| *9. <u>Kyothong</u> (1) pəncap-hamnita.  | {Traffic is heavy.<br>{There is a traffic jam.              |
| *10. Kyothong (1) <u>pokcap-hamnita.</u> | {Transportation is complicated.<br>{There is a traffic jam. |
| *11. <u>Munce</u> (ka) pokcap-hamnita.   | The problem is complicated.                                 |
| *12. <u>Munpəp</u> 1 pokcap-hamnita.     | The grammar is complicated.                                 |

## N. Combination Drill (based on Grammar Note 1)

Tutor: Hankuk e kamnita. Səul esə  
il-hakessimnita.

'I go to Korea.' 'I'll work in  
Seoul.'

Student: Hankuk e kamyən, Səul esə  
il-hakessimnita.

'When } I go to Korea I'll work in  
'If } Seoul.'

1. Kim Sənsəng il mannamnita. Kiləhke  
mal-hakessimnita.

Kim Sənsəng il mannamyən, kiləhke  
mal-hakessimnita.

2. Sikan i issimnita. Kikcang e  
kakessimnita.

Sikan i issimyən, kikcang e  
kakessimnita.

3. Sinə e kamnita. Khəphi lil  
masikessimnita.

Sinə e kamyən, khəphi lil  
masikessimnita.

4. Tapang i əpsimnita. Təsakwan esə  
mannakessimnita.

Tapang i əpsimyən, təsakwan esə  
mannakessimnita.

5. I pukin e tapang i issimnita.  
Tillikessimnita.

I pukin e tapang i issimyən,  
tillikessimnita.

6. Kicha ka phyənhamnita. Kicha lo  
Səul e kakessimnita.

Kicha ka phyənhamyən, kicha lo  
Səul e kakessimnita.

7. Hakkyo ka kakkapsimnita. Kələ sə  
kakessimnita.

Hakkyo ka kakkaumyən, kələ sə  
kakessimnita.

8. Sinə ka məmnita. Hapsing il  
thakessimnita.

Sinə ka məlmyən, hapsing il  
thakessimnita.

9. Səul e tto omnita. Səul Təhakkyo  
e tanikessimnita.

Səul e tto omyən, Səul Təhakkyo e  
tanikessimnita.

10. Ppəsi ka phyəlli-hamnita. Ppəsi  
lo ttenakessimnita.

Ppəsi ka phyəlli-hamyən, ppəsi lo  
ttenakessimnita.

11. Cəncha e salam i manhəsimnita.  
Tnəksi lo okessimnita.

Cəncha e salam i manhəmyən, tnəksi  
lo okessimnita.

## 0. Completion Exercise

Tutor: Hankuk e kamyən,

'When I go to Korea }  
'If I go to Korea } , ...

Student: Hankuk e kamyən, Səul esə  
il-hakessimnita.

'When } I go to Korea I'll work in  
'If } Seoul.'

1. Sikan i issimyən,
2. Sinə e kamyən,
3. Tapang e tillimyən,
4. Tapang i issimyən,
5. Chinku lil mannamyən,
6. Hakkyo ka əpsimyən,
7. Kicha lil thamyən,
8. Onil yəki esə ttənyəmən,
9. Nal i cohimyən,
10. Səul e cip kaps i pissamyən,
11. Sinə ka məlmyən,
12. Ki yəca ka yeppimyən,
13. Cohin Hankuk mal səsəng il chachimyən,
14. Yəng-Han sacən il samyən,
15. Hankuk mal il pəumyən,
16. Ilpon mal i swiumyən,
17. Yəngə ka əlyəumyən,
18. Hankuk mal i cəmi issimyən,
19. Tokil mal il hal su issimyən,
20. Hankuk e kaci anhimyən,
21. Khəphi lil masiko siphimyən,
22. Nəil an pappimyən,
23. Hankuk mal il alə tillimyən,
24. Hankuk mal il alə titci mot hamyən,

## P. Grammar Drill (based on Grammar Note 2)

Tutor: Hankuk mal i əlyəpci man, cæmi  
issimnita.

'Korean is difficult but it's  
interesting.'

Student: Hankuk mal i əlyəwə to, cæmi  
isse yo.

'Even though Korean is difficult,  
it's interesting.'

1. Sinæ e tapang i issci man, cohci  
anhsimnita.

Sinæ e tapang i isse to, cohci anhe  
yo.

2. Nal mata hakkyo e kaci man, kongpu-  
haci anhsimnita.

Nal mata hakkyo e ka to, kongpu-  
haci anhe yo.

3. Com pappici man, sinæ e kakessimnita.

Com pappe to, sinæ e kakesse yo.

4. Hankuk mal il alə titci man, mal-  
haci mot hamnita.

Hankuk mal il alə tile to, mal-  
haci mot hæ yo.

5. Ki salam il kitalici man, oci  
anhsimnita.

Ki salam il kitalye to, oci anhe  
yo.

6. Cə yəca lil mannassci man, ilim  
il molimnita.

Cə yəca lil mannasse to, ilim il  
molla yo.

7. Sensæng in əpsəsci man, haksæng  
in manhəssimnita.

Sensæng in əpsəsse to, haksæng in  
manhəsse yo.

8. Hwesa ka mələssci man, kələ sə  
taniəssimnita.

Hwesa ka mələsse to, kələ sə  
taniəsse yo.

9. Pihængki ka phyəlli-həssci man,  
com pissassimnita.

Pihængki ka phyəlli-həsse to, com  
pissasse yo.

10. Kim Sensæng in Yəngə lil mal-  
həssci man, ssici mot həssimnita.

Kim Sensæng in Yəngə lil mal-həsse  
to, ssici mot həsse yo.

11. Hankuk mal il pəuko siphci man,  
sikan i əpsimnita.

Hankuk mal il pəuko siphe to, sikan  
i əpse yo.

12. Səul e kalyəko haci man, Hankuk  
mal il molimnita.

Səul e kalyəko hæ to, Hankuk mal il  
molla yo.

## Q. Completion Exercise (based on Grammar Note 2)

Tutor: I pukin e tapang i isse to, 'Even though there are tearooms in this area,...

Student: I pukin e tapang isse to, 'Even though there are tearooms in this area, they're not good.'  
 cohci anhsimnita.

1. Hankuk mal i əlyəwə to,
2. Nal mata Hankuk mal il pəwə to,
3. Yəngə lil alə tilə to,
4. Pihəngki ka phyəlli-hə to,
5. Sənsəng in əpsə to,
6. Cə yəca lil mannasse to,
7. Hakkyo ka mələ to,
8. Hankuk mal il pəuko siphe to,
9. Səul e kalyəko hə to,

## R. Response Drill

Tutor: Cip e ka to cohsimnikka? 'May I go home? ('Is it all right even if I go home?')

Student: Ne, ka to cohsimnita. 'Yes, you may (go).'

1. I chək il ilkə to cohsimnikka? Ne, ilkə to cohsimnita.
2. Sənsəng cip e tille to cohsimnikka? Ne, tille to cohsimnita.
3. Sənsəng e cha lil tha to cohsimnikka? Ne, tha to cohsimnita.
4. Cə kilim il pwa to cohsimnikka? Ne, pwa to cohsimnita.
5. Yəki esə tangsin il kitaliə to cohsimnikka? Ne, yəki esə kitaliə to cohsimnita.
6. Onil ttəna to cohsimnikka? Ne, onil ttəna to cohsimnita.
7. Kyosil esə khəphi lil masyə to cohsimnikka? Ne, masyə to cohsimnita.
8. Onil cip esə swiə to cohsimnikka? Ne, swiə to cohsimnita.
9. Mikuk yəngwa lil pwa to cohsimnikka? Ne, pwa to cohsimnita.
10. Hankuk mal lo mal-hə to cohsimnikka? Ne, Hankuk mal lo mal-hə to cohsimnita.

## S. Response Drill (based on Grammar Note 3)

Tutor: I chæk i pissamnikka?

'Is this book expensive?'

Student: Ne, i chæk ceil pissamnita.

'Yes, this (book) is the most expensive.'

1. Hankuk mal i əlyəpsimnikka?

Ne, Hankuk mal i ceil əlyəpsimnita.

2. Hapsing i phyəlli-hamnikka?

Ne, hapsing i ceil phyəlli-hamnita.

3. Kim Sənsəng i (Hankuk mal il) cal kalichimnikka?

Ne, Kim Sənsəng i (Hankuk mal il) ceil cal kalichimnita.

4. Pihəngki ka ppalimnikka?

Ne, pihəngki ka ceil ppalimnita.

5. Cəncha ka nilimnikka?

Ne, cəncha ka ceil nilimnita.

6. Hapsing i cacu tanimnikka?

Ne, hapsing i ceil cacu tanimnita.

7. Səul i khin tosi imnikka?

Ne, Səul i ceil khin tosi imnita.

8. Cə yəca lil cohahamnikka?

Ne, cə yəca lil ceil cohahamnita.

9. Yəng-Han sacən i philyo-hamnikka?

Ne, Yəng-Han sacən-i ceil philyo-hamnita.

## T. Response Drill

Tutor: Muəs i ceil phyəlli-hamnikka?

'What is most convenient?' /jitney/

/hapsing/

Student: Hapsing i kacang phyəlli-hamnita.

'A jitney is the most convenient.'

1. Nuka ceil Yəngə lil cal hamnikka?

Kim Sənsəng i Yəngə lil kacang cal hamnita.

/Kim Sənsəng/

2. əni mal i ceil əlyəpsimnikka?

Ssolyən mal i kacang əlyəpsimnita.

/Ssolyən mal/

3. Mikuk esə əni tosi ka ceil

Nyuyok i kacang khimnita.

khimnikka? /Nyuyok/

4. Musin catongcha ka ceil pissamnikka?

Khyatalæk i kacang pissamnita.

/khyatalæk/

5. Hankuk esə eti e Mikuk salam i

Səul pukin e kacang manhi samnita.

ceil manhi samnikka? /Səul

pukin/

6. Muəs i ceil ppalimnikka? /kicha/

Kicha ka kacang ppalimnita.

7. əni phyən i ceil nilimnikka?

Cəncha phən i kacang nilimnita.

/cəncha/

8. eti lil ceil mence kuyeng-hako  
siphsimnikka? /sinə kongwən/  
9. eni phyen i ceil cacu tanimnikka?  
/hapsing/

Sinə kongwən il kacang mence  
kuyeng-hako siphsimnita.  
Hapsing (phyen) i kacang cacu  
tanimnita.

## U. Expansion Drill

Tutor: I chæk i pissamnita. /Yeng-Han  
sacən/

'This book is expensive.' /English-  
Korean dicationary/

Student: Yeng-Han sacən cung esə i  
chæk i kacang pissamnita.

'Of the English-Korean dictionaries  
this book is the most expensive.'

1. Mikuk i cohsimnita. /nala til/

Nala til cung esə Mikuk i kacang  
cohsimnita.

2. Mikuk catongcha ka phyenhamnita.  
/yələ nala cha/

Yələ nala cha cung esə Mikuk catongcha  
ka kacang phyenhamnita.

3. Səul i khin tosi imnita. /Hankuk  
e yələ tosi/

Hankuk e yələ tosi cung esə Səul i  
kacang khin tosi imnita.

4. Kicha ka ppalimnita. /catongcha  
wa ppəsi wa kicha/

Catongcha wa ppəsi wa kicha cung  
esə kicha ka kacang ppalimnita.

5. Cungkuk imsik il cohamnita.  
/yələ kaci imsik/

Yələ kaci imsik cung esə Cungkuk  
imsik il kacang cohamnita.

6. Hankuk mal i elyepsimnita. /mal  
til/

Mal til cung esə Hankuk mal i kacang  
elyepsimnita.

7. Cho Sənsəng i cal kalichimnita.  
/sənsəng til/

Sənsəng til cung esə Cho Sənsəng i  
kacang cal kalichimnita.

## EXERCISES

1. Kim Sənsəng asks you what you want to see first. Propose that you go together to see the following places:
- |                                  |                                  |
|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| a. Seoul University              | H. a museum                      |
| b. Seoul High School             | i. a drug store                  |
| c. a girls' middle school        | j. the central police station    |
| d. the nearest elementary school | k. the British consulate         |
| e. a library                     | l. a church                      |
| f. a hospital                    | m. the International Post Office |
| g. the zoo                       | n. the dormitory                 |



2. Mr. James asks:You respond:

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| a. how far the school is from your house.          | 'It's about three miles.'                                |
| b. how long your car is.                           | 'It's 5 and a half meters (long).'                       |
| c. how long it takes to come to work.              | 'It usually takes 25 minutes by car.'                    |
| d. how high the mountain is.                       | 'It is low but is about 850 feet high.'                  |
| e. which is slower, the bus or the train.          | 'The bus is a little slower than the train.'             |
| f. which way is the most convenient of them all.   | 'The airplane is the most convenient of them all.'       |
| g. if Korean is complicated.                       | 'No, it's not so complicated and the writing is simple.' |
| h. if you came to school <u>early</u> /ilcciki/.   | 'No, I came a little <u>late</u> /nicke/.'               |
| i. if the chair is very heavy.                     | 'It's quite heavy but it is lighter than a table.'       |
| j. if the chair is comfortable.                    | 'It's not bad.'  |
| k. if the room is dark.                            | 'No, it's quite light.'                                  |
| l. if the Han bridge is longer than the other one. | 'No, it's shorter.'                                      |
| m. if the street is always crowded.                | 'No, not always. Only in the morning and afternoon.'     |
| n. if the Korean grammar is simple.                | 'No, it's very complicated.'                             |
| o. if you want to study Korean.                    | 'I have no time even though I would like to.'            |
| p. if he may get off in front of the building.     | 'Yes, you may.'  |
| q. if he may use your car.                         | 'I'm sorry but you can't.'                               |
| r. if he may ask you a question.                   | 'Yes, please do.'  |
| s. if he may drink coffee in the classroom.        | 'Yes, please if you want to.'                            |

## 3. Find out the following information at the travel bureau:

- if there are any passenger ships running between Inchon and Pusan.
- if so, whether they are steamships.
- if any cargo ships go to Tokyo.
- if it is more expensive to ship /puchi-ta/ things by airplane.
- how often express trains are running between Seoul and Pusan, and how much is a round-trip ticket /wangpok phyo/.
- how much longer it takes to go to Suwon by a local train.

## 제 11 과 시내 구경 ( 계속 )

( 대화 A )

타고 갑시다

1. 스미스 : 시내까지 합승을 타고 갑시다.

타지 맙시다

2. 김 : 버스나 합승은 타지 맙시다. 지금은 합승에도 사람이 많습니다.

걸어 갑시다

3. 스미스 : 그럼, 걸어 갑니까요?

택시를 탑시다.

4. 김 : 여보세요! 택시!

가 드립니까요

5. 운전수 : 어서 탑시다. 어디로 가 드립니까요?

중앙

중앙 우편국

가 주십시오

6. 김 : 서울 중앙 우편국으로 가 주십시오.

거의

다

거의 다

내립니다

## UNIT 11. Going Around the Town (Continued)

## BASIC DIALOGUE FOR MEMORIZATION

Smith

- thako kapsita (let's ride and go!)
1. Sinæ kkaci hapsing il thako Let's take a jitney downtown.  
kapsita.

Kim

- thaci mapsita let's not ride
2. Ppəsi na hapsing in thaci mapsita. Let's not take the bus or a jitney.  
Cikim in hapsing e to salam i Jitneys are (also) crowded at  
manhsimnita. this time (of day).

Smith

- kələ kamnita [I] walk; [I] go on foot
3. Kilem, kələ kal kka yo? Shall we walk, then?

Kim

4. Thækssi lil thapsita. Let's take a taxi.

(... to a taxi)

Yəpose yo! Thækssi! Hey! Taxi!

Driver

- ka tilil kka yo (shall I go (for you)?)
5. əsə thasipsiyo. eti lo ka Please get in. Where shall I take  
tilil kka yo? you? ('Where shall I go for you?')

Kim

- cungang center; central
- Cungang Uphyenkuk Central Post Office
- ka cusipsiyo please for (for me)
6. Səul Cungang Uphyenkuk ilo ka Please go to the Seoul Central Post  
cusipsiyo. Office.

7. 운전수 : 중앙 우편국에 거의 다 왔습니다.  
어디에서 내리시겠습니까?

와 문  
가까이에서  
내려 주십시오

8. 김 : 와 문 가까이에서 내려 주십시오.

(대화 B)

잠깐  
들뜰 일

9. 김 : 저는 잠깐 우편국에 들뜰 일이 있습니다.  
선생은 먼저 다방으로 가시겠습니까?

10. 스미스 : 무슨 일이 있습니까?

편지  
부칩니다  
부쳐야  
부쳐야 합니다

11. 김 : 예, 편지 한 장 부쳐야 하겠습니다.

12. 스미스 : 저도 같이 갈까요?

기타리는 것  
기타리는 것이 좋겠습니다

13. 김 : 선생은 다방에서 기타리는 것이 좋겠습니다.

(... a little later)

Driver

- |           |  |
|-----------|--|
| kəi       | almost; nearly                               |
| kəi ta    | most; almost; almost all;<br>almost everyone |
| nəlimnita | [I] get off; [it] falls down                 |
7. Cungang Uphyənkuk e kəi ta  
wassimnita. ətɪ esə  
nəlisikessimnikka?
- We've almost come to the Central Post Office. Where would you like to get off?

Kim

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| aph mun/ammun/<br>kakkai esə<br>nəlyə cusipsiyo | the front door<br>near; at the near place<br>drop [me] off |
|---|--|
8. Aph mun kakkai esə nəlyə  
cusipsiyo.
- Please drop [us] off at the front door.

(...They got off the taxi.)

Kim

- |                                |  |
|--------------------------------|--|
| camkan<br>tillil il/tilyilyil/ | a little while<br>something to stop by for |
|--------------------------------|--|
9. Cə nin camkan uphyənkuk e tillil  
il i issimnita. Sənsəng in mənçə  
tapang ilo kasikesse yo?
- I have some business at the post office for a moment. Would you [like to] go to the tearoom first?

Smith

10. Musin il i issimnikka?
- What do you have [to do]?

Kim

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| phyənci<br>puchimnita<br>puchie ya<br>puchie ya hamnita | letter<br>[I] mail<br>( 'only if [I] mail' ); ( 'only when [I] mail' )<br>[I] have to mail; [I] must mail |
|---|---|
11. Ne, phyənci han cang puchie ya  
hakessimnita.
- Well, I have to mail a letter.

14. 아마  
시간이 걸릴 것입니다  
아마, 시간이 좀 걸릴 것입니다.

15. 스미스 : 너무  
늦습니다, 늦습니다  
늦지 마십시오  
그럼, 너무 늦지 마십시오.

16. 김 : 꿀  
돌아 옵니다  
아니요, 꿀 돌아 오겠어요.

17. 스미스 : 이따  
그럼, 이따 만납시다.

12. Cə to kathi kal kka yo? Smith Shall I also go with you?
- Kim  
 kitalinin kəs ('the waiting thing')  
 kitalinin kəs i cohkessimnita you'd better wait ('that you wait will be good')
13. Sənsəng in tapang esə kitalinin Smith You'd better wait in the tearoom.  
 kəs i cohkessimnita.
- ama perhaps; probably  
 sikan i kəllil kəs imnita it will take time
14. Ama, sikan i com kəllil kəs Smith It may take a little time. ('Probably time will take a little.')  
 imnita.
- Smith  
 nəmu too  
 nicəsimnita } [it]'s late; [it] delays  
 nicimnita }  
 nicci masipsiyo don't be late; don't be long
15. Kıləm, nəmu nicci masipsiyo. Smith Don't be too long, then.
- Kim  
 kot soon; immediately  
 tola omnita [I] come back
16. Aniyo, kot tola okessə yo. Smith No, I'll be soon back.
- Smith  
 itta later; after a while
17. Kıləm, itta mannapsita. Smith See you in a few minutes, then.

## NOTES ON DIALOGUES

(Numbers correspond to the sentence numbers)

1. 3. Thako kapsita. ('Let's ride and go.') is a fixed expression used in contrast to Kələ (sə) kapsita 'Let's go on foot.' Thako ka- with or without specifying a mode of transportation before it (as an object) is used to denote going by some means of transportation (e.g. car, taxi, bus, street-car, etc.)
  
5. əti lo ka tili kka yo? ('Where shall I go for you?') is the politer equivalent of əti lo ka cul kka yo?. The verb cu- or its politer equivalent tilli- is used as an auxiliary verb. (See Grammar Note 2.)
  
6. Cungang 'central', 'center' occurs either as a determinative or a free-noun. As a determinative it forms a noun phrase with the following noun; as a free-noun it denotes geographical location. Compare (a) and (b):
 

(a) <u>Cungang Kikcang</u>	'Central Theatre'
<u>Cungang Cəngkəcang</u>	'Central Station'
(b) <u>Sinə cəngang e samnita.</u>	
  
7. Kəi 'almost', 'most of them' and kəi ta 'almost (all)', 'most of all' both occur either nominals or adverbials. Kəi ta is a two-word phrase. As a nominal, either one of them occurs in the subject, topic or object position in a sentence.
  
8. Nəli- 'to get off', 'to descend' is an intransitive verb which may precede a place or transportation name + esə. Tha- 'to ride', 'to get on' is antonymous with nəli- (See Notes on Dialogues 14, Unit 7.) The verb phrase nəliə cu- 'to drop somebody off' occurs as a transitive verb phrase which may precede a direct object with or without a place or transportation name + esə. The antonymous verb for məliə cu- is either thəu- or thəwə cu-, both of which mean 'to give someone a ride' or 'to load'. Kakkai 'near', 'at the near place', 'the near place' occurs either as an adverb or a noun. The antonym for the adverb kakkai is məlli 'far away'.



14. Ama 'perhaps', 'probably' occurs as a sentence adverb which is usually followed by either an inflected form with the suffix -kess- in it or the construction -(1)l kəs i-. It denotes the speaker's presumption for the probable action or description of the subject or topic in the sentence.
15. Nemu 'too' is an adverb which, without being followed by a pause immediately before verbals, noun-modifier words, or other adverbs, denotes excessive degree of the following descriptive expressions.
16. Kot 'soon', 'right away', 'immediately' which may be followed by a pause occurs as a sentence adverb. It denotes immediate time for the following inflected expression.
17. Itta 'later', 'after a while' which may be followed by a pause, occurs as a sentence adverb, and denotes later point of time on the same day for the following inflected expression. The antonym of itta is akka 'a little while ago' which is also a sentence adverb.

## GRAMMAR NOTES

1. -ci + ma(1)-

We learned in Unit 4 that the ci form plus the verb anh- was used to negate the verb in the ci form in a statement or question sentence. Remember that anh- does not occur alone but is always preceded by the ci form without a pause. Like anh-, the verb ma(1)- does not occur without being preceded by the ci form. -ci + ma(1)- is used to indicate negation of the verb in the ci form in either propositative or imperative sentences. Note that in the construction -ci + anh- tenses and/or levels of speech may be generated in the verb anh-, but in the construction -ci + ma(1)-, tense suffixes do not occur in the inflected form of the stem ma(1)-: the verb ma(1) takes only -(1)psita and -(1)sipsiyo endings in Formal Polite Speech, and the infinitive form of ma(1)- is malə, making the informal polite speech present form malə yo. Compare:

## GROUP 1

- |                                |                              |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------|
| a. Hankukə lo (mal-)hapsita.   | 'Let's speak in Korean.'     |
| Hankukə lo (mal-)haci mapsita. | 'Let's not speak in Korean.' |
| b. Kələ kapsita.               | 'Let's go on foot.'          |
| Kələ kaci mapsita.             | 'Let's not go on foot.'      |

- c. Kyosil esə tampə (lil) phiupsita. 'Let's smoke in the classroom.'  
 Kyosil esə tampə (lil) phiuci 'Let's not smoke in the classroom.'  
 mapsita.

GROUP 2

- a. I chæk il ilkisipsiyo. 'Read this book.'  
 I chæk il ilkei masipsiyo. 'Don't read this book.'
- b. Hankuk mal lo mal-hasipsiyo. 'Speak in Korean.'  
 Hankuk mal lo mal-haci masipsiyo. 'Don't speak in Korean.'
- c. Kimchi lil məkisipsiyo. 'Eat Kimchi.'  
 Kimchi lil məkci masipsiyo. 'Don't eat Kimchi.'

2. Infinitive + cu-

In Unit 7, we were introduced to a verb phrases (i.e. infinitive + auxiliary verb). The verb cu- preceded by an infinitive without a pause occurs as an auxiliary verb. As an independent verb cu- means 'to give', and the construction Infinitive + cu- which may be preceded by a Personal Nominal + { eke / hanthe } 'to + Personal Nominal' means literary something like 'do and give to someone'. But the auxiliary verb cu- is generally used either to denote 'rendering service to someone' by the subject or topic, or simply to mean nothing but to make the speech politer in an imperative sentence. The politer or honorific equivalent of cu- is an irregular form tlli- which occurs also either as an independent verb or as an auxiliary verb. Observe the following examples:

1. a. Chæk il ilkisipsiyo. 'Read the book.'  
 b. Chæk il ilke cusipsiyo. {'Please read the book.'  
 'Please read me the book.'  
 c. Chæk il na eke ilke cusipsiyo. {'Please read me the book.'  
 'Please read the book {for} me.'  
 {to}
2. a. Kim Sənsəng i khəphi lil sassimnita. 'Mr. Kim bought coffee.'  
 b. Kim Sənsəng i khəphi lil sa 'Mr. Kim bought [me] coffee.'  
 cuəssimnita.  
 c. Kim Sənsəng i cə eke khəphi lil {'Mr. Kim bought me coffee.'  
 sa cuəssimnita. 'Mr. Kim bought coffee for me.'

3. a. Cə yəca ka Yəngə lɪl 'That woman taught English.'  
kalichɛssɪmnita.
- b. Cə yəca ka Yəngə lɪl kalichɛ 'That woman taught [me] English.'  
cuəssɪmnita.
- c. Cə yəca ka na hanthe Yəngə lɪl 'That woman taught me English.'  
kalichɛ cuəssɪmnita.
4. a. Sənsəng kwa kathi kal kka yo? 'Shall I go with you?'
- b. Sənsəng kwa kathi ka tilɪl kka 'Shall I go with you (for you)?'  
yo? 'Shall I accompany you?'
- c. Ne, na wa kathi ka cusɪsɪyo. 'Would you like me to go with you?'
- 'Yes, please go with me.'

3. Particle ya

Ya belongs to a small class of particles which occur without a pause immediately after inflected forms (e.g. Infinitives). Infinitive + ya occurs in the following two constructions:

- a. Infinitive + ya + ha- 'must..', 'have (or has) to\_\_'

Infinitive + ya followed by the verb ha- without a pause is used to denote obligation of the action or description of the verb in the infinitive for the subject or topic in the sentence. In this construction the tenses and/or levels of speech is generated only in ha-. Examples:

- Wekyokwan in wekuk mal ɪl alə ya 'Diplomats must know foreign  
hamnita. languages.'
- Cə to Hankuk mal ɪl pəwə ya hæ yo. 'I have to study Korean, too.'
- Chinku lɪl manna ya hakessə yo? 'Do [you] have to meet a friend?'
- Hakkyo e ka ya hæssɪmnita. 'I had to go to school.'

Note that the pattern -ci ahimɪyən an twemnita. ('If [one] doesn't do... [it] doesn't become.') is often interchangeably used with Infinitive + ya ha-. Thus, the Yes response to either Infinitive + ya hamnikka? or -ci ahimɪyən an twemnikka? is either Ne, Infinitive + ya hamnita. or Ne, -ci ahimɪyən an twemnita. The most usual No response to either of the above questions is Aniyo, -ci anhe to { cohsɪmnita. } 'No, [you] don't have to...' ('Even if [one] does not do... [it]'s O.K.')

- b. Infinitive + ya + verbs other than ha- 'only when,.', 'only if..', 'must...to...'

Infinitive + ya, which may be followed by a pause before another inflected expression, occurs to denote obligatory condition of action or description of the subject or topic for the following inflected expression. In this construction, the tense suffixes may also occur in the infinitive form which precedes ya, while tenses and/or levels of speech are generated in the following inflected expression. Examples:

Hankuk mal il alə ya, il-haki swipsimnita.	{ 'It is easy to work only when [you] know Korean.' 'You have to know Korean to make it easy to work.'
Ton i issə ya, cha lil sal su issimnita.	{ 'Only if [i] have money, I can buy a car.' '[I] have to have money to buy a car.'
Chæk kaps i ssa ya, sakessə yo.	'Only if the book is cheap, I will buy it.'
Pam e cal ca ya, kongpu cal hal su issimnita.	{ '[You] have to have a goodnight sleep to study well.' 'Only when [you] sleep well, you can study well.'
Ki ttæ e Səul e issəssə ya, ki kəs il pol su issəssil kəs imnita.	{ 'Only if [you] had been in Seoul at that time [you] could have seen it.' '[You] should have been in Seoul at that time to have seen it.'

4. -n/in/nin + kəs

Remember that the Nominalized verb (i.e. the ki form) occurs in a nominal position in a sentence, e.g. subject, topic, object (See Unit 8). Just like the ki form, the phrase -n/in/nin + kəs (which is the present noun-modifier word plus the post-noun kəs) often occurs in the nominal positions. Any English verbal expression which occurs in nominal positions can be compared with the above Korean construction. Observe the following examples:

<u>Wekuk mal il pəunin kəs</u> in swipci anhsimnita.	' <u>Learning foreign languages</u> is not easy.'
<u>Ceimsi ka Yəngə lil kalichinin</u> <u>kəs</u> il amnita.	'[I] know <u>that James is teaching English</u> .'
<u>Kim Sənsəng i hakkyo e kanin kəs</u> il pwassə yo.	'I saw <u>that Mr. Kim was going to school</u> .'

Thækssi lil thanin kəs i  
ettəhsimnikka?

'How would you like to take a taxi?'

Səul esə sanin kəs il cohahamnikka?

'Do you like to live in Seoul?'

Note, however, that the expression -n/in/nin kəs i coh(kess)simnita '[You] had better do..' ('It (will) be good to do such-and-such' or 'That [you] do.. will be good.')

occurs as a fixed expression to indicate the speaker's recommendation, suggestion or wishes.

5. -(1)l kəs i-

We learned about the inflected forms which include the suffix -kess- (Grammar Note 2, Unit 3). Like the inflected forms including -kess-, the construction -(1)l kəs i- is also used to indicate either the future action or description, or the speaker's presumption, about the subject or the topic in the sentence. Study the following formula:

<u>Subject/Topic</u>	<u>Form</u>	<u>Denotation</u>
a. Speaker	-kess-	Speaker's positive intention for the future
b. Addressee (in a question sentence)	-kess-	Addressee's positive intention for the future
c. Other than speaker or addressee (in a question sentence)	-kess-	Addressee's opinion or presumption for the future
d. Other than speaker or addressee (in a statement sentence)	-kess-	Speaker's presumption
e. Speaker	-(1)l kəs i-	Speaker's passive future
f. Addressee (in a question sentence)	-(1)l kəs i-	Addressee's passive future
g. Addressee (in a statement sentence)	-(1)l kəs i-	Speaker's presumption for the future
h. Other than the speaker or addressee (in a statement sentence)	-(1)l kəs i-	Speaker's belief or knowledge for the future
i. Other than the speaker or addressee (in a question sentence)	-(1)l kəs i-	Addressee's opinion, presumption or knowledge for the future

Note that if the subject/topic in the sentence is other than the speaker or addressee, and if the speaker simply states his knowledge about the action or description of the subject/topic for the future, the construction -(1)l kəs i-

is usually used instead of the -kess- form. However, -(1)l kəs i- is also used occasionally to denote the speaker's presumption about the subject/topic. Compare the following pairs:

- a. Onil pi ka okessimnita. 'It is going to rain today (I suppose).'
- Onil pi ka ol kəs imnita. 'It will rain today.'
- b. Ki cha ka pissakessimnita. 'That car must be expensive.'
- Ki cha ka pissal kəs imnita. 'That car will be expensive.'
- c. Onil Thoyoil ini kka, haksəng 'Because today is Saturday, I presume there are not students at school.'
- til i hakkyo e əpskessimnita.
- Onil Thoyoil ini kka, haksəng 'Because today is Saturday, there (will) be no students at school.'
- til i hakkyo e əpsil kəs imnita. 'Probably there (will) be no students at school because today is Saturday.'
- d. Pak Sənsəng i onil ttənəkessimnita. 'I believe Mr. Park will leave today.'
- Pak Sənsəng i onil ttənəl kəs 'Mr. Park will leave today.'
- imnita.

#### 6. Further Notes on Honorifics

In Unit 3, we noticed that when the subject, topic or the person acted upon in a sentence is honored, the honorific suffix -(1)si- is added to the verb stem. While most Korean verb stems take -(1)si- to form honorifics there is a small class of verb stems of which honorifics have irregular shapes. Examples:

<u>Stem</u>	<u>Honorific or Humble form</u>	
ca-	cumusi-	'to sleep'
iss-	kyesi-	'to exist'
mək-	capsusi-	'to eat'
cu-	tili(si)-	'to give'
cuk-	tola kasi-	'to die', 'to pass away (H)'

Remember that the speaker does not honor himself regardless of age, status or other factors. That is, the honorific suffix -(1)si- should not occur in the verb in a sentence where the speaker himself is the subject, topic or the person acted upon.

## DRILLS

## A. Substitution Drill

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. <u>Sinæ</u> kkaci hapsing il thako kapsita.                    | Let's take a jitney as far as the downtown area.             |
| 2. <u>Sæul Yæk</u> kkaci <u>cæncha</u> lil thako kapsita.         | Let's take a streetcar as far as Seoul Station.              |
| 3. <u>Cungang Uphyænkuk</u> kkaci <u>ppesi</u> lil thako kapsita. | Let's take a bus as far as the Central Post Office.          |
| 4. <u>Hankuk inhæng</u> kkaci <u>catongcha</u> lil thako kapsita. | Let's take a car as far as the Bank of Korea.                |
| 5. <u>Tæsakwan aph</u> kkaci <u>thæksi</u> lil thako kapsita.     | Let's take a taxi as far as the front of U.S. Embassy.       |
| 6. <u>Kukce Kikcang</u> kkaci <u>hapsing</u> il thako kapsita.    | Let's take a jitney as far as the International Theatre.     |
| 7. <u>Cungkuk imsikcæm</u> kkaci <u>cha</u> lil thako kapsita.    | Let's take a car as far as the Chinese restaurant.           |
| 8. <u>Yængsakwan pukin</u> kkaci <u>hapsing</u> il thako kapsita. | Let's take a jitney as far as the vicinity of the consulate. |
| *9. <u>Pihængcang</u> kkaci <u>kæle</u> kapsita.                  | Let's walk as far as the airport.                            |

## B. Substitution Drill

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. <u>Cungang Uphyænkuk</u> ilo ka cusipsiyo.  | Please go to the Central Post Office.    |
| 2. <u>Cungang Sicang</u> ilo ka cusipsiyo.     | Please go to the Central Market.         |
| 3. <u>Cungang Kikcang</u> ilo ka cusipsiyo.    | Please go to the Central Theatre.        |
| 4. <u>Cungang Tosekwan</u> ilo ka cusipsiyo.   | Please go to the Central Library.        |
| 5. <u>Cungang Kyængchalsæ</u> lo ka cusipsiyo. | Please go to the Central Police Station. |
| 6. <u>Cungang Kongwæn</u> ilo ka cusipsiyo.    | Please go to the Central Park.           |
| 7. <u>Cungang Pakmulkwan</u> ilo ka cusipsiyo. | Please go to the Central Museum.         |
| 8. <u>Sæul Sinmunsa</u> lo ka cusipsiyo.       | Please go to the Seoul Newspaper Co.     |
| 9. <u>Pihængcang</u> ilo ka cusipsiyo.         | Please go to the airport.                |
| 10. <u>Pyængwæn</u> ilo ka cusipsiyo.          | Please go to the hospital.               |
| *11. <u>Mun</u> ilo ka cusipsiyo.              | Please go to the door.                   |
| *12. <u>Cali</u> lo ka cusipsiyo.              | Please go to the seat.                   |

## C. Substitution Drill

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. Mun kakkai esə næliə cusipsiyo.                        | Please drop [me] off near the door.                           |
| 2. <u>Mun yəph esə næliə</u> cusipsiyo.                   | Please drop [me] off beside the door.                         |
| 3. <u>inhəng aph esə næliə</u> cusipsiyo.                 | Please drop [me] in front of the bank.                        |
| 4. <u>Tosəkwan twi esə næliə</u> cusipsiyo.               | Please drop [me] behind the library.                          |
| 5. <u>Cə kənmul kakkai esə næliə</u><br>cusipsiyo.        | Please drop [me] near that building.                          |
| 6. <u>Pəkhwacəm olin ccook esə næliə</u><br>cusipsiyo.    | Please drop [me] on the right side of the department store.   |
| *7. <u>Sopangse wen ccook esə næliə</u><br>cusipsiyo.     | Please drop [me] on the left side of the fire station.        |
| 8. <u>Kyəngchalse yəph esə næliə</u><br>cusipsiyo.        | Please drop [me] next to the police station.                  |
| 9. <u>Munpangkucəm aph esə næliə</u><br>cusipsiyo.        | Please drop [me] in front of the stationery shop.             |
| 10. <u>Cungkuk siktang twi esə næliə</u><br>cusipsiyo.    | Please drop [me] behind the Chinese restaurant.               |
| *11. Cungkuk siktang twi esə <u>məmchue</u><br>cusipsiyo. | Please stop behind the Chinese restaurant.                    |
| *12. Cungkuk siktang twi esə <u>sə</u><br>cusipsiyo.      | Please stop ( <u>or</u> stand) behind the Chinese restaurant. |
| *13. Cungkuk siktang twi esə <u>sewə</u><br>cusipsiyo.    | Please park behind the Chinese restaurant.                    |

## D. Substitution Drill

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. Uphyənkuk ilo ka cusimyən,<br>kamsahakessimnita.              | I would appreciate it if you'd go to the post office for me. |
| 2. <u>Hankuk mal il kalichie</u> cusimyən,<br>kamsahakessimnita. | I would appreciate it if you would teach [me] Korean.        |
| 3. <u>Cə lil kitalyə</u> cusimyən,<br>kamsahakessimnita.         | I would appreciate it if you would wait for me.              |
| 4. <u>Yəki esə næliə</u> cusimyən,<br>kamsahakessimnita.         | I would appreciate it if you would drop me off here.         |
| 5. <u>Ki sacən il poyə</u> cusimyən,<br>kamsahakessimnita.       | I would appreciate it if you would show me the dictionary.   |



- \*6. Mun il tate cusimyən,  
kamsahakessimnita. I would appreciate it if you would close the door.
- \*7. Mun il yelə cusimyən,  
kamsahakessimnita. I would appreciate it if you would open the door.
- \*8. Ki chæk il pillyə cusimyən,  
kamsahakessimnita. I would appreciate it if you would lend me that book.
- \*9. Calı e ançə cusimyən,  
kamsahakessimnita. I would appreciate it if you would take a seat.
- \*10. Catongcha lil ponə cusimyən,  
kamsahakessimnita. I would appreciate it if you would send [me] a car.
- \*11. Mun aph esə sə cusimyən,  
kamsahakessimnita. I would appreciate it if you would stop in front of the door.

## E. Substitutuion Drill

1. Camkan uphyenkuk e tillil il i  
issimnita. I have to stop by the post office for a few minutes. ('I have something to stop by the post office for.')
2. Camkan chækpang e tillil il i  
issimnita. I have to stop by a bookstore for a few minutes.
3. Camkan yakpang e tillil il i  
issimnita. I have to stop by the drugstore for a few minutes.
4. Camkan pyəngwən e tillil il i  
issimnita. I have to stop by the hospital for a few minutes.
5. Camkan kyəngchalsə e tillil il i  
issimnita. I have to stop by the police station for a few minutes.
- \*6. Camkan pangsongkuk e tillil il i  
issimnita. I have to stop by the radio station for a few minutes.
7. Camkan kyohwe e tillil il i  
issimnita. I have to stop by the church for a few minutes.
8. Camkan hwesa e tillil il i  
issimnita. I have to stop by the office for a few minutes.
9. Camkan hwesa e kal il i issimnita. I have to go ('something to go for') to the office for a few minutes.
10. Camkan hwesa e hal il i issimnita. I have something to do at the office for a few minutes.
- \*11. Camkan hwesa e pol il i issimnita. I have some business at the office for a few minutes.

## F. Substitution Drill

- |   |                                       |
|---|---------------------------------------|
| 1. Sənsəŋ in tapang esə kitalinın kəs i cohkessimnita.          | You'd better wait at the tearoom.     |
| 2. Sənsəŋ in <u>hakkyo e kanin kəs i cohkessimnita.</u>         | You'd better go to school.            |
| 3. Sənsəŋ in <u>Yəngə lil kalichinın kəs i cohkessimnita.</u>   | You'd better teach English.           |
| 4. Sənsəŋ in <u>cip e issnın kəs i cohkessimnita.</u>           | You'd better stay home.               |
| 5. Sənsəŋ in <u>hyuka lil patnın kəs i cohkessimnita.</u>       | You'd better take a vacation.         |
| 6. Sənsəŋ in <u>com swinın kəs i cohkessimnita.</u>             | You'd better take a little rest.      |
| 7. Sənsəŋ in <u>ki yeca lil mannanın kəs i cohkessimnita.</u>   | You'd better meet her.                |
| 8. Sənsəŋ in <u>Ceimsi eke mulə ponın kəs i cohkessimnita.</u>  | You'd better ask James.               |
| *9. Sənsəŋ in <u>kimantunın kəs i cohkessimnita.</u>            | You'd better stop doing [it].         |
| 10. Sənsəŋ in <u>təhak il kith-nənin kəs i cohkessimnita.</u>   | You'd better finish college.          |
| 11. Sənsəŋ in <u>mence ttenanın kəs i cohkessimnita.</u>        | You'd better leave first (before me). |
| 12. Sənsəŋ in <u>yeki esə nəlinın kəs i cohkessimnita.</u>      | You'd better get off here.            |
| 13. Sənsəŋ in <u>yeki e cha lil seunın kəs i cohkessimnita.</u> | You'd better park [your] car here.    |

## G. Substitution Drill

- |  |                                      |
|--|--------------------------------------|
| 1. (Sənsəŋ in) hakkyo e kaci anhnın kəs i cohkessimnita.               | [You]'d better not go to school.     |
| 2. (Sənsəŋ in) <u>Yəngə lo mal-haci anhnın kəs i cohkessimnita.</u>    | [You]'d better not speak in English. |
| 3. (Sənsəŋ in) <u>ki salam il kitalici anhnın kəs i cohkessimnita.</u> | [You]'d better not wait for him.     |

4. (Sənsəng 1n) k1 yəngwa l1l poci [You]'d better not see the movie.  
ahn1n kəs 1 cohkəssimnita.
5. (Sənsəng 1n) 1 catongcha l1l saci [You]'d better not buy this auto-  
ahn1n kəs 1 cohkəssimnita. mobile.
6. (Sənsəng 1n) on1l tola oci ahn1n [You]'d better not go back today.  
kəs 1 cohkəssimnita.
7. (Sənsəng 1n) yəki esə nəlici ahn1n [You]'d better not get off here.  
kəs 1 cohkəssimnita.
8. (Sənsəng 1n) yəki e cha l1l seuci [You]'d better not park the car  
ahn1n kəs 1 cohkəssimnita. here.
- \*9. (Sənsəng 1n) 1 phyənci l1l ponəci [You]'d better not send this letter.  
ahn1n kəs 1 cohkəssimnita.

## H. Response Drill

Tutor: Hapsing 1l thal kka yo?

'Shall we take a jitney?'

Student: Aniyo, thaci mapsita.

'No, let's not (take).'

1. Kələ kal kka yo?  
'Shall we walk?'Aniyo, kələ kaci mapsita.  
'No, let's not (walk).'

2. Mun aph esə nəlil kka yo?

Aniyo, mun aph esə nəlici mapsita.

3. Hankuk yəngwa l1l pol kka yo?

Aniyo, (Hankuk yəngwa l1l) poci  
mapsita.

4. On1l cip e iss1l kka yo?

Aniyo, cip e issci mapsita.

5. Cəngkəcang esə k1 pun 1l kitalil  
kka yo?Aniyo, (cəngkəcang esə) kitalici  
mapsita.

6. I phyənci l1l puchil kka yo?

Aniyo, puchici mapsita.

7. Kathi tapang e t1llil kka yo?

Aniyo, (tapang e) t1llici mapsita.

8. Uli kot tola ol kka yo?

Aniyo, kot tola oci mapsita.

9. Itta mannal kka yo?

Aniyo, (itta) mannaci mapsita.

10. K1 yəca eke 1 kilim 1l poyə cul  
kka yo?

Aniyo, poyə cuci mapsita.

11. Cikim 1l 1l sicak-hal kka yo?

Aniyo, cikim sicak-haci mapsita.

12. Cokim swil kka yo?

Aniyo, swici mapsita.

## I. Response Drill

Tutor: Hapsing il thal kka yo?

'Shall we take a jitney?'

Student: Aniyō, hapsing il thaci anhnin  
kēs i cohkessimnita.

'No, we'd better not take a jitney.'

1. Tapang e tilla il kka yo?

Aniyō, (tapang e) tilla il anhnin  
kēs i cohkessimnita.

2. Ki yeca l il kital il kka yo?

Aniyō, (ki yeca l il) kital il anhnin  
kēs i cohkessimnita.

3. Sēul e tola kal kka yo?

Aniyō, (Sēul e) tola kaci anhnin  
kēs i cohkessimnita.

4. Ppēs il l thako kal kka yo?

Aniyō, (ppēs il l) thako kaci anhnin  
kēs i cohkessimnita.

5. Taim cuil e hyuka l il pat il kka  
yo?

Aniyō, taim cuil e (hyuka l il) pat il  
anhnin kēs i cohkessimnita.

6. Lætiyo l il tilla il kka yo?

Aniyō, (lætiyo l il) tilla il anhnin  
kēs i cohkessimnita.

7. Hankuk mal il pēul kka yo?

Aniyō, (Hankuk mal il) pēul anhnin  
kēs i cohkessimnita.

## J. Response Drill

Tutor: Cikim hakkyo e ka to cohsimnikka?

'May I go to school now?'

Student: Aniyō, kaci masipsiyo.

'No, please don't go.'

1. Ppyenci l il puchye to cohsimnikka?

Aniyō, puchil masipsiyo.

2. Hapsing il thako ka to cohsimnikka?

Aniyō, thako kaci masipsiyo.

3. Sēsæng e samusil e tilla to  
cohsimnikka?

Aniyō, tilla il masipsiyo.

4. Sicheŋg aph esē nælie to  
cohsimnikka?

Aniyō, (sicheŋg aph esē) nælie to  
masipsiyo.

5. Sēsæng il tapang esē kitalie to  
cohsimnikka?

Aniyō, (na l il) kitalie to  
masipsiyo.

6. Cip e tola ka to cohsimnikka?

Aniyō, tola kaci masipsiyo.

7. Cokim swie to cohsimnikka?

Aniyō, swie to masipsiyo.

8. Cikim ttēna to cohsimnikka?

Aniyō, cikim ttēnaci masipsiyo.

9. Hankuk mal lo mal-hæ to cohsimnikka?

Aniyō, Hankuk mal lo mal-hæ to  
masipsiyo.

10. Kyosil esə khəphi lil masiə to  
cohsimnikka? Aniyo, (kyosil esə khəphi lil)  
masici masipsiyo.
11. Malssim com mulə pwa to cohsimnikka? Aniyo, mulə poci masipsiyo.

## K. Grammar Drill

Tutor: Na nin phyenci lil  
puchikessimnita.

'I'll mail a letter.'

Student: Na to phyenci lil puchiə  
ya hæ yo.

'I have to mail a letter, too.'

1. Na nin kicha lil thakessimnita. Na to kicha lil tha ya hæ yo.
2. Na nin Mikuk Təsakwan e  
tillikessimnita. Na to Mikuk Təsakwan e tillə ya  
hæ yo.
3. Na nin cohin təhakkyo e  
tanikessimnita. Na to cohin təhakkyo e tannie ya  
hæ yo.
4. Na nin Ceimsi lil kitalikessimnita. Na to Ceimsi lil kitalie ya hæ yo.
5. Na nin næil Səul il ttenakessimnita. Na to næil Səul il ttena ya hæ yo.
6. Na nin nal mata Hankuk mal il  
yənsip-hakessimnita. Na to nal mata Hankuk mal il  
yənsip-hæ ya hæ yo.
7. Na nin cənyək e cip e isskessimnita. Na to cənyək e cip e isse ya hæ yo.
8. Na nin khəphi lil masikessimnita. Na to khəphi lil masie ya hæ yo.
9. Na nin wekyokwan i tweekessimnita. Na to wekyokwan i tweə ya hæ yo.
10. Na nin taim cuil e Səul e tola  
okessimnita. Na to taim cuil e Səul e tola wa  
ya hæ yo.

## L. Response Drill

Tutor: Hankuk mal il pəwəsə yo?

'Have you studied Korean?'

Student: Ne, (Hankuk mal il) pəwə  
ya hæssə yo.

'Yes, I had to (study Korean).'

1. Phyenci lil puchiəsə yo? Ne, phyenci lil puchiə ya hæssə yo.
2. Kicha lil thako kassə yo? Ne, kicha lil thako ka ya hæssə yo.
3. Cohin təhakkyo e taniəsə yo? Ne, cohin təhakkyo e taniə ya hæssə  
yo.
4. Mun aph esə næliəsə yo? Ne, mun aph esə nælie ya hæssə yo.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 5. Kim Sənsəng in Səul il ttənasse<br>yo?    | Ne, (Kim Sənsəng in Səul il) ttəna<br>ya həssə yo.    |
| 6. Tosekwān esə Ceimsi lil kitaliessə<br>yo? | Ne, (tosekwān esə Ceimsi lil) kitaliə<br>ya həssə yo. |
| 7. əce Pusan esə tola wassə yo?              | Ne, (əce Pusan esə) tola wa ya<br>həssə yo.           |
| 8. Kī pun in hakkyo sənsəng i tweəsə<br>yo?  | Ne, (kī pun in) hakkyo sənsəng i<br>tweə ya həssə yo. |
| 9. Kī il il əce kkaci kkith-nəssə yo?        | Ne, (kī il il) əce kkaci kkith-nə<br>həssə yo.        |
| 10. Pəlsə hyuka lil patəsə yo?               | Ne, pəlsə hyuka lil patə ya həssə<br>yo.              |

## M. Grammar Drill (based on Grammar Note 2)

Tutor: Sīnə lo kal kka yo?

{ 'Shall I go downtown?'  
'Do you want me to go downtown?'

Student: Sīnə lo ka tilil kka yo?

{ 'Shall I go downtown (for you)?'  
'Would you like me to go downtown  
(for you)?'

- |                                   |                                      |
|-----------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1. Chæk il ilkil kka yo?          | Chæk il ilkə tilil kka yo?           |
| 2. Tapang esə kitalil kka yo?     | Tapang esə kitaliə tilil kka yo?     |
| 3. Khəphi lil sal kka yo?         | Khəphi lil sa tilil kka yo?          |
| 4. I cha lil phal kka yo?         | I cha lil phala tilil kka yo?        |
| 5. Hankuk mal il kalichil kka yo? | Hankuk mal il kalichie tilil kka yo? |
| 6. Kathi cip e issil kka yo?      | Kathi cip e isse tilil kka yo?       |
| 7. Kil il mulə pol kka yo?        | Kil il mulə pwa tilil kka yo?        |
| 8. Kī chæk il chacil kka yo?      | Kī chæk il chacə tilil kka yo?       |
| 9. Yəki esə nəlil kka yo?         | Yəki esə nəlie tilil kka yo?         |
| 10. Kim Sənsəng il mannal kka yo? | Kim Sənsəng il manna tilil kka yo?   |

N. Response Drill

Tutor: Chæk il ilkæ tilikesse yo.

'I will read the book for you.'

Student: Ne, (chæk il) ilkæ cusipsiyo.

'Yes, please read it for me.'

1. Tapang esæ kitaliæ tilikesse yo.

Ne, tapang esæ kitaliæ cusipsiyo.

2. Khæphi lil sa tilikesse yo.

Ne, khæphi lil sa cusipsiyo.

3. Kil il mulæ pwa tilikesse yo.

Ne, kil il mulæ pwa cusipsiyo.

4. K1 chæk il chacæ tilikesse yo.

Ne, k1 chæk il chacæ cusipsiyo.

5. Cip e { isskessæ yo.  
          { issæ tilikesse yo.

Ne, cip e issæ cusipsiyo.

6. Hankuk mal il kalichie tilikesse yo.

Ne, (Hankuk mal il) kalichie cusipsiyo.

7. Wen ccok ilo ka tilikesse yo.

Ne, wen ccok ilo ka cusipsiyo.

8. Mikuk Yængsakwan esæ nælie tilikesse yo.

Ne, Mikuk Yængsakwan esæ nælie cusipsiyo.

9. Onil ohu e samusil e tille tilikesse yo.

Ne, onil ohu e samusil e tille cusipsiyo.

O. Response Drill

Tutor: eti lo ka tilil kka yo?  
          /sicheng ccok/

'Where shall I go?' /the direction of the City Hall/

Student: Sicheng ccok ilo ka cusipsiyo.

'Please go to (the direction of) the City Hall.'

1. eti esæ nælie tilil kka yo?  
          /pækhwacem mun/

Pækhwacem mun esæ nælie cusipsiyo.

2. Muæs il sa tilil kka yo? /khæphi/

Khæphi lil sa cusipsiyo.

3. ence sæsæng e cip e tilil kka yo? /Suyoil/

Suyoil e tille cusipsiyo.

4. eti esæ sæsæng il kitalil kka yo? /tosækwan aph/

Tosækwan aph esæ (na lil) kitaliæ cusipsiyo.

5. eni sinmun il ilkæ tilil kka yo?  
          /Sæul Sinmun/

Sæul Sinmun il ilkæ cusipsiyo.

6. ence kkaci 1 il il kkith-næ tilil kka yo? /mole kkaci/

Mole kkaci 1 il il kkith-næ cusipsiyo.

7. eni mal il kalichie tilil kka yo? /Cungkuk Mal/

Cungkuk Mal il kalichie cusipsiyo.

8. Myech-si e tasi wa tilil kka yo?  
          /tasæs-si/

Tasæs-si e tasi wa cusipsiyo.

## P. Expansion Drill (Use /kəi ta/ in the proper place.)

Tutor: Uphyənkuk e wassimnita.

'[We] have come to the post office.'

Student: Uphyənkuk e kəi ta wassimnita.

'[We] have come to the post office almost.'

1. Haksəng til i Səul esə ttənassimnita.

Haksəng til i Səul esə kəi ta  
ttənassimnita.

2. Onil il i kkith-nassimnita.

Onil il i kəi ta kkith-nassimnita.

3. Hakkyo kal sikan i tweəssimnita.

Hakkyo kal sikan i kəi ta  
tweəssimnita.4. Hankuk mal səsəng til il  
mannassimnita.Hankuk mal Səsəng til il kəi ta  
mannassimnita.

5. Salam til i kicha e thassimnita.

Salam til i kicha e kəi ta  
thassimnita.6. Ceimsi Səsəng in Hankuk mal il  
alə titsimnita.Ceimsi Səsəng in Hankuk mal il kəi  
ta alə titsimnita.

7. Uli nin Səul il kukyəng-həssimnita.

Uli nin Səul il kəi ta kukyəng-  
həssimnita.

8. Ai til i cip e tola wassimnita.

Ai til i cip e kəi ta tola  
wassimnita.

## Q. Response Drill

Tutor: Sinə lo ka tilil kka yo?

'Shall I go downtown (for you)?'

Student: Ne, sinə lo ka cuse yo.

'Yes, please (go downtown for me).'

1. I chæk il ilkə tilil kka yo?

Ne, ilkə cuse yo.

2. Khəphi lil sa tilil kka yo?

Ne, sa cuse yo.

3. Hankuk mal il kalichyə tilil kka  
yo?

Ne, kalichyə cuse yo.

4. Kil il mulə pwa tilil kka yo?

Ne, mulə pwa cuse yo.

5. Yəki esə nəlyə tilil kka yo?

Ne, yəki esə nəlyə cuse yo.

6. Səsəng e cip e tillə tilil kka  
yo?

Ne, tillə cuse yo.

7. Səsəng il kitalyə tilil kka yo?

Ne, kitalyə cuse yo.

8. K1 chæk il chacə tilil kka yo?

Ne, chacə cuse yo.



## R. Response Drill

Tutor: Khəphi lɪl sa tɪlɪl kka yo?

'Shall I buy you coffee?'

Student: (Ne), sa cusimyeŋ  
komapkessimnita.

'I would appreciate [it] if you buy  
me [coffee].'

1. I chæk ɪl ɪlkə tɪlɪl kka yo?

Ne, ɪlkə cusimyeŋ komapkessimnita.

2. Hankuk mal ɪl kalɪchiə tɪlɪl kka  
yo?

Ne, kalɪchiə cusimyeŋ komapkessimnita.

3. Sənsəŋ e cip e tɪllə tɪlɪl kka  
yo?

Ne, tɪllə cusimyeŋ komapkessimnita.

4. Tangsin ɪl kɪtalɪə tɪlɪl kka yo?

Ne, kɪtalɪə cusimyeŋ komapkessimnita.

5. Yənpɪl ɪl chace tɪlɪl kka yo?

Ne, chace cusimyeŋ komapkessimnita.

6. Kɪl ɪl mule pwa tɪlɪl kka yo?

Ne, mule pwa cusimyeŋ komapkessimnita.

7. Cəŋkəcəŋ e kathi ka tɪlɪl kka  
yo?

Ne, kathi ka cusimyeŋ komapkessimnita.

8. Mun ɪl tate tɪlɪl kka yo?

Ne, tate cusimyeŋ komapkessimnita.

9. Mun ɪl yələ tɪlɪl kka yo?

Ne, yələ cusimyeŋ komapkessimnita.

## S. Grammar Drill (based on Grammar Note 3)

Tutor: Hankuk mal ɪl alə ya hamnita.

'I have to know Korean.'

Student: Hankuk mal ɪl alci anhimyeŋ  
an twemnita.

'I have to know Korean. ('If I don't  
know Korean, it does not become.')

1. Kɪcha lɪl thako ka ya hamnita.

Kɪcha lɪl thako kaci anhimyeŋ an  
twemnita.

2. Yəki esə nəliə ya hamnita.

Yəki esə nəlici anhimyeŋ an  
twemnita.

3. Mikuk tæsa lɪl kɪtalɪə ya hamnita.

Mukuk tæsa lɪl kɪtalɪci anhimyeŋ  
an twemnita.

4. Mun aph esə məmchue ya hamnita.

Mun aph esə məmchuci anhimyeŋ an  
twemnita.

5. Mun ɪl tate ya hamnita.

Mun ɪl tateci anhimyeŋ an twemnita.

6. Catongcha mun ɪl yələ ya hamnita.

Catongcha mun ɪl yəlici anhimyeŋ an  
twemnita.

7. Cali e ance ya hamnita.

Cali e ancci anhimyeŋ an twemnita.

8. Phyeŋci lɪl pənə ya hamnita.

Phyeŋci lɪl pənəci anhimyeŋ an  
twemnita.

## T. Response Drill

Tutor: (Sənsəŋ in) Ceimsɪ lɪl kitaliə  
ya hæ yo?

'Do you have to wait for James?'

Student: Ne, Ceimsɪ lɪl kitalici  
anhimyen an twe yo.

'Yes, I have to wait for James.'

1. (Sənsəŋ in) wekuk mal ɪl cal hæ  
ya hæ yo?

Ne, wekuk mal ɪl cal haci anhimyen  
an twe yo.

2. (Sənsəŋ in) kot tola wa ya hæ yo?

Ne, kot tola oci anhimyen an twe yo.

3. Catongcha mun ɪl tate ya hæ yo?

Ne, (catongcha mun ɪl) tatci anhimyen  
an twe yo.

4. Kɪ sacən i coha ya hæ yo?

Ne, kɪ sacən i cohci anhimyen an  
twe yo.

5. Yəki esə Sənsəŋ ɪl kitaliə ya hæ  
yo?

Ne, yəki esə (na lɪl) kitalici  
anhimyen an twe yo.

6. Nəil achim e ttəna ya hæ yo?

Ne, nəil achim e ttənaci anhimyen  
an twe yo.

7. Cha lɪl kil yəph e sewə ya hæ yo?

Ne, (cha lɪl kil yəph e) seuci  
anhimyen an twe yo.

## U. Response Drill

Tutor: Onɪl hakkyo e kaci anhimyen  
an twemnikka?

'Do you have to go to school today?'

Student: Aniyo, (onɪl hakkyo e) kaci  
anhə to kwəchanhə yo.

'No, I don't have to go (to school  
today).' ('Even though I don't go  
to school, it is O.K.')

1. Yəki esə thaci anhimyen an twemnikka?

Aniyo, yəki esə thaci anhə to  
kwəchanhə yo.

2. Pyəngwən e tillici anhimyen an  
twemnikka?

Aniyo, tillici anhə to kwəchanhə  
yo.

3. Kiləhke mal-haci anhimyen an  
twemnikka?

Aniyo, kiləhke mal-haci anhə to  
kwəchanhə yo.

4. ɪyca e ancci anhimyen an twemnikka?

Aniyo, ɪyca e ancci anhə to  
kwəchanhə yo.

5. Inchən kkaci kələ kaci anhimyen an  
twemnikka?

Aniyo, kələ kaci anhə to kwəchanhə  
yo.

6. Təhak kyosu ka tweci anhimyen an  
twemnikka?

Aniyo, təhak kyosu ka tweci anhə to  
kwəchanhə yo.

## V. Combination Drill

Tutor: Hankuk mal il alə ya hamnita.  
Chinku lil mantil su issimnita.

Student: Hankuk mal il alə ya, chinku  
lil mantil su issimnita.

'[You] have to know Korean.' '[You]  
can make friends in Korea.'

'[You] have to know Korean to make  
friends.' ('Only when you know  
Korean you can make friends in  
Korea.')

1. Səul e sale ya hamnita. Yələ kaci  
lil kukyəng-hal su isse yo.
2. Sikan i isse ya hamnita. Sinə e na  
kakesse yo.
3. Cal swiə ya hamnita. Taim nal il-  
hal su isse yo.
4. Ppesi ka əpsə ya hamnita. Kələ se  
il-halə ka yo.
5. Ton i isse ya hamnita. Cha lil  
saci yo.
6. Yəngə lil alə tile ya hamnita. Mal  
i cəmi isse yo.

Səul e sale ya, yələ kaci lil kukyəng-  
hal su isse yo.

Sikan i isse ya, sinə e na kakesse  
yo.

Cal swiə ya, taim nal il-hal su  
isse yo.

Ppesi ka əpsə ya, kələ se il-halə  
ka yo.

Ton i isse ya, cha lil saci yo.

Yəngə lil alə tile ya, mal i cəmi  
isse yo.

## W. Response Drill (the use of nəmu)

Tutor: Səul e kil i pencap-haci yo?

Student: Ne, kilə yo. Nəmu pencap-hæ  
yo.

'The streets in Seoul are crowded,  
aren't they?'

'That's right. [They] are too  
crowded.'

1. Sənsəng in yosə puncuhaci yo?
2. I kyosil i com copci yo?
3. Hankuk mal i əlyəun mal ici yo?
4. Kim Sənsəng i Səul pukin il<sup>mal</sup> cal  
alci yo?
5. Onil achim cəncha ka nilici yo?
6. Səul esə Inchən kkaci kicha ka cacu  
tanici yo?
7. Sənsəng in achim e nicəssi yo?
8. Yosə nin sikan i ppalli kaci yo?

Ne, kilə yo. Nəmu puncuhæ yo.

Ne, kilə yo. Com nəmu copa yo.

Ne, kilə yo. Nəmu əlyəun mal iye  
yo.

Ne, kilə yo. Nəmu cal alə yo.

Ne, kilə yo. Nəmu nilie yo.

Ne, kilə yo. Nəmu cacu tanie yo.

Ne, kilə yo. Nəmu nicəsse yo.

Ne, kilə yo. Nəmu ppalli ka yo.

X. Response Drill (the use of ittā)

Tutor: Cikim ka to cohśimnikka?

'May I go now?'

Student: Aniyo, cikim kaci masipsiyo.  
Com itta kase yo.'No, don't go now. [You'd better]  
go a little later.'

1. Cikim puchiē to cohśimnikka?

Aniyo, cikim puchici masipsiyo.

Com itta puchise yo.

2. Cikim sicak-hæ to cohśimnikka?

Aniyo, cikim sicak-haci masipsiyo.

Com itta sicak-hase yo.

3. Cikim tola wa to cohśimnikka?

Aniyo, cikim tola oci masipsiyo.

com itta tola ose yo.

4. Cikim nælie to cohśimnikka?

Aniyo, cikim nælicici masipsiyo. Com

ittā nælise yo.

5. Cikim yeki esē Sənsəng il kitaliē  
to cohśimnikka?

Aniyo, cikim (na lil) kitalicici

masipsiyo. Com itta kitalise yo.

6. Cikim cha e tha to cohśimnikka?

Aniyo, cikim thacici masipsiyo. Com

ittā thase yo.

7. Cikim mun il yelē to cohśimnikka?

Aniyo, cikim yelcici masipsiyo. Com

ittā yē(li)se yo.

8. Cikim mun il tatē to cohśimnikka?

Aniyo, cikim taticici masipsiyo. Com

ittā tatise yo.

9. Cikim yeki esē nælie tilie to  
cohśimnikka?

Aniyo, cikim nælicie cucici masipsiyo.

Com itta nælicie cuse yo.

Y. Grammar Drill (the use of kot)

Tutor: Tola osipsiyo.

'Come back.'

Student: Kot tola osipsiyo.

'Come back soon.'

1. Cē nin ttənalyēko hamnita.

Cē nin kot ttənalyēko hamnita.

2. Sicak-hanın kəs i cohkessimnita.

Kot sicak-hanın kəs i cohkessimnita.

3. Il il kımantusipsiyo.

Il il kot kımantusipsiyo.

4. Hal su issımyen, ce cip e  
tillısipsiyo.

Hal su issımyen, kot ce cip e

tillısipsiyo.

5. I catongcha nin phalci anhkesse yo.

I catongcha nin kot phalci anhkesse

yo.

6. Hankuk mal kongpu lıl

Hankuk mal kongpu lıl kot

kımantuæssimnita.

kımantuæssimnita.

7. K1 il il kkith-næl su əpsimnita.

K1 il il kot kkith-næl su əpsimnita.

8. Kukce Kikcang esə Mikuk yəngħwa  
lil sangyeng-hal kəs imnita.

Kukce Kikcang esə Mikuk yəngħwa lil  
kot sangyeng-hal kəs imnita.

### Z. Response Drill

Tutor: Kim Sənsəng i onil ttənal kka  
yo?

'Will Mr. Kim leave today (do you  
think)?'

Student: Ne, ama onil ttənal kəs  
imnita.

'Yes, probably [he]'ll leave today.'

Aniyo, ama onil ttənaci anhil  
kəs imnita.

'No, probably [he]'ll not leave  
today.'

1. Pak Sənsəng i cip e issil kka yo?

Ne, ama (cip e) {issil } kəs imnita.  
{kyesil }

Aniyo, ama (cip e) {əpsil  
{an kyesil  
kyesici anhil

kəs imnita.

2. Hakkyo ka mæl kka yo?

Ne, ama mæl kəs imnita.

Aniyo, ama mælci anhil kəs imnita.

3. Nəil nal i cohil kka yo?

Ne, ama cohil kəs imnita.

Aniyo, ama cohci anhil kəs imnita.

4. Ceimsi ka kot tæsa ka twel kka  
yo?

Ne, ama kot (tæsa ka) twel kəs  
imnita.

Aniyo, ama kot (tæsa ka) tweci anhil  
kəs imnita.

5. Onil k1 il i kəi ta kkith-nal  
kka yo?

Ne, ama kəi ta kkith-nal kəs imnita.

Aniyo, ama kəi ta kkith-naci anhil  
kəs imnita.

6. Ki salam i kil e cha lil seul  
kka yo?

Ne, ama seul kəs imnita.

Aniyo, ama seuci anhil kəs imnita.

7. Miss Brown i Hankuk mal il ta  
alə tilil kka yo?

Ne, ama ta alə tilil kəs imnita.

Aniyo, ama ta alə titci anhil kəs  
imnita.

8. Sikan i manhi kəllil kka yo?

Ne, ama (sikan i) manhi kəllil kəs  
imnita.

Aniyo, ama (sikan i) manhi kəllici  
anhil kəs imnita.

## EXERCISES

1. You are in the taxi. Ask the taxi driver to:
- a. go to the airport.
  - b. hurry to the International Broadcasting Station.
  - c. go a little faster.
  - d. go a little slowly /chenchənhi/.
  - e. close the window /chang-mun/ on his left.
  - f. turn /tol-ta/ left at the next corner /kolmok/.
  - g. turn right at the second crossroad /ne-kəli/.
  - h. tell you when you come to the downtown area.
  - i. let you know /allyə cu-ta/ if he sees the fire station.
  - j. park the car across the street /kil kənnə/.
  - k. stop the car at the gate /təmun/ of the playground /utongcang/.
  - l. wait for you for a little while.
  - m. not go too fast.
  - n. not take on other passengers.
  - o. not stop on the street.
  - p. not park on the street.
2. Make short dialogues so that the second party uses the following expressions in his speech:
- |                  |                 |
|------------------|-----------------|
| a. kələ sə       | b. thako kamyən |
| c. com tə ppalli | d. kakkai esə   |
| e. camkan man    | f. pol il       |
| g. tilla il      | h. itta         |
| i. kot           | j. nəmu         |
| k. ama           | l. kəi ta       |
| m. pallsə        | n. acik         |
3. Tell Mr. Smith that you would appreciate it if he would:
- |                              |   |
|------------------------------|---|
| a. show you the dictionary.  | b. teach you Korean.                      |
| c. give you a ride.          | d. drop you off at the door.              |
| e. buy you a cup of coffee.  | f. stop the car.                          |
| g. park his car straight.    | h. wait for you.                          |
| i. mail this letter for you. | j. <u>correct</u> /kochi-ta/ your Korean. |
| k. loan you some money.      | l. send you a book.                       |
| m. let you know the time.    | n. come a little <u>early</u> /ilcciki/.  |
| o. go a little slowly.       |   |

4. Tell the following stories to Pak Sænsæng that:

(a) Messrs. Smith and Kim are going downtown. Mr. Smith wants to stop by a tearoom first. He is not going to meet anyone there, but he'd like to have a cup of coffee. Mr. Kim wants to go downtown first and stop by a tearoom. There are lots of nice tearooms downtown. Even though there are tearooms in this area, they are not so good.

(b) Messrs. Kim and Smith took a taxi and went to the Central Post Office first. They got off near the front door. Mr. Kim had some business to take care of for a while. He had to mail a letter. And it took him a little time. So, Mr. Smith went to the tearoom first and waited there. Mr. Kim came to the tearoom a little later but was not too late.

## 제 12 과      음식

(대화 A)

배

배가 고프니다

1.    부탁운 :    나는 좀 배가 고프니다.

점심

먹으러

점심 먹으러 안 가겠습니까?

점심 시간

되었습니다

시간이 되었습니다

2.    이 :            벌써 점심 시간이 다 되었습니까?

3.    부탁운 :    예, 점심 먹을 시간입니다. 점심 먹으러  
(나) 갑시다.

잡수십니까

4.    이 :            오늘 점심은 무엇을 잡수시겠어요?

한식, 한국 음식

먹어 볼까요

5.    부탁운 :    오늘은 한식을 먹어 볼까요?

아무 것이나

음식점



## UNIT 12. Eating and Drinking

## BASIC DIALOGUES FOR MEMORIZATION

Dialogue ABrown

- |                                 |   |
|---------------------------------|---|
| pæ                              | stomach                                 |
| pæ ka kophimnita                | I'm hungry                              |
| 1. Na nin com pæ ka kophimnita. | I'm a little hungry.                    |
| cæsim                           | lunch                                   |
| mækilæ                          | to eat                                  |
| Cæsim mækilæ an kakessimnikka?  | Wouldn't you like to go to eat (lunch)? |

Lee

- |                           |                                     |
|---------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| cæsim sikan               | lunch hour                          |
| sikan i tweæssimnita      | time is up ('time became')          |
| 2. Pælsæ cæsim sikan i ta | Is it already lunch time? ('Has the |
| tweæssimnikka?            | lunch hour already become?')        |

Brown

- |                                  |                                      |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 3. Ne, cæsim mækil sikan imnita. | Yes, it is (lunch time). ('It's time |
| Cæsim mækilæ (na) kapsita.       | to eat lunch.) Let's go (out) for    |
|                                  | lunch.                               |

Lee

- |                                       |                                     |
|---------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| capsusimnikka                         | do [you] eat (honored)?             |
| 4. Onil cæsim in muæs il capsusikessæ | What will you have for lunch today? |
| yo?                                   |                                     |

Brown

- |                                   |                                 |
|-----------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| Hankuk imsik }<br>Hansik }        | Korean food                     |
| mæke pol kka yo                   | shall we try eating?            |
| 5. Onil in Hansik il mæke pol kka | Shall we try Korean food today? |
| yo?                               |                                 |

6. 이 : 저는 아무 것이나 좋습니다. 어디에 좋은  
음식점이 있어요?
- 가까운 곳, 가까운 메  
한식점
7. 부락은 : 예, 여기에서 가까운 곳에 한식점이 하나  
있습니다.
- 음식
8. 김 : 거기 음식은 어떻습니까?
- 잘 합니다, 잘 만듭니다
9. 부락은 : 예, 거기 음식을 잘 합니다.
- 싸니까  
언제든지
10. 그리고, 음식 값도 싸니까, 언제든지  
사람이 많습니다.
- (대화 B)
- 주문
- 들겠습니다, 드시겠습니까
11. 웨이트레스 : 아직 주문 안 하셨습니까?  
무엇을 드시겠습니까?
- 메뉴
12. 이 : 메뉴를 좀 보여 주세요. 한식은 무엇이 있어요?

Lee

amu kəs (ina)  
imsikcəm

anything; whatever it may be  
restaurant

6. Cə nin amu kəs ina cohsimnita.  
eti e cohın imsikcəm i issə yo?

Anything is O.K. Do you know of a  
good restaurant? ('Is there a good  
restaurant somewhere?')

Brown

kakkaun te }  
kakkaun kos }

some place near

Hansikcəm

Korean restaurant

7. Ne, yeki esə kakkaun kos e  
Hansikcəm i hana issimnita.

Yes, there is a Korean restaurant  
near here. ('At the nearby place  
from here, there's one Korean  
restaurant.')

Lee

imsik

food (cooked)

8. Kəki imsik in ətəhsimnikka?

How is the food there?

Brown

cal hamnita  
cal mantı(11)mnita

([they] do well)  
([they] make well)

9. Ne, kəki imsik il cal hamnita.

Oh, the food is good.

ssani kka  
ənce tinci

because [it]'s cheap  
anytime; all the time

10. Kiliko, imsik kaps to ssani kka,  
ənce tinci salam i manhsimnita.

And because it ('food price') is  
cheap, it is always crowded.

Dialogue B

(..in the restaurant..)

Waitress

cumun  
tilkessimnikka

order

[I] lift; [I] have ('eat;  
drink')

tilkessimnikka }  
ti(11)sikessimnikka }

will you have ('eat; drink')?

11. Acik cumun an hasyessimnikka?  
Mues il tilisikesse yo?

Haven't you ordered, yet? What  
would you like to have, sir?

잡수 시켜면

불고기

곰탕

냉면 등

13. 웨이트레스: 여러 가지가 있습니다. 한식을 잡수 시켜면  
불고기와 곰탕, 그리고 냉면 등이 있습니다.

14. 이 : 선생은 무엇을 하시겠어요?

불고기하고 밥

15. 부락은 : 나는 불고기하고 밥을 먹겠습니다.

해보겠습니다

16. 이 : 저는 곰탕을 해보겠습니다.

또

가져 옵니다

17. 웨이트레스: 다른 것은 또 무엇을 가져 올까요?

목

마릅니다

목이 마릅니다

마실 거

18. 이 : 아, 나는 목이 마릅니다. 마실 것은 무엇이  
있지요?

맥주

사이다

Lee

menyu

menu

12. Menyu (111) com poye cuse yo.  
Hansik in mues i isse yo?

Please let me see the menu. What kinds of Korean food do you have?

Waitress

capsusilyemyen

if you are going to eat

Pul-koki

(a kind of barbecue beef  
(‘fire-meat’))

Komthan

(soup with rice and meat)

Nængmyen ting

(cold noodle) and so on

13. Yelæ kaci ka issimnita. Hansik  
il capsusilyemyen, Pul-koki wa  
Komthang, kiliko, Nængmyen ting  
i issimnita.

We have several kinds. If you're going to have Korean food, there are Pul-koki, Komthang, Nængmyen and other things.

Lee

14. Sænsæng in mues il hasikesse  
yo?

What will you have?

Brown

pap

(cooked) rice; meal

Pul-koki hako pap

Pul-koki and rice

15. Na nin Pul-koki hako pap il  
mekkessimnita.

I'll have Pul-koki and rice.

Lee

16. Cæ nin Komthang il hæ pokessimnita.

I'll try Komthang.

Waitress

tto

also; besides; again

kacæ omnita

[I] bring (thing)

17. Talin kæs (in) tto mues (il)  
kacæ ol kka yo?

Would you like anything else?  
(‘What other things shall I also bring?’)

19. 웨이트레스: 맥주와 사이다가 있습니다.

안주

병

병만

콩

20. 이 : 그럼, 맥주 두 병과 안주트 콩을 좀 가져  
오세요.

Lee

- |                 |  |                                |
|-----------------|--|--------------------------------|
| mok             |  | neck; throat                   |
| malimnita       |  | [it] dries                     |
| mok i malimnita |  | [I]'m thirsty ('throat dries') |
| masil kəs       |  | something to drink             |
18. A, na nin mok i malimnita. Masil kəs in muəs i issci yo? Oh, I'm thirsty. What do you have to drink?

Waitress

- |       |  |                        |
|-------|--|------------------------|
| mækcu |  | beer                   |
| Saita |  | (a kind of soft drink) |
19. Mækcu wa Saita ka issimnita. We have beer and Saita.

Lee

- |           |  |                                     |
|-----------|--|-------------------------------------|
| ancu      |  | relish [taken with wine];<br>snacks |
| pyəng     |  | bottle                              |
| pyəng man |  | bottle only; just bottle            |
| khong     |  | beans                               |
20. Kiləm, mækcu tu pyəng kwa ancu lo khong il com kacə ose yo. Well, bring us just two bottles of beer and some beans for snacks.

## NOTES ON DIALOGUES

(Numbers correspond to the sentence numbers.)

1. Pæ ka kophimnita. ('Stomach is empty.') is the Korean equivalent of 'I'm hungry'. The intransitive verb kophi- may be preceded by pæ 'stomach' as its subject or topic, but never by other nominals.
  
2. Sikan i (ta) tweæssimnita. ('Time (all) became.') is a fixed expression which is used as the equivalent of 'time is up'. The intransitive verb twe-, occurring usually in the past tense form /tweæssimnita/ after a point in time, denotes arriving at a certain point in time, and after a period of time denotes elapsing of a certain period of time. Compare:
 

Han-si ka tweæssimnita.	'It is one o'clock now.'
Han sikan i tweæssimnita.	'It has been an hour.'
  
4. Capsusi- is the honorific or polite equivalent of mæk- 'to eat'.
  
6. Amu 'any-' is a determinative which occurs before (a nominal +) na/ina, making an adverbial phrase: amu kəs ina 'anything', amu salam ina 'anybody', amu imsik ina 'any food', amu ttæ na 'any time', amu nal ina 'any day', amu cip ina 'any house', amu na 'anyone'. The construction amu + Nominal + na/ina = Question Nominal + na/ina (See Grammar Note 4, Unit 10). -cəm is a bound form which occurs as a part of certain place nouns, meaning 'store' or 'shop': sangcəm 'store', pækhwacəm 'department store', imsikcəm 'restaurant', Hansikcəm 'Korean restaurant', etc.
  
7. Both te 'place' and kos 'place' are synonyms and both are post-nouns. However, te occurs only after noun-modifier words, whereas kos occurs after either determinatives or noun-modifier words. Compare Group 1 with Group 2:

GROUP 1

cohin te	'a good place'
pissan te	'an expensive place'
kongpu-hanin te	'the place of studying'
sanin te	'a living place'



GROUP 2

ənɪ kos	'which place'
i kos	'this place'
cə kos	'that place'
kakkaun kos	'the place which is near'
mən kos	'the faraway place'

9. In Kəki ɪmsik ɪl cal hamnita. ('There [they] do food well. '), cal hamnita is the substitute for cal mant(ɪl)ɪmnita. ('[They] make well. ').
11. Tɪ(ɪ)- 'to lift', 'to hold' is either a transitive or an intransitive verb. When the situation is clear, with or without being preceded by the name of food and/or beverage, tɪ(ɪ)- is used as a substitute for mək- 'to eat', or masi- 'to drink'.
13. Tɪŋg 'and so forth', 'etc.' is a post-noun which occurs after two or more nominals. It singles out the preceding nominals to be the subject, the topic or the object for the following inflected expression.
14. (Sənsəŋ ɪn) mʉəs ɪl hasikessə yo? ('What will you do?') in an eating and/or drinking situation is used as a substitute for Mʉəs ɪl məkessə yo? 'What will you eat?' or Mʉəs ɪl masikessə yo? 'What will you drink?'. This is like the English expression, What will you have? Ha- and tɪ(ɪ)- are interchangeably used in such a situation.
17. The principal verb stem kaci- in the phrase kacə o- 'to bring' means 'to possess', 'to have', 'to hold', or 'to take'. Observe the following verb phrases:

kacə o-	=	kaciko o-	'to bring [something]' ('to have and come')
kacə ka-	=	kaciko ka-	'to take away [something]'
talɪə o-	=	taliko o-	'to bring [someone]'
talɪə ka-	=	taliko ka-	'to take [someone]'

18. Mok i malimnita. ('Throat is dry.') is the Korean equivalent of 'I'm thirsty'. The noun mok means either 'throat' or 'neck'. The verb mal- is either an action verb or a description verb, meaning 'to dry' and 'to be dry' respectively.
19. Saita is a kind of soft drink which is commonly used in Korea during warm seasons. The taste of it is similar to that of Seven-ups.

## GRAMMAR NOTES

1. -(1)ni kka 'because...', 'since...'

The inflected form ending in -(1)ni plus kka which may be followed by a pause occurs before another inflected expression. The ending -(1)ni is added to a verb stem, or to a verb stem plus other suffixes: -ni to a stem ending in a vowel and -ini to a stem ending in a consonant. The construction -(1)ni kka denotes the cause or basis of the action or description of the verb in the (1)ni form for the succeeding inflected expressions. Examples:

Cip i kakkauni kka, kələ sə il-halə omnita.	'I come to work on foot because my home is near.'
Ton i əpsini kka, na kaci anhkessə yo.	'Because I don't have money, I won't go out.'
Hankuk mal il mal-hani kka, Hankuk esə il-haki physəlli-hamnita.	'Because I speak Korean, it is very convenient to work in Korea.'

Note: In the above construction kka may be dropped with the same meaning.

2. -(1)lyemyən 'if [you] are going to...', 'if [you] intend to...'

The inflected form ending in -(1)lyemyən which may be followed by a pause denotes the conditional desire or intention of the subject for the future for the following inflected expression. The ending -(1)lyemyən may be added to a verb stem with or without the honorific suffix, but with no tense suffixes.

Examples:

Wekyokwan i twelyemyən, wekuk mal il cal hæ ya hamnita.	'If [you] intend to be a diplomat, [you] have to speak foreign languages.'
Hankuk mal il cal halyemyən, Yəngə lil ssici anhnin kəs i cohkessimnita.	'If [you]'re going to speak Korean well, [you]'d better not use English.'

Mikuk yŏnghwa lil polyŏmyŏn,  
Kukce Kikcang ilo kapsita.

'If you {want } to see American  
{intend}  
movies, let's go to the International  
Theatre.'

Note: -lyemen is added to a vowel stem and -ilyemen to a consonant stem.

### 3. Infinitive + po-

The verb po- preceded by an infinitive without a pause occurs as an auxiliary verb. The construction Infinitive + po- literally means something like 'does something and see', but the denotation of the auxiliary po- is 'try doing something to see the result'. Some verb phrases of this construction have unique meanings and the two verbs (i.e. principal and auxiliary verbs) are inseparable from each other. Thus, each verb phrase of this kind should be memorized as a unit. Examples:

mule po-ta	'inquires'
tola po-ta	'looks back'
hilkŏ po-ta	'steers'
pala po-ta	'looks over' (from the distance)
hŏ po-ta	'tries (doing)'
manŏa po-ta	'tries meeting'
alŏ po-ta	'finds out'
chiŏta po-ta	'looks up to', 'beholds'
ipe po-ta	'tries on (clothes)'
mŏke po-ta	'tries (eating) food'
tilŏ ka po-ta	'goes in to see'

### 4. Particle tinci/itinci

Tinci occurs after a nominal ending in a consonant; itinci after a nominal ending in a vowel. The particle tinci/itinci which is synonymous with na/ina can be interchangeable only in the following two constructions (See (a) and (b) of Grammar Note 4, Unit 10).

- (a) Nominal 1 + tinci/itinci + Nominal 2 = 'N1 or N2', 'either N1 or N2'
- |                    |                            |
|--------------------|----------------------------|
| hakkyo tinci cip   | 'either school or house'   |
| Yŏngŏ tinci Tokilŏ | 'either English or German' |
| onil itinci nŏil   | 'either today or tomorrow' |
- (b) Question Nominal + tinci/itinci = adverbial phrase
- |             |            |
|-------------|------------|
| mues itinci | 'anything' |
| eti tinci   | 'anywhere' |
| ŏnce tinci  | 'any time' |

nuku tinci  
myechil itinci

'anybody'  
'any date'

5. Particle man 'only'

In Unit 9, we noticed the construction -ci man (i.e. the ci form + the Particle man) means '-but'.

A nominal X + man occurs as an adverbial phrase for the following inflected expressions, meaning 'only X' or 'just X'. Examples:

Mækcū tu pyəng man kacə ose yo.

'Bring [us] just two bottles of beer.'

Na nin ki yəca man salang-hamniṭa.

'I love only her.'

Kim Sənsəng in nal mata Yəngə man  
mal-hæ yo.

'Mr. Kim speaks only English every-day.'

Ki nal, Kim in əpsəsko, na man  
Təthongyəng il mannasə yo.

'Kim was not [there] that day, and only I met Mr. President.'

## DRILLS

## A. Substitution Drill

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Cəmsim məkilə an kakessimnikka?            | Wouldn't you like to go to eat lunch?              |
| 2. <u>Sinə küküəng-halə</u> an kakessimnikka? | Wouldn't you like to go to see<br>around downtown? |
| 3. <u>Capci ilkilə</u> an kakessimnikka?      | Wouldn't you like to go to read<br>magazines?      |
| *4. <u>Sanpo-halə</u> an kakessimnikka?       | Wouldn't you like to go to take a<br>walk?         |
| 5. <u>Məəkcü masilə</u> an kakessimnikka?     | Wouldn't you like to go for beer?                  |
| *6. <u>Sicang polə</u> an kakessimnikka?      | Wouldn't you like to go for food<br>shopping?      |
| 7. <u>Yənghwa polə</u> an kakessimnikka?      | Wouldn't you like to go to see a<br>movie?         |
| *8. <u>Chum chulə</u> an kakessimnikka?       | Wouldn't you like to go for dancing?               |

## B. Substitution Drill

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. *Cəmsim məkil sikan i ta<br>tweəssimnita.            | It's time for lunch now. ('Lunch<br>time is all up.') |
| 2. <u>Hakkyo kal sikan i ta</u> tweəssimnita.           | It's time to go to school now.                        |
| 3. <u>Kongpu-hal sikan i ta</u> tweəssimnita.           | It's time for studying now.                           |
| 4. <u>Kicha thal sikan i ta</u> tweəssimnita.           | It's time to get on the train now.                    |
| 5. <u>Tənəl sikan i ta</u> tweəssimnita.                | It's time to leave now.                               |
| 6. <u>Sicak-hal sikan i ta</u> tweəssimnita.            | It's time to begin now.                               |
| 7. <u>Ppəsi ka tahl sikan i ta</u><br>tweəssimnita.     | It's time for bus to arrive now.                      |
| 8. <u>Swil sikan i ta</u> tweəssimnita.                 | It's time to take a break ('rest')<br>now.            |
| 9. <u>(Cam) cal sikan i ta</u> tweəssimnita.            | It's time to go to bed now.                           |
| 10. <u>Kimantul sikan i ta</u> tweəssimnita.            | It's time to quit [it] now.                           |
| *11. <u>Ilənəl sikan i ta</u> tweəssimnita.             | It's time to get up now.                              |
| *12. <u>Il i kkith-nal sikan i ta</u><br>tweəssimnita.  | It's time to end the work.                            |
| *13. <u>Sicang polə kal sikan i ta</u><br>tweəssimnita. | It's time to go for food shopping.                    |

## C. Substitution Drill

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. Cəmsim in muəs il capsusikessə yo?                      | What will you have for lunch?                      |
| *2. <u>Achim</u> in muəs il capsusikessə yo?               | What will you have for breakfast?                  |
| *3. <u>Cənyək</u> in muəs il capsusikessə yo?              | What will you have for supper?                     |
| *4. <u>Achim siksa</u> nin muəs il capsusikessə yo?        | What will you have for breakfast ('morning meal')? |
| *5. <u>Cəyək siksa</u> nin muəs il capsusikessə yo?        | What will you have for dinner ('evening meal')?    |
| 6. <u>Onil cəmsim</u> in muəs il capsusikessə yo?          | What will you have for lunch today?                |
| 7. Onil cəmsim in <u>musin imsik</u> il capsusikessə yo?   | What kind of food will you have for lunch today?   |
| 8. Onil cəmsin in <u>Cungkuk imsik</u> il capsusikessə yo? | Will you have Chinese food for lunch today?        |
| *9. Onil cəmsim in <u>Yangsik</u> il capsusikessə yo?      | Will you have Western food for lunch today?        |
| *10. Onil cəmsim in <u>Wəsik</u> il capsusikessə yo?       | Will you have Japanese food for lunch today?       |
| 11. Onil cəmsim in <u>Hənsik</u> il capsusikessə yo?       | Will you have Korean food for lunch today?         |

## D. Grammar Drill (based on Grammar Note 3)

Tutor: Hənsik il məkıl kka yo?

'Shall we eat Korean food?'

Student: Hənsik il məkə pol kka yo?

'Shall we try (eating) Korean food?'

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. Hakkyo e kal kka yo?                     | Hakkyo e ka pol kka yo?                     |
| 2. Il il sicak-hal kka yo?                  | Il il sicak-hæ pol kka yo?                  |
| 3. Wekuk mal il pəul kka yo?                | Wekuk mal il pəwə pol kka yo?               |
| 4. Kicha lil thal kka yo?                   | Kicha lil tha pol kka yo?                   |
| 5. Məkcu lil masil kka yo?                  | Məkcu lil masiə pol kka yo?                 |
| 6. Samusil e tillil kka yo?                 | Samusil e tillə pol kka yo?                 |
| 7. Komthang il hal kka yo?                  | Komthang il hæ pol kka yo?                  |
| 8. Hankuk mal il yənsıp-hal kka yo?         | Hankuk mal il yənsıp-hæ pol kka yo?         |
| 9. Mun aph esə nəlil kka yo?                | Mun aph esə nəliə pol kka yo?               |
| 10. Tapang esə kıl salam il kitalil kka yo? | Tapang esə kıl salam il kitaliə pol kka yo? |

## E. Response Drill (based on Grammar Note 3)

Tutor: Hansik il məkə pol kka yo?

'Shall we try Korean food?'

Student: Ne, Hansik il məkə popsita.

'Yes, let's try (Korean food).'

1. Hakkyo e tilla pol kka yo?
2. Kyosil e tilə ka pol kka yo?
3. Cikim sicak-hæ pol kka yo?
4. Yəki esə Kim Sənsəng il kitaliə  
pol kka yo?
5. Mun aph esə næliə pol kka yo?
6. Hankuk mal lo mal-hæ pol kka yo?
7. Hankuk məkcu lil masiə pol kka yo?

Ne, hakkyo e tilla popsita.  
 Ne, kyosil e tilə ka popsita.  
 Ne, cikim sicak-hæ popsita.  
 Ne, Yəki esə kitaliə popsita.  
 Ne, mun aph esə næliə popsita.  
 Ne, Hankuk mal lo mal-hæ popsita.  
 Ne, Hankuk məkcu lil masiə popsita.

## F. Substitution Drill

- |   |                             |
|---|-----------------------------|
| 1. Amu kəs ina cohsmnita.                                       | Anything is O.K.            |
| 2. <u>Mues</u> ina cohsmnita.                                   | Anything is O.K.            |
| 3. <u>Amu salam</u> ina cohsmnita.                              | Anyone is O.K.              |
| 4. <u>əti na</u> cohsmnita.                                     | Any place is O.K.           |
| 5. <u>Nuku na</u> cohsmnita.                                    | Anybody is O.K.             |
| 6. <u>Amu haksəng</u> ina cohsmnita.                            | Any student is O.K.         |
| 7. <u>Amu</u> { <u>te na</u> } cohsmnita.<br>{ <u>kos ina</u> } | Any place is O.K.           |
| 8. <u>Amu kıkəng</u> ina cohsmnita.                             | Any theatre is O.K.         |
| *9. <u>Amu ttə</u> na cohsmnita.                                | Any time is O.K.            |
| 10. <u>ənce na</u> cohsmnita.                                   | Any time is O.K.            |
| 11. <u>əni nal</u> ina cohsmnita.                               | Any day is O.K.             |
| 12. <u>Musin yoil</u> ina cohsmnita.                            | Any day of the week is O.K. |
| 13. <u>Amu lmsik</u> ina cohsmnita.                             | Any kind of food is O.K.    |
| *14. <u>əni cumal</u> ina cohsmnita.                            | Any weekend is O.K.         |

## G. Substitution Drill

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. Menu (111) com poye cusipsiyo.                    | Please show me the menu.                       |
| 2. <u>Ki kilim</u> (11) com poye cusipsiyo.          | Please show me that picture.                   |
| 3. <u>Nolan syassi</u> (111) com poye cusipsiyo.     | Please show me a yellow shirt.                 |
| 4. <u>Kkaman yangpok</u> (11) com poye<br>cusipsiyo. | Please show me the black suit.                 |
| 5. <u>Phalan suken</u> (11) com poye<br>cusipsiyo.   | Please show me a blue towel.                   |
| 6. <u>Hayan conggi</u> (111) com poye<br>cusipsiyo.  | Please show me the white paper.                |
| 7. <u>Han-Yeng sacen</u> (11) com poye<br>cusipsiyo. | Please show me a Korean-English<br>dictionary. |
| 8. <u>Menu</u> (111) com poye cusipsiyo.             | Please show me the menu.                       |
| 9. Menu (111) com <u>kace osipsiyo</u> .             | Please bring [me] the menu.                    |
| 10. Menu (111) com <u>kace kasipsiyo</u> .           | Please take (away) the menu.                   |

## H. Substitution Drill

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. Na nin <del>mæ</del> kcū l1l masiko siphsimnita.        | I'd like to drink beer.   |
| 2. Na nin <u>saita</u> l1l masiko siphsimnita.             | I'd like to drink saita.  |
| 3. Na nin <u>mul</u> 1l masiko siphsimnita.                | I'd like to drink water.  |
| 4. Na nin <u>khæphi</u> l1l masiko<br>siphsimnita.         | I'd like (to drink) coffee.   |
| 5. Na nin <u>khokhoa</u> l1l masiko<br>siphsimnita.        | I'd like (to drink) cocoa.  |
| 6. Na nin <u>cha</u> l1l masiko siphsimnita.               | I'd like (to drink) tea (green).  |
| *7. Na nin <u>hongcha</u> l1l masiko<br>siphsimnita.       | I'd like (to drink) tea (black).  |
| *8. Na nin <u>chan mul</u> 1l masiko siphsimnita.          | I'd like (to drink) cold water.   |
| *9. Na nin <u>elim mul</u> 1l masiko siphsimnita.          | I'd like to drink ice water.  |
| *10. Na nin <u>khokhakholla</u> l1l masiko<br>siphsimnita. | I'd like to drink coca cola.  |
| *11. Na nin <u>uyu</u> l1l masiko siphsimnita.             | I'd like to drink milk.   |
| *12. Na nin <u>sul</u> 1l masiko siphsimnita.              | I'd like to have (some) $\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{wine} \\ \text{liquor} \end{array} \right\}$ . |



## I. Grammar Drill (Make one sentence out of two as in the example.)

- Tutor: Hakkyo ka mæmnita. Catongcha lo kamnita. 'The school is far. I go by car.'
- Student: Hakkyo ka mæni kka, catongcha lo kamnita. 'Because the school is far, I go by car.'
- I siktang e nin imsik kaps i ssamnita. Salam i manhsimnita. I siktang e nin imsik kaps i ssani kka, salam i manhsimnita.
  - Hankuk e kamnita. Hankuk mal il pæwæ ya hamnita. Hankuk e kani kka, Hankuk mal il pæwæ ya hamnita.
  - Yeki e siktang i æpsimnita. Sinæ kkaci kamnita. Yeki e siktang i æpsini kka, sinæ kkaci kamnita.
  - Mok i malimnita. Mækcū līl masikessimnita. Mok i malini kka, mækcū līl masikessimnita.
  - Cæmsim sikan i ta twemnita. Na nin pæ ka kophimnita. Cæmsim sikan i ta tweni kka, na nin pæ ka kophimnita.
  - Na nin Hansik il cohahamnita. Hansikcæm e kakessimnita. Na nin Hansik il cohahani kka, Hansikcæm e kakessimnita.
  - Ppæsi ka manhci anhsimnita. Nil salam i manhsimnita. Ppæsi ka manhci anhini kka, nil salam i manhsimnita.
  - Samusil i cip esæ kakkapsimnita. Kim Sænsæng in kælæ sæ tanimnita. Samusil i cip esæ kakkauini kka, Kim Sænsæng in kælæ sæ tanimnita.
  - Hankuk mal il amnita. Hankuk salam kwa il-haki cæmi issimnita. Hankuk mal il ani kka, Hankuk salam kwa il-haki cæmi issimnita.

## J. Response Drill

- Tutor: Wæ catongcha lo kamnikka? /Hakkyo ka mæmnita./ 'Why do you go by car?' /School is is far./
- Student: Hakkyo ka mæni kka, catongcha lo kamnita. 'Because the school's far, I go by car.'
- Wæ Hankuk mal il pæumnikka? /Hankuk e kamnita./ Hankuk e kani kka, Hankuk mal il pæumnita.
  - Wæ nal mata Sæul Tæhakkyo e na kamnikka? /Yængæ līl kalichimnita./ Yængæ līl kalichini kka, nal mata Sæul Tæhakkyo e na kamnita.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <p>3. Wæ yetelp-si pan kkaci samusil e wa ya hamnikka. /Yetelp-si pan e il i sicak-hamnita./</p> <p>4. Wæ æce nin swiæssimnikka? /Mom i aphæssimnita./</p> <p>5. Wæ Hankuk mal kongpu-haki e kilêhke sikan i kèllimnikka? /Hankuk mal i ælyepsimnita./</p> <p>6. Wæ kèlê sê hakkyo e tanimnikka? /Cip esê mælci anhsimnita./</p> <p>7. Wæ kilêhke puncuhamnikka? /Yosæ nin hal il i manhsimnita./</p> <p>8. Wæ kilêhke pæ ka kophimnikka? /Achim il mækci anhæssimnita./</p> <p>9. Wæ ki salam cip e tillê ya hamnikka? /Na lil kitaliko issimnita./</p> | <p>Yetelp-si pan e il i sicak-hani kka, yetelp-si pan kkaci wa ya hamnita.</p> <p>Mom i aphæssini kka, æce nin swiæssimnita.</p> <p>Hankuk mal i ælyeuni kka, kongpu-haki e kilêhke sikan kèllimnita.</p> <p>Cip esê mælci anhini kka, kèlê sê hakkyo e tanimnita.</p> <p>Yosæ nin hal il i manhini kka, kilêhke puncuhamnita.</p> <p>Achim il mækci anhæssini kka, kilêhke pæ ka kophimnita.</p> <p>Na lil kitaliko issini kka, ki salam cip e tillê ya hamnita.</p> |
|--|---|

K. Completion Exercise (Complete the sentence using the given expression based on your own experiences.)

Tutor: Na nin Hankuk e kani kka,...

'Because I go to Korea...'

Student: Na nin Hankuk e kani kka,  
Hankuk mal il kongpu-hamnita.

'Because I go to Korea I'm studying Korean.'

1. Hankuk mal in Yenge wa talini kka,
2. Hankuk mal il cal mal-haci mot hani kka,
3. Na nin mok i malini kka,
4. Cæmsim sikan i tweæssini kka,
5. Hakkyo kal sikan i nicæssini kka,
6. Hapsing i ceil phyëllihani kka,
7. Na nin Yenge lil alê tilil su issini kka,
8. Na nin mom i aphæssini kka,
9. Sêul il kukyeng-hako siphini kka,
10. Taim tal e Mikuk e tola kani kka,

## L. Response Exercise (Answer the questions based on the reality.)

Tutor: Wæ Hankuk mal il kongpu-hase  
yo?

'Why do you study Korean?'

Student: Hankuk e kani kka, Hankuk mal  
il Kongpu-hæ yo.

'Because I go to Korea, (I'm studying Korean).'

1. Wæ kælæ sæ hakkyo e tanise yo?
2. Wæ Hankuk mal i kilæhke ælyæwæ yo?
3. Wæ yosæ kilækhe pappise yo?
4. Wæ Hankuk yænghwa lil poko siphise yo?
5. Wæ Mikuk Tæsakwan e tillæ ya hæ yo?
6. Wæ Thoyoil mata sicang e kase yo?
7. Wæ cip esæ hakkyo kkaci sikan i manhi kællæ yo?
8. Wæ æce nin cip esæ swiæsse yo?
9. Wæ Hankuk mal i philyo-hase yo?

## M. Completion Exercise

Tutor: Hankuk e kalyemyen,

'If [you]'re going to go to Korea,.'

Student: Hankuk e kalyemyen, Hankuk  
mal il pæwæ ya hamnita.

'If [you]'re going to go to Korea,  
[you] have to learn Korean.'

1. Hansik il capsusilyemyen,
2. Cæ lil kitalilyemyen,
3. Catongcha lil phallyemyen,
4. Mikuk yænghwa lil polyemyen,
5. Hakkyo e ppæsi lo kalyemyen,
6. Kil il mulæ polyemyen,
7. Mækcû lil masilyemyen,
8. Chinku lil mannalyemyen,
9. Hankuk e olæ tongan issilyemyen,
10. Mikuk e tola kalyemyen,

## N. Expansion Drill

Tutor: Pul-koki wa Komthang, Nøngmyøn  
i issimnita.

'We have Pul-koki, Komthang and  
Nøngmyøn.'

Student: Pul-koki wa Komthang, kiliko,  
Nøngmyøn ting i issimnita.

'We have Pul-koki, Komthang and  
Nøngmyøn and others (so forth).'

1. Yøngø wa Pullansø mal, Tokil mal  
il kalichimnita.
2. Yøki esø moca wa kutu, yangpok il  
phamnita.
3. Ppəsı wa cəncha, hapsing i tanimnita.
4. Hansikcəm kwa Yangsikcəm, Cungkuk  
siktang il pol su issimnita.
5. Pækhwacəm kwa pakmulkwan, sicang il  
kukyøng-hako siphsimnita.
6. Mannyønphil kwa congı, khal il  
sassimnita.
7. Cip kaps kwa mulkən kaps, imsik kaps  
il alə ya hakessimnita.

- Yøngø wa Pullansø mal, kiliko, Tokil  
mal ting il kalichimnita.
- Yøki esø moca wa kutu, kiliko,  
yangpok ting il phamnita.
- Ppəsı wa cəncha, kiliko, hapsing  
ting i tanimnita.
- Hansikcəm kwa Yangsikcəm, kiliko,  
Cungkuk siktang ting il pol su  
issimnita.
- Pækhwacəm kwa pakmulkwan, kiliko,  
sicang ting il kukyøng-hako  
siphsimnita.
- Mannyønphil kwa congı, kiliko, khal  
ting il sassimnita.
- Cip kaps kwa mulkən kaps, kiliko,  
imsik kaps ting il alə ya  
hakessimnita.

## O. Grammar Drill

Tutor: Hankuk mal il pæuko siphimyøn,  
hakkyo e tanisipsiyo.

'If you want to learn Korean,  
(please) go to school.'

Student: Hankuk mal il pæulyemyøn,  
hakkyo e tanisipsiyo.

'If you're going to learn Korean  
(please) go to school.'

1. Hansik il məkko siphimyøn, Hansikcəm  
e kasipsiyo.
2. Mikuk moca lıl sako siphimyøn,  
pækhwacəm e tillisipsiyo.
3. Hankuk sinmun il ilkko siphimyøn,  
il nyøn tongan ilkki lıl pæwə ya  
hamnita.

- Hansik il məkilyemhən, Hansikcəm  
e kasipsiyo.
- Mikuk moca lıl salyemyøn, pækhwacəm  
e tillisipsiyo.
- Hankuk sinmun il ilkilyemyøn, il  
nyøn tongan ilkki lıl pæwə ya  
hamnita.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 4. Səul kanın kicha lil thako siphimyen, han-si kkaci yək e kasipsiyo. | Səul kanın kicha lil thalyemyen, han-si kkaci yək e kasipsiyo. |
| 5. Təsakwan aph esə næliko siphimyen, mence mal-hasipsiyo.             | Təsakwan aph esə nælilyemyen, mence mal-hasipsiyo.             |
| 6. Catongcha lil phalko siphimyen, cə eke com poyə cusipsiyo.          | Catongcha lil phallyemyen, cə eke com poyə cusipsiyo.          |
| 7. Hyuka lil patko siphimyen, taim tal e patisipsiyo.                  | Hyuka lil patilyemyen, taim tal e patisipsiyo.                 |
| 8. Təhak kyosu ka tweko siphimyen, kongpu lil manhi hæ ya hamnita.     | Təhak kyosu ka twelyemyen, kongpu lil manhi pæ ya hamnita.     |
| 9. Kil il mule poko siphimyen, catongcha esə nælisipsiyo.              | Kil il mule polyemyen, catongcha esə nælisipsiyo.              |
| 10. Na lil kitaliko siphimyen, tapang e issisipsiyo.                   | Na lil kitalilyemyen, tapang e issisipsiyo.                    |

## P. Grammar Drill

Tutor: Hankuk mal il pæukesse yo?  
Hakkyo e tanisipsiyo.

'Will you study Korean? Go to  
(or attend) school.'

Student: Hankuk mal il pæulyemyen,  
hakkyo e tanisipsiyo.

'If you intend (or are going) to  
study Korean, go to school.'

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. Hansik il capsusikesse yo?<br>Pul-koki ka issimnita.       | Hansik il capsusilyemyen, Pul-koki ka issimnita.          |
| 2. Hankuk e kakesse yo? Mal il pæwə ya hamnita.               | Hankuk e kalyemyen, mal il pæwə ya hamnita.               |
| 3. Tapang e tillikesse yo? Na wa kathi kapsita.               | Tapang e tillilyemyen, na wa kathi kapsita.               |
| 4. Yənghwa lil pokesse yo? Kukce Kikcang i cohsimnita.        | Yənghwa lil polyemyen, Kukce Kikcang i cohsimnita.        |
| 5. Mækcū lil masikesse yo? Tapang e kaci masipsiyo.           | Mækcū lil masilyemyen, tapang e kaci masipsiyo.           |
| 6. Wekyokwan i twekesse yo? Yələ nala mal il pæwə ya hamnita. | Wekyokwan i twelyemyen, yələ nala mal il pæwə ya hamnita. |
| 7. Kil il mule pokesse yo? Catongcha esə nælisipsiyo.         | Kil il mule polyemyen, catongcha esə nælisipsiyo.         |
| 8. Mikuk yangpok il sakesse yo? Pækhwacəm e manhi isse yo.    | Mikuk yangpok il salyemyen, pækhwacəm e manhi isse yo.    |

## EXERCISES

A. Tell Mr. Lee that:

1. You are hungry.
2. It is time to eat lunch; time to go to bed; time to get up.
3. It has already been two hours.
4. Any food is O.K. with you.
5. You would like to try Chinese food.
6. You are thirsty.
7. The food at the nearby restaurant is very good.
8. They serve Pul-koki, Nængmyæn, Komthang, and so forth.
9. You have not ordered (food) yet.
10. You haven't had breakfast (or supper) yet.
11. It's time to go for food shopping.

B. Order from the waitress the following:

1. two bottles of beer
2. Pulkoki for two people /tu salam pun/
3. three cups of coffee afterward
4. one glass of cold water and one ice tea
5. milk for the baby
6. Chinese food
7. Japanese food
8. Komthang for only one person /han salam pun man/

C. Make short dialogues so that the second party responds using the following phrases:

- |                     |             |                     |                       |
|---------------------|-------------|---------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. mues itinci      | 'anything'  | 7. amu yoil itinci  | 'any day of the week' |
| 2. eti tinci        | 'any place' | 8. eni cumal itinci | 'any weekend'         |
| 3. ence tinci       | 'any time'  | 9. amu kos itinci   | 'any place'           |
| 4. nuku tinci       | 'anybody'   | 10. amu nal itinci  | 'any day'             |
| 5. myechil itinci   | 'any date'  | 11. amu ttæ tinci   | 'any time'            |
| 6. amu imsik itinci | 'any food'  | 12. amu te tinci    | 'any place'           |

D. Jones Sænsæng explains the reasons when you ask him:

1. Why he is studying Korean.
2. Why he hasn't had breakfast yet.
3. Why the nearby restaurant is always crowded.
4. Why he is busy all the time.
5. Why he didn't come to school yesterday.
6. Why he has to speak Korean.
7. Why he's going to sell his car.
8. Why the traffic is so thick.
9. Why he joined the foreign service.
10. Why he wants to take a vacation.
11. Why he intends to walk.
12. Why he doesn't take the bus.
13. Why he doesn't take his wife to the movies.
14. Why he tries to find out Mr. Kim's telephone number /cænhwa pænhc/.
15. Why he doesn't want to try Korean food.

## 제 13 과 음식 (계속)

자

1. 부탁운 : 자, 어서 드십시오.

시작합니다

2. 이 : 예, 같이 시작합니다.

소금

고추

고추 가루

저에게

3. 부탁운 : 거기 소금과 고추 가루 좀 저에게 주시겠습니까?

4. 이 : 예, 여기 있습니다. 나도 소금이 좀 필요합니다.

맛

5. 부탁운 : 곱탕 맛이 어떻습니까?

6. 이 : 맛(이) 있습니다. 선생의 불고기기는요?

맛은 좋으나

고기가 질겁니다

7. 부탁운 : 맛은 좋으나, 고기가 좀 질겁니다.

맵습니다

매운 음식

8. 이 : 선생은 매운 음식이 좋습니까?



## UNIT 13. Eating and Drinking (Continued)

## BASIC DIALOGUE FOR MEMORIZATION

- Brown
- ca well; now  
1. Ca, əsə tɪ(ɫ)ɪsɪpsɪyo. (Now) Please help yourself.
- Lee
- sɪcək-hapsɪtə let's start  
2. Ne, kathi sɪcək-hapsɪtə. Thank you. ('Let's begin together.')
- Brown
- sokɪm salt  
kochu red pepper  
kochu kalu (pepper powder)  
cə eke to me  
3. Kəki sokɪm kwa kochu kalu com May I have the salt and pepper,  
cə eke cusɪkessɪmnikka? please? ('Will you give me the  
salt and red pepper there?')
- Lee
4. Ne, yəki ɪssɪmnɪtə. Na to sokɪm Here you are! I need a little salt,  
ɪ com phɪlyo-hamnɪtə. too.
- Brown
- mas taste  
5. Komthang mas ɪ əttəhsɪmnikka? How does the Komthang taste?
- Lee
6. Mas ɪ ɪssɪmnɪtə. Sənsəŋg e It tastes good. ('Taste exists.')
- Pul-koki nɪn yo? And how about your Pul-koki?
- Brown
- cohɪnə [ɪt]'s good but...  
mas ɪn cohɪnə it's tasty but...  
koki ka cɪlkɪmnɪtə the meat is tough  
7. Mas ɪn cohɪnə, koki ka com It's tasty but the meat is a little  
cɪlkɪmnɪtə. tough.

9.   부탁운 :                   싫어합니다  
                  예, 그리 싫어하지 않습니다.
10.   이 :                       먹은 일, 먹어 본 일, 먹어 본 적  
                                  먹어 본 일(적)이 있습니다  
                  선생은 중국 음식을 먹어 본 일이 있습니까?
11.   부탁운 :                   예, 여러 번 먹어 본 적이 있습니다.
12.   이 :                       아, 그래요? 어디에서요?
13.   부탁운 :                   미국 에도 중국 음식점이 많습니다.
14.   이 :                       양식  
                                  별토  
                                  별토 먹지 않았습니다  
                  나도 중국 음식은 많이 먹었지만, 양식은 별로  
                                  많이 먹지 않았습니다.
15.   부탁운 :                   양식 집  
                  그럼, 내일은 양식 집에 갑시다.
16.   이 :                       있는지  
                                  있는지 아십니까  
                  그거, 좋습니다. 양식점이 어디에 있는지  
                                  아십니까?

Lee

- mæpsimnita (food) is spicy  
 mæun imsik spicy (hot) food
8. Sænsæng in mæun imsik'i cohsimnikka? Do you like spicy food? ('Is spicy food good for you?')

Brown

- silhæhamnita [I] dislike
9. Ne, kilil silhæhaci anhsimnita. It's all right. ('I don't dislike it so much.')

Lee

- mæklŋ il } ('the experience of eating')  
 mæke pon il }  
 mæke pon cæk }  
 mæke pon il i issimnita [I] have an experience of eating
10. Sænsæng in Cungkuk imsik il Have you ever eaten Chinese food?  
 mæke pon il i issimnikka?

Brown

11. Ne, yelæ pen mæke pon cæk i Yes, I have (eaten) many times.  
 issimnita.

Lee

12. A, kilæ yo? eti esæ yo? Oh, you have? Where?

Brown

13. Mikuk e to Cungkuk imsikcæm i There are many Chinese restaurants  
 manhsimnita. in the U.S., too.

Lee

- Yangsik Western food  
 pyello not particularly; not so much  
 pyello mækci anhæssimnita [I] didn't eat so much
14. Na to Cungkuk imsik in manhi I also have eaten Chinese food a  
 mækæssci man, Yangsik in pyello lot but I haven't had much  
 manhi mækci anhæssimnita. Western food.

17. 부탁은 : 예, 압니다.

어느 곳

몰라드

이 부근에

18. 어느 곳이 더 좋은지 몰라드, 이 부근에  
두 개 있습니다.

Brown

15. Kıləm, nəıl in Yangsik cip e kapsita.

Let's go to a Western restaurant tomorrow, then.

Lee

- issnın ci/innıncı/  
issnın ci asimnikka  
eti e issnın ci asimnikka  
16. Kı kəs, cohsımnıta. Yangsikcəm i  
eti e issnın ci asimnikka?

if there is; that there is  
do [you] know if there is?  
do [you] know where [it] is?  
Fine. Do you know where there is a  
Western restaurant?

Brown

17. Ne, amnıta.

Yes, I do (know).

ənı kos  
molla to  
i pukın e

which place  
even though [I] do not know  
in this vicinity

18. ənı kos i te cohın ci molla to,  
i pukın e tu kə issımnıta.

There are two in this area but I  
don't know which one is better.  
(!Even though I don't know which  
place is better, there are two in  
this vicinity.!)

## ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY AND PHRASES

- |                                  |                           |
|----------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. a. Mom i aphımnıta.           | I'm sick. (!Body hurts.!) |
| b. <u>əlku</u> l i aphımnıta.    | My face hurts.            |
| c. <u>Nun</u> i aphımnıta.       | My eyes hurt.             |
| d. <u>Ppyam</u> i aphımnıta.     | My cheek hurts.           |
| e. <u>Son</u> i aphımnıta.       | My hand hurts.            |
| f. <u>Son-kalak</u> i aphımnıta. | My finger aches.          |
| g. <u>Pal</u> i aphımnıta.       | My foot hurts.            |
| h. <u>Pal-kalak</u> i aphımnıta. | My toes are aching.       |
| i. <u>Talı</u> ka aphımnıta.     | My leg hurts.             |
| j. <u>Phal</u> i aphımnıta.      | My arm hurts.             |
| k. <u>əkkə</u> ka aphımnıta.     | My shoulder hurts.        |
| l. <u>Ip</u> i aphımnıta.        | My mouth is sore.         |
| m. <u>Mok</u> i aphımnıta.       | I have a sore throat.     |
| n. <u>Thek</u> i aphımnıta.      | My chin hurts.            |

## Additional Vocabulary and Phrases

- A.
1. 몸이 아픉니다.
  2. 얼굴이 아픉니다.
  3. 눈이 아픉니다.
  4. 뺨이 아픉니다.
  5. 손이 아픉니다.
  6. 손가락이 아픉니다.
  7. 발이 아픉니다.
  8. 발가락이 아픉니다.
  9. 다리가 아픉니다.
  10. 팔이 아픉니다.
  11. 어깨가 아픉니다.
  12. 입이 아픉니다.
  13. 목이 아픉니다.
  14. 턱이 아픉니다.
  15. 머리가 아픉니다.
  16. 가슴이 아픉니다.
  17. 귀가 아픉니다.
  18. 코가 아픉니다.
  19. 이(뺨)가/이 아픉니다.
  20. 등이 아픉니다.
  21. 허리가 아픉니다.
- B.
1. 소금이 좀 필요합니다.
  2. 설탕이 좀 필요합니다.
  3. (간)장이 좀 필요합니다.
  4. 양념이 좀 필요합니다.
  5. 물이 좀 필요합니다.

- o. Məli ka aphimnita. I have a headache.
- p. Kasim i aphimnita. I have a pain on my chest.
- q. Kwi ka aphimnita. My ear aches.
- r. Kho ka aphimnita. My nose hurts.
- s. I ka } aphimnita.  
Ippal i }
- t. Ting i aphimnita. My teeth ache.
- u. Həli ka aphimnita. I have a backache.  
My waist aches.
2. a. Sokim i com philyo-hamnita. I need some salt.
- b. Səlthang i com philyo-hamnita. I need some sugar.
- c. (Kan)cang i com philyo-hamnita. I need some soy sauce.
- d. Yangyəm/yangnyəm/ i com philyo-hamnita. I need some seasoning.
- e. Mul i com philyo-hamnita. I need some water.
- f. Kilis i com philyo-hamnita.. I need some containers.
- g. Koppu ka com philyo-hamnita. I need some {cups.  
{glasses.
- h. Cho ka com philyo-hamnita. I need some vinegar.
- i. Huchu kalu ka com philyo-hamnita. I need some black pepper (powder).
- j. Sut-kalak i com philyo-hamnita. I need a spoon.
- k. Cəs-kalak i com philyo-hamnita. I need chopsticks.
3. a. (Hong)cha lil hakessimnita. I'll have tea.
- b. Khəphi lil hakessimnita. I'll have coffee.
- c. Sul il hakessimnita. I'll have {wine.  
{liquor.
- d. Ppilul lil hakessimnita. I'll have beer.
- e. Məkcū lil hakessimnita. I'll have beer.
- f. Yachə lil hakessimnita. I'll have vegetables.
- g. Chəso lil hakessimnita. I'll have vegetables.
- h. Kwail il hakessimnita. I'll have fruits.
- i. Kwasil il hakessimnita. I'll have fruits.
- j. Silkwa lil hakessimnita. I'll have fruits.
- k. Koki lil hakessimnita. I'll have [some] meat.
- l. Səngsən il hakessimnita. I'll have fish.
- m. So koki lil hakessimnita. I'll have beef ('cow meat').

6. 그릇이 좀 필요합니다.
7. 고باق 좀 필요합니다.
8. 초가 좀 필요합니다.
9. 후추 가루가 좀 필요합니다.
10. 숟가락이 좀 필요합니다.
11. 젓가락이 좀 필요합니다.

- C.
1. (홍)차를 하겠습니다.
  2. 커피를 하겠습니다.
  3. 술을 하겠습니다.
  4. 맥주를 하겠습니다.
  5. 야채를 하겠습니다.
  6. 채소를 하겠습니다.
  7. 과일을 하겠습니다.
  8. 과식을 하겠습니다.
  9. 고기를 하겠습니다.
  10. 생선을 하겠습니다.
  11. 소 고기를 하겠습니다.
  12. 닭 고기를 하겠습니다.
  13. 돼지 고기를 하겠습니다.
  14. 도야지 고기를 하겠습니다.
  15. 계란을 하겠습니다.
  16. 달걀을 하겠습니다.
  17. 국을 하겠습니다.

- D.
1. 잠이 옵니다.
  2. 잠을 잡니다.
  3. 좀 피곤합니다.
  4. 좀 고단합니다.
  5. 좀 피로합니다.



- n. Ta(1)k koki lil hakessimnita. I'll have chicken ('chicken meat').
- o. Tweci koki lil hakessimnita. I'll have pork ('pig meat').
- p. Toyaci koki lil hakessimnita. I'll have pork.
- q. Kyelan il hakessimnita. I'll have eggs.
- r. Talkyal il hakessimnita. I'll have eggs.
- s. Kuk il hakessimnita. I'll have soup.
4. a. imsik i nemu ccamnita. [This] food is too salty.
- b. imsik i nemu tamnita. [This] food is too sweet.
- c. imsik i nemu singkepsimnita. [This] food is too bland.
- d. imsik i nemu mæpsimnita. [This] food is too hot (spicy).
- e. imsik i nemu chamnita. [This] food is too cold.
- f. imsik i nemu simnita. [This] food is too sour.
- g. imsik i nemu ttikepsimnita. [This] food is too hot (temperature).
- h. imsik i nemu tæpsimnita. [This] food is too hot (temperature).
- i. imsik i nemu ssimnita. [This] food is too bitter.
5. a. (imsik) mas i cohsimnita. It tastes good. ('(Food) taste is good.')
- b. (imsik) mas i issimnita. It's delicious.
- c. (imsik) mas i epsimnita. It's tasty; It tastes good.
- d. (imsik) mas i kwæchanhsimnita. It's tasteless.
- e. (imsik) mas i hullyunghanminta. It tastes all right.
6. a. Kipun i cohsimnita. It tastes very good. ('Taste is excellent.')
- b. Kipun i com nappimnita. I feel well. ('Feeling is good.')
- c. Kipun i ættehsimnikka? I don't feel very well. ('Feeling is a little bad.')
7. a. Pæ ka kophimnita. How are you feeling?
- b. Pæ ka pulimnita. I'm hungry. ('Stomach is empty.')
- c. Pæ ka aphimnita. I'm full.
- d. Pæ ka pulphyenhamnita. I have a stomach-ache.
8. a. Cam i omnita. My stomach is uncomfortable.
- b. (Cam il) camnita. I'm sleepy. ('Sleep comes.')
- c. (com) phikonhamnita. I'(m) sleep(ing).
- I'm (a little) tired.

6. 목이 마릅니다.
7. 음식이 넉넉합니다.
8. 음식이 충분합니다.
9. 음식이 부족합니다.
10. 음식이 모자랍니다.
11. 음식이 많습니다.

- E.
1. 음식이 너무 짭니다.
  2. 음식이 너무 달니다.
  3. 음식이 너무 싱겁습니다.
  4. 음식이 너무 맵습니다.
  5. 음식이 너무 찝니다.
  6. 음식이 너무 습니다.
  7. 음식이 너무 뜨겁습니다.
  8. 음식이 너무 덥습니다.
  9. 음식이 너무 쌀니다.

- F.
1. (음식)맛이 좋습니다.
  2. (음식)맛이 있습니다.
  3. (음식)맛이 없습니다.
  4. (음식)맛이 괜찮습니다.
  5. (음식)맛이 훌륭합니다.

- G.
1. 기분이 좋습니다.
  2. 기분이 좀 나쁩니다.
  3. 기분이 어떻습니까?

- H.
1. 배가 곱습니다.
  2. 배가 부릅니다.
  3. 배가 아픕니다.
  4. 배가 불편합니다.

- d. (com) kotanhamnita. I'm (a little) tired.
- e. (com) philohamnita. I'm (rather) fatigued.
- f. Mok i malimnita. I'm thirsty. ('Throat dries.')
9. a. imsik i { neknekhamnita  
{ /nengnekhamnita/. The food is sufficient.
- b. imsik i chungpun-hamnita. The food is enough.
- c. imsik i pucok-hamnita. The food is not enough.
- d. imsik i mocalamnita. {The food is not enough.  
 {We are short of food.
- e. imsik i manhsimnita. The food is plenty.

## NOTES ON DIALOGUES

(Numbers correspond to the sentence numbers.)

- 1.2. Ca, ɛsɛ tɪ(ɪ)siɸsiyo. ('Well, lift [it] please.', 'Well, please have [it].') is a fixed expression in the eating or drinking situation to have your guest or company start eating or drinking. The usual response to Ca, ɛsɛ tɪ(ɪ)siɸsiyo. is Ne, kathɪ sɪcak-hapsita. ('Yes, let's begin together.').
6. Mas ɪ iss-ta. ('Taste exists.') and Mas ɪ coh-ta. ('Taste is good.') are the two common fixed expressions; both of which are used as the Korean equivalents of 'It's tasty.' or 'It's delicious.'
10. Məkə pɔn ɪɪ (or məkə pɔn cək) ('The experience of having eaten') and məkɪn ɪɪ (or məkɪn cək) can be interchangeably used (See Grammar Note 3.)
12. In Kɪlæ yo? ('Is that so?') kɪlæ is the infinitive form of the verb kɪlæh- 'to be so'. Thus, Kɪlæ yo? is the informal polite equivalent of the formal polite Kɪlæhsɪmnɪkka?; Kɪlæ yo. of the formal polite Kɪlæhsɪmnɪta.
13. Cungkuɸ ɪmsɪkçəm 'Chinese restaurant' is often substituted by Cungkuɸ cɪp ('Chinese house'). In Korea, Cungkuɸ cɪp is usually referred to Cungkuɸ ɪmsɪkçəm.
14. Pyello '(not) particularly', is an adverb which occurs before an negative inflected expression, and denotes mildness or less being positive in negating the following expression.
15. Yangsik cɪp ('Western food house.') is a substitute for Yangsikçəm.

## GRAMMAR NOTES

1. -(1)na

The inflected form ending in -(1)na (or simply the -(1)na form) which may be followed by a pause occurs before another inflected expression. The honorific and/or tense suffixes may occur in the -(1)na form: -na is added to a vowel stem; -ina to a consonant stem. The -(1)na form denotes that some contradictory further explanation or remark will follow in the following inflected expression. (Compare the -(1)na form with -ci + man, Grammar Note 2, Unit 9.) Examples:

Mas in cohina, koki ka com cilkimnita.	'It's tasty, but the meat is a little tough.'
Hankuk mal i əlyəuna, cæmi isse yo.	'Korean is difficult but is interesting.'
Kim Pyenhosa e əlkul in molina, ilim in tiləssimnita.	'I don't know Lawyer Kim's face, but I've heard of his name.'

2.  $\left. \begin{array}{l} -n/in \\ \text{Infinitive + pon} \end{array} \right\} + \left\{ \begin{array}{l} il \\ cək \end{array} \right\} i + iss-$  'has an experience of having done something'

The construction -n/in il i issimnita is used to mean 'have, sometime up to the present, done so-and-so'. The question form, -n/in il i issimnikka?, is the Korean equivalent of 'Have [you] ever done so-and-so?'. In the above construction il meaning 'work' or 'act' or 'experience' is synonymous with cək and they are interchangeable with each other. The first word in the construction ending in -n/in (-n is added to a vowel stem; -in to a consonant stem) can be substituted by the verb phrase Infinitive + pon. The negation for the whole expression is made by replacing əps- 'not exit' in place of iss-. Thus, -n/in il i əpsimnita means '[Someone] has, some time up to the present, never done so-and-so.' and -n/in il i əpsimnikka? 'Haven't [you] ever done so-and-so?'. Examples:

Cungkuk imsik il məkin il i issimnikka?	'Have you ever eaten Chinese food?'
Hankuk e kasin cək i issna yo?	'Have you ever been ('gone') to Korea?'
Cə nin Nyuyok esə cihachəlto lil than il i issci yo.	'I have an experience of riding a subway in New York.'
Cən e catongcha lil uncənhæ pon il i issci man, cikim in uncəhanın kəs il ice pəliəssimnita.	'I drove an automobile before, but I have forgotten how to drive (now).'

Ne, Hankuk e olæ cæn e kan cæk i  
issimnita.

'Yes, I've gone to Korea long time ago.'

Note that the ending -n/in is distinguished from the present noun-modifier ending -n/in/nin since -n/in which is added only to an action verb stem indicates the past action of the following nominal. We shall call the ending -n/in Past Noun-Modifier Ending. We will learn more about the ending -n/in as well as the description verb past noun-modifier forms in the further units. For the time being, observe the following examples:

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| a. kanın salam }<br>kan salam }                 | 'the person who (is) go(ing).'             |
|   | 'the person who has gone'                  |
| b. næ ka mannanın yæca }<br>næ ka mannan yæca } | 'the woman (or girl) whom I'(m) meet(ing)' |
|   | 'the woman whom I've met'                  |
| c. atıl ı sanın cæk }<br>atıl ı san cæk }       | 'the book that my son is buying'           |
|   | 'the book that my son bought'              |
| d. mæknın ımsık }<br>mækın ımsık }              | 'the food that [we] eat'                   |
|   | 'the food that [we] ate'                   |

### 3. Interrogative + -n/in/nin ci

An interrogative (i.e. what, who, where, why, etc.) followed by a present noun-modifier word + ci, occurs as a nominal expression with or without a particle after it before another inflected expression, and denotes the present action or description of the verb for the subject or topic in the same nominal expression. When the phrase interrogative + -n/in/nin ci is followed by the verb a(1)- 'know' or moll- 'not know', it is always the object of the verb.

Examples:

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <u>Cæ salam i nuku in ci</u> alæ yo.               | '[I] know <u>who that man is</u> .'                   |
| <u>I cæk i ælma in ci</u> alko siphe yo?           | 'Do you want to know <u>how much this book is</u> ?'' |
| <u>Kim Sænsæng i eti e sanın ci</u><br>asici yo?   | 'You know <u>where Mr. Kim lives</u> , don't you?'    |
| <u>Sænsæng i muæs il wænhanın ci</u><br>molimnita. | 'I don't know <u>what you want</u> .'                 |

Note that the present noun-modifier word in the same construction may be replaced by the form -(a,æ)ssnın for the past and the form -(1)l for the future, if the equivalent English noun clause is in the past or future tense respectively.

Observe the following:

GROUP 1

Ki salam i eti e <u>kassnin</u> ci amnita.	'[I] know where he <u>went</u> .'
Hakkyo ka ence <u>sicak-hæssnin</u> ci molla yo.	'[I] don't know when the school <u>began</u> .'
Næ ka Yøngæ lil ettøhke <u>pæwæssnin</u> ci ase yo?	'Do you know how I <u>have learned</u> English?'

GROUP 2

Sip nyæn hu e muæs il <u>hal</u> ci. acik molimnita.	'[I] don't know what [I] <u>will do</u> after ten years from now.'
Sikan i elma na <u>kællil</u> ci alki elyøpsimnita.	'It's difficult to know how long it <u>will take</u> .'
Ki i ka elma tongan Sæul esø <u>kinmu-hal</u> ci molla yo?	'Don't you know how long he <u>will</u> <u>work</u> in Seoul?'

4. Particles eke 'to' and ekesø 'from'

A personal nominal + eke and a personal nominal + ekesø before an inflected expression mean 'to + P.N.' and 'from + P.N.' respectively. Remember that the particles e and esø preceded by a place name before an inflected expression mean also 'to' and 'from' respectively (Units 2 and 3). Do not use e and esø after a personal nominal to mean the same. Examples:

GROUP 1 (eke)

I chæk il Kim Sænsæng eke tilisipsiyo.	'Please give this book to Mr. Kim.'
Halapæci eke mulø pwæssci man, mollasø yo.	'I asked (to) my grandfather but he didn't know.'
Onil in chinku eke phyænci lil sse ya hakesø yo.	'[I think] I've got to write a letter to my friend today.'

GROUP 2 (ekesø)

Pak Sænsæng ekesø ki mal il titko, nollassimnita.	'I was surprised to hear that from Mr. Park. ('I heard that word from Mr. Park and was sur- prised.')
æmeni ekesø sængil sænmul il patæssimnita.	'I have received a birthday present from my mother.'

## 5. Dependent Nouns

There is a small class of Korean nouns which occur only as bound forms in certain constructions but are neither Determinatives nor Post-Nouns (Unit 3). We shall call the words of this class Dependent Nouns. Remember that a determinative is a word which occurs before another noun (free or bound), and that a post-noun occurs either after other nouns or after modifier categories of inflected words. In both cases, they form nominal phrases. However, a dependent noun also occurs after the modifier categories of inflected words, but is followed by a certain expression to form a phrase. Thus, it is not necessary to learn the meaning of an individual dependent noun separately. Instead, you should learn the meaning of the whole phrase where such a dependent noun is included as if it were one word. For example, in Kal kka yo? 'Shall [we] go?', Ttenal kka hamnita. '[I]'m thinking of leaving.', Anin ka yo? 'Do [you] know?', Kal su issimnita. '[I] can go.', Mues in ci amnita. '[I] know what [it] is.', eti e sanin ci molimnita. 'I don't know where [he] lives.', Pi ka ol tit hamnita. 'It looks like rain.', Keki kan cek i isse yo? 'Have you ever been there?', kka, ka, su, ci, tit, cek, etc. are Dependent Nouns.



## DRILLS

## A. Substitution Drill

- |                                |                        |
|--------------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. Cə nɪn pə ka kophɪmnɪta.    | I'm hungry.            |
| 2. Cə nɪn pə ka pulɪmnɪta.     | I'm full.              |
| 3. Cə nɪn mok i malɪmnɪta.     | I'm thirsty.           |
| 4. Cə nɪn (com) phɪkonhɪmnɪta. | I'm (a little) tired.  |
| 5. Cə nɪn (com) kotanhɪmnɪta.  | I'm (rather) fatigued. |
| 6. Cə nɪn cam i omnɪta.        | I'm sleepy.            |
| 7. Cə nɪn mom i aphɪmnɪta.     | I'm sick.              |
| 8. Cə nɪn kɪpun i cohɪmnɪta.   | I'm feeling well.      |
| 9. Cə nɪn kɪpun i nappɪmnɪta.  | I'm not feeling well.  |

## B. Substitution Drill

- |                                  |  |
|----------------------------------|--|
| 1. Na nɪn mom i com aphɪmnɪta.   | I'm a little sick. ('My body aches a little.')               |
| 2. Na nɪn məli ka com aphɪmnɪta. | I have a little headache.                                    |
| 3. Na nɪn tali ka com aphɪmnɪta. | My leg hurts a little.                                       |
| 4. Na nɪn nun i com aphɪmnɪta.   | My eyes hurt a little.                                       |
| 5. Na nɪn pal i com aphɪmnɪta.   | My foot hurts a little.                                      |
| 6. Na nɪn son i com aphɪmnɪta.   | My hand hurts a little.                                      |
| 7. Na nɪn i ka com aphɪmnɪta.    | My tooth aches a little.                                     |
| 8. Na nɪn ip i com aphɪmnɪta.    | My mouth is a little sore.                                   |
| 9. Na nɪn əkkə ka com aphɪmnɪta. | My shoulder hurts a little.                                  |
| 10. Na nɪn mok i com aphɪmnɪta.  | I have a little sore throat. ('My throat is a little sore.') |

## C. Substitution Drill

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. Kəki sokɪm com (cə eke)<br>cusikessɪmnɪkka?      | Please pass me the salt. ('Will you give me the salt there?') |
| 2. Kəki səlthang com (cə eke)<br>cusikessɪmnɪkka?   | Please pass me the sugar.                                     |
| 3. Kəki kochu kalu com (cə eke)<br>cusikessɪmnɪkka? | Please pass me the pepper. ('red-pepper powder')              |
| 4. Kəki huchu kalu com (cə eke)<br>cusikessɪmnɪkka? | Please pass me the pepper. ('black-pepper powder')            |

- |   |                               |
|---|-------------------------------|
| 5. Kæki <u>(kan)cang</u> com (cæ eke)<br>cusikessimnikka?   | Please pass me the soy sauce. |
| *6. Kæki <u>ccæm</u> com (cæ eke)<br>cusikessimnikka?       | Please pass me the jam.       |
| *7. Kæki <u>ppata</u> com (cæ eke)<br>cusikessimnikka?      | Please pass me the butter.    |
| *8. Kæki <u>ppang</u> com (cæ eke)<br>cusikessimnikka?      | Please pass me the bread.     |
| *9. Kæki <u>Kimchi</u> com (cæ eke)<br>cusikessimnikka?     | Please pass me Kimchi.        |
| *10. Kæki <u>næphikhin</u> com (cæ eke)<br>cusikessimnikka? | Please pass me the napkins.   |

## D. Substitution Drill

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. K1 chæk 11 na eke cusipsiyo.                        | Give me that book.                         |
| 2. K1 chæk 11 <u>Kim Sænsæng</u> eke<br>cusipsiyo.     | Give that book to Mr. Kim.                 |
| 3. K1 chæk 11 <u>Ceimsi</u> eke cusipsiyo.             | Give that book to James.                   |
| 4. K1 chæk 11 <u>apæci</u> eke cusipsiyo.              | Give that book to your father.             |
| 5. K1 chæk 11 <u>cæ haksæng</u> eke<br>cusipsiyo.      | Give that book to the student.             |
| 6. K1 chæk 11 <u>Mikuk chinku</u> eke<br>cusipsiyo.    | Give that book to your American<br>friend. |
| 7. K1 chæk 11 <u>Kim Sænsæng pun</u> eke<br>cusipsiyo. | Give that book to Mrs. Kim.                |

## E. Substitution Drill

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. Chinku ekese sikye 111 patæssimnita.                       | I received a watch from a friend.                   |
| 2. <u>Ceimsi</u> ekese <u>moca</u> 111 patæssimnita.          | I received a hat from James.                        |
| 3. <u>Kim Sænsæng</u> ekese <u>kapang</u> 11<br>patæssimnita. | I received a briefcase from Mr. Kim.                |
| *4. <u>æmeni</u> ekese <u>phyænci</u> 111 patæssimnita.       | I received a letter from my mother.                 |
| *5. <u>Tæsa</u> ekese <u>cænhwa</u> 111 patæssimnita.         | I received a telephone call from the<br>ambassador. |

- \*6. Apæci ekese sænmul il patæssimnita. I received a present from my father.
- \*7. Hankukæ kangsa ekese Yæng-Han  
sacæn il patæssimnita. I received an English-Korean dictionary from the Korean instructor.
- \*8. Yængsa ekese cænpo lil patæssimnita. I received a {telegram} from the  
{cable } consul.
- \*9. Sangkwan ekese myængnyæng il patæssimnita. I received an order from [my]  
{boss.  
{supervisor.
- \*10. Sonnim ekese cumun il patæssimnita. I received an order from [my]  
{customer.  
{guest.
- \*11. Tæthongyæng ekese chotæ lil patæssimnita. I received an invitation from the President.
- \*12. Haksæng til ekese cilmun il patæssimnita. I received questions from the students.
- \*13. Tongyo ekese puthak il patæssimnita. I was asked of a favor from a colleague.
- \*14. Sacang ekese singkip il patæssimnita. I received a promotion from the president (of the company).
- \*15. Insakwacang ekese pongkip il patæssimnita. I've got my pay from the personnel officer.

## F. Substitution Drill

1. Sensæng in mæun imsik i cohsimnikka? Do you like hot (spicy) food?
2. Sensæng in Cungkuk imsik i cohsimnikka? Do you like Chinese food?
3. Sensæng in Yangsik i cohsimnikka? Do you like Western food?
4. Sensæng in Wæssik i cohsimnikka? Do you like Japanese food?
5. Sensæng in Hankuk mækcæ ka cohsimnikka? Do you like Korean beer?
6. Sensæng in musin imsik i cohsimnikka? What kind of food do you like?
7. Sensæng in æni siktang i cohsimnikka? Which restaurant do you like?
8. Sensæng in æni sensæng i cohsimnikka? Which teacher do you prefer?

## G. Substitution Drill

- |  |                               |
|--|-------------------------------|
| 1. I <u>imsik</u> in com <u>mæpsimnita</u> . | This food is a little spicy.  |
| 2. I <u>imsik</u> in com <u>ccamnita</u> .   | This food is a little salty.  |
| 3. I <u>imsik</u> in com <u>chamnita</u> .   | This food is a little cold.   |
| 4. I <u>imsik</u> in com <u>tæpsimnita</u> . | This food is a little warm.   |
| 5. I <u>imsik</u> in com <u>simnita</u> .    | This food is a little sour.   |
| 6. I <u>imsik</u> in com <u>tamnita</u> .    | This food is a little sweet.  |
| 7. I <u>imsik</u> in com <u>ssimnita</u> .   | This food is a little bitter. |

## H. Substitution Drill

- |   |                                  |
|---|----------------------------------|
| 1. I <u>koki</u> nin com <u>cilkimnita</u> .        | This meat is a little tough.     |
| 2. I <u>Pul-koki</u> nin com <u>cilkimnita</u> .    | This Pul-koki is a little tough. |
| 3. I <u>sængsæn</u> in com <u>cilkimnita</u> .      | This fish is a little tough.     |
| 4. I <u>ta(1)k koki</u> nin com <u>cilkimnita</u> . | This chicken is a little tough.  |
| 5. I <u>so koki</u> nin com <u>cilkimnita</u> .     | This beef is a little tough.     |
| 6. I <u>toyaci koki</u> nin com <u>cilkimnita</u> . | This pork is a little tough.     |
| 7. I <u>tweci koki</u> nin com <u>cilkimnita</u> .  | This pork is a little tough.     |
| *8. I <u>tweci koki</u> nin <u>putilæpsimnita</u> . | This pork is {tender.<br>}soft.  |
| *9. I <u>tweci koki</u> nin <u>yønhamnita</u> .     | This pork is tender (for meat).  |

## I. Substitution Drill

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. <u>Yangsikcæm</u> i æti e issnin ci<br>asimnikka?       | Do you know where a restaurant for<br>Western food is. |
| 2. <u>Hansikcæm</u> i æti e issnin ci<br>asimnikka?        | Do you know where a Korean restaurant<br>is?           |
| 3. <u>Wæsikcæm</u> i æti e issnin ci<br>asimnikka?         | Do you know where a Japanese restau-<br>rant is?       |
| 4. <u>Cungkuk imsikcæm</u> i æti e issnin<br>ci asimnikka? | Do you know where a Chinese restaurant<br>is?          |
| 5. <u>Pakmulkwæn</u> i æti e issnin ci<br>asimnikka?       | Do you know where the museum is?                       |
| *6. <u>Tongmulwæn</u> i æti e issnin ci<br>asimnikka?      | Do you know where the zoo is?                          |

- \*7. Kukhwe ka eti e issnin ci asimnikka? Do you know where the  
{National Assembly} is?  
{Congress}
- \*8. Wemupu ka eti e issnin ci asimnikka? Do you know where the Ministry of  
Foreign Affairs is?
- \*9. Sopangse ka eti e issnin ci  
asimnikka? Do you know where the fire station  
is?
- \*10. Kukmuseng i eti e issnin ci  
asimnikka? Do you know where the State Depart-  
ment is?
- \*11. Kukpangpu ka eti e issnin ci  
asimnikka? Do you know where the Ministry of  
Defense is?
- \*12. Kukpanseng i eti e issnin ci  
asimnikka? Do you know where the Defense  
Department is?
- \*13. Kisuksa ka eti e issnin ci  
asimnikka? Do you know where the dormintory  
is?

## J. Transformation Drill

Tutor: Sənsəng in cən e Hankuk e  
kassimnikka?

'Did you go to Korea before?'

Student: Sənsəng in cən e Hankuk e  
kan il i issimnikka?

'Have you ever been to Korea before?'

1. Sənsəng in cən e Ilpon mal il  
pəwəssimnikka?

Sənsəng in cən e Ilpon mal il pəun  
il i issimnikka?

2. Sənsəng in cən e Yəngə lil  
kalichiəssimnikka?

Sənsəng in cən e Yəngə lil kalichin  
il i issimnikka?

3. Sənsəng in cən e wekuk təhakkyo  
e taniəssimnikka?

Sənsəng in cən e wekuk təhakkyo e  
tanin il i issimnikka?

4. Sənsəng in cən e Mikuk təsa lil  
mannassimnikka?

Sənsəng in cən e Mikuk təsa lil  
mannan il i issimnikka?

5. Sənsəng in cən e Səul esə  
il-həssimnikka?

Sənsəng in cən e Səul esə il-han  
il i issimnikka?

6. Sənsəng in cən e pihəngki lil  
thassimnikka?

Sənsəng in cən e pihəngki lil than  
il i issimnikka?

7. Sənsəng in cən e Hankuk esə phyenci  
lil patəssimnikka?

Sənsəng in cən e Hankuk esə phyenci  
lil patin il i issimnikka?

8. Sənsəng in cən e Mikuk chinku eke  
sacən il puchiəssimnikka?

Sənsəng in cən e Mikuk chinku eke  
sacən il puchin il i issimnikka?

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 9. Sənsəŋ in cən e Hankuk ɪmsik il<br>məkəssɪmnikka? | Sənsəŋ in cən e Hankuk ɪmsik il<br>məkɪn il i ɪssɪmnikka? |
| 10. Sənsəŋ in cən e ki yəca lɪl<br>kitaliəssɪmnikka? | Sənsəŋ in cən ki yəca lɪl kitalɪn<br>il i ɪssɪmnikka?     |

## K. Response Drill

Tutor: Cən e Hankuk ɪmsik il məkɪn  
il i ɪssɪmnikka?

'Have you ever eaten Korean food  
before?'

Student: Ne, məkə pən cək i ɪssɪmnita.

'Yes, I have (eaten).'

1. Cən e Ilpon mal il pəun il i  
ɪssɪmnikka?

Ne, pəwə pən cək i ɪssɪmnita.

2. Cən e Yəŋgə lɪl kalɪtʃɪn il i  
ɪssɪmnikka?

Ne, kalɪtʃiə pən cək i ɪssɪmnita.

3. Cən e Hankuk məkcu lɪl masin il  
i ɪssɪmnikka?

Ne, masyə pən cək i ɪssɪmnita.

4. Cən e kuntə e kan il i ɪssɪmnikka?

Ne, ka pən cək i ɪssɪmnita.

5. Talɪn salam eke i tʃək il poyə  
cun il i ɪssɪmnikka?

Ne, poyə cʷə pən cək i ɪssɪmnita.

6. Cən e mok i aphɪn il i ɪssɪmnikka?

Ne, apʰə pən cək i ɪssɪmnita.

7. Hankuk salam tʃɪŋku ekəsə pʰyənɪ  
lɪl patɪn il i ɪssɪmnita.

Ne, patə pən cək i ɪssɪmnita.

8. Wəlyoɪl e cip esə swɪn il i  
ɪssɪmnikka?

Ne, (Wəlyoɪl e) swiə pən cək i  
ɪssɪmnita.

9. Cip esə hakkyo kkaci tu sikan i  
kəllɪn il i ɪssɪmnikka?

Ne, tu sikan i kəllie pən cək i  
ɪssɪmnikka?

## L. Transformation Drill

Tutor: Siktang i ət̃i e issimnikka?

'Where is the restaurant?'

Student: Siktang i ət̃i e issnin ci asimnikka?

'Do you know where the restaurant is?'

1. Kim Sənsəng i muəs il hamnikka?

Kim Sənsəng i muəs il hanin ci asimnikka?

2. K̃i sikye ka əlma imnikka?

K̃i sikye ka əlma in ci asimnikka?

3. Cə Mikuk yəca ka nuku imnikka?

Cə Mikuk yəca ka nuku in ci asimnikka?

4. Hakkyo ka myəch-si e sicak-hamnikka?

Hakkyo ka myəch-si e sicak-hanin ci asimnikka?

5. Cungkuk mal i əlma na əlyəpsimnikka?

Cungkuk mal i əlma na əlyəun ci asimnikka?

6. Onil i myəchil imnikka?

Onil i myəchil in ci asimnikka?

7. I catongcha l̃il əlma e phamnikka?

I catongcha l̃il əlma e pha(li)nin ci asimnikka?

8. ənce ppəs̃i ka ttenamnikka?

ənce ppəs̃i ka ttenanin ci asimnikka?

9. Cə Mikuk kunin i muəs il wənhamnikka?

Cə Mikuk kunin i muəs il wənhanin ci asimnikka?

10. Ceims̃i Sənsəng i musin yoil e hyuka l̃il patsimnikka?

Ceims̃i Sənsəng i musin yoil e hyuka l̃il patnin ci asimnikka?

## M. Response Drill

Tutor: Siktang i ət̃i e issnin ci asimnikka?

'Do you know where the restaurant is?'

Student: Ne, (siktang i) ət̃i e issnin ci alə yo.

'Yes, I know where it is.'

1. I catongcha ka əlma in ci asimnikka?

Ne, (i catongcah ka) əlma in ci alə yo.

2. Simis̃i Sənsəng i ət̃i esə il-hanin ci asimnikka?

Ne, (Simis̃i Sənsəng i) ət̃i esə il-hanin ci alə yo.

3. K̃icha ka myəch-si e ttenanin ci asimnikka?

Ne, (k̃icha ka) myəch-si e ttenanin ci alə yo.

4. ənce Hankuk ilo kanin ci asimnikka?

Ne, ənce (Hankuk ilo) kanin ci alə yo.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 5. Cə salam i əlma na Hankuk mal il cal hal su issnin ci asimnikka? | Ne, (cə salam i) əlma na (Hankuk mal il) cal hal su issnin ci alə yo. |
| 6. Ppəsi ka ənce ttənassnin ci asimnikka?                           | Ne, (ppəsi ka) ənce ttənassnin ci alə yo.                             |
| 7. Ceimsi Sənsəng i myəch sal e Hankuk e wassnin ci asimnikka?      | Ne, (Ceimsi Sənsəng i) myəch sal e Hankuk e wassnin ci alə yo.        |
| 8. Nə ka təhakkyo esə muəs il kongpu-həssnin ci asimnikka?          | Ne, (tangsin i təhakkyo esə) muəs il kongpu-həssnin ci alə yo.        |
| 9. Cip esə cəngkəcang kkaci əlma na mən ci asimnikka?               | Ne, (cip esə cəngkəcang kkaci) əlma na mən ci alə yo.                 |
| 10. Səul e mulkən kaps i əlma na pissan ci asimnikka?               | Ne, (Səul e mulkən kaps i) əlma na pissan ci alə yo.                  |
| 11. Nə ka nuku lil mannako siphin ci asimnikka?                     | Ne, (sənsəng i) nuku lil mannako siphin ci alə yo.                    |
| 12. Mikuk esə Hankuk kkaci myəchil i kəllinin ci asimnikka?         | Ne, (Mikuk esə Hankuk kkaci) myəchil i kəllinin ci alə yo.            |

## N. Response Drill

Tutor: I kəs i muəs in ci ase yo?

Student: Aniyo, (muəs in ci) molimnita.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. Pak Sənsəng i musin imsik il cohahanin ci ase yo?       | 'Do you know what this is?'                            |
| 2. Hwesa samu ka myəch-si e sicak-hanin ci ase yo?         | 'No, I don't know (what is it).'                       |
| 3. Nə ka hwesa esə han tal e əlma patnin ci ase yo?        | Aniyo, (musin imsik il cohahanin ci) molimnita.        |
| 4. əlma tongan Yəngə lil pəwəssnin ci ase yo?              | Aniyo, (myəch-si e sicak-hanin ci) molimnita.          |
| 5. Mikuk təsa ka əlma cən e yəki e wassnin ci ase yo?      | Aniyo, (əlma patnin ci) molimnita.                     |
| 6. Nuka na eke Hankuk mal il kalichie cuəssnin ci ase yo?  | Aniyo, (əlma tongan Yəngə lil pəwəssnin ci) molimnita. |
| 7. Kim Sənsəng i myəch-si e samusil e tola onin ci ase yo? | Aniyo, (əlma cən e yəki e wassnin ci) molimnita.       |
|  | Aniyo, (nuka kalichie cuəssnin ci) molimnita.          |
|  | Aniyo, (myəch-si e tola onin ci) molimnita.            |



- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 8. Cə yəca ka nuku lil salang-hanin<br>ci ase yo?          | Aniyo, (nuku lil salang-hanin ci)<br>molimnita. |
| 9. Səul e Mikuk salam i myəch salam<br>i issnin ci ase yo? | Aniyo, (myəch salam i issnin ci)<br>molimnita.  |

## O. Response Drill

Tutor: Pə ka kophimnikka?

'Are you hungry?'

Student: Ne, (pə ka) com kophimnita.

'Yes, (I'm) a little.'

1. Mok i malimnikka?

Ne, (mok i) com malimnita.

2. (Mom i) phikon-hamnikka?

Ne, com phikon-hamnita.

3. Cam i omnikka?

Ne, (cam i) com omnita.

4. Kipun i cohsimnikka?

Ne, (kipun i) com cohsimnita.

5. Mom i aphimnikka?

Ne, (mom i) com aphimnita.

6. Kotanhamnikka?

Ne, com kotanhamnita.

7. Pə ka pulimnikka?

Ne, (pə ka) com pulimnita.

8. Mas i issimnikka?

Ne, (mas i) com issimnita.

9. Koki ka cilkimnikka?

Ne, (koki ka) com cilkimnita.

## P. Response Drill

Tutor: Pə ka kophimnikka?

'Are you hungry?'

Student: Aniyo, kili kophici anhe yo.

'No, (I'm) not very much (hungry).'

1. Mok i malimnikka?

Aniyo, kili malici anhe yo.

2. Phikon-hamnikka?

Aniyo, kili phikon-haci anhe yo.

3. Cam i omnikka?

Aniyo, kili oci anhe yo.

4. Kipun i cohsimnikka?

Aniyo, kili cohci anhe yo.

5. Kipun i nappimnikka?

Aniyo, kili nappici anhe yo.

6. Mom i aphimnikka?

Aniyo, kili aphici anhe yo.

7. Kotanhamnikka?

Aniyo, kili kotanhaci anhe yo.

8. Pə ka pulimnikka?

Aniyo, kili pulici anhe yo.

9. Mas i issimnikka?

Aniyo, kili issci anhe yo.

10. Mas i cohsimnikka?

Aniyo, kili cohci anhe yo.

11. Koki ka cilkimnikka?

Aniyo, kili cilkici anhe yo?

## Q. Response Drill

Tutor: Pæ ka kophimnikka?

'Are you hungry?'

Student: Aniyo, pyello kophici  
anhsimnita.'No, not particularly. ('I'm not  
particularly hungry.')

1. Mom i aphimnikka?
2. Sokim i philyo-hamnita.
3. imsik i ccamnikka?
4. (imsik) mas i issimnikka?
5. Kipun i cohsimnikka?
6. Cam i omnikka?
7. Mok i malimnikka?
8. Phikon-hamnikka?
9. Kotanhamnikka?
10. Koki ka cilkimnikka?
11. Hankuk mal il cal hamnikka?

Aniyo, pyello aphici anhsimnita.

Aniyo, phello philyo-haci anhsimnita.

Aniyo, pyello ccaci anhsimnita.

Aniyo, pyello issci anhsimnita.

Aniyo, pyello cohci anhsimnita.

Aniyo, pyello oci anhsimnita.

Aniyo, pyello malici anhsimnita.

Aniyo, pyello phikon-haci anhsimnita.

Aniyo, pyello kotanhaci anhsimnita.

Aniyo, pyello cilkici anhsimnita.

Aniyo, pyello cal haci anhsimnita.

## EXERCISES

A. Ask Kim Sənsəng the following questions: (Mr. Kim answers beginning once with Ne, and once with Aniyo, both in Informal Polite Speech.)

1. if he is hungry.
2. if he is tired.
3. if he is sleepy.
4. if he is sick.
5. if he is feeling well.
6. if he is not feeling well.
7. if his stomach is uncomfortable.
8. if the meat is too tough.
9. if the pork is tender.
10. if the chicken is delicious.
11. if the food is spicy (hot).
12. if the soup is too salty.
13. if the coffee is too sweet (sugary).
14. if he needs salt and pepper.
15. if he has ever eaten Chinese food.
16. if he has ever taught Korean before.
17. if he knows what time the school ends.
18. if he knows who taught you Korean.
19. if he knows how you have studied Korean.
20. if he doesn't like Chinese food.
21. if the food is enough.
22. if the food is insufficient
23. if the food is plenty.

B. Tell the waitress to bring the following:

1. two bottles of O.B. beer
2. wine (or liquor)
3. vegetables
4. fruits
5. fish
6. seasoning
7. salt and pepper

8. spoon and chop sticks
9. soy sauce and a bowl
10. bread, butter and jam.
11. chicken and eggs.
12. three bowls of beef soup.
13. Pul-koki for two people.

C. Ask Pak Sensaeng whether he likes the following kinds of food:

1. salty food
2. sweet food
3. bland food
4. spicy (hot) food
5. cold food
6. sour food
7. bitter food
8. dry food
9. western food
10. hot (in temperature) food

D. Make a short simple statement using each of the following words:

- |           |                            |
|-----------|----------------------------|
| 1. face   | 13. shoulder               |
| 2. head   | 14. arm                    |
| 3. neck   | 15. hand                   |
| 4. throat | 16. finger                 |
| 5. eye    | 17. foot                   |
| 6. nose   | 18. toe                    |
| 7. cheek  | 19. leg                    |
| 8. chin   | 20. <u>knee</u> /mulip/    |
| 9. mouth  | 21. waist                  |
| 10. tooth | 22. chest                  |
| 11. hair  | 23. back                   |
| 12. ear   | 24. <u>wrist</u> /son-mok/ |

E. Pak Sensaeng wants to know what have happened to you; answer as follows:

1. that you received a letter from your mother.
2. that you received questions from the student.
3. that you received a promotion from your boss.
4. that you received your pay from the personnel officer /insa kwacang/.
5. that your bookstore received an order from the customers.
6. that your colleague asked a favor of you.
7. that you have received an order from the Ambassador.
8. that you've received a dinner invitation from the (company) president.
9. that you've received a birthday present from your girl friend.
10. that you received a telephone call from your father.

## 제 14 과 개인의 입생과 가족 이야기

고향

1. 제임스 : 박 선생은 고향이 어디이세요?

원태

거의

2. 박 : 제 고향은 원태 인천이었으나 거의 서울에서 살았습니다.

어립니다

어린 때에, 어렸을 때에

3. 제임스 : 그럼, 어렸을 때에 서울로 왔습니까?

세 살

세 살 때에

이사

이사했습니다

4. 박 : 예, 그렇습니다. 제가 세 살 때에 우리 가족이 서울로 이사했습니다.

계십니까

5. 제임스 : 지금, 가족은 몇 분이나 계십니까?

결혼

결혼했습니다

결혼해서

아내, 처

아이들

## UNIT 14. Talking About One's Life and Family

## BASIC DIALOGUE FOR MEMORIZATION

James

kohyang  
1. Pak Sənsəng in, kohyang i ətɪ  
ise yo?

native place; home town  
Where do you come from, Mr. Park?

Park

wəllə  
kəi  
2. Ce kohyang in wəllə Inchən iəssina,  
kəi Səul esə saləssimnita.

originally; formerly  
almost; mostly  
I am originally from Inchon but I  
have lived mostly in Seoul.

James

əlimnita  
əlil ttə (e)  
əlyəssil ttə (e) }  
3. Kıləm, əlyəssil ttə e Səul lo  
wassimnikka?

[I]'m young  
when [I] was young ('at the  
time of being young')  
Then, did you come to Seoul when  
you were young?

Park

se sal  
se sal ttə e  
uli kacok  
isa  
isa-həssimnita  
4. Ne, kılənsimnita. Ce ka se sal  
ttə e uli kacok i Səul lo  
isa-həssimnita.

three years old  
at the age of three  
my family ('our family')  
moving (house, office, etc.)  
[we] moved  
That's right. When I was three  
years old, my family moved to  
Seoul.

James

kyesimnikka  
5. Cikim, kacok in myəch pun ina  
kyesimnikka?

do you have?; are there? (H)  
How many are there in your family  
now?

6. 박 : 지금은 결혼해서 아내와 아이들이 둘  
있습니다.
7. 제임스 : 아들  
아이들은 다 아들이가요?
8. 박 : 큰 아이  
딸  
아닙니다. 큰 아이는 딸이고 둘째 아이가  
아들입니다.
9. 제임스 : 부모, 부모님  
살아 계십니다  
부모님도 살아 계십니까?
10. 박 : 아버지  
어머니  
형님, 형  
돌아 가셨습니다  
돼  
아버지는 돌아 가셨고, 어머니는 형님 돼에서  
살니다.
11. 제임스 : 형제  
모두, 전부  
형제는 모두 몇 분이나 됩니까?  
형님 외에  
누이 (동생)



Park

kyelhon

marriage

kyelhon-hæssimnita

[I]'m married; [I] got married

kyelhon-hæ sæ

[I]'m married and..; [I] got married and...

anæ

wife

ai tɪl

children; babies

6. Cikim in kyelhon-hæ sæ, anæ wa  
ai tɪl i tul issimnita.

I'm married now and have a wife  
and two children.

James

atɪl

son

7. Ai tɪl in ta atɪl in ka yo?

Are your children both sons?

Park

khin ai

the eldest child ('big child')

ttal

daughter

8. An imnita. Khin ai nin ttal iko,  
tul ccæ ai ka atɪl imnita.

No. The elder child is a daughter,  
and the second is a son.

Jamespumo }  
pumo nim }

parents

sala issimnita }  
sala kyesimnita }

[he] is alive; [he] is living

9. Pumo nim to sala kyesimnikka?

Are your parents still living?

Park

apæci

father

æmæni

mother

hyæng }  
hyæng nim }

(man's) older brother

tola kasyæssimnita

[they] passed away ('went back')

tæk

house; home (H)

10. Apæci nin tola kasyæssko, æmæni  
nin hyæng nim tæk esæ samnita.

My father is dead but my mother  
lives at my older brother's  
home.

- (남) 동생  
하나 씩
12. 박 : 형님 한 분 외에 누이 동생과 남 동생이 하나 씩 있습니다.
- 다 들
13. 제임스 : 다 들 결혼했나요?
- 얼마 전에  
혼자
14. 박 : 누이 동생은 얼마 전에 결혼했지만, 남 동생은 아직 혼자입니다.
- 몇 살
15. 제임스 : 남 동생은 몇 살입니까?
- 나이  
나이가 많 습니다  
나이가 작 습니다
16. 박 : 아직 나이가 그렇게 많지 않 습니다. 에 금년에 스무 살입니다.
17. 제임스 : 학교 에 다니는 가요?

고등학교

대학

대학교

졸업

졸업하고

삼학년

James

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <p>hyəngce<br/>         motu }<br/>         cənpu }</p>           | <p>brothers and sisters; siblings<br/>         in all; all together</p>  |
| <p>11. Hyəngce nin motu myəch pun ina<br/>         twemnikka?</p> | <p>How many brothers and sisters do you<br/>         have in all? ('As for your siblings<br/>         how many persons do they become<br/>         in all?')</p> |

Park

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <p>hyəng nim we e/weye/<br/>         nui (tongsəng)<br/>         (nam) tongsəng<br/>         hana ssik</p>        | <p>beside an older brother<br/>         (younger) sister<br/>         younger brother<br/>         one each; one at one time</p> |
| <p>12. Hyəng nim han pun we e, nui<br/>         tongsəng kwa nam tongsəng i<br/>         hana ssik issimnita.</p> | <p>Besides an older brother, I have a<br/>         younger sister and a younger<br/>         brother.</p>                        |

James

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <p>ta tɪl<br/>         kyəlhon-hæssna yo/kyəlhonhənnayo/</p> | <p>all; everybody<br/>         did [he] get married?</p>                |
| <p>13. Ta tɪl kyəlhon-hæssna yo?</p>                         | <p>Are they all married? ('Did they all<br/>         get married?')</p> |

Park

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <p>əlma cən e<br/>         honca</p>   | <p>sometime ago<br/>         single; alone</p>   |
| <p>14. Nui tongsəng in əlma cən e<br/>         kyəlhon-hæssci man, nam tongsəng<br/>         in acik honca imnita.</p> | <p>My younger sister got married some-<br/>         time ago, but my younger brother<br/>         is still single.</p> |

James

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <p>myəch sal/myəssal/</p>                     | <p>how old?; what age?</p>              |
| <p>15. Nam tongsəng in myəch sal imnikka?</p> | <p>How old is your younger brother?</p> |

18.    박 :           예, 삼 년 전에 고등 학교를 졸업하고,  
                          지금은 서울 대학교 삼 학년에 다니고  
                          있습니다.

Park

nai

age

nai ka manhsimnita

[he] is old ('age is much')

nai ka ceksimnita

[he] is young ('age is little')

16. Acik nai ka kilohke manhci  
anhsimnita. Kimnyen e simu  
sal imnita.

He is still quite young. He is  
twenty years old (this year).

James

17. Hakkyo e taninin ka yo?

Does he go to school?

Park

koting hakkyo

high school

tæhakkyo

university

colæp

graduation

colæp-hako

[he] graduated and...

sam haknyen/hangnyen/

3rd grade

18. Ne, sam nyen cæn e koting hakkyo  
lil colæp-hako, cikim in Sæul  
Tæhakkyo sam haknyen e taniko  
issimnita.

Yes, he finished high school three  
years ago and is attending Seoul  
University in the junior class.

## NOTES ON DIALOGUES

(Numbers correspond to the sentence numbers.)

1. (Sønsæng in) kohang i eti i(s)mnikka? ('What place is your native place?') is the fixed expression of which English equivalent is 'Where do you come from?' or 'Where are you from?'. The noun kohyang refers to either 'one's birth-place' or 'the place of his family origin'.
3. eli- 'to be young' is a description verb which usually means someone 'is in or before his boyhood'. It is also used to the grownups in somewhat cynical sense, implying 'immaturity' for the age. Ttæ 'time', 'occasion', 'when', is a noun. (See Grammate Note 1.)
4. isa 'moving' is a noun which refers to only moving one's residence and/or office from one place to another, and isa-ha- 'to move' is its verb. For 'moving something' other than one's residence, the verb o(l)mki- (transitive verb) is used. Uli 'we' which includes the speaker is a personal noun which occurs in the nominal positions: uli ka 'we (as subject)', uli lil 'us (as object)', uli eke 'to us', uli e 'our', uli nin 'we (as topic)', etc. However, before certain nouns uli occurs without accompanying any particle to make up noun phrases: uli kacok 'my family', uli emeni 'my mother', uli apeci 'my father', uli nala 'my country', uli cip 'my home', uli hakkyo 'our school', uli cip salam 'my wife ('our house person')', etc.
5. Kacok means either 'family' or 'a family member'. So, Kacok i manhsmnita. means '[I] have a large family.' but not '[I] have many families.'
6. Kyelhon means either 'marriage' or 'wedding'; Kyelhon-hæssimnikka? means either 'Are [you] married?' or 'Did [you] get married?'
8. Khin atil ('big son') refers to 'the first son', and khin ttal 'the first daughter'. Mat atil and khin atil are synonymous, so are mat ttal and khin ttal. Regardless of sex, the last child is called mangnæ. Mangnæ + atil (or ttal) = the last child who is a son (or daughter). An imnita. ('No, [it]'s not.') is synonymous with aniyo.

9. Pumo refers always to 'both parents'. Nim is either a free noun or a post-noun. As a free noun it is a poetic word, meaning 'sweetheart' or 'lover'. As a post-noun occurring after a title or kinship name, nim makes up a noun phrase: Title (or kinship name) + nim = Title or kinship name (honored).

Examples:

<u>Regular</u>	<u>Honored</u>	
sənsəŋg	sənsəŋg	{ 'teacher' 'you'
Pak Sənsəŋg	Pak Sənsəŋg nim	'Mr. Park'
pumo	pumo nim	'parents'
hyəŋg	hyəŋg nim	'older brother'
təsa	təsa nim	{ 'Mr. Ambassador' 'ambassador'
sacang	sacang nim	'the president of the company'
apəci	apənim	'father'
əməni	əmənim	'mother'
nui	nunim	'older sister'
atil	atanim	'your son'
ttal	ttanim	'your daughter'

Note: apənim, əmənim, nunim, atanim, ttanim are irregular one-word expressions.

10. Tola ka(sie)ssimnita. ('[They] went back.', '[They] returned.') is a Korean euphemism for 'died'. Tək is the polite equivalent of cip 'house', 'home'. Used directly to the addressee tək also means 'your home' or sometimes 'you'.
11. Motu and its synonym cənpu 'in all', 'all' occurs either as an adverb or as a noun.
12. Nui means 'female sibling' which is used by a male sibling. Nunim is one-word term specifically for 'older sister' and nui tongsəŋg is a noun phrase which means 'younger sister'. Tongsəŋg is used for any 'younger sibling' of either sex. Nui, nunim, nui tongsəŋg are words for males only.
14. Honca 'single', 'alone' occurs either as a noun or as an adverb. As a noun it denotes 'a single person with no family' which is often the synonym of toksin 'an unmarried single person.'

16. Nai ka manh-ta. ('Age is plenty.')
- and Nai ka cək-ta. ('Age is little.')
- are most commonly used for the single verb expressions nilkəss-ta 'is aged'; cə(1)məss-ta 'is young', 'is youthful'. The stems of nilkəss-ta and cəlməss-ta, both of which occur usually in the past tense to describe the present state, are nilk- and cəlm- respectively. Sal ('the age counter') never occurs with the numerals of Chinese character origin, but always preceded by the numerals of Korean origin.
18. Haknyən/hangnyən/ ('learning year') is a counter which occurs only after the numerals of Chinese character origin, and means either 'grader' or 'school grade':

il haknyən	'1st grader' or '1st grade'
i haknyən	'2nd grader' or '2nd grade'
sam haknyən	'3rd grader' or '3rd grade'

## GRAMMAR NOTES

1. ttə 'time', 'occasion', 'when'

The noun ttə bound to other forms occurs in the following constructions:

(a.1.) A (certain) nominal + ttə = a nominal phrase 'such-and-such time'

Examples:

hakkyo tə	'the school days'
cəmsim tə	'the lunch time'
se sal tə	'the age of three'
kuntə tə	'the time of military service'
ai tə	'childhood'

(a.2.) A nominal + ttə + e = an adverbial phrase

hakkyo tə e	'in the school days'
cəmsim tə e	'during the lunch time'
ai tə e	'in [my] childhood', 'when I was child'
se sal tə e	'at the age of three'



(b.1.)  $-(1)l + tt\ae =$  a nominal phrase 'the time of doing so-and-so'

The honorific and/or the past tense suffixes may occur in the  $-(1)l$  form. Examples:

Cal ttæ lil kitalimnita.	'[I]'m waiting for the bed-time ('sleeping time').'
Selo ssaul ttæ ka issimnita.	'There are times of fighting each other.'
Thipi lil pol ttæ ka ceil cæmi issnin sikan ici yo.	'When I watch TV is the most interesting time.' ('The time of watching TV is the most interesting time.')

(b.2.)  $-(1)l + tt\ae + e =$  an adverbial phrase 'at the time of doing so-and-so', 'when [someone] does so-and-so'

The construction  $-(1)l tt\ae e$  which may be followed by a pause occurs as a time adverbial expression before another inflected expression to indicate that the second action/description takes place at the time of the first action/description. Examples:

Hakkyo e kal ttæ e, tækkæ ttwiæ kamnita.	'When [we] go to school, [we] usually run.'
Tæhak e tanil ttæ e, cikim anæ wa kyælhon-hæssci yo.	'When [I] was in college, [I] married my present wife.'
Achim e ilenassil ttæ e, pi ka oko issessimnita.	'When [I] got up in the morning, it was raining.'
Cheim Hankuk e wassil ttæ e, cæ nin chongkak iessæ yo.	'When [I] first came to Korea, I was a bachelor.'

## 2. Infinitive + sæ, 'and...', 'and so...'

Sæ like the particles to (Unit 10) and ya (Unit 11), belongs to a small class of particles which occur after inflected words. Infinitive + sæ which may be followed by a pause occurs before another inflected expression, and denotes the cause, reason or sequence of the first action or description for which the following inflected expression follows. Examples:

Cikim in kyælhon-hæ sæ, anæ wa ai til i tul issimnita.	'Now, I'm married, <u>and</u> have a wife and two children.'
æce nin mom i ap hæ sæ, il-halæ kaci anhæssæ yo.	'I was sick yesterday, <u>so</u> I didn't go to work.'
Pi ka wa sæ, kil i nappikun yo.	' <u>Because</u> it rained, the roads are bad.'

Tosəkwan e ka sɛ, tasəs sikan tongan      'I went to the library and studied  
kongpu-hæssimnita.                              for five hours.'

3. A nominal +  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{we} \\ \text{pakk} \end{array} \right\} e$  'beside + the nominal', 'except the nominal'

We ('outside') is a noun which with the preceding nominal makes up a nominal phrase. A nominal + we + e which may be followed by a pause occurs as an adverbial phrase for the following inflected affirmative expression, meaning 'beside the nominal' or 'except the nominal'.

We and pakk are synonymous and are interchangeable each other. Examples:

Hyəng nim han salam we e, nui                      'Beside one older brother, [I] have  
tongsəng i isse yo.                                      a sister.'

Səul we e Pusan esə to kinmu-həsse              'Not only in Seoul, [I] also worked  
yo.    in Pusan.'

Note that a nominal  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{we} \\ \text{pakk} \end{array} \right\} e$  + negative inflected expression means either 'only the nominal + affirmative inflected expression' or 'except the nominal + negative expression'. Observe the following:

Na nin Hankuk mal pakk e molimnita.              'I know only Korean.' ('Except  
Korean, I don't know.')

Yəngə pakk e pəuci anhæssimnita.              'I learned only English.' ('Except  
English, I didn't learn.')

Phyo l1l tu cang pakk e saci mot                      'I could buy only two tickets.'  
həsse yo.    ('Except two tickets, I couldn't  
buy.')

Also note that k1 we e, (or k1 pakk e) 'Besides', 'Beside that' followed by a pause at the beginning of a sentence occurs as a sentence adverbial.

4. ssik 'each', 'at one time'

A numeral expression + ssik occurs as an adverbial phrase for the following inflected expression, denoting distribution for each separate action. Examples:

Nunim kwa nui tongsəng i hana                      'I have one older sister and one  
ssik isse yo.    younger sister each.'

Tu salam ssik tile osipsiyo.                              'Please come in, two at a time.'

Hankuk 1msik 1l han kaci ssik məke              'I will try (eating) Korean food  
pokesse yo.    one by one.'

Han tal e han pən ssik əməni eke                      'I write my mother once a month.'  
phyənci-haci yo.

5. Infinitive + iss-

The verb iss- preceded by a small class of action verbs in the infinitive form, occurs as an auxiliary verb.. It deontes the state of being. Compare the following:

sal-	'to live'	{salə issimnita {salə kyesimnita	'is alive'; 'is living'
anc-	'to sit'	ance issimnita	'is seated'
kac-	'to possess'	kacə issimnita	'has'; 'possess'
sə-	'to stand'	sə issimnita	'is standing'
seu-	{'to erect' {'to park'	sewə issimnita	'is being erected'; 'is being parked'
tu-	{'to put' {'to place'	tue issimnita	'is being placed'
noh-	{'to put' {'to place'	noha issimnita	'is being left'; 'is being placed'
yelli-	'to be open'	yellie issimnita	'is being open'; 'is left open'

## DRILLS

## A. Substitution Drill

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. Pak Sənsəng in kohyang i ət̪i isə yo?               | { Where is Mr. Park from?<br>Where do you come from, Mr. Park? |
| 2. <u>Ceimsi Sənsəng</u> in kohyang i ət̪i isə yo?     | Where's Mr. James from?  |
| 3. <u>Sənsəng puin</u> in kohyang i ət̪i isə yo?       | Where's your wife from?  |
| 4. <u>Sənsəng ɛmɛni</u> nin kohyang i ət̪i isə yo?     | Where was your mother born?                                    |
| 5. <u>Mikuk tæsa</u> nin kohyang i ət̪i isə yo?        | Where's the U.S. Ambassador from?                              |
| 6. <u>Hankuk mal sənsəng</u> in kohyang i ət̪i isə yo? | Where's the Korean teacher from?                               |
| 7. <u>Yəngə sənsəng</u> in kohyang i ət̪i isə yo?      | Where's the English teacher from?                              |
| 8. Yəngə sənsəng in <u>kohyang i ət̪i isimnikka?</u>   | Where's the English teacher from?                              |
| 9. Yəngə sənsəng in <u>kohyang i ət̪i imnikka?</u>     | Where's the English teacher from?                              |
| 10. Yəngə sənsəng in <u>kohyang i ət̪i iye yo?</u>     | Where's the English teacher from?                              |

## B. Substitution Drill

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. Ce ka se sal ttæ Səul lo isa-hæssimnita.           | [We] moved to Seoul when I was 3 years old.       |
| 2. Ce ka se sal ttæ (e) <u>Səul lo wassimnita.</u>    | [We] <b>came</b> to Seoul when I was 3 years old. |
| 3. Ce ka <u>tasəs sal ttæ</u> (e) Səul lo wassimnita. | [We] came to Seoul when I was 5 years old.        |
| 4. Ce ka <u>ilkop sal ttæ</u> (e) Səul lo wassimnita. | [We] came to Seoul when I was 7 years old.        |
| 5. Ce ka <u>ahop sal ttæ</u> (e) Səul lo wassimnita.  | [We] came to Seoul when I was 9 years old.        |

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 6. Ce ka <u>yel sal ttæ</u> (e) Səul lo<br>wassi <del>m</del> nita.       | [We] came to Seoul when I was 10<br>years old. |
| 7. Ce ka <u>yel han sal ttæ</u> (e) Səul lo<br>wassi <del>m</del> nita.   | [We] came to Seoul when I was 11<br>years old. |
| 8. Ce ka <u>simul tu sal ttæ</u> (e) Səul lo<br>wassi <del>m</del> nita.  | [We] came to Seoul when I was 22<br>years old. |
| 9. Ce ka <u>səlhin se sal ttæ</u> (e) Səul<br>lo wassi <del>m</del> nita. | [We] came to Seoul when I was 33<br>years old. |
| 10. Ce ka <u>mahin ne sal ttæ</u> (e) Səul<br>lo wassi <del>m</del> nita. | [We] came to Seoul when I was 44<br>years old. |

## C. Substitution Drill

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. Cə nin kəl Səul esə salessi <del>m</del> nita.                               | I have lived mostly in Seoul.             |
| 2. Cə nin kəl Səul esə <u>il-hæssi<del>m</del>nita.</u>                         | I have worked mostly in Seoul.            |
| 3. Cə nin kəl Səul esə <u>kongpu-hæssi<del>m</del>nita.</u>                     | I have studied mostly in Seoul.           |
| 4. Cə nin kəl Səul esə <u>hakkyo e</u><br><u>taniessi<del>m</del>nita.</u>      | I attended school mostly in Seoul.        |
| 5. Cə nin kəl Səul esə <u>issæssi<del>m</del>nita.</u>                          | I have stayed mostly in Seoul.            |
| *6. Cə nin kəl Səul esə <u>hakkyo lil</u><br><u>na wassi<del>m</del>nita.</u>   | I finished most of schools in<br>Seoul.   |
| 7. Cə nin kəl Səul esə <u>hakkyo lil</u><br><u>coləp-hæssi<del>m</del>nita.</u> | I graduated most of schools in<br>Seoul.  |
| *8. Cə nin kəl Səul esə <u>calassi<del>m</del>nita.</u>                         | I have grown up mostly in Seoul.          |
| 9. Cə nin kəl Səul esə <u>Hankuk mal il</u><br><u>pəwæssi<del>m</del>nita.</u>  | I have learned Korean mostly in<br>Seoul. |

## D. Substitution Drill

- |                                    |  |
|------------------------------------|--|
| 1. <u>Hyəng nim</u> i kyesimnikka? | Do you have an older brother?<br>(to male)   |
| *2. <u>Nunim</u> i kyesimnikka?    | Do you have an older sister? (to<br>male)    |
| *3. <u>Oppa</u> ka kyesimnikka?    | Do you have an older brother? (to<br>female) |
| *4. <u>ənni</u> ka kyesimnikka?    | Do you have an older sister? (to<br>female)  |

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| *5. <u>Acəssi</u> ka kyesimnikka?       | Do you have an uncle?                        |
| *6. <u>Acuməni</u> ka kyesimnikka?      | Do you have an aunt?                         |
| *7. <u>Ttanim</u> i kyesimnikka?        | Do you have a daughter (H)?                  |
| *8. <u>Chinchək</u> i kyesimnikka?      | Do you have relatives?                       |
| 9. <u>Hyəngce (tɪl)</u> i kyesimnikka?  | Do you have brothers and sisters?            |
| 10. <u>Puin</u> i kyesimnikka?          | Do you have a wife?                          |
| *11. <u>Cangmo (nim)</u> i kyesimnikka? | Do you have mother-in-law ('wife's mother)?  |
| *12. <u>Cangin</u> i kyesimnikka?       | Do you have father-in-law ('wife's father')? |
| *13. <u>Sipumo (nim)</u> i kyesimnikka? | Do you have your husband's parents?          |

## E. Substitution Drill

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. Cə e anə nin Mikuk e issimnita.                     | My wife is in America.                         |
| 2. <u>Cə e kacok</u> in Mikuk e issimnita.             | My family is in America.                       |
| 3. <u>Cə e atɪl</u> in Mikuk e issimnita.              | My son is in America.                          |
| 4. <u>Cə e ttal</u> in Mikuk e issimnita.              | My daughter is in America.                     |
| 5. <u>Cə e (nam) tongsəng</u> in Mikuk e<br>issimnita. | My younger brother is in America.              |
| *6. <u>Cə e sachon</u> in Mikuk e issimnita.           | My cousin is in America.                       |
| *7. <u>Cə e cokha</u> nin Mikuk e issimnita.           | My nephew is in America.                       |
| *8. <u>Cə e cokha ttal</u> in Mikuk e<br>issimnita.    | My niece is in America.                        |
| *9. <u>Cə e chinchək</u> in Mikuk e issimnita.         | My relatives are in America.                   |
| *10. <u>Uli cuin</u> in Mikuk e issimnita.             | My husband ('our master') is in<br>America.    |
| *11. <u>Cə e namphən</u> in Mikuk e issimnita.         | My husband is in America (to older<br>people). |
| *12. <u>Uli sawi</u> nin Mikuk e issimnita.            | My son-in-law is in America.                   |
| *13. <u>Uli myənuli</u> nin Mikuk e issimnita.         | My daughter-in-law is in America.              |

## F. Substitution Drill

- |  |                               |
|--|-------------------------------|
| 1. Pumo nim i sala kyesimnikka?          | Are [your] parents living?    |
| 2. <u>Apəci</u> ka sala kyesimnikka?     | Is [your] father living?      |
| 3. <u>əməni</u> ka sala kyesimnikka?     | Is [your] mother living?      |
| *4. <u>Halapəci</u> ka sala kyesimnikka? | Is [your] grandfather living? |

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| *5. <u>Halmeni</u> ka sala kyesimnikka?    | Is [your] grandmother living?                     |
| 6. <u>Acessi</u> ka sala kyesimnikka?      | Is [your] uncle living?                           |
| 7. <u>Acumeni</u> ka sala kyesimnikka?     | Is [your] aunt living?                            |
| 8. <u>Nunim</u> i sala kyesimnikka?        | Is [your] older sister living? (to male)          |
| 9. <u>Cangmo (nim)</u> i sala kyesimnikka? | Is [your] mother-in-law ('wife's mother') living? |
| 10. <u>Cangin</u> i sala kyesimnikka?      | Is [your] father-in-law ('wife's father') living? |

## G. Substitution Drill

- |  |                               |
|--|-------------------------------|
| 1. Uli kacok i Seul lo isa-hæssimnita.           | My family moved to Seoul.     |
| 2. Uli kacok i Seul lo <u>kassimnita</u> .       | My family went to Seoul.      |
| 3. Uli kacok i Seul lo <u>ttenassimnita</u> .    | My family left for Seoul.     |
| 4. Uli kacok i Seul lo <u>wassimnita</u> .       | My family came to Seoul.      |
| 5. Uli kacok i Seul lo <u>olla wassimnita</u> .  | My family came up to Seoul.   |
| 6. Uli kacok i Seul lo <u>olla kassimnita</u> .  | My family went up to Seoul.   |
| 7. Uli kacok i Seul lo <u>nælye kassimnita</u> . | My family went down to Seoul. |
| 8. Uli kacok i Seul lo <u>kæle kassimnita</u> .  | My family walked to Seoul.    |
| 9. Uli kacok i Seul lo <u>thako kassimnita</u> . | My family rode to Seoul.      |

## H. Substitution Drill

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Kacok in myæch pun ina kyesimnikka?            | How many are there in your family?             |
| 2. <u>Sensæng</u> in myæch pun ina kyesimnikka?   | How many teachers are there?                   |
| 3. <u>Hyæng nim</u> in myæch pun ina kyesimnikka? | How many older brothers do you have? (to male) |
| 4. <u>Nunim</u> in myæch pun ina kyesimnikka?     | How many older sisters do you have? (to male)  |
| 5. <u>Acessi</u> nin myæch pun ina kyesimnikka?   | How many uncles do you have?                   |
| 6. <u>Acumeni</u> nin myæch pun ina kyesimnikka?  | How many aunts do you have?                    |

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 7. <u>Mikuk chinku</u> nin myæch pun ina<br>kyesimnikka? | How many American friends do you<br>have?   |
| 8. <u>Hyængce</u> nin myæch pun ina<br>kyesimnikka?      | How many brothers and sisters do<br>you have?   |
| 9. <u>Ttanim</u> in myæch pun ina kyesimnikka?           | How many daughters do you have?   |
| 10. <u>enni</u> nin myæch pun ina kyesimnikka?           | How many older sisters do you have?<br>(to female)  |
| 11. <u>Oppa</u> nin myæch pun ina kyesimnikka?           | How many older brothers do you have?<br>(to female)   |
| 12. Oppa nin myæch pun ina <u>twesimnikka</u> ?          | How many older brothers do you have?<br>(!As for your older brothers, how<br>many do they become?!) |

## I. Substitution Drill

- |   |                                     |
|---|-------------------------------------|
| 1. Apæci nin tola kasyæssimnita.                    | My father passed away.              |
| 2. <u>æmeni</u> nin tola kasyæssimnita.             | My mother passed away.              |
| 3. <u>Halapeci</u> nin tola kasyæssimnita.          | My grandfather passed away.         |
| 4. <u>Halmæni</u> nin tola kasyæssimnita.           | My grandmother passed away.         |
| 5. <u>Acæssi</u> nin tola kasyæssimnita.            | My uncle passed away.               |
| 6. <u>Acumæni</u> nin tola kasyæssimnita.           | My aunt passed away.                |
| *7. <u>Khin hyæng nim</u> in tola<br>kasyæssimnita. | My oldest brother passed away.      |
| *8. <u>Khin nunim</u> in tola kasyæssimnita.        | My oldest sister passed away.       |
| *9. Khin nunim in <u>cukæssimnita</u> .             | My oldest sister {is dead.<br>died. |
| 10. Khin nunim in <u>kyælhon-hæssimnita</u> .       | My oldest sister is married.        |
| 11. Khin nunim in <u>honca imnita</u> .             | My oldest sister is single.         |
| 12. Khin nunim in <u>honca samnita</u> .            | My oldest sister lives alone.       |
| 13. Khin nunim in <u>nai ka manhsimnita</u> .       | My oldest sister is old.            |
| 14. Khin nunim in <u>nai ka cæksimnita</u> .        | My oldest sister is young.          |

## J. Substitution Drill

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. æmeni nin hyæng nim tæk esæ<br>samnita.                  | [My] mother lives at my older<br>brother's home. |
| 2. <u>Cæimsi</u> nin <u>Kim Sensæng</u> tæk esæ<br>samnita. | James lives at Mr. Kim's home.                   |



- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 3. <u>Apeci</u> nin <u>Mikuk</u> esə samnita.                | [My] father lives in America.                           |
| 4. <u>Halapeci</u> nin <u>kohyang</u> esə samnita.           | [My] grandfather lives in the home town.                |
| 5. <u>Acessi</u> nin <u>Kulapha</u> esə samnita.             | [My] uncle lives in Europe.                             |
| 6. <u>Hyeng nim</u> in <u>Inchen</u> pukin esə samnita.      | [My] older brother lives in the vicinity of Incheon.    |
| 7. <u>Nunim</u> in <u>Pusan</u> sinə esə samnita.            | [My] older sister lives in downtown Pusan.              |
| 8. <u>Cangin kwa cangmo</u> nin <u>sikol</u> esə samnita.    | [My] wife's father and mother live in the country.      |
| 9. <u>Siapeci wa sieməni</u> nin <u>kohyang</u> esə samnita. | [My] husband's father and mother live in the home town. |

## K. Substitution Drill

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. Ai ka tul issimnita.  | I have two children.                                |
| 2. <u>Atil</u> i <u>hana</u> issimnita.                        | I have one son.                                     |
| 3. <u>Ttal</u> i <u>ses</u> issimnita.                         | I have three daughters.                             |
| *4. <u>Sonca</u> ka <u>tul</u> issimnita.                      | I have two grandsons.                               |
| *5. <u>Sonnye</u> ka <u>nes</u> issimnita.                     | I have four granddaughters.                         |
| 6. <u>Hyeng nim</u> i <u>ne(s)</u> ( <u>salam</u> ) issimnita. | I have four older brothers.                         |
| 7. <u>Nunim</u> i <u>tasəs</u> ( <u>salam</u> ) issimnita.     | I (male) have five older sisters.                   |
| 8. <u>Acessi</u> ka <u>yəsəs</u> <u>pun</u> issimnita.         | I have six uncles.                                  |
| 9. <u>Acuməni</u> ka <u>ilkop</u> <u>pun</u> issimnita.        | I have seven aunts.                                 |
| 10. <u>Oppa</u> ka <u>han</u> <u>pun</u> issimnita.            | I (female) have one older brother.                  |
| 11. <u>Yetongsəng</u> i <u>tul</u> issimnita.                  | I have two younger sisters.                         |
| *12. <u>Chənam</u> i <u>yələs</u> issimnita.                   | I have several brothers-in-law ('wife's brothers'). |
| *13. <u>Chəce</u> ka <u>myech</u> issimnita.                   | I have some wife's younger sisters.                 |
| *14. <u>Chəhyəng</u> i <u>tu-sə-nəs</u> issimnita.             | I have a couple of wife's older sisters.            |

## L. Substitution Drill

- |   |                                  |
|---|----------------------------------|
| 1. <u>Tongsəng</u> in <u>myech</u> sal imnikka? | How old is your younger brother? |
| 2. <u>Sənsəng</u> in <u>myech</u> sal imnikka?  | How old is the teacher?          |
| 3. <u>Punin</u> in <u>myech</u> sal imnikka?    | How old is your wife?            |
| 4. <u>Nunim</u> in <u>myech</u> sal imnikka?    | How old is your older sister?    |

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 5. <u>Hyəng nim</u> in myəch sal imnikka?     | How old is your older brother?<br>(to male)   |
| 6. <u>Ttanim</u> in myəch sal imnikka?        | How old is your daughter?                     |
| 7. <u>Atil</u> in myəch sal imnikka?          | How old is your son?                          |
| 8. <u>Khin ai nin</u> myəch sal imnikka?      | How old is your first child?                  |
| 9. <u>Chəs ccə atil</u> in myəch sal imnikka? | How old is your first son?                    |
| 10. <u>Chənam</u> in myəch sal imnikka?       | How old is your wife's brother?               |
| 11. <u>Chəce</u> in myəch sal imnikka?        | How old is your wife's younger<br>sister?     |
| 12. <u>Sitongsəng</u> in myəch sal imnikka?   | How old is your husband's younger<br>brother? |

## M. Substitution Drill

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. Hyəng nim we e nunim to issimnita.   | I have an older sister as well as<br>an older brother.        |
| 2. <u>Namtongsəng</u> we e <u>yətongsəng</u> to<br>issimnita.                   | I have a younger sister as well as<br>a younger brother.      |
| 3. <u>Səul Təhakkjo</u> we e <u>Kolyə Təhakkjo</u><br>to issimnita.             | There is Korea University as well<br>as Seoul University.     |
| 4. <u>Panto Hothel</u> we e <u>Cosən Hothel</u> to<br>issimnita.                | There is Chosen Hotel as well as<br>Bando Hotel.              |
| 5. <u>Mikuk Təsakwan</u> we e <u>Yəngkuk</u><br><u>Yəngsakwan</u> to issimnita. | There is British Consulate as well<br>as American Embassy.    |
| 6. <u>Ilpon chinku</u> we e <u>Cungkuk chinku</u><br>to issimnita.              | I have a Chinese friend as well as<br>a Japanese friend.      |
| 7. <u>Atil hana</u> we e <u>ttal tul</u> to<br>issimnita.                       | I have two daughters as well as a<br>son.                     |
| 8. <u>Kicha wa ppəsi</u> we e <u>pihəngki wa</u><br><u>pə</u> to issimnita.     | There are airplanes and ships as<br>well as trains and buses. |
| 9. <u>Kukce Kikcang</u> we e <u>Cungang Kikcang</u><br>to issimnita.            | There is Central Theatre as well<br>as International Theatre. |

## N. Expansion Drill

Tutor: Hyəng nim i issimnita. /nunim/

'I have an older brother.' /older sister/

Student: Hyəng nim we e nunim to  
issimnita.

'Beside an older brother I also have  
an older sister.'

1. Pullansə mal il pəwəssimnita. /Tokil  
mal/

Pullansə mal we e Tokil mal to  
pəwəssimnita.

2. Na nin Səul esə salassimnita.  
/Pusan/

Na nin Səul we e Pusan esə to  
salassimnita.

3. Uli hakkyo esə Hankuk mal il  
kalichimnita. /Ssolyən mal/

Uli hakkyo esə Hankuk mal we e  
Ssolyən mal to kalichimnita.

4. Səul sinə lil kukyəng-həssimnita.  
/Cungang Pakmulkwān/

Səul sinə we e Cungang Pakmulkwān  
to kukyəng-həssimnita.

5. Kicha wa ppesi lo kal su issimnita.  
/pihəngki/

Kicha wa ppesi we e pihəngki lo to  
kal su issimnita.

6. Kī yəca wa kathī kako siphsimnita.  
/Kim Kisu/

Kī yəca we e Kim Kisu wa to kathī  
kako siphsimnita.

7. Səul pukin il kukyəng-halyəko  
hamnita. /Pusan/

Səul pukin we e Pusan to kukyəng-  
halyəko hamnita.

8. Kacok til il pwa ya hakessimnita.  
/yələ chinku/

Kacok til we e yələ chinku to pwa  
ya hakessimnita.

9. Hankuk inhəng e kal il i issimnita.  
/Cungang Sicang/

Hankuk inhəng we e Cungang Sicang  
e to kal il i issimnita.

## O. Substitution Drill

1. Cə nin cangnyən e koting hakkyo  
lil coləp-həssimnita.

I graduated from the high school  
last year.

2. Cə nin cangnyən e cunghakkyo lil  
coləp-həssimnita.

I graduated from the junior high  
school ('middle school') last  
year.

3. Cə nin cangnyən e təshakkyo lil  
coləp-həssimnita.

I graduated from the university  
last year.

4. Cə nin cangnyən e sohakkyo lil  
coləp-həssimnita.

I graduated from the elementary  
school last year.

5. Cə nin cangnyən e Səul Təshak il  
coləp-həssimnita.

I graduated from Seoul University  
last year.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 6. Cə nin cangnyən e Səul Təhak il<br><u>na wassimnita.</u>         | I graduated from Seoul University<br>last year. |
| 7. Cə nin cangnyən e Səul Təhak il<br><u>tanlæssimnita.</u>         | I attended Seoul University last<br>year.       |
| *8. Cə nin cangnyən e Səul Təhak il<br><u>tile kassimnita.</u>      | I entered Seoul University last<br>year.        |
| *9. Cə nin cangnyən e Səul Təhak il<br><u>kkith-machiæssimnita.</u> | I finished Seoul University last<br>year.       |
| 10. Cə nin cangnyən Səul Təhak il<br><u>kimantuæssimnita.</u>       | I quit Seoul University last year.              |
| 11. Cə nin cangnyən e Səul Təhak il<br><u>sicak-hæssimnita.</u>     | I began Seoul University last year.             |

## P. Grammar Drill

Tutor: Hakkyo e kamnita. Ppəsi lll  
thamnita.

'[I] go to school. [I] take the  
bus.'

Student: Hakkyo e kal ttə (e), ppəsi  
lll thamnita.

'When I go to school I take the  
bus.'

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Mok i malimnita. Mul il masimnita.                             | Mok i malil ttə (e), mul il<br>masimnita.                          |
| 2. Pə ka kophimnita. Cəsim il<br>məksimnita.                      | Pə ka kophil ttə (e), cəsim il<br>məksimnita.                      |
| 3. Catongcha lll samnita. Ton i<br>philyo-hamnita.                | Catongcha lll sal ttə (e), ton i<br>philyo-hamnita.                |
| 4. Phyənci lll puchimnita. Uphyənkuk<br>e ka ya hamnita.          | Phyənci lll puchil ttə (e), uphyənkuk<br>e ka ya hamnita.          |
| 5. Hankuk yəngħwa lll sangyəngħamnita.<br>Hangsang polə kamnita.  | Hankuk yəngħwa lll sangyəngħal ttə<br>(e), hangsang polə kamnita.  |
| 6. Səul esə il-hamnita. Kukyəng-<br>hakessimnita.                 | Səul esə il-hal ttə (e), kukyəng-<br>hakessimnita.                 |
| 7. Kələ sə hwesa e kamnita. Kim<br>Sənsəng cip e tillikessimnita. | Kələ sə hwesa e kal ttə (e), Kim<br>Sənsəng cip e tillikessimnita. |
| 8. Isa-hamnita. Sə cha lll sakessimnita.                          | Isa-hal ttə (e), sə cha lll<br>sakessimnita.                       |
| 9. Na nin pappimnita. Məkilə na kal<br>su əpsimnita.              | Na nin pappil ttə (e), məkilə na<br>kal su əpsimnita.              |

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 11. Təhak e taniəssimnita. Hankuk mal il pəwəssimnita.             | Təhak e taniəssil ttə (e), Hankuk mal il pəwəssimnita.             |
| 12. Hankuk mal il sicak-həssimnita. Chəim e nin əlyəwəssimnita.    | Hankuk mal il sicak-həssil ttə (e), chəim e nin əlyəwəssimnita.    |
| 13. K1 yəca ekese phyənci l1l patəssimnita. Na to kot ssəssimnita. | K1 yəca ekese phyənci l1l patəssil ttə (e), na to kot ssəssimnita. |
| 14. Təhak il kkith-machiəssimnita. Cikim anə l1l mannəssimnita.    | Təhak il kkith-machiəssil ttə (e), cikim anə l1l mannəssimnita.    |
| 15. Ppəsi esə nəliəssimnita. Anə ka kitaliko issəssimnita.         | Ppəsi esə nəliəssil ttə (e), anə ka kitaliko issəssimnita.         |

## Q. Grammar Drill

Tutor: ənce ppəsi l1l thamnikka?  
/Hakkyo e kamnita./

'When do you take the bus?' / [I go to school.]

Student: Hakkyo e kal ttə (e), ppəsi l1l thamnita.

'When I go to school, I take the bus.'

- ənce phyənci l1l ssimmikka?  
/Sikan i issimnita./
- ənce məkcu l1l masimnikka? /Mok i malimnita./
- ənce hapsing il thamnikka? /Salam i manhci anhsimnita./
- ənce Yəngə l1l kalichikəssimnikka?  
/Yəngə sənsəng i əpsimnita./
- ənce tək e kyesikəssimnikka? /Cənyək il məksimnita./
- ənce kyəlhon-hakəssimnikka?  
/Cohahanin yəca l1l mannəmnita./
- ənce halapəci ka tola kasyəssimnikka?  
/Nə ka yəl sal tweəssimnita./
- ənce kkaci honca saləssimnikka?  
/Təhak il coləp-həssimnita./
- ənce Yəngə l1l pəwəssimnikka?  
/Cunghakkyo e taniəssimnita./

Sikan i issil ttə (e), phyənci l1l ssimnita.

Mok i malil ttə (e), məkcu l1l masimnita.

Salam i manhci anhil ttə (e), hapsing il thamnita.

Yəngə səngsəng i əpsil ttə (e), yəngə l1l kalichikəssimnita.

Cənyək il məkil ttə (e), cip e isskəssimnita.

Cohahanin yəca l1l mannəl ttə (e), kyəlhon-hakəssimnita.

Nə ka yəl sal tweəssil ttə (e), halapəci ka tola kasyəssimnita.

Təhak il coləp-həssil ttə kkaci, honca saləssimnita.

Cunghakkyo e taniəssil ttə (e), Yəngə l1l pəwəssimnita.



B. Prepare a short biography of yourself and tell the class. The information in your autobiography may include your home town, your schools, your immediate family, your parents, brothers and sisters if any; what they are doing; their ages; their marital status, and so forth.

C. Make a short statement or question using each of the following kinship terms:

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. grandfather                         | 20. your husband   |
| 2. grandmother                         | 21. your daughter  |
| 3. parents                             | 22. relatives  |
| 4. father                              | 23. parents-in-law ('husband's parents')                         |
| 5. mother                              | 24. father-in-law ('husband's father')                           |
| 6. uncle                               | 25. mother-in-law ('husband's mother')                           |
| 7. aunt                                | 26. father-in-law ('wife's father')                              |
| 8. older sister (for male and female)  | 27. mother-in-law ('wife's mother')                              |
| 9. older brother (for male and female) | 28. sister-in-law ('wife's older sister')                        |
| 10. daughter                           | 29. sister-in-law ('wife's younger sister')                      |
| 11. son                                | 30. sister(s)-in-law ('husband's sister(s)')                     |
| 12. cousin (male, female)              | 31. brother(s)-in-law ('wife's brother(s)') /chenam/             |
| 13. nephew                             | 32. son-in-law /sawi/  |
| 14. niece                              | 33. daughter-in-law  |
| 15. grandson                           | 34. brother-in-law ('male's sister's husband') /maepu/           |
| 16. granddaughter                      | 35. brother-in-law ('female's older sister's husband') /hyengpu/ |
| 17. my wife                            |  |
| 18. my husband                         |  |
| 19. your wife                          |  |

## 제 15 과      개인의 일생과 가족 이야기 (계속)

1. 이 : 제임스 선생은 미국 어디에서 오셨습니까?

뉴욕 주

났습니다

아이를 낳았습니다

아이가 낳았습니다

자랐습니다

2. 제임스 : 저의 집은 시카고에 있습니다. 그러나, 저는  
뉴욕 주에서 낳아서 거기에서 자랐습니다.

3. 이 : 그럼, 학교도 뉴욕 주에서 다녔습니까?

대학

4. 제임스 : 대학 말입니까? 대학은 보스턴에서  
다녔습니다.

나 왔습니다

5. 이 : 언제 대학은 나 왔습니까?

팔 년 전에

6. 제임스 : 팔 년 전에 나 왔습니다.

그 후에

7. 이 : 그 후에는 무엇을 했습니까?

졸업합니다

졸업한 후에



## UNIT 15. Talking About One's Life and Family (Continued)

## BASIC DIALOGUES FOR MEMORIZATION

Dialogue ALee

1. Ceimsı Sənsəng in Mikuk əti esə  
osyəssimnikka?

Where in America are you from, Mr. James?

James

- Nyuyok Cu  
nahassimnita  
ai lil nahassimnita  
ai ka nahassimnita  
calassimnita
2. Cə e cip in Sikhako e issimnita.  
Kiləna, cə nin Nyuyok Cu esə  
naha sə kəki esə calassimnita.

New York State  
[I] was born  
[she] gave birth to a child  
a child was born  
[I] grew up

My home is in Chicago. But I was born in New York State and grew up there.

Lee

3. Kiləm, hakkyo to Nyuyok Cu esə  
tanyəssimnikka?

Well, did you go to school in New York State, too?

James

- təhak
4. Təhak mal imnikka? Təhak in  
Posithon esə tanyəssimnita.

college

You mean college? I went to college in Boston.

Lee

- na wassimnikka
5. ənce təhak in na wassimnikka?

(!did you come out?!)

When did you graduate from college?

James

- phal nyən cən e
6. Han phal nyən cən e na wassimnita.

8 years ago

I graduated about eight years ago.

- 얼마 동안  
어느 회사에서
8. 제임스 : 대학을 졸업한 후에 얼마 동안 어느 회사에서 일했습니까.
- 언제부터  
외교관이 되었어요
9. 이 : 그럼, 언제부터 외교관이 되었어요?
- 들어 옵니다  
들어 온지  
국무성  
꼭
10. 제임스 : 국무성에 들어 온지 꼭 육 년 되었습니다.
- 오기 전에  
여러 나라에서
11. 이 : 한국에 오기 전에 여러 나라에서 일했나요?
12. 제임스 : 예, 서울에 오기 전에(는) 구라파 여러 나라에서 한 사 년 동안 근무했었습니다.
- 있는 동안  
구라파에 있는 동안  
여행  
여행(을) 했습니까
13. 이 : 구라파에 있는 동안 여행 많이 했습니까?

Lee

- ki hu e after that  
 7. Ki hu e nin muēs il hæssimnikka? What did you do after that?

James

- coləp graduation  
 coləp-hamnita [I] graduate  
 coləphan hu e after graduating  
 əlma tongan for some time  
 əni hwesa a certain firm  
 8. Təhək il coləp-han hu e, əlma After I graduated from college, I  
 tongan əni hwesa esə il-hæssimnita. worked with a business firm for  
 some time.

Lee

- ənce puthə since when  
 wekyokwan i tweəsə yo have [you] become a diplomat?  
 9. Kıləm, ənce puthə wekyokwan i Then, when did you join the foreign  
 tweəsə yo? service? ('Since when have you  
 become a diplomat?')

James

- tılə omnita ('I come in'); [I] join  
 tılə on ci since I joined  
 Kukmusəng/kungmusəng/ State Department  
 kkok just; without fail; exactly  
 10. Kukmusəng e tılə on ci, kkok yuk It has been exactly six years since  
 nyən tweəssimnita. I came into the State Department.

Dialogue BLee

- okı cən e before coming  
 yələ nala esə in many countries  
 11. Hankuk e okı cən e, yələ nala Have you worked in many countries  
 esə il-hæssna/ilhəanna/ yo? before coming to Korea?

14. 제임스 : 예, 많이 (여행)했습니다.
- 기후  
비슷합니다
15. 이 : 거기에 기후는 한국과 비슷했습니까?
- 생각합니다
16. 제임스 : 예, 그렇게 생각합니다.
- 기후에 대해(서)  
말씀 해주십시오
17. 이 : 그 곳, 기후에 대해서 좀 말씀 해주십시오.
- 봄  
납씨  
따뜻 하지만  
비  
비가 옵니다  
여름  
덥지 않습니다
18. 제임스 : 봄 납씨는 따뜻하지만, 비가 좀 많이 오지요.  
여름에는 그리 덥지 않어요.
- 가을  
겨울  
갑습니다
19. 이 : 가을과 겨울 납씨도 한국과 갑습니까?

James

12. Ne, Səul e oki cən e (nɪn),  
Kulapha yələ nala esə han sa  
nyən tongan kinmu-hæssəssimnita.

Yes, I worked in several countries  
in Europe for about four years  
before I came to Seoul.

Lee

issnɪn/innɪn/ tongan

while [I] stay; while [I] was  
(there)

Kulapha e issnɪn tongan  
yəhæŋg

while [you] were in Europe  
travelling; trip

yəhæŋg (ɪl) hæssimnikka

have you travelled?

13. Kulapha e issnɪn tongan, yəhæŋg  
manhi hæssimnikka?

Did you travel a lot while in Europe?

James

14. Ne, manhi (yəhæŋg-)hæssimnita.

Yes, I travelled a lot.

Lee

kihu

climate; weather

pisithamnikka

is [it] similar?

15. Kəki e kihu nɪn Hankuk kwa  
pisithæssimnikka?

Was the weather there similar to  
that of Korea?

James

səŋgak-hamnita

[I] think

16. Ne, kiləhke səŋgak-hamnita.

Yes, I think so.

Lee

kihu e təhə (sə)

about the weather; concerning  
the weather

malssim-hə cusipsiyo

please tell me

17. Ki kos kihu e təhə (sə) com  
malssim-hə cusipsiyo.

Please tell me a little about the  
climate there.

James

pom

spring

nalssi

weather

ttattithaci man

[it]'s warm but

눈

눈이 오고

바람

바람이 불니다

20. 제임스 : 예, 대개 가을 날씨는 같습니다. 그러나, 겨울에는 한국보다 눈이 많이 오고, 바람이 많이 불니다.

- |                  |                         |
|------------------|-------------------------|
| pi               | rain                    |
| pi ka omnita     | it rains ('rain comes') |
| yəlim            | summer                  |
| təpci anhsimnita | [it]'s not hot          |
18. Pom nalssi nin ttattithaci man,  
pi ka com manhi oci yo. Yəlim  
e nin killi təpci anhe yo.
- Spring weather is warm but it rains  
a lot. It's not so hot in the  
summer.

Lee

- |                           |                   |
|---------------------------|-------------------|
| kail                      | autumn; fall      |
| kyəul                     | winter            |
| kathsimnikka/kassimnikka/ | is [it] the same? |
19. Kail kwa kyəul nalssi to Hankuk  
kwa kathsimnikka?
- Is the weather in the autumn and  
winter the same as in Korea?

James

- |                     |                                   |
|---------------------|-----------------------------------|
| nun                 | snow                              |
| nun i oko           | it snows and ('snow comes and..') |
| palam               | wind                              |
| palam i pu(11)mnita | it's windy; wind blows            |
20. Ne, təkə kail nalssi nin kathsimnita.  
Kiləna, kyəul e nin Hankuk pota  
nun i mahhi oko, palam i manhi  
pumnita.
- Yes, the weather in the fall is about  
the same, but in the winter it is  
more snowy and windy than in Korea.

## NOTES ON DIALOGUES

(Numbers correspond to the sentence numbers.)

5. (Hakkyo 111) na o- ('to come out (of school)') is more colloquial than coləp-ha- 'to graduate'
8. əni hwesa and əлма tongan in the statement sentences mean 'a (certain) company' and 'for some time' respectively. Some of the interrogative expressions in the sentences other than question sentences mean 'certain--' or 'some--': əni hakkyo 'some school', nuku 'somebody', əti 'some place', əni nal 'one-day' or 'someday', ənce 'sometime', myəch pən 'several times', myechil tongan 'for some days', etc. (See Grammar Note 4b, Unit 10.)
10. Kkok 'exactly', 'just', 'without fail' is an adverb which occurs either before another adverbial expression or before an inflected expression. When it occurs before another adverbial expression kkok means 'exactly' or 'just'; before an inflected expression it means 'without fail'. Compare the following:

## GROUP 1 'exactly'

<u>Kkok han-si e ttənakessimnita.</u>	'I will leave <u>at 1 o'clock sharp.</u> ( 'I will leave <u>exactly at 1 o'clock.</u> )
<u>Kkok kiləhke hasipsiyo.</u>	'Do [it] <u>exactly like that.</u> ( 'Do exactly so.' )
Na nin <u>kkok han tal tongan</u> Hankuke lil pəwəssimnita.	'I have studied Korean <u>just (for)</u> <u>a month.</u>

## GROUP 2 'without fail'

Onil pam e <u>kkok tola osipsiyo.</u>	'Be <u>sure to come back tonight.</u> ( 'Come back tonight <u>without fail.</u> )
Ki il il <u>kkok kkith-nəkessimnita.</u>	'I <u>will finish</u> the work <u>without fail.</u>
<u>Kkok yumyəng-han salam i twəə ya</u> <u>hamnita.</u>	'[You] <u>have to become</u> a famous man <u>by all means.</u>

15. Kihu 'weather', 'climate' and nalssi are synonymous.
16. Səngkak is a noun which means 'thought' or 'idea'. Səngkak-ha- is a transitive verb. Thus, N + il/lil + səngkak-ha- means 'to think of N'.



## GRAMMAR NOTES

1. hu (or taim) 'after', 'the later time', 'next'

Hu occurred previously as a noun. Hu e 'later', 'afterward', 'at a later time'; ki hu e 'after that'; a point in time + hu e 'after' + the point in time'; a period of time + hu e 'the period of time + later', also occurred as adverbial phrases (See Unit 7).

The construction -n/in hu e, (i.e. the inflected form of an action verb ending in -n/in plus hu + e) which may be followed by a pause before another inflected expression, means 'after having done so-and-so' or 'after doing so-and-so'. Hu and taim are synonymous and are interchangeable in all the above phrase constructions. Examples:

Təhak il coləp-han hu e, əni hwesa e kinmu-həssimnita.	'After I graduated from college, I worked with a business firm.'
Kuntə esə na on hu e, təhakwən kongpu lil sicak-həssimnita.	'After [I] got out of the Army, [I] began my graduate studies.'
Ki hwesa lil kimantun hu e, wekyokwan sihəm il pwassə yo.	'I took the foreign service exam- ination after I had quit the company.'
Tul ccə ai lil nahin hu e, sə cip il sassimnita.	'After the second child was born, [we] bought a new house.'
Hankuk mal il pəun hu e, Səul e kalyəko hamnita.	'I intend to go to Korea after I (have) studied Korean.'

2. cən 'before' 'the previous time'

Cən is a noun. Cən e 'previously', ki cən e 'before that', a point in time + cən e 'before + the point in time', a period of time + cən e 'the period of time + ago' occurred previously as adverbial phrases (See Unit 7).

The construction -ki cən e (i.e. the ki form + cən e) which may be followed by a pause before another inflected expression means 'before doing so-and-so' or 'before [someone] having done so-and-so'. Examples:

Hankuk e oki cən e, Tong Kulapha lil yəhsəng-həssə yo.	'Before [I] came to Korea, [I] travelled in East Europe.'
Sənsəng in Kukmusəng e tilə oki cən e, mʉs il həssə yo?	'What did you do before you joined the State Department?'
Nalssi ka chupki cən e, kyəul cunpi lil hə ya hamnita.	'Before the weather gets cold, I have to prepare for the winter.'

3. -n/in ci + (period of time) +  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{twe-} \\ \text{cina-} \end{array} \right\}$  'It has been...(period of time) since..'

We noticed that the intransitive verb twe-, occurring after 'a period of time', denotes 'elapsing of a period of time', and after 'a point in time' denotes 'arriving at a point in time' (Units 8 and 12). Observe (a) and (b):

(a)  
Pəlsə  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{sam nyən (i)} \\ \text{se hæ (ka)} \end{array} \right\}$  tweəssimnita. 'It's been already three years.'

Panto hwesa esə han tasəs tal (i) ' [I] 've been with Bando Company  
tweəsə yo. about five months now.'

(b)  
Yəl-tu-si ka tweyə sə, cəmsim məkilə 'It was 12 o'clock, so [we] went  
kassimnita. to eat lunch.'

Tasəs-si ka twemyən, ttənakesse yo. 'When it is 5 o'clock, I'll leave.'

The construction -n/in ci + a period of time + twe- denotes that a period of time has elapsed since the action of the verb in -n/in form took place. In the above construction twe- and cina- can be interchangeably used. Examples:

Kukmusəng e tilə on ci yuk nyən 'It has been six years since [I]  
tweəssimnita. came into the State Department.'

Ce ka kyəlhon-han ci sa nyən pan 'I have been married four and a  
tweəsə yo. half years.'

Kim Sənsəng il an ci phək olə 'I have known Mr. Kim quite a long  
tweəssimnita. time now.'

Hankuk e osin ci əlma na tweəssna yo? 'How long have you been in Korea?'  
( 'How long has it been since you  
came to Korea?' ).

Nəil lo Hankuk mal kongpu sicak-han 'It will be exactly 4 months by  
ci kkok nək tal i twekəssimnita. tomorrow since [I] began the Korean  
language studies.'

4. -nin + tongan, 'while doing so-and-so'

Tongan 'for', 'during' previously occurred as a post-noun which, preceded by a time expression, forms an adverbial phrase (Unit 6). The -nin form (i.e. the present Noun-Modifier word of an action verb) + tongan, which may be followed by a pause before another inflected expression, means 'while doing so-and-so' or 'while [someone] having done so-and-so'. Examples:

Kulapha e issnin tongan, yəhəng manhi 'Did you travel a lot while [you  
həssimnikka? were] in Europe?'

Næ ka cip e epsnin tongan, ai ka pyæng i nassimnita.	'In my absence from home, the child has got sick.' ( 'While I was not home, the child has got sickness.' )
Tæhak e taninin tongan, kisuksa esæ salessimnita.	'While I was attending college, I lived in the dormitory.'
Cæ nin Sæul esæ il-hanin tongan, Hankuk phungsok il pæuko siphsimnita.	'I'd like to learn Korean customs while I work in Seoul.'

5. A nominal e +  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \underline{tæhæ} \\ \underline{kwanhæ} \end{array} \right\} \underline{sæ}$  'concerning + the nominal', 'about + the nominal'

The verb tæha- 'to face' or 'to confront' is an transitive verb. However, its infinitive form tæhæ (or tæhayæ) + the particle sæ occurs immediately after a nominal + e before an inflected expression to mean 'concerning the nominal' or 'about the nominal'. Examples:

<u>Hankuk phungsok e tæhæ sæ</u> com mal-hæ cusipsioy.	'Please tell me a little <u>about</u> <u>Korean customs.</u> '
<u>Sensæng e tæhæ sæ</u> (iyaki) tilin il i issimnita.	'I have heard <u>about you</u> (before).'
<u>Mikuk yæksa e tæhæ sæ</u> amu kæs to molimnikka?	'Don't [you] know anything <u>about</u> <u>American history?</u> '
Ceimsi ka na eke <u>Hankuk sosik e tæhæ</u> <u>sæ</u> mulæ pwassæ yo.	'James asked me <u>about news from</u> <u>Korea.</u> '

## DRILLS

## A. Substitution Drill

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. Cə nin Nyuyok Cu esə nahassimnita.                            | I was born in New York State.                  |
| 2. Cə e hyəng nim in <u>Sikhako</u> esə nahassimnita.            | My older brother was born in Chicago.          |
| 3. Cə e anə nin <u>Kulapha</u> esə nahassimnita.                 | My wife was born in Europe.                    |
| 4. Cə e tongsəng in <u>Puk-Han</u> esə nahassimnita.             | My younger brother was born in North Korea.    |
| 5. Cə e ənni nin <u>Inchən</u> esə nahassimnita.                 | My older sister was born in Inchon.            |
| 6. Cə e oppa nin <u>Wəsingthon Cu</u> esə nahassimnita.          | My older borther was born in Washington State. |
| 7. <u>Uli khin atil</u> in <u>pyəngwən</u> esə nahassimnita.     | Our oldest son was born in the hospital.       |
| 8. Cə e nui tongsəng in <u>wekuk</u> esə nahassimnita.           | My younger sister was born abroad.             |
| *9. Cə e ttal in <u>həwe</u> esə nahassimnita.                   | My daughter was born abroad.                   |
| 10. Cə e ttal in <u>həwe</u> esə <u>calassimnita</u> .           | My daughter grew up abroad.                    |
| 11. Cə e ttal in <u>həwe</u> esə <u>salassimnita</u> .           | My daughter has lived abroad.                  |
| 12. Cə e ttal in <u>həwe</u> esə <u>hakkyo e tanyəssimnita</u> . | My daughter went to school abroad.             |
| *13. Cə e ttal in <u>həwe</u> esə <u>khəssimnita</u> .           | My daughter grew up abroad.                    |

## B. Substitution Drill

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Cə nin Nyuyok esə naha sə kəki esə calassimnita.                   | I was born in New York and grew up there.              |
| 2. Cə nin <u>Inchən</u> esə naha sə <u>Seul</u> esə calassimnita.     | I was born in Inchon and grew up in Seoul.             |
| 3. Cə nin <u>Puk-Han</u> esə naha sə <u>Nam-Han</u> esə calassimnita. | I was born in North Korea and grew up in South Korea.  |
| 4. Cə nin <u>Kulapha</u> esə naha sə <u>Mikuk</u> esə calassimnita.   | I was born in Europe and grew up in the United States. |
| *5. Cə nin <u>Sikhako</u> esə naha sə <u>Tongpu</u> esə calassimnita. | I was born in Chicago and grew up in the East.         |

- \*6. Cə nin Tongpu esə naha sə Səpu esə calassimnita. I was born in the East and grew up in the West.
- \*7. Cə nin Səpu esə naha sə Nampu esə calassimnita. I was born in the West and grew up in the South.
- \*8. Cə nin Mikuk Nampu esə naha sə Nammi esə calassimnita. I was born in the Southern part of the U.S. and grew up in South America.
- \*9. Cə nin Hawai esə naha sə (Mikuk) pontho esə calassimnita. I was born in Hawaii and grew up on the mainland (of the U.S.).
- \*10. Cə nin səm esə naha sə yukci esə calassimnita. I was born on an island and grew up on the mainland.
- \*11. Cə nin sikol esə naha sə tosi esə calassimnita. I was born in a village and grew up in the city.
- \*12. Cə nin chon esə naha sə tohweci esə calassimnita. I was born in a village and grew up in a metropolitan area.

## C. Substitution Drill

1. Təhak in Nyuyok Cu esə tanyessimnita. [I] went to college in New York State.
2. Təhak in Nyuyok Cu esə na wassimnita. I finished college in New York State.
3. Təhak in Nyuyok Cu esə tile kassimnita. I was admitted to ('entered') college in New York State.
4. Təhak in Nyuyok Cu esə coləp- hæssimnita. I graduated from college in New York State.
5. Təhak in Nyuyok Cu esə sicak- hæssimnita. I began college in New York State.
6. Təhak in Nyuyok Cu esə kkith- machiæssimnita. I finished college in New York State.
7. Təhak in Nyuyok Cu esə taniko siphæssimnita. I wanted to attend college in New York State.
8. Təhak in Nyuyok Cu esə tanilyəko hæssimnita. I intended to go to college in New York State.
9. Təhak in Nyuyok Cu esə tanici mot hæssimnita. I could not attend college in New York State.
10. Təhak in Nyuyok Cu esə tanie ya hæssimnita. I had to attend college in New York State.

## D. Substitution Drill

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. Hakkyo lil coləp-han hu e,<br>hwesa esə il-hæssimnita.                | I worked for a company after<br>graduating from school.                    |
| 2. Hakkyo lil coləp-han hu e,<br><u>Kukmusəng e tilə wassimnita.</u>     | I joined the State Department after<br>graduating from school.             |
| 3. Hakkyo lil coləp-han hu e,<br><u>wekyokwan i tweyæssimnita.</u>       | I joined the foreign service after<br>graduating from school.              |
| 4. Hakkyo lil coləp-han hu e,<br><u>Kulapha lil yəhəng-hæssimnita.</u>   | I travelled in Europe after<br>graduating from school.                     |
| 5. Hakkyo lil coləp-han hu e,<br><u>kyəlhon-hæssimnita.</u>              | I got married after graduating from<br>school.                             |
| 6. Hakkyo lil coləp-han hu e,<br><u>kuntə e tilə kalyəko hæssimnita.</u> | I intended to join the (military)<br>service after graduating from school. |
| 7. Hakkyo lil coləp-han hu e,<br><u>chəs ccə ai lil nahassimnita.</u>    | We had our first child after I<br>graduated from school.                   |
| 8. Hakkyo lil coləp-han hu e,<br><u>cəngpu e kinmu-hæssimnita.</u>       | I worked for the government after<br>graduating from school.               |
| 9. Hakkyo lil coləp-han hu e,<br><u>kiləhke səngkak-hæssimnita.</u>      | I thought so after I graduated from<br>school.                             |

## E. Substitution Drill

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. Mikuk Kongpowən e tilə on ci<br>sam nyən tweæssimnita.  | It's been three years since I joined<br>USIS.                |
| 2. <u>I il (il) sicak-han ci sam nyən</u><br>tweæssimnita. | It's been three years since I began<br>this job.             |
| 3. <u>Kyəlhon-han ci sam nyən tweæssimnita.</u>            | I have been married for three years.                         |
| 4. <u>Wekyokwan i twen ci sam nyən</u><br>tweæssimnita.    | It's been three years since I joined<br>the foreign service. |
| 5. <u>I hwesa esə il-han ci sam nyən</u><br>tweæssimnita.  | I have worked at this company for<br>three years now.        |
| 6. <u>Təhak il coləp-han ci sam nyən</u><br>tweæssimnita.  | It's been three years since I<br>graduated from college.     |
| 7. <u>Hankuk esə san ci sam nyən</u><br>tweæssimnita.      | I have lived in Korea for three<br>years now.                |

8. Ceimsi Sənsəng il an ci sam nyən  
tweəssimnita. I have known Mr. James for three  
years now.
9. Anə lil chəim mannan ci sam nyən  
tweəssimnita. It's been three years since I first  
met my wife.

## F. Substitution Drill

1. Səul e oki cən e, Kulapha esə  
il-həssimnita. Before I came to Seoul I worked in  
Europe.
2. Səul e oki cən e, təhak il  
na wassimnita. I graduated from college before I  
came to Seoul.
3. Səul e oki cən e, Hankuk mal il  
pəwəssimnita. I studied Korean before I came to  
Seoul.
4. Səul e oki cən e, Kukmusəng e  
kinmu-həssimnita. I worked at the State Department  
before I came to Seoul.
5. Səul e oki cən e, kyəlhon-həssimnita. I got married before I came to Seoul.
6. Səul e oki cən e, kuntə esə na  
wassimnita. I got out of the army before I came  
to Seoul.
7. Səul e oki cən e, Ilpon il  
kukyəng-həssimnita. I went sightseeing in Japan before  
I came to Seoul.
8. Səul e oki cən e, uli ai ka  
nahassimnita. Our child was born before we came  
to Seoul.
9. Səul e oki cən e, apəci ka tola  
kasiəssimnita. My father passed away before I came  
to Seoul.
10. Səul e oki cən e, yələ nala lil  
yəhəng-həssimnita. I travelled in many countries before  
I came to Seoul.
- \*11. Səul e oki cən e, ai ka cukəssimnita. [Our] child died before [we] came to  
Seoul.

## G. Combination Drill

- Tutor: Təhak il coləp-həssimnita.  
ənı hwesa esə il-həssimnita. '[I] graduated from college. [I]  
worked for a (certain) company.'
- Student: Təhak il coləp-han hu e,  
ənı hwesa esə il-həssimnita. '[I] worked for a company after  
graduating from college.'
1. Wekyokwan i tweəssimnita. Yələ  
nala esə saləssimnita. Wekyokwan i twen hu e, yələ nala  
esə saləssimnita.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <p>2. Cəngpu e tilə wassimnita. Sam nyən tweəssimnita.</p> <p>3. Kuntə esə na wassimnita. Təhak il sicak-həəssimnita.</p> <p>4. Anə ka ai lil nahəssimnita. Mom i aphəssimnita.</p> <p>5. Na nin kyəlhon-həəssimnita. Səul e kəssimnita.</p> <p>6. I nyən tongan əni hwesa esə il-həəssimnita. Cəngpu e tilə wassimnita.</p> <p>7. Apəci ka tola kasieəssimnita. əməni ka hyəng nim tək e samnita.</p> <p>8. Pihəngki ka ttənəssimnita. Kicha ka tahəssimnita.</p> <p>9. K1 yəca lil han pən pwəssimnita. K1 yəca lil cohəəssimnita.</p> <p>10. K1 yəca lil mannəssimnita. Il nyən hu e kyəlhon-həəssimnita.</p> | <p>Cəngpu e tilə on hu e, sam nyən tweəssimnita.</p> <p>Kuntə esə na on hu e, təhak il sicak-həəssimnita.</p> <p>Anə ka ai lil nahin hu e, mom i aphəssimnita.</p> <p>Na nin kyəlhon-han hu e, Səul e kəssimnita.</p> <p>I nyən tongan əni hwesa esə il-han hu e, cəngpu e tilə wassimnita.</p> <p>Apəci ka tola kəsin hu e, əməni ka hyəng nim tək e samnita.</p> <p>Pihəngki ka ttənən hu e, kicha ka tahəssimnita.</p> <p>K1 yəca lil han pən pən hu e, k1 yəca lil cohəəssimnita.</p> <p>K1 yəca lil mannən hu e, il nyən hu e kyəlhon-həəssimnita.</p> |
|--|---|

## H. Grammar Drill

Tutor: Hakkyo lil coləp-hako kuntə e kakesə yo.

'[I]'ll graduate from school and go to the army.'

Student: Hakkyo lil coləp-han hu e, kuntə e kakesə yo.

'After graduating from college [I]'ll go to the army.'

1. Hankuk mal il mənəcə pəuko, Hankuk e kalyəko hə yo.
2. Cəmsim il məkko, Mikuk Təsəkwan e tillikəsə yo.
3. Wəkuk esə manhi kukyəng-hako, nənyən cəim e tola okəsə yo.
4. Uphyənkuک esə phyənci lil puchiko, kot tapang ilo okəsə yo.
5. Wəkyokwan i tweko, kyəlhon-həkəsə yo.

- Hankuk mal il mənəcə pəun hu e, Hankuk e kalyəko hə yo.
- Cəmsim il məkin hu e, Mikuk Təsəkwan e tillikəsə yo.
- Wəkuk esə manhi kukyəng-han hu e, nənyən cəim e tola okəsə yo.
- Uphyənkuک esə phyənci lil puchin hu e, kot tapang ilo okəsə yo.
- Wəkyokwan i twen hu e, kyəlhon-həkəsə yo.



- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 6. Catongcha lil phalko, wekuk ilo<br>ttenakesse yo.           | Catongcha lil phan hu e, wekuk ilo<br>ttenakesse yo.            |
| 7. Chinku eke i chæk il cuko, talin<br>chæk il patkessesse yo. | Chinku eke i chæk il cun hu e, talin<br>chæk il patkessesse yo. |
| 8. Sëul lo isa-hako, cip il sakesse yo.                        | Sëul lo isa-han hu e, cip il sakesse<br>yo.                     |
| 9. I il il kkith-næko, talin il il<br>sicak-hakesse yo.        | I il il kkith-næn hu e, talin il il<br>sicak-hakesse yo.        |
| 10. Com tæ sængkak-hako, mal-hakesse yo.                       | Com tæ sængkak-han hu e, mal-hakesse<br>yo.                     |

I. Grammar Drill (Use kkok in the proper place.)

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| Tutor: Sam nyen tweæssimnita.                | 'It has been three years.'                     |
| Student: Kkok sam nyen tweæssimnita.         | 'It has been exactly three years.'             |
| 1. Cikum han-si imnita.                      | Cikum kkok han-si imnita.                      |
| 2. Cæ nin kimnyen e sælhın sal imnita.       | Cæ nin kimnyen e kkok sælhın sal<br>imnita.    |
| 3. Onil pam e uli cip e osipsiyo.            | Onil pam e uli cip e kkok osipsiyo.            |
| 4. Kim Sænsæng eke kilæhke<br>mal-hasipsiyo. | Kim Sænsæng eke kkok kilæhke<br>mal-hasipsiyo. |
| 5. Manhi capsusipsiyo.                       | Kkok manhi capsusipsiyo.                       |
| 6. Pak Sænsæng eke mulæ posipsiyo.           | Pak Sænsæng eke kkok mulæ posipsiyo.           |
| 7. I chæk i cohsimnita.                      | I chæk i kkok cohsimnita.                      |
| 8. Han-Yeng sacen in sakessimnita.           | Han-Yeng sacen in kkok sakessimnita.           |
| 9. Næil kkaci tola okessimnita.              | Næil kkaci kkok tola okessimnita.              |
| 10. Ki il il kkith-næ ya hamnita.            | Ki il il kkok kkith-næ ya hamnita.             |
| 11. Khæphi lil masiko siphsimnita.           | Khæphi lil kkok masiko siphsimnita.            |

## J. Transformation Drill

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| Tutor: Han tal cæn e Sëul e wassimnita.             | 'I came to Seoul one month ago.'                     |
| Student: Sëul e on ci, han tal<br>tweæssimnita.     | 'It's been one month since I came<br>to Seoul.'      |
| 1. Sam nyen cæn e tæhakkyo lil<br>colæp-hæssimnita. | Tæhakkyo lil colæp-han ci, sam nyen<br>tweæssimnita. |

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 2. O nyen cən e kyəlhon-hæssimnita.                         | Kyəlhon-han ci, o nyen tweæssimnita.                         |
| 3. Tu tal cən e Kim Sənsəng i yəki<br>lil ttənassimnita.    | Kim Sənsəng i yəki lil ttənən ci,<br>tu tal tweæssimnita.    |
| 4. Sam-sip pun cən e hakkyo e<br>wassimnita.                | Hakkyo e on ci, sam-sip pun<br>tweæssimnita.                 |
| 5. Il nyen cən e Ceimsı Sənsəng il<br>alæssimnita.          | Ceimsı Sənsəng il an ci, il nyen<br>tweæssimnita.            |
| 6. Ne cuil cən e Hankuk mal kongpu<br>lil sicak-hæssimnita. | Hankuk mal kongpu lil sicak-han ci,<br>ne cuil tweæssimnita. |
| 7. Tassə cən e Mikuk e tahassimnita.                        | Mikuk e tahn ci, tassə tweæssimnita.                         |
| 8. Yəlhil cən e Səul lo isa-hæssimnita.                     | Səul lo isa-han ci, yəlhil<br>tweæssimnita.                  |
| 9. Myəch tal cən e i sikye lil<br>sassimnita.               | I sikye lil san ci, myəch tal<br>tweæssimnita.               |
| 10. Yələ hə cən e Mikuk il<br>ttənassimnita.                | Mikuk il ttənən ci, yələ hə<br>tweæssimnita.                 |

## K. Response Drill

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| Tutor: ənce Hankuk e wassimnikka?<br>/tasəs tal/                | 'When did you come to Korea?'<br>/five months/   |
| Student: Hankuk e on ci, tasəs tal<br>tweæssimnita.             | 'I have been in Korea for five<br>months.' ('It's been five months<br>since I came to Korea.') |
| 1. ənce Hankuk mal kongpu (lil)<br>sicak-hæssimnikka? /ne cuil/ | Hankuk mal kongpu (lil) sicak-han ci<br>ne cuil tweæssimnita.                                  |
| 2. ənce kyəlhon-hæssimnikka?<br>/sam nyən/                      | Kyəlhon-han ci, sam nyən tweæssimnita.   |
| 3. ənce wekyokwan i tweæssimnikka?<br>/il nyən pan/             | Wekyokwan i twen ci, il nyən pan<br>tweæssimnita.  |
| 4. ənce catongcha lil sassimnikka?<br>/myəchil/                 | Catongcha lil san ci, myəchil<br>tweæssimnita.   |
| 5. ənce təhak il coləp-hæssimnikka?<br>/sa nyən ccim/           | Təhak il coləp-han ci, sa nyən<br>ccim tweæssimnita.   |
| 6. ənce hyəng nim ekese phyenci<br>lil patəssimnikka? /il cuil/ | (Hyəng nim ekese) phyenci lil<br>patin ci, il cuil tweæssimnita.                               |

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 7. әне halapәci ka tola kasiәssimnikka?<br>/olә/<br>8. әне Sәul lo isa-hәssimnikka?<br>/yәlә hә/<br>9. әне puthә k1 yәca l1l<br>alәssimnikka? /myәch nyән/<br>10. әне hakkyo l1l kimantuәssimnikka?<br>/myәch tal/ | Halapәci ka tola kasin ci, olә<br>tweәssimnita.<br>Sәul lo isa-han ci, yәlә hә<br>tweәssimnita.<br>K1 yәca l1l an ci, myәch nyән<br>tweәssimnita.<br>Hakkyo l1l kimantun ci, myәch tal<br>tweәssimnita. |
|--|---|

## L. Response Exercise (Answer the question based on reality.)

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| Tutor: Hankuk mal 1l pәun ci, әlma<br>na tweәssә yo?    | 'How long have you studied Korean<br>(by now)?' |
| Student: Hankuk mal 1l pәun ci,<br>tu tal tweәssimnita. | 'I have studied Korean two months.'             |

1. Tәhakkyo l1l na on ci, әlma na tweәssә yo?
2. Wekyokwan 1 twen ci, myәch nyән ina tweәssә yo?
3. Kyәlhon-han ci, әlma na tweәssә yo?
4. Kohyang 1l ttenan ci, әlma na tweәssә yo?
5. Puin kwa mannan ci, myәch hә na tweәssә yo?
6. Tәhak 1l colәp-han ci, myәch nyән ina tweәssә yo?
7. Cәngpu 1l e tilә on ci, әlma na tweәssә yo?
8. Yәki e san ci, әlma na tweәssә yo?
9. Kuntә l1l kkith-machin ci, әlma na tweәssә yo?
10. Mikuk Tәsakwan e kinmu-han ci, әlma na tweәssә yo?

## M. Response Exercise (Answer the question based on the fact.)

1. Sәnsәng in kohyang 1 әti (1)ci yo?
2. Mikuk әn1 cu esә osyәssci yo?
3. Sәnsәng in әti esә nahassci yo?
4. Sәnsәng in әti esә calassci yo?
5. Tәhak in musin tәhak 1l taniәssci yo?
6. Tәhak in әnce na wassci yo?
7. Koting hakkyo nin myәch sal e tilә kassci yo?
8. Kacok in motu myәch salam ina twesici yo?

9. Ai til in musin hakkyo e tanici yo?  
10. Khin ai nin myeoch sal ici yo?

N. Grammar Drill (Use acik in the proper place.)

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| Tutor: Sikye ka ppalimnita.                        | 'The watch is fast.'                                 |
| Student: Sikye ka acik ppalimnita.                 | 'The watch is still fast.'                           |
| 1. Hankuk mal pæuki ka ælyæpsimnita.               | Hankuk mal pæuki ka acik ælyæpsimnita.               |
| 2. Ce tongsæng in honca imnita.                    | Ce tongsæng in acik honca imnita.                    |
| 3. Kim Sænsæng i samusil esæ il-hako<br>issimnita. | Kim Sænsæng i acik samusil esæ<br>il-hako issimnita. |
| 4. Na nin cæ yæca e ilim il molimnita.             | Na nin cæ yæca e ilim il acik<br>molimnita.          |
| 5. Kikcang e salam i manhsimnita.                  | Kikcang e acik salam i manhsimnita.                  |
| 6. Pak Sænsæng in kimchi lil<br>cohamnita.         | Pak Sænsæng in acik kimchi lil<br>cohamnita.         |
| 7. Cæ nin cohin il il chacko<br>issimnita.         | Cæ nin acik cohin il il chacko<br>issimnita.         |
| 8. Uli hwesa esæ nin yosæ to<br>pappimnita.        | Uli hwesa esæ nin yosæ to acik<br>pappimnita.        |
| 9. Apæci nin nai ka kili manhci<br>anhsimnita.     | Apæci nin nai ka acik kili manhci<br>anhsimnita.     |
| 10. Cæ e nunim in cikim to yeppimnita.             | Cæ e nunim in cikim to acik yeppimnita.              |

O. Response Drill (Answer the question using acik.)

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| Tutor: Kulapha e ka pon il i issimnikka?         | 'Have you ever been in Europe?'        |
| Student: Aniyo, acik (ka pon il i)<br>æpsimnita. | 'No, not yet.'                         |
| 1. Cæsim il capsusyæssimnikka?                   | Aniyo, acik mæci anhæssimnita.         |
| 2. Cip e kal sikan i tweæssimnikka?              | Aniyo, acik tweci anhæssimnita.        |
| 3. Nui tongsæng in kyelhon-hæssimnikka?          | Aniyo, acik kyelhon-haci anhæssimnita. |
| 4. Tongsæng in tæhak il<br>colæp-hæssimnikka?    | Aniyo, acik colæp-haci anhæssimnita.   |
| 5. Samu sikan i kkith-nassimnikka?               | Aniyo, acik kkith-naci anhæssimnita.   |
| 6. Sæul kanin kicha ka ttænassimnikka?           | Aniyo, acik ttænaci anhæssimnita.      |

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 7. Yeltu-si p̄p̄s̄i ka p̄s̄s̄e<br>tahassimnikka?     | Aniyo, acik tahci anhessimnita.            |
| 8. Kulapha lil yeh̄ang-han il i<br>issimnikka?       | Aniyo, acik yeh̄ang-han il i<br>epsimnita. |
| 9. S̄ul Cungang Kongw̄n il<br>kukȳang-h̄essimnikka? | Aniyo, acik kukȳang-haci anhessimnita.    |
| 10. S̄e il il chac̄essimnikka?                       | Aniyo, acik chac̄ci anhessimnita.          |

## P. Response Drill

Tutor: Hankuk e oki c̄n e, eti ese  
il-h̄ess̄e yo? /Ilpon/

Student: Hankuk e oki c̄n e, Ilpon  
ese il-h̄essimnita.

'Where did you work before you came  
to Korea? /Japan/

'I worked in Japan before I came to  
Korea.'

- Kȳelhon-haki c̄n e nuku e cip ese  
salass̄e yo? /pumo nim cip/
- Kunt̄e e kaki c̄n e, mūs il  
h̄ess̄e yo? /t̄ehak/
- C̄msim il m̄kki c̄n e, mūs il  
masil kka yo? /m̄kcu/
- Cikim puin il alki c̄n e, nuku lil  
al̄ess̄e yo? /taln ȳeca/
- Wekyokwan i tweki c̄n e, mūs i  
tweko siph̄ess̄e yo? /t̄ehak kyosu/
- S̄ul T̄ehakkyo e til̄e kaki c̄n e,  
̄n̄i hakkyo e tanīess̄e yo?  
/koting hakkyo/
- Phȳenci lil puchiki c̄n e, mūs  
il sass̄e yo? /uphyo/

Kȳelhon-haki c̄n e, pumo nim cip ese  
salassimnita.

Kunt̄e e kaki c̄n e, t̄ehak e  
tanīessimnita.

C̄msim il m̄kki c̄n e, m̄kcu lil  
masipsita.

Cikim an̄e lil alki c̄n e, taln  
ȳeca lil al̄essimnita.

Wekyokwan i tweki c̄n e, t̄ehak kyosu  
ka tweko siph̄essimnita.

S̄ul T̄ehakkyo e til̄e kaki c̄n e,  
koting hakkyo e tanīessimnita.

Phȳenci lil puchiki c̄n e, uphyo  
lil sassimnita.

## Q. Response Drill (Give a negative answer using /kil̄ehke/.)

Tutor: Nai ka manh̄simnikka?

'Is [he] old?'

Student: Aniyo, kil̄ehke manh̄ci  
anh̄e yo.

'No, not so old.'

- Nai ka c̄ksimnikka?

Aniyo, kil̄ehke c̄kci anh̄e yo.

- |   |                                     |
|---|-------------------------------------|
| 2. Nal mata pappimnikka?                | Aniyo, kiløhke pappici anhe yo.     |
| 3. Søl cip kaps i pissamnikka?          | Aniyo, kiløhke pissaci anhe yo.     |
| 4. K1 yeca lil cohahamnikka?            | Aniyo, kiløhke cohahaci anhe yo.    |
| 5. Kim Søsæng i Yøngø lil cal hamnikka? | Aniyo, kiløhke cal haci anhe yo.    |
| 6. Catongcha ka philyo-hamnikka?        | Aniyo, kiløhke philyo-haci anhe yo. |
| 7. Møli ka aphimnikka?                  | Aniyo, kiløhke aphici anhe yo.      |

## EXERCISES

A. Tell the following story about Mr. James to Pak Søsæng in Korean:

Mr. James' home is in Chicago but he was born in New York State and grew up there. Until he finished high school he lived in his home town with his parents and brothers and sisters, but he went to college in Boston, Massachusetts. He enjoyed his college life/sængwal/ very much. After he graduated from the college he worked for a while with a business firm but his work was not very enjoyable. He wanted to become a diplomat, so he took examinations/sihem il pwassimnita/. After that, he was able to join the foreign service right away. It was six years ago. For the first four years he worked in two countries in Europe. While he was in Europe, he could travel in several countries, and saw many interesting places. Since then, Mr. James has been in Korea almost two years now. The weather in Europe is more or less similar to that of Korea. The spring climate in Europe is warm but it rains more than in Korea. The autumn weather there is the same as that of Korea, but in winter it is more snowy and windy. Before he came to Korea, he didn't know much about Korea and the Korean people, but he has been enjoying his work here. He made many Korean friends and learned many Korean customs/phungsok/.

B. Conduct short conversations so that the following expressions are included in the second partner's responses.

- |                                       |   |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| 1. ønl hwesa                          | 'a (certain company)'                       |
| 2. ølma tongan                        | 'for some time'                             |
| 3. kkok                               | 'without fail', 'exactly',<br>'at all cost' |
| 4. Hankuk e { tæhæ } se<br>{ kwanhæ } | 'about Korea'                               |
| 5. tæhak e taninin tongan             | 'while [I was] attending college'           |

6. Səul e oki cən e 'before [I] came to Seoul'  
 7. wekyokwan i twen hu e 'since [I] joined the foreign service'

C. Find out from Brown Sənsəng the following information:

1. where he was born.
2. where he grew up.
3. what schools he went to.
4. when he finished college.
5. where he worked first after he graduated from college.
6. why he quit the first job.
7. how long he has been married.
8. how many years he has been with the government.
9. what country he served in before he came to Seoul.
10. how many countries he has travelled in so far.

D. Pak Sənsəng wants to know where you were born and grew up; tell him that you were born at (A) and grew up at (B) :

(A)	(B)
1. farm/nongcang/	city
2. island	mainland
3. country ( <u>or</u> village)	metropolitan area
4. the East	the South
5. the Mid-west	the West
6. North America	South America
7. overseas	home country/ponkuk/
8. North Korea	South Korea

E. Prepare a ten-minute narrative autobiography of yourself based on Units 14 and 15 for a fluency drill and tell it to the class, giving such information as your hometown, your schools, some of your experiences, your parents, brothers and sisters, relatives, your immediate family members, their ages, your immediate plans, etc.

## 제 16 과 전화

(대화 A)

전화

전화 번호

찾는 데

1. 제임스 : 이 선생의 전화 번호를 찾는 데 찾을 수 (가) 없습니다.

거습니다

전화(를) 거겠습니다

2. 김 : 전화를 거려고 하십니까?

전화 거 이

3. 제임스 : 예, 좀 전화 거 이 이 있습니다.

전화 번호책

4. 김 : 전화 번호책에 없습니까?

보입니다

보이지 않습니다

혹, 혹시

5. 제임스 : 보이지 않습니다. 혹시 아세요?

잠깐만

수첩

적습니다

적어 두었습니다



## UNIT 16. Telephoning

## BASIC DIALOGUES FOR MEMORIZATION

Dialogue AJames

- |                                |                                     |
|--------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| cənhwa                         | telephone                           |
| cənhwa pənhə                   | telephone number                    |
| chacnɪn tɛ/channɪntɛ/          | [I]'m looking for [it] and...       |
| 1. I Sənsæŋ e cənhwa pənhə lɪl | I'm looking for Mr. Lee's telephone |
| chacnɪn tɛ, chacɪl su (ka)     | number but I cannot find it.        |
| əpsɪmnɪta.                     |                                     |

Kim

- |                                  |                                     |
|----------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| kə(lɪ)mnɪta                      | ('[I] hang [it]')                   |
| cənhwa (lɪl) kəlkesɪmnɪta        | [I]'ll make a telephone call        |
| 2. Cənhwa kə(l)lyəkə hasɪmnɪkka? | Are you going to make a phone call? |

James

- |                                       |                                  |
|---------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| cənhwa kəl ɪl                         | something to call for            |
| 3. Ne, com cənhwa kəl ɪl ɪ ɪssɪmnɪta. | Yes, I have something to ask him |
|                                       | about.                           |

Kim

- |                                    |                                    |
|------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| cənhwa pənhə chæk                  | telephone book                     |
| 4. Cənhwa pənhə chæk e əpsɪmnɪkka? | Can't you find it in the telephone |
|                                    | book? ('Isn't it in the telephone  |
|                                    | book?')                            |

James

- |                                    |                                   |
|------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| poɪmnɪta                           | I see [it] ('it is seen');        |
|                                    | [it] is visible                   |
| poɪci anhsɪmnɪta                   | I can't see [it]; [it] is not     |
|                                    | visible                           |
| hok }<br>hoksi }                   | by any chance?                    |
| 5. Poɪci anhsɪmnɪta. Hoksi ase yo? | I can't find it. Do you happen to |
|                                    | know it?                          |

6. 김 : 잠깐만 기다리세요. 내 수첩에 적어 두었습니다.
7. 제임스 : 다행입니다, 다행합니다  
아, 다행입니다. 좀 찾아 주십시오.
8. 김 : 예, 여기 이 선생의 회사 번호만 있습니다.
9. 제임스 : 몇 번  
몇 번이지요?
10. 김 : 공, 영  
삼의 육 오 공 삼입니다.
- (대화 B)
- 전화기에서-
11. S : 여보세요.
12. 제임스 : 여보세요. 반도 회사입니까?  
예?  
들립니다  
안 들립니다  
크게
13. S : 예? 잘 안 들립니다. 좀 더 크게 말씀 해주십시오.

Kim

camkan man

just a while; only a short time

suchəp

address book

næ suchəp

my address book

cəksimnita

[I] write [it] down

cəke tuəssimnita

[I] wrote [it] down (for future use)

6. Camkan man kitalise yo. Næ suchəp  
e cəke tuəssimnita.

Just a minute. I wrote it down in  
my address book.

James

tahəng imnita }  
tahəng-hamnita }

[it] is fortunate

7. A, tahəng imnita. Com chace  
cusipsiyo.

Oh, that's lucky. Please look it  
up for me.

Kim

8. Ne, yəki I Sənsəng (e) hwesa  
pəho man issimnita.

I have only his office number, here.

James

myəch pən/myəppən/

what number

9. Myəch pən ici yo?

What is it? ('What number is it?')

Kim

kong }  
yəng }

zero

10. Sam e yuk o kong sam imnita.

It is 3-6503.

Dialogue B  
(..on the telephone..)

S

11. Yəpose yo.

Hello.

James

12. Yəpose yo. Panto Hwesa imnikka?

Hello, is this the Bando Company?

14. 제임스 : 아, 거기 반도 회사이지요?
15. S : 예, 그렇습니다.  
바깥니다  
바꿔 주십시오
16. 제임스 : 거기에 이 기수 선생 계시면 좀 바꿔 주십시오.
17. S : 거기는 어메(이)시지요?
18. 제임스 : 미국 대사관의 제임스입니다.  
계시는지 보겠습니다  
름이 계시는지 보겠습니다
19. S : 잠깐만 계십시오. 지금 림이 계시는지 보겠습니다.
20. 제임스 : 고맙습니다.  
(대화 C)  
-전화기에서-
21. 교환수 : 한국 은행입니다.  
외환과  
부탁  
부탁합니다

- S
- ne? (I beg your pardon.)  
 tillimnita I hear [it] ('[it] is heard');  
 [it] is audible  
 an tillimnita I can't hear [you]; [it] is not  
 audible  
 khike loudly; to be big
13. Ne? Cal an tillimnita. Com te I beg your pardon! I can't hear  
 khike malssim-hæ cusipsiyo. you very well. Please speak a  
 little louder.
- James
14. A, kæki Panto Hwesa ici yo? Oh, isn't this the Bando Company?
- S
15. Ne, kilæhsimnita. Yes, it is.
- James
- pakkumnita [I] exchange; [I] change  
 pakkwæ cusipsiyo please let me talk to..  
 ('please change it')
16. Kæki e Lee Kisu Sænsæng kyesimnæn May I talk to Mr. Kisu Lee, please?  
 com pakkwæ cusipsiyo. ('If Mr. Kisu Kim is there, please  
 change it.')
- S
17. Kæki nin eti (i)sici yo? May I ask who is calling, please?  
 ('Where is that place?')
- James
18. Mikuk Tæsakwan e Ceimsi imnita. This is James at the American Embassy.
- S
- kyesinin ci pokessimnita I'll see if [he] is [in]  
 thim i kyesinin ci pokessimnita I'll see if [he] is free
19. Camkan man kyesipsiyo. Cikim Wait just a moment, please. I'll  
 thim i kyesinin ci pokessimnita. see if he's free now.
- James
20. Komapsimnita. Thank you.

22. 이 : 외환과의 최 선생(에게) 좀 부탁드립니다.
- 통화  
통화중  
통화중입니다  
돌립니다  
돌려 드리겠습니다
23. 교환수 : 아, 지금 통화중인데요. 잠깐 기다리세요.  
곧, 돌려 드리겠습니다. 예, 말씀하십시오.
24. 이 : 여보세요. 최 준 선생 계십니까?
- 자리
25. 비서 : 지금 자리에 안 계시는데요. 점심에 나가셨습니까.
- 들어 옵니다
26. 이 : 뭇 시에 들어 올지 아십니까?
- 돌아 옵니다  
전합니다  
전할 말씀
27. 비서 : 아마, 곧 돌아 올 것입니다. 전할 말씀이 있으시지요?
28. 이 : 아니요, 괜찮습니다. 이따 다시 걸겠습니다.

Dialogue C  
(..on the telephone..)

Kyohwansu ('Operator')

21. Hankuk inhæng imnita. Bank of Korea.

Lee

Wehwan Kwa Foreign Currency Department  
 puthak a favor to ask  
 puthak-hamnita ('I ask you for a favor')

22. Wehwan Kwa e Chwe Sænsæng (eke) May I speak to Mr. Choe of the  
 com puthak-hamnita. Foreign Currency Department?

Kyohwansu

thonghwa ('telephone talk')  
 thonghwa cung ('in the middle of telephone  
 talk')  
 thonghwa cung imnita line is busy  
 tollimnita [I] rotate [it]; [I] switch [it]  
 tolliyæ tilikessimnita I'll switch it for you

23. A, cikim thonghwa cung in te yo. The line is busy now. Just a moment.  
 Camkan kitalise yo. Kot tolliyæ I'll connect you right away.  
 tilikessimnita. Ne, malssim- O.K., go ahead, please.  
 hasipsiyo.

Lee

24. Yæpose yo. Chwe Cun Sænsæng Hello, is Mr. Jhoon Choe there?  
 kyesimnikka?

Pisæ

cali seat  
 25. Cikim cali e an kyesinin te yo. He is not in his office now. He  
 Cæsim e na kasyæssimnita. went out for lunch.

Lee

tile omnita [he] comes in  
 26. Myæch-si e tile ol ci asimnikka? Do you know what time he will be  
 back?

Pise

tola omnita  
 cənhamnita  
 cənhal malssım

[he] comes back  
 [I] deliver  
 message to leave ('words to  
 deliver')

27. Ama, kot tola ol kəs imnita.  
 Cənhal malssım i issısının ci yo?

He will probably be back soon.  
 Would you like to leave a message  
 for him?

Lee

28. Aniyo, kwəanchanhsımnita.  
 Itta tasi kəlkessımnita.

No, that's all right, thank you.  
 I'll call later.



## NOTES ON DIALOGUES

(Numbers correspond to the sentence numbers.)

2. Kəl- is a transitive verb which occurs after a certain object, and has various meanings depending on the object: cənhwa lil kəl- 'to make a phone call' or 'to telephone'; os il kəl- 'to hang up clothes'; ssaum il kəl- 'to pick a quarrel' or 'to challenge (to someone)'; ton il kəl- 'to bet (money)' or 'to make a deposit'; səngmyəng il kəl- 'to risk life', etc.
5. Hok or hoksi 'by any chance', 'do [you] happen to...?' occurs as an adverb in question sentences or in conditional clauses. Poi- 'to be visible' or 'to be seen' is an intransitive verb, whereas po- 'to look at' is a transitive verb.
6. Camkan man ('only a short while') occurs as a time adverbial.
7. Tahəng imnita. ('[It] is a fortunate thing.') is a fixed expression which is used as the Korean equivalent of 'That's fortunate.'
9. Myəch pən/myəppən/ means either 'what number?' or 'how many times?' in question sentences; 'several times' or '(on) several occasions' in other types of sentences.
13. Ne? which is pronounced with a sharp rising intonation means 'Beg your pardon!' or 'Pardon me!' when you didn't understand someone well; ne? with a prolonged mild rising intonation means 'Oh, is that right?' (Unit 18).
13. The inflected word khike 'loudly', 'to be big' occurs as an adverbial before another inflected expression (See G. N. 3). Tilli- 'to be audible' or 'to be heard' is an intransitive verb, whereas tit-~til- 'to listen to' or 'to hear' is a transitive verb.
22. Puthak is a noun which means 'a favor to ask'. (Sənsəng eke) puthak i issimnita. means 'I have a favor to ask of you.' Puthak-hamnita. is used to mean, among the more common English equivalents, 'Would you please do it?'; 'Please do it for me.'; 'Yes, please.'; 'Please take care of things.', etc. In telephoning, So-and-so eke com puthak-hamnita. is a fixed expression used something like 'May I speak to so-and-so?' or '(Mr.) so-and-so, please.'

28. Itta 'later' refers to 'the later time on the same day'.

Akka 'a little while ago' is its one-word antonym.

## GRAMMAR NOTES

1. -n/in/nin te 'while...', 'such is the case', 'in view of the fact that...', 'and then...', 'but...'

Remember that the post-noun te 'place' preceded by an inflected modifier word of an action verb occurred previously in the nominal positions (See Note 7 on Basic Dialogues, Unit 12). The selection of -n, -in or -nin is the same as the present noun-modifier ending (Unit 5). Remember, however, -n/in/nin te, -n/in te and -l/il te should be distinguished. Examples:

(a) il-hanin te }	'the place where [I] work'
meknin te }	'the eating place'
(b) kan te }	'the place where [I] went'
calan te }	'the place where [I] grew up'
(c) tlllll te }	'the place to stop by'
sal te }	'the place where [I] shall live'

Note that the construction -n/in/nin te which may be followed by a pause may also occur before another inflected expression to signify some further explanation or remark in relation to or on the basis of the first action or description follows in the following inflected expression. The honorific and/or tense suffixes may occur in the -nin form of which inflected forms are the same in shapes for both action and description verbs: -(a,e)ssnin te, for the past; -kessnin te, for the future. Observe the following examples:

Hankuk mal il pæunin te, sikan i manhi kællimnita.	'When (or In) studying Korean it takes a lot of time.' '[I]'m studying Korean and it takes a lot of time.'
Catongcha lll sanin te, ton i philyo- hamnita.	'When buying a car [you] need money.'
I Sensæng il chac(1)nin te, chacil su (ka) æpsimnita.	'[I]'m looking for Mr. Lee, but [I] cannot find him.'
Cæ nin pæ ka kophin te, sensæng in pæ ka kophici anhe yo?	'I am hungry; are you not?'

Ce sachon in coongsa in te, ton il manhi peŕe yo.	'My cousin is a pilot, and he makes ( 'earns' ) a lot of money?'
Cen e Ilpon mal il pŕewŕssnŕn te, cikim in ta icŕssŕmnita.	'I studied Japanese before but I have forgotten [it] all now.'
Ki yŕca ka hakkyo ttŕ e phŕk yeppŕssnŕn te, acik to kilŕhci yo?	'She was very pretty in her school days; she must be still pretty, isn't she?'
Nŕil nalssi ka cohkessnŕn te, ŕti e kal kka yo?	'(It seems) the weather will be nice tomorrow; shall we go some- place?'

-n/in/nin te + yo may occur to end a sentence which, in this case, is a kind of informal polite statement sentence. The sentence final -n/in/nin te yo occurs when the speaker shows slight surprise or hesitation.

Cham, cŕ pihŕngki ka ppaln te yo.	'O, that airplane is really fast.'
Ceimsŕ Sŕnsŕng i Hankuk mal il cal hanŕn te yo.	'Mr. James speaks good Korean.'
Aniyo, cal molikessnŕn te yo.	'No, I don't know [it] well.'

## 2. Infinitive + $\begin{cases} \text{tu-} \\ \text{noh-} \end{cases}$

As an independant verb, tu- or its synonym noh- means 'to put [something] (somewhere)' or 'to place [something] (somewhere)'.

However, tu- (or noh-) preceded by the infinitive of an action verb also occurs as an auxiliary verb. The verb phrase Infinitive + tu- which literally means something like 'does so-and-so and put [it] somewhere' is usually used to denote 'does so-and-so for future use or benefit' or 'does so-and-so in advance', or 'does so-and-so for the time being'. Compare the following pairs:

a. Han-Yŕng sacŕn il sassŕmnita.	'I bought a Korean-English dictionary.'
Han-Yŕng sacŕn il sa tuŕssŕmnita.	'I have bought a Korean-English dictionary (for future use).'
b. Nŕil in hal il i manhkessini kka, onil i il il ta kkith-nŕkessŕmnita.	'Since I'll have many things to do tomorrow, I will finish all this work today.'
Nŕil in hal il i manhkessini kka, onil i il il ta kkith-nŕ tukessŕmnita.	'Since I'll have many things to do tomorrow, I will finish up all this work today (in advance).'
c. Sukce lil hŕ ya hamnita.	'[I] have to do homework.'
Sukce lil hŕ tuŕ ya hamnita.	'[I] have to do homework now {in advance. {(for some reason).

- d. Kim Cangkun e cenhwa penho lll ale pwassimnikka? 'Did you find out General Kim's telephone number?'
- Kim Cangkun e cenhwa penho lll ale pwa tuæssimnikka? 'Have you found out General Kim's telephone number (for future use or in case)?'

3. -ke

The inflected form ending in -ke (or simply the -ke form) occurs before and modifies another inflected expression. Since the -ke form occurs as an adverbial, the ending -ke is called the Adverbializing Ending or simply the Adverbializer. The -ke form occurs in the following constructions:

- (a) A description verb inflected in -ke occurs as a modifier before another inflected expression of an action verb.

<u>Alimtapke</u> calamnita.	'[It] is growing <u>beautifully</u> .'
<u>Cohke</u> mal-hæssø yo.	{ '[He] spoke <u>well</u> of [you].' '[He] spoke <u>nicely</u> .'
<u>Kiløhke</u> haci masipsiyo.	'Don't do it <u>that way</u> .'
<u>Pissake</u> sassimnita.	'I paid <u>much</u> for it.' ('I bought [it] to be <u>expensive</u> .'
<u>Khike</u> malssim hasipsiyo.	'Please speak <u>loud</u> .'

- (b) An action verb inflected in -ke which may occur without a pause immediately before ha- is used with a causative meaning, of which English translations are { have } [someone] do...'. The personal nominal + { eke }  
{ make } { ll/lll }  
{ let }

may or may not precede the -ke ha- construction.

Kake hæssimnita.	'[I] had [him] go.'
Ai eke cake hasipsiyo.	'Please have the child go to bed.'
Cøngpu ka na eke wekukø lll pøuke hamnita.	'The government makes me study foreign languages.'

Note: As for the other construction types where the -ke form occurs (e.g. -ke twe-) we will learn in further units.

4. -n/in/nin ci

We learned that the construction, an interrogative + an inflected modifier word + the dependent noun ci, before an inflected expression occurs as a nominal expression (See Grammar Note 3, Unit 13).

The construction -n/in/nin ci without being preceded by an interrogative may also occur as a nominal expression. If -n/in/nin ci occurs as the object of the following inflected expression, the object particle il/lil is usually omitted. The construction -n/in/nin ci is used as the equivalent of the English nominal clauses which begin with 'if-', 'whether-' or 'that-'. Examples:

Kim Sænsæng i kyesinin ci pokessimnita.

'I'll see if Mr. Kim is in.'

Cip kaps i pissan ci alko sipshimnita.

'I want to know whether the rent is high.'

Sikan i manhi kellinin ci alæ posipsiyo.

'Please find out if it takes a lot of time.'

Miss Brown i Sæul e sanin ci  
mollassimnita.

{ 'I didn't know whether Miss Brown is living in Seoul.'  
'I didn't know that Miss Brown is living in Seoul.'

The honorific and/or tense suffixes may occur in the -n/in/nin form in the above construction: -(a,e)ssnin ci for the past, -kessnin (or its substitute -(1)l ci for the future, respectively. Note that an inflected modifier word (e.g. -n/in/nin) + ci + yo? may be used as a kind of informal polite question sentence final form. This form of a question sentence occurs only in a dialogue after a certain context has been established to denote the speaker's doubt or modesty.  
Examples:

(Hoksi) cænhal malssim i issisinin ci  
yo?

'Would you leave a message (by any chance)?'  
'May I take your message, sir?'  
'I wonder if you'd like to leave a message.'

Kæki nin nuku isin ci yo?

('As for there, who are you?')  
'May I ask whom I am speaking to?'  
'Who is speaking, please?'

Kilæm, Wællam mal in swiun ci yo?

'Well, is Vietnamese easy, then?'

Kilsse yo. Tangsin i Kimchi lil  
cohahal ci yo?

'Well, I'm afraid if you'll like Kimchi.'

Hoksi sæ tæssa lil mannasæssnin ci yo?

'I wonder if you have met the new ambassador, sir.'

## DRILLS

## A. Substitution Drill

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. <u>Chæk</u> i poici anhsimnita.          | I cannot find the book ('The book is not seen.') |
| 2. <u>Cenhwa penho</u> ka poici anhsimnita. | I cannot find the telephone number.              |
| 3. <u>(Næ)</u> suchep i poici anhsimnita.   | I cannot find my address book.                   |
| *4. <u>(Næ)</u> cikap i poici anhsimnita.   | I cannot find my wallet.                         |
| 5. <u>(Næ)</u> kapang i poici anhsimnita.   | I cannot find my briefcase.                      |
| 6. <u>Ton</u> i poici anhsimnita.           | I cannot find money.                             |
| *7. <u>Ipku</u> ka poici anhsimnita.        | I cannot find the entrance.                      |
| *8. <u>Pata</u> ka poici anhsimnita.        | I cannot see the sea.                            |
| *9. <u>(Næ)</u> cangkap i poici anhsimnita. | I cannot find my gloves.                         |

## B. Substitution Drill

- |   |                                     |
|---|-------------------------------------|
| 1. <u>Cenhwa penho</u> lil chacil su (ka) epsnin te yo. | I cannot find the telephone number. |
| 2. <u>Næ suchep</u> il chacil su (ka) epsnin te yo.     | I cannot find my address book.      |
| *3. <u>Ki e cuso</u> lil chacil su (ka) epsnin te yo.   | I cannot find his address.          |
| *4. <u>Il cali</u> lil chacil su (ka) epsnin te yo.     | I cannot find a job.                |
| *5. <u>Cohin kihwe</u> lil chacil su (ka) epsnin te yo. | I cannot find a good chance.        |
| *6. <u>Ton cikap</u> il chacil su (ka) epsnin te yo.    | I cannot find the (money) wallet.   |
| *7. <u>Sikmo</u> lil chacil su (ka) epsnin te yo.       | I cannot find a maid.               |
| *8. <u>Chulku</u> lil chacil su (ka) epsnin te yo.      | I cannot find the exit.             |
| *9. <u>Ipku</u> lil chacil su (ka) epsnin te yo.        | I cannot find the entrance.         |
| *10. <u>Chulipku</u> lil chacil su (ka) epsnin te yo.   | I cannot find the exit-entrance.    |

## C. Substitution Drill

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Sənsəng e mal (soli) i/ka cal<br>tillimnita.         | I [can] hear you well. ('Your<br>speech (sound) is well heard.') |
| 2. <u>Təngsin e mal (soli)</u> i/ka cal<br>tillimnita.  | I [can] hear you well.   |
| 3. <u>Kyosu e mal (soli)</u> i/ka cal<br>tillimnita.    | I [can] hear the professor well.                                 |
| 4. <u>Səngkwən e mal (soli)</u> i/ka cal<br>tillimnita. | I [can] hear well what my boss says.                             |
| *5. <u>Lətiyo soli</u> ka cal tillimnita.               | I [can] hear the radio clearly.                                  |
| *6. <u>Pihəngki soli</u> ka cal tillimnita.             | I [can] hear the airplane well.                                  |
| *7. <u>Palam soli</u> ka cal tillimnita.                | I hear the wind (well).  |
| *8. <u>Kicha soli</u> ka cal tillimnita.                | I hear the train (well).   |
| *9. <u>Pal soli</u> ka cal tillimnita.                  | I hear the footsteps (well).                                     |
| *10. <u>Mok soli</u> ka cal tillimnita.                 | I [can] hear [your] voice clearly.                               |
| *11. <u>Salam soli</u> ka cal tillimnita.               | I hear the voices (well).  |

## D. Substitution Drill

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Kim Sənsəng eke com pakkwə<br>cusipsiyo.           | May I speak to Mr. Kim? ('Exchange<br>[it] to Mr. Kim.') |
| *2. <u>Kim Paksa</u> eke com pakkwə cusipsiyo.        | May I speak to Dr. (Ph.D.) Kim?                          |
| *3. <u>Kim Kyosu</u> eke com pakkwə cusipsiyo.        | May I speak to Professor Kim?                            |
| *4. <u>Kim Hakcang</u> eke com pakkwə cusipsiyo.      | May I speak to Dean Kim?                                 |
| *5. <u>Kim Chongcang</u> eke com pakkwə<br>cusipsiyo. | May I speak to President (of<br>university) Kim?         |
| *6. <u>Kim Sacang</u> eke com pakkwə cusipsiyo.       | May I speak to President (of company)<br>Kim?            |
| *7. <u>Kim Cangkun</u> eke com pakkwə<br>cusipsiyo.   | May I speak to General Kim?                              |
| *8. <u>Kim Phansa</u> eke com pakkwə cusipsiyo.       | May I speak to Judge Kim?                                |
| *9. <u>Kim Cangkwən</u> eke com pakkwə<br>cusipsiyo.  | May I speak to Minister (in the<br>government) Kim?      |
| *10. <u>Kim Kyocang</u> eke com pakkwə<br>cusipsiyo.  | May I speak to Principal Kim?                            |
| *11. <u>Kim Moksa</u> eke com pakkwə cusipsiyo.       | May I speak to Minister (of the<br>church) Kim?          |

- \*12. Kim Kwacang eke com pakkwæ  
cusipsiyo. May I speak to Mr. ('Section Chief')  
Kim?
- \*13. Kim Kukcang eke com pakkwæ  
cusipsiyo. May I speak to Mr. ('Bureau Chief')  
Kim?
- \*14. Kim (Kukhwe) iywæn eke com pakkwæ  
cusipsiyo. May I speak to Congressman ('National  
Assembly Member') Kim?

## E. Substitution Drill

1. Com tæ khike malssim hæ cusipsiyo. Please speak a little louder.
- \*2. Com tæ chenchênhi malssim hæ  
cusipsiyo. Please speak a little more slowly.
- \*3. Com tæ ppalli malssim hæ  
cusipsiyo. Please speak a little faster.
- \*4. Com tæ cakke malssim hæ cusipsiyo. Please speak a little more softly.
- \*5. Com tæ coyonghi malssim hæ  
cusipsiyo. Please speak a little more quietly.
- \*6. Com tæ sokhi malssim hæ cusipsiyo. Please speak a little more quickly.
- \*7. Com tæ khin soli lo malssim hæ  
cusipsiyo. Please speak a little louder ('in a  
big voice').
8. Tasi han pæn malssim hæ cusipsiyo. Please say [it] once more ('once  
again').
- \*9. Maim tælo malssim hæ cusipsiyo. { Please say as you like.  
{ Please say freely.

## F. Substitution Drill

1. Kim Sænsæng i kyesinin ci  
pokessimnita. I'll see if Mr. Kim is [in].
2. Kim Sænsæng i kyesinin ci  
alæ pokessimnita. I'll find out if Mr. Kim is [in].
3. Kim Sænsæng i kyesinin ci  
mule pokessimnita. I'll inquire if Mr. Kim is [in].
4. Kim Sænsæng i kyesinin ci  
chacæ pokessimnita. I'll try looking for Mr. Kim.
5. Kim Sænsæng i kyesinin ci  
cenhwa-hakessimnita. I'll call [to see] if Mr. Kim is in.



- |  |                                      |
|--|--------------------------------------|
| 6. Kim Sənsəng i kyesinin ci<br><u>molikessimnita.</u>   | I do not know if Mr. Kim is in.      |
| 7. Kim Sənsəng i kyesinin ci<br><u>alko siphsimnita.</u> | I'd like to know if Mr. Kim is in.   |
| 8. Kim Sənsəng i kyesinin ci<br><u>allyə cusipsiyo.</u>  | Please let me know if Mr. Kim is in. |

## G. Substitution Drill

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Kim Sənsəng i kyesinin ci<br>alko siphsimnita.             | I'd like to know if Mr. Kim is [in].       |
| 2. <u>Pak Sənsəng i osinin ci</u><br>alko siphsimnita.        | I'd like to know if Mr. Park comes.        |
| 3. Pak Sənsəng i osinin ci <u>molimnita.</u>                  | I don't know if Mr. Park comes.            |
| 4. <u>Sikan i manhi kəllinin ci</u><br>molimnita.             | I don't know if it takes a lot of<br>time. |
| 5. Sikan i manhi kəllinin ci<br><u>mule pokessimnita.</u>     | I'll ask if it takes a lot of time.        |
| *6. <u>Khiki ka kathin ci</u> mule pokessimnita.              | I'll ask if the size is the same.          |
| 7. Khiki ka kathin ci <u>alə pokessimnita.</u>                | I'll find out if the size is the same.     |
| 8. <u>Ki pun i aphin ci</u> alə pokessimnita.                 | I'll find out if he (honored) is sick.     |
| 9. Ki pun i aphin ci <u>cənhwa-hæ</u><br><u>pokessimnita.</u> | I'll try calling to see if he is sick.     |

## H. Substitution Drill

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. Kim Sənsəng i eti e sanin ci<br>molimnita.            | I don't know where Mr. Kim lives.              |
| 2. <u>Cə puin i muəs il hanin ci</u> molimnita.          | I don't know what the lady does.               |
| 3. <u>Təthongyeng i myəch sal in ci</u><br>molimnita.    | I don't know how old the President is.         |
| 4. <u>Kim Paksa ka nuku lil chəcnin ci</u><br>molimnita. | I don't know whom Dr. Kim is looking<br>for.   |
| 5. <u>Sikmo ka muəs il wənhənin ci</u><br>molimnita.     | I don't know what the maid wants.              |
| 6. <u>Sangkwan i ənce tola onin ci</u><br>molimnita.     | I don't know when [my] boss is coming<br>back. |

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 7. Sangkwan i ənce tola onin ci <u>amnita</u> .              | I know when [my] boss is coming back.               |
| 8. Sangkwan i ənce tola onin ci<br><u>alko siphsimnita</u> . | I'd like to know when [my] boss is<br>coming back.  |
| *9. Sangkwan i ənce tola onin ci<br><u>allyə cusipsiyo</u> . | Please let [me] know when [your]<br>boss is coming. |

## I. Substitution Drill

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. Chæk il iyca e tuæssimnita.                              | I have put the book on the chair.                 |
| 2. <u>Ai</u> lil <u>cip</u> e tuæssimnita.                  | I have left the child at home.                    |
| 3. <u>Kapang</u> il <u>cha</u> e tuæssimnita.               | I have left the briefcase in the car.             |
| 4. <u>Cikap</u> il <u>pang</u> e tuæssimnita.               | I have left my wallet in the room.                |
| *5. <u>Cha</u> lil <u>chako</u> e tuæssimnita.              | I have left the car in the garage.                |
| *6. <u>Catongcha</u> lil <u>cuchacang</u> e<br>tuæssimnita. | I have left the automobile in the<br>parking lot. |
| *7. <u>Cacənkə</u> lil <u>untongcang</u> e<br>tuæssimnita.  | I have left the bicycle in the<br>playground.     |
| *8. <u>Cha</u> lil <u>pakk</u> e tuæssimnita.               | I have left the car outside.                      |
| *9. <u>Kong</u> il <u>an</u> e tuæssimnita.                 | I left the ball inside.                           |
| *10. <u>Kong</u> il <u>cəngwən</u> e tuæssimnita.           | I left the ball in the yard.                      |
| *11. <u>Kilis</u> il <u>puəkh</u> e tuæssimnita.            | I left the dish in the kitchen.                   |

J. Grammar Drill (Use hoksi in the proper place.)

Tutor: Kim Sensəng e cənhwa pəho  
lil ase yo?

'Do you know Mr. Kim's telephone  
number?'

Student: Kim Sensəng e cənhwa pəho  
lil hoksi ase yo?

{ 'Do you know Mr. Kim's telephone  
number, by any chance?  
'Do you happen to know Mr. Kim's  
telephone number?'

1. Təthongyəng il mannassə yo?

Təthongyəng il hoksi mannassə yo?

2. Cungkuk imsik il məkə pon il i  
issə yo?

Cungkuk imsik il hoksi məkə pon il  
i issə yo?

3. Sensəng in Panto Hwesa e  
kinmu-hase yo?

Sensəng in hoksi Panto Hwesa e  
kinmu-hase yo?

4. Cikim thim i kyese yo?

Cikim hoksi thim i kyese yo?

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 5. Kɪ pun i myəch-si e tola ol ci ase yo? | Kɪ pun i myəch-si e tola ol ci hoksi ase yo? |
| 6. Ohu e sinæ e tillikessə yo?            | Hoksi ohu e sinæ e tillikessə yo?            |
| 7. Kim Sənsəng e cuso lil cəkə tuessə yo? | Hoksi Kim Sənsəng e cuso lil cəkə tuessə yo? |
| 8. Kimchi lil capsusin cək i issə yo?     | Hoksi kimchi lil capsusin cək i issə yo?     |

## K. Transformation Drill

Tutor: Kɪ e ilim il cəkəssimnita.

'I wrote his name.'

Student: Kɪ e ilim il cəkə tuəssimnita.

'I wrote his name down (for future use).'

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. Ssan kutu lil sasse yo.             | Ssan kutu lil sa tuessə yo.             |
| 2. Cən e Hankuk mal il pəwəssə yo.     | Cən e Hankuk mal il pəwə tuessə yo.     |
| 3. Inchən kanin kil il mulə pwassə yo. | Inchən kanin kil il mulə pwa tuessə yo. |
| 4. Yəl-han-si e cəmsim il məkəssə yo.  | Yəl-han-si e cəmsim il məkə tuessə yo.  |
| 5. Kim Sənsəng eke puthak-həssə yo.    | Kim Sənsəng eke puthak-hə tuessə yo.    |
| 6. Kim Sənsəng e cuso lil aləssə yo.   | Kim Sənsəng e cuso lil alə tuessə yo.   |
| 7. Ton il inhəng e nəhəssə yo.         | Ton il inhəng e nəhə tuessə yo.         |
| 8. Pam e phyənci lil ssəssə yo.        | Pam e phyənci lil ssə tuessə yo.        |
| 9. Il il ppalli kkith-machiəssə yo.    | Il il ppalli kkith-machiə tuessə yo.    |

## L. Combination Drill (Make one sentence out of two in the pattern as in the example.)

Tutor: Cənhwa pənho lil chacsimnita.

'I'm looking for the telephone number.' 'I cannot find it.'

Poici anhsimnita.

Student: Cənhwa pənho lil chacin te,

'I'm looking for the telephone number, but I cannot find it.'

poici anhsimnita.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. Hankuk mal il pəumnita. Acik cal mal-haci mot hamnita. | Hankuk mal il pəunin te, acik cal mal-haci mot hamnita. |
| 2. Palam i punnita. Kili chupci anhsimnita.               | Palam i punin te, kili chupci anhsimnita.               |
| 3. Cə yəca wa insa-həssimnita. Ilim il molikəssimnita.    | Cə yəca wa insa-həssin te, ilim il molikəssimnita.      |

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 4. Cəmsim il məkəssimnita. Tasi pə ka kophimnita.                      | Cəmsim il məkəssnın te, tasi pə ka kophimnita.                      |
| 5. Catongcha lıl sako siphsimnita. Ton i əpsimnita.                    | Catongcha lıl sako siphın te, ton i əpsimnita.                      |
| 6. Cə nin Səul pukın e samnita. Nal mata kicha lo il-halə omnita.      | Cə nin Səul pukın e sanın te, nal mata kicha lo il-halə omnita.     |
| 7. Pak Sənsəng eke cənhwa lıl kələssimnita. Amu to patci anhəssimnita. | Pak Sənsəng eke cənhwa lıl kələssnın te, amu to patci anhəssimnita. |
| 8. Cip esə hakkyo ka phək məmnita. I Sənsəng in kələ sə tanimnita.     | Cip esə hakkyo ka phək mən te, I Sənsəng in kələ sə tanimnita.      |
| 9. Onil kkaci il il kkith-nə ya hamnita. Sikan i pucok-hamnita.        | Onil kkaci il il kkith-nə ya hanın te, sikan i pucok-hamnita.       |

## M. Completion Exercise

Tutor: Cə nin Hankuk mal il pəunın te,

'I am studying Korean but (or and)...

Student: Cə nin Hankuk mal il pəunın te, acik cal mal-haci mot hamnita.

'I'm studying Korean but I can't speak it well yet.'

1. Catongcha lıl sako siphın te,
2. Cəmsim il məkəssnın te,
3. Hal il i manhın te,
4. Yəca chinku ka aphın te,
5. Hakkyo ka mən te,
6. Hankuk mal i phək əlyəun te,
7. Cip e cənhwa lıl kələssnın te,
8. Hyəng nim i Səul lo isa-həssnın te,
9. Ton i com philyo-han te,
10. Palam i manhi punın te,

N. Grammar Drill (Use itta in the proper place and repeat after the teacher.)

Tutor: Tasi kəkəssimnita.

'I'll call again.'

Student: Itta tasi kəkəssimnita.

'I'll call again later.'

1. Tola osipsiyo.

Itta tola osipsiyo.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 2. Chenchēnhi ttēnalyēko hamnita.            | Itta chenchēnhi ttēnalyēko hamnita.                     |
| 3. Tto pwepkessimnita.                       | Itta tto pwepkessimnita.                                |
| 4. Tapang esē mannapsita.                    | Itta tapang esē mannapsita.                             |
| 5. Kim Sēsæng i tillil kēs imnita.           | Kim Sēsæng i itta tillil kēs imnita.                    |
| 6. Kathi kal kka yo?                         | Itta kathi kal kka yo?                                  |
| 7. Khēphi han can sa cuse <sup>yo</sup> .    | Itta khēphi han can sa cuse yo.                         |
| 8. Tto wa to kwæchanhsimnikka?               | Itta tto wa to kwæchanhsimnikka?                        |
| 9. Sikan i issimyēn, pwa ya<br>hakessimnita. | (Itta) sikan i issimyēn, (itta) pwa<br>ya hakessimnita. |

0. Grammar Drill (Use akka in the proper place and repeat after the teacher.)

Tutor: Cē nin cēsim il mēkessimnita.

'I ate lunch.'

Student: Cē nin akka cēsim il  
mēkessimnita.

'I ate lunch a little while ago.'

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. Kim Sēsæng in ttēnassimnita.          | Kim Sēsæng in akka ttēnassimnita.             |
| 2. Lætio esē kī mal il tilæssimnita.     | Akka lætio esē kī mal il tilæssimnita.        |
| 3. I Paksa wa cēnhwa lo mal-hæssimnita.  | I Paksa wa cēnhwa lo akka mal-<br>hæssimnita. |
| 4. Il il ta kkith-machiæssimnita.        | Il il akka ta kkith-machiæssimnita.           |
| 5. Pi ka oki sicak-hæssimnita.           | Pi ka akka oki sicak-hæssimnita.              |
| 6. Cē nin com swiæssimnita.              | Cē nin akka com swiæssimnita.                 |
| 7. Chinku ekese cēnhwa lil patæssimnita. | Chinku ekese akka cēnhwa lil<br>patæssimnita. |

EXERCISES

A. Read aloud the following telephone numbers:

- |            |              |
|------------|--------------|
| 1. 3-7506  | 8. 73-0193   |
| 2. 5-2673  | 9. 567-7065  |
| 3. 4-0407  | 10. 370-8731 |
| 4. 2-9716  | 11. 672-0409 |
| 5. 3-3654  | 12. 490-2089 |
| 6. 22-3402 | 13. 903-4356 |
| 7. 23-9781 | 14. 633-0295 |

B. Make a short statement in Korean for each of the following:

- |                                       |  |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| 1. Dr. (Ph.D.) Kim                    | 14. Senator/Sangwŏn iywŏn/ Kennedy                     |
| 2. Professor Park                     | 15. Representative ('National<br>Assembly Member') Kim |
| 3. Dean Koh                           | 16. Mr. Kim's driver                                   |
| 4. President (of a university) Yoon   | 17. a maid   |
| 5. General Choe                       | 18. your boss  |
| 6. Minister (of the Government) Lee   | 19. a banker/inhŏngka/                                 |
| 7. Judge Whang                        | 20. a politician/cŏngchika/                            |
| 8. Principal James                    | 21. a farmer/nongpu/                                   |
| 9. Reverend Yoo                       | 22. a laborer/notongca/                                |
| 10. President (of a company) Choe     | 23. a businessman/saepka/                              |
| 11. Doctor Park                       | 24. a guest ( <u>or</u> visitor)/sonnim/               |
| 12. Mr. (chief of the department) Pae | 25. the owner/cuin/                                    |
| 13. Mr. (chief of the bureau) Seo     |  |

C. Telephone rings; answer it and say as follows:

1. 'Hello!'
2. 'I'm sorry but I can't hear you well.'
3. 'Please speak a little louder.'
4. 'One moment, please, the line is busy now.'
5. 'You have the wrong number but I'll connect you to his office in a minute.'
6. 'May I ask who is calling, please?'
7. 'Please wait just one second: he is on the line now.'
8. 'O.K.'

D. Call the Bank of Korea and conduct the following conversation:

- | <u>Secretary</u>   | <u>You</u>  |
|--|---|
| 1. 'Hello, Bank of Korea!'   | 'Hello, may I speak to Mr. Choe of the Foreign Currency Section?'   |
| 2. 'I'm sorry but he is not in the office now.'  | 'Do you happen to know where he has gone?'  |
| 3. 'Yes. He went out for lunch with a friend.'   | 'Do you know what time he'll be back?'  |
| 4. 'It's been nearly an hour since he left the office, so he'll be back soon. Do you want to leave a message?' | 'No, that's all right. I have something to say to him <u>directly</u> /cikčŏp/. I'll call again in about a half an hour.' |
| 5. 'O.K., then, please do so.'   | 'Thank you.'  |

E. Make short dialogues so that the second partner uses the following expressions in his response:

- |                     |                        |
|---------------------|------------------------|
| 1. maim tælo        | 'as one pleases'       |
| 2. tasi han pæn     | 'once more'            |
| 3. cohin kihwe      | 'a good chance'        |
| 4. il call          | 'a job'                |
| 5. coyonghi         | 'quietly'              |
| 6. com tæ khike     | 'a little more loudly' |
| 7. allyæ cusipsiyo  | 'let [someone] know'   |
| 8. khiki            | 'size'                 |
| 9. (ton) cikap      | 'wallet'               |
| 10. pal soli        | 'foot-steps'           |
| 11. itta            | 'later'                |
| 12. akka            | 'a little while ago'   |
| 13. chenchenhhi     | 'slowly'               |
| 14. camkan man      | 'just a moment'        |
| 15. Puthak-hamnita. | 'Yes, please.'         |

F. For each of the following pairs of words make short statements in Korean which include both words:

- |                            |   |
|----------------------------|---|
| 1. car: garage             | 6. dishes: kitchen                          |
| 2. automobile: parking lot | 7. kids: yard ( <u>or</u> garden)           |
| 3. bicycle: playground     | 8. address book: pocket/(ho)cumeni/         |
| 4. children: the outside   | 9. wallet: briefcase                        |
| 5. ball: the inside        | 10. Mr. Kim's address: his telephone number |

G. Tell the class that:

1. you've jotted down Mr. Kim's address and telephone number.
2. you've deposited money in the bank.
3. you can hear the airplane well.
4. you've left the car on the street.
5. you don't know whom Dr. Kim is looking for.
6. you can answer any questions from the students.
7. you'll call the doctor a little while later.
8. you heard about the story just a little while ago.

## 제 17 과 전화 ( 계속 )

( 대화 A )

( 김 선생 부인은 부엌에 있다. )

엄마

1. 어린 딸 : 엄마! 전화 왔어요.

밖어탁

너

네가

왔니

2. 어머니 : 어디에서 왔니? 네가 밖어탁.

아빠

3. 어린 딸 : 어느 분이 아버지를 찾어요.

4. 어머니 : 그림, 잠깐만 기다려탁. 곧 들어 가겠따.

( 대화 B )

- 조금 후에 -

5. 미씨씨 김 : 여보세요.

댜

6. 제임스 : 여보세요. 김 기수 선생 댜입니까?

7. 미씨씨 김 : 예, 그렇습니다.



## UNIT 17. Telephoning (Continued)

## BASIC DIALOGUES FOR MEMORIZATION

Dialogue A

(..James tries to reach Mr. Kim..)  
 (Mrs. Kim is in the kitchen.)

Little Daughter

emma

Mommy

1. emma! Cenhwa wassə yo.

Telephone, Mommy!

Mother

patəla

receive [it]

nə

you (Plain Speech)

ne ka

you (Subject in Plain Speech)

wassni/wanni/

has [it] come?

2. əti esə wassni? Ne ka patəla.

Where is it? You get it.

Little Daughter

appa

Daddy

3. əni pun i appa lil chace yo.

Somebody wants Daddy.

Mother4. Kıləm, camkan man kitalyəla.  
Kot tilə kakessta.Well, just a minute. I'm coming in  
right away.Dialogue B

(..a little later..)

Mrs. Kim

5. Yəpose yo.

Hello.

James

tək

home; residence

6. Yəpose yo. Kim Kisu Sənsəng  
tək imnikka?

Is this Mr. Kisu Kim's residence?

Mrs. Kim

7. Ne, kıləhsımnita.

Yes, it is.

8. 제임스: 지금, 김 선생 댁에 계세요?  
아이구  
조금 전에
9. 미씨쓰 김: 아이구! 조금 전에 나 가셨는데요.  
누구(이)시지요?  
제임스(이)라고 합니다
10. 제임스: 김 선생의 친구입니다. (저는) 제임스(이)라고  
합니다.  
선생에 대해서, 선생에 관해서  
이야기, 얘기  
이야기 들었습니다
11. 미씨쓰 김: 아, 그러세요? 선생에 대해서 이야기 많이  
들었습니다. 저는 미씨쓰 김입니다.
12. 제임스: 가다고 (말)합니다  
그러세요? 전화로 실테합니다. 김 선생,  
어디에 가다고 (말)했습니까?  
약속  
만날 약속이 있습니다
13. 미씨쓰 김: 친구와 만날 약속이 있다고 (말씀)하셨습니다.  
그리고, 다섯 시까지 집에 오겠다고 했어요.
14. 제임스: 그러면, 다시 걸겠습니다.

James

8. Cikim, Kim Sənsəng, tək e kyese yo? Is Mr. Kim at home now?

Mrs. Kim

- aiku Gee!; Oh!  
 cokim cən e a little while ago
9. Aiku! Cokim cən e na kasyəssnın te yo. Nuku (i)sici yo? I'm sorry. He went out just a minute ago. Who is calling, please?

James

- Ceimsı (i)lako hamnita [they] say that [I]'m James
10. Kim Sənsəng e chinku imnita. I'm Mr. James, a friend of Mr. Kim's.  
 (Cə nın) Ceimsı (i)lako hamnita.

Mrs. Kim

- sənsəng e {təhə sə } about you; about teacher;  
 {kwanhə sə } concerning you
- yəki }  
 iyaki } story
- iyaki tiləssımnita I heard (the story)
11. A, kiləse yo? Sənsəng e təhə sə Oh, yes? He has told me about you.  
 iyaki manhı tiləssımnita: ('I heard a lot about you.')
- Cə nın Missisı Kim imnita. I am Mrs. Kim.

James

- kanta ko (mal-)hamnita [they] say that [they] go
12. Kiləse yo! Cənhwa lo sillye-hamnita. Is that so! Pardon me for calling.  
 Kim Sənsəng, eti e kanta ko Did he say where he was going?  
 (mal-)həssımnikka?

Mrs. Kim

- yaksok appointment, date
- mannal yaksok i issımnita [I] have an appointment to meet  
 (someone)
13. Chinku wa mannal yaksok i issta ko He said that he has an appointment to  
 (malssım-)hasyəssımnita. Kiliko, meet with a friend. And he said  
 tasəs-si kkaci cip e okessta ko that he'll come home by 5 o'clock.  
 həsse yo.

전화하라고 (말)합니다

15. 미씨쓰 김: 선생에게 전화하라고 말할까요?

말씀해 주십시오

16. 제임스: 그저, 제가 전화했다고 말씀해 주십시오.

17. 미씨쓰 김: 예, 알겠습니다. 그렇게 하겠습니다.

18. 제임스: 그럼, 안녕히 계십시오.

19. 미씨쓰 김: 고맙습니다. 안녕히 계세요.

14. Kıləmyən, tasi kəlkessımnita. James Well, I will call again.
15. Sənsəng eke cənhwa-hala ko (mal-)hamnita Mrs. Kim [he] tells [me] to call [him]  
mal-hal kka yo? Shall I tell [him] to call you?
16. Kıcə, ce ka cənhwa-həssta ko James please tell [him]  
malssım-hə cusipsiyo. Just tell him that I called.
17. Ne, alkessımnita. Kıləhke Mrs. Kim Yes, I understand. I'll do so.  
hakessımnita.
18. Kıləm, annyənghi kyesipsiyo. James Goodbye, then.
19. Komapsımnita. Annyənghi kyese yo. Mrs. Kim Thank you. Goodbye.

## NOTES ON DIALOGUES

(Numbers correspond to the sentence numbers.)

- 1.3. emma 'Mommy' and appa 'Daddy' are the words frequently used by children. Girls use them much more than boys.
  
9. Aiku! 'Gee!!' or 'Oh!!' is a kind of exclamatory expression which indicates the speaker's surprise, delight, disappointment or helplessness, depending on the situation.
  
11. Iyaki ('story') and its contracted form yæki is used as a synonym of mal in all environments. Iyaki-ha- is equally interchangeable with mal-ha-.
  
12. Yaksok means either 'a promise' or 'an appointment (to meet someone)'. Its verb yaksok-ha- means 'to promise' or 'to make an appointment'.

## GRAMMAR NOTES

## 1. Plain Speech: Formal and Informal

So far we have had the Polite Speech (Formal and Informal). As was mentioned in Units 2, 3, 4 the Polite Speech is the speech level spoken to the adults and/or the seniors in rank (e.g. age, school-grade, job, military, social status, etc.) in the hierarchy of the Korean social system. In general, a foreigner is expected to use the Polite Speech no matter who he speaks to, regardless of his age or status. At the same time he is spoken to in the Polite Speech. However, there is another commonly used speech level or style spoken to or among the children, which we shall call Plain Speech. Just like the Polite Speech, the Plain Speech has formal and informal styles, both of which are no different in level but are different only in the inflected forms of verbs at the end of the sentences. The two styles are usually mixed in one's speech. It is not easy to draw a strict line as to who uses the Plain Speech to whom, but it is very important to recognize the relationships of the two people by the speech levels they use each other. The following are the general rules governing how Plain Speech is used:

- (a) The parents to their own children of any age.
- (b) The older siblings in the family to the younger ones, or both another if there is little difference in age.
- (c) The adults to the children of others who are under or around their teen age.
- (d) Among the old and present classmates of all school ages (even in their adult life Plain Speech is often maintained).
- (e) Among the friends of childhood or boyhood.
- (f) The teachers to their students of pre-college ages.
- (g) The senior graders of the same high school to their junior graders (in case of girls, even in college).

The reverse of the above rules is not possible.

- (A). To form the Formal Plain Speech the final verbs in the sentences end in the following endings:

	Statement:	Question:	Imperative:	Propositive:
	-( <u>nin/n</u> )ta	-( <u>1</u> )nyi? or -( <u>1</u> )nya?	-( <u>a, ə</u> )la	- <u>ca</u>
1. Action Verb:				
a. Present	(1) -ninta/-nta	(2) -(1)nyi?	(4) -(a,ə)la	-ca
b. Past	-(a,ə)ssta	-(a,ə)ssnyi?	-	-
c. Future	-kessta	-kessnyi?	-	-
2. Description Verb:				
a. Present	-ta	-nyi?	-	-
b. Past	-(a,ə)ssta	-(a,ə)ssnyi?	-	-
c. Future	-kessta	-kessnyi?	-	-
3. Copula:				
a. Present	ita	(3) (1)nyi?	-	-
b. Past	iəssta	iəssnyi?	-	-
c. Future	ikessta	ikessnyi?	-	-

Notes:

- (1) -ninta is added to a stem ending in a consonant; -nta to a stem ending in a vowel. Exception: An action verb stem ending in either -ss- or -ps- takes -ta for a statement (in present tense), e.g. iss- → issta/ittta/, əps- → əpsta/əptta/.

- (2) -inyi? is added to a stem ending in a consonant; -nyi? to a stem ending a vowel.
- (3) After a noun which ends in a vowel the copula stem i- is usually silent.
- (4) The verb element to which -la is added is identical with an infinitive form. There are a few irregular forms for the imperative ending:  
'go' o → wala or onəla, 'come' ka → kala or kakəla.

- (B) The Informal Plain Speech has just one inflected form of a verb regardless of the sentence types, that is, all the four sentence types (statement, question, propositative, imperative) are in the Infinitive with different intonation patterns. When you drop off the particle yo from the Informal Polite Speech, the remaining part with the same intonation pattern is the Informal Plain Speech. Exception: the copula expression in Informal Plain Speech is (i)ya. Compare the following:

<u>Informal Polite</u>	<u>Informal Plain</u>	
Ka yo.	Ka.	'[I] go.'
Ka yo?	Ka?	'Do [you] go?'
Ka yo.	Ka. (in propositative intonation)	'Let's go.'
Ka yo.	Ka. (in imperative intonation)	'Go.'

## 2. Personal Nouns in the Polite and Plain Speeches

When the speech levels change, not only the final verb forms change but also the other words in the sentence such as personal nouns may require different forms (polite, less polite, humble, blunt, etc.) depending on what speech level the speaker uses. Study the following chart:

Speech Level:	Speaker:	Addressee:
Polite	<u>cə</u> 'I', <u>ce ka</u> 'I (as emphasis subject)', <u>ce</u> or <u>cə e</u> 'my', <u>cə lil</u> 'me', <u>cə eke</u> 'to me', <u>uli</u> or <u>cəi</u> or <u>cəi til</u> 'we'	<u>sənsəng</u> or <u>sənsəng nim</u> or <u>təngsin</u> 'you', <u>sənsəng til</u> or <u>təngsin til</u> 'you (pl.)', etc.
Plain	<u>na</u> 'I', <u>nə ka</u> 'I (as subject)', <u>na lil</u>	<u>nə</u> 'you', <u>nə ka</u> 'you (as subject)', <u>nə lil</u> 'you'



	'me (as direct object)', <u>næke</u> (or <u>na eke</u> ) 'to me', <u>uli</u> 'we'.	(as direct object)', <u>ne</u> or <u>næ e</u> 'your', <u>næ eke</u> 'to you', <u>næi</u> or <u>næi til</u> 'you (pl.)', <u>næi ka</u> or <u>næi til i</u> 'you (pl.)' (as subject)', etc.
--	--	--

Note that ne 'yes' and aniyo 'no' in the plain speech are replaced by ing or kilæ for ne; ani for aniyo.

3. Particles lako and ko

The particles lako and ko follow quotations and are called the Quotative Particles (or simply the quotatives). Since lako occurs after a direct quotation of the exact words of the original speaker - a word, a phrase, a sentence, an utterance, etc., it is called the Direct Quotative Particle.

Examples:

- (a) Original expression: Mæli ka aphimnita. ' [I] have a headache.'
- Quoted: 'Mæli ka aphimnita,' { '[He] said, "I have a headache."' }  
 lako mal-hæssimnita. { '[He] said that he had a headache.' }
  
- (b) Original expression: Kim Sænsæng (i) tæk e kyese yo? 'Is Mr. Kim at home?'
- Quoted: 'Kim Sænsæng i tæk e kyese yo?' lako { '[He] asked if Mr. Kim is at home.' }  
 mal-hæssæ yo. { '"Is Mr. Kim at home?," said [he].'
  
- (c) Original expression: Onil ttænapsita. 'Let's leave today.'
- Quoted: 'Onil ttænapsita,' { 'He suggested that we (he and I) leave today.' }  
 lako (k1 ka) mal-hæssimnita. { '"Let's leave today," said he.'
  
- (d) Original expression: Annyæng hi kasipsiyo. 'Good bye.'
- Quoted: 'Annyæng hi kasipsiyo,' { 'She said [to me] a good-bye.' }  
 lako k1 yæca ka { '"Good-bye," she said.' }  
 mal-hæssimnita.

Ko follows a quotation which is said from the point of view of the speaker reporting the quotation. The tenses of the original is retained in the quotations but the forms of the verb are in indirect forms which we shall call the Indirect Quotations. Thus, ko is called the Indirect Quotative Particle. The Indirect Quotative verb forms are almost identical with the Formal Plain Speech verb forms with a few exceptions: in Indirect Quotations, the copula is (i)la: (la after a nominal ending in a vowel and ila after a nominal ending in a consonant); an imperative verb ending is -(i)la: (ila is added to a consonant verb stem and -la to a vowel stem); a question verb ending is always -(ni)nya instead of -(i)nyi. Observe the following chart:

	Indirect Quotation Ending	The Quotative Particle	Verbs which may be followed	Approximate Translations
1. Statement:				
a. Action Verb:				
Present	-ninta/nta	+ ko +	{ (mal-)ha- sængkak-ha- a(1)-	'says that...' 'thinks that...' 'understands that...'
Past	-(a,ə)ssta			
Future	-kessta			
b. Description Verb:				
Present	-ta			
Past	-(a,ə)ssta			
Future	-kessta			
c. Copula	(i)la			
2. Question:	-(ni)nya }	+ ko +	{ (mal-)ha- mulə po-	'asks (if)...'
3. Imperative:	-(i)la }	+ ko +	{ (mal-)ha-	'tells [some-one] to...'
4. Propositative:	-ca }	+ ko +	{ (mal-)ha-	'suggests that...'

## Examples:

- 1.
- eti e kanta ko mal-hæssimnikka? 'Did [he] say where [he] is going?'  
 Yaksok i issta ko mal-hæssə yo. '[He] said that [he] has an  
 appointment.'
- eməni ka tola kasyəssta ko ' [He] says that his mother died.'  
 mal-hamnita.
- Kim Sənsəng i Səul esə salkessta 'Mr. Kim says he'll live in Seoul.'  
 ko hə yo.
- Chwe Ssi e atil i phək '[They] say that Mr. Choe's son is  
 ttokttokhata ko hamnita. very bright.'
- Kim Paksa nin puca (i)la ko hamnita. '[They] say that Dr. Kim is (a)  
 rich(man).'
- 2.
- Hankil il ilkil su issninya ko '[I] asked (James) if he can read  
 (Ceimsi eke) mule pwassimnita. Hankil.'
- Taim kicha ka myəch-si e 'Ask [him] what time the next train  
 ttəna(ni)nya ko mule posipsiyo. leaves.'
- Ilim i muəs inya ko ki salam i 'That man asked me what my name is.'  
 na eke mal-hæssə yo.
- Pak Sənsəng i tangsin eke Hankuk 'Did Mr. Park ask you if Korean is  
 mal i elyəpnnya ko mal-hæssimnikka? difficult?'
- 3.
- Sənsəng eke cənhwa-hala ko mal-hal 'Shall I tell [him] to call you?'  
 kka yo?
- (Ai eke) kongpu-hala ko həssimnita. 'I told [my child] to study.'
- Nuka sənsəng eke wekukə lil pəula 'Who told you to learn foreign  
 ko mal-hæssə yo? languages?'
- Sikmo eke cənyək (il) cunpi-hala 'I told the maid to prepare supper.'  
 ko mal-hæssimnita.
- 4.
- Cəmsim məkilə kaca ko chinku ka '[My] friend suggested that we go  
 mal-hæssimnita. (to) eat lunch.'
- Com swica ko (ki eke) mal-hasipsiyo. 'Suggest (to him) that you (pl.) take  
 a rest.'
- Wə ki yəca eke kyəlhon-hača ko 'Why don't you propose to her? ('Why  
 mal-haci anhsimnikka? don't you propose that you [and she]  
 get married?')

## DRILLS

## A. Level Drill (based on Grammar Note 1)

Tutor: Cə nin hakkyo e kamnita.

'I'm going to school.' (Formal Polite)

Student: Na nin hakkyo e kanta.

'I'm going to school.' (Formal Plain)

- |  |                                      |
|--|--------------------------------------|
| 1. Cə nin kimchi lil cohahamnita.              | Na nin kimchi lil cohahanta.         |
| 2. Cə nin nal mata cənhwa lil patsimnita.      | Na nin nal mata cənhwa lil patninta. |
| 3. Cə nin il cali lil chaesimnita.             | Na nin il cali lil chacninta.        |
| 4. Hankuk imsik i mas i issimnita.             | Hankuk imsik i mas i issta.          |
| 5. Kyəul nalssi ka chupsimnita.                | Kyəul nalssi ka chupta.              |
| 6. Pihəngki ka ceil ppalimnita.                | Pihəngki ka ceil ppalita.            |
| 7. Cəi ka pwasimnita.                          | Uli ka pwassta.                      |
| 8. Cəi ka Kim Paksa lil mannassimnita.         | Uli ka Kim Paksa lil mannassta.      |
| 9. Cə nin Yəngə lil molimnita.                 | Na nin Yəngə lil molinta.            |
| 10. Cikim pi ka oci anhsimnita.                | Cikim pi ka oci anhninta.            |
| 11. I Kyosu eke nin cənhal mal i<br>əpsimnita. | I Kyosu eke nin cənhal mal i əpsta.  |
| 12. Acik pə ka kophici anhsimnita.             | Acik pə ka kophici anhta.            |

## B. Level Drill (based on Grammar Note 1)

Student 1: Hankuk mal i swipsimnikka?

'Is Korean easy?'

Student 2: Hankuk mal i swipnyi?

'Is Korean easy?'

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Sensəng in Səul salam imnikka?                       | Nə nin Səul salam inya?                          |
| 2. Tangsin in Yəngə lil mal-hamnikka?                   | Nə nin Yəngə lil mal-hanyi?                      |
| 3. Pom e pi ka manhi omnikka?                           | Pom e pi ka manhi onyi?                          |
| 4. Kulapha esə yəhəng-həssimnikka?                      | Kulapha esə yəhəng-həssnyi?                      |
| 5. Pəlsə cəmsim il capsusyəssimnikka?                   | Pəlsə cəmsim il məkəssnyi?                       |
| 6. Kim Sensəng puin kwa cənhwa lo<br>iyaki-həssimnikka? | Kim Sensəng puin kwa cənhwa lo<br>iyaki-həssnyi? |
| 7. Pusan esə sale pon il i issimnikka?                  | Pusan esə sale pon il i issnyi?                  |
| 8. Mikuk Təsakwan e kinmu-hako<br>siphsimnikka?         | Mikuk Təsakwan e kinmu-hako<br>siphnyi?          |
| 9. əlma tongan tapang esə<br>kitaliəssimnikka?          | əlma tongan tapang esə kitaliəssnyi?             |
| 10. əce muəs hale sinə e tillessimnikka?                | əce muəs hale sinə e tillessnyi?                 |

## C. Level Drill (based on Grammar Note 1)

Student 1: Hakkyo e kapsita.	'Let's go to school.'
Student 2: Hakkyo e kaca.	'Let's go to school.'
1. Com swipsita.	Com swica.
2. Cənyək (il) məkipsita.	Cənyək il məkca.
3. Onil pam e yəngħwa polə kapsita.	Onil pam e yəngħwa polə kaca.
4. Hankuk mal lo iyaki-hapsita.	Hankuk mal lo iyaki haca.
5. Chənchənhi kələ kapsita.	Chənchənhi kələ kaca.
6. Onil in cip e issipsita.	Onil in cip e issca.
7. Pul-koki lil məkə popsita.	Pul-koki lil məkə poca.
8. Kutu lil saci mapsita.	Kutu lil saci ma(1)ca.
9. Pak Sənsəng eke cənhwa-haci mapsita.	Pak Sənsəng eke cənhwa-haci ma(1)ca.
10. Kyosil esə tampə lil phiuci mapsita.	Kyosil esə tampə lil phiuci ma(1)ca.
11. Kilən kəs il yaksok-haci mapsita.	Kilən kəs il yaksok-haci ma(1)ca.
12. Hakkyo lil kimantuci mapsita.	Hakkyo lil kimantuci ma(1)ca.

## D. Level Drill (based on Grammar Note 1)

Student 3: Hankuk mal lo mal-hasipsiyo.	'Speak ( <u>or</u> say) in Korean.'
Student 4: Hankuk mal lo mal-həla.	'Speak ( <u>or</u> say) in Korean.'
1. Ohu e tto osipsiyo.	Ohu e tto {onəla. wala.
2. Cip e kasipsiyo.	Cip e {kakəla. kala.
3. esə capsusipsiyo.	esə məkəla.
4. Com tə khike malssim-hasipsiyo.	Com tə khike mal-həla.
5. Yəki esə nəlisipsiyo.	Yəki esə nəliəla.
6. Nəil tasi cənhwa kəsipsiyo.	Nəil tasi cənhwa kələla.
7. Ce cənhwa pənho lil cəkə tusipsiyo.	Nə cənhwa pənho lil cəkə tuəla.
8. I chək il I Sənsəng eke cənhasipsiyo.	I chək il I Sənsəng eke cənhəla.
9. Kī pun eke mal-haci masipsiyo.	Kī pun eke mal-haci maləla.
10. Kilən yaksok in haci masipsiyo.	Kilən yaksok in haci maləla.

## E. Response Drill (based on Grammar Note 1)

Child: Sənsəŋ in Yəŋgə lɪl mal- hasimnikka?	'Do you speak English, sir?'
Adult: ɪŋg, kɪlæ, (na nɪn) Yəŋgə lɪl mal-hanta.	'Yes, I do.' ('That's right, I speak English.')
1. Wekuk e ka pon il i issimnikka?	ɪŋg, kɪlæ, wekuk e ka pon il i issta.
2. Hankuk mal i pokcap-hamnikka?	ɪŋg, kɪlæ, (Hankuk mal i) pokcap-hata.
3. Sæ yangpok il sassimnikka?	ɪŋg, kɪlæ, sæ yangpok il sassta.
4. Sənsəŋ nim in tæmpæ lɪl phiurnikka?	ɪŋg, kɪlæ, tæmpæ (lɪl) phiunta.
5. Ce apəci eke cənhal malssim i issimnikka?	ɪŋg, kɪlæ, (nə e apəci eke) cənhal mal i issta.
6. Onil cənyək e tola osikessimnikka?	ɪŋg, kɪlæ, onil cənyək e tola okessta.
7. Kɪ kəs i tahəŋ imnikka?	ɪŋg, kɪlæ, kɪ kəs i tahəŋ ita.
8. Ceimsɪ e tæhæ sə iyaki tiləssimnikka?	ɪŋg, kɪlæ, (Ceimsɪ e tæhæ sə) iyaki tiləssta.
9. Hankɪl il mot ilksimnikka?	ɪŋg, kɪlæ, (Hankɪl il) mot ilkninta.
10. Sənsəŋ in ton i əpsimnikka?	ɪŋg, kɪlæ, ton i əpsta.

## F. Response Drill (based on Grammar Note 1)

Child: (Uli) hakkyo e kal kka yo?	'Shall we go to school?'
Adult: Kɪlæ, (hakkyo e) kaca.	'Sure, let's go.'
1. Cəmsim il məkɪl kka yo?	Kɪlæ, (cəmsim il) məkca.
2. Cəncha pota ppəsɪ lɪl thako kal kka yo?	Kɪlæ, (cəncha pota) ppəsɪ lɪl thako kaca.
3. Lætio nyussɪ lɪl tilə pol kka yo?	Kɪlæ, (lætio nyussɪ lɪl) tilə poca.
4. Cəŋgkəcang aph esə nəlɪl kka yo?	Kɪlæ, cəŋgkəcang aph esə nəlica.
5. Tasi səŋgak-hæ pol kka yo?	Kɪlæ, tasi səŋgak-hæ poca.
6. Kicha lo Pusan e nəlyə kal kka yo?	Kɪlæ, kicha lo (Pusan e) nəlyə kaca.
7. Ppəsɪ lo Nyuyok e olla kal kka yo?	Kɪlæ, ppəsɪ lo (Nyuyok e) olla kaca.
8. Cənhwa pənho lɪl pakkul kka yo?	Kɪlæ, (cənhwa pənho lɪl) pakkuca.
9. I sosik il halapəci eke cənhal kka yo?	Kɪlæ, (i sosik il halapəci eke) cənhaca.

## G. Response Drill

Child: Cikim sicak-hæ to cohsimnikka?	'May I start now?'
Adult: Kilæ, æsæ sicak-hæla.	'Go right ahead.'
1. Malssim com mulæ pwa to cohsimnikka?	Kilæ, æsæ mulæ pwala.
2. Thipi lil pwa to cohsimnikka?	Kilæ, æsæ pwala.
3. Sænsæng e manyenphil il sse to cohsimnikka?	Kilæ, æsæ ssæla.
4. Cæmun il yælæ to cohsimnikka?	Kilæ, æsæ yælæla.
5. Mun il tate to cohsimnikka?	Kilæ, æsæ tatæla.
6. Kyosil esæ tampæ lil phiwæ to cohsimnikka?	Kilæ, æsæ phiwæla.
7. Sænsæng eke han kaci puthak-hæ to cohsimnikka?	Kilæ, æsæ puthak-hæla.
8. I chæk il ilkæ to cohsimnikka?	Kilæ, æsæ ilkæla.
9. Pak Yængca wa kyælhon-hæ to cohsimnikka?	Kilæ, æsæ kyælhon-hæla.

## H. Response Drill

Adult: Hankuk mal il pæunyi?	'Are you learning Korean?'
Child: Ne, (Hankuk mal il) pæwæ yo.	'Yes, I am (learning Korean,) (sir)'
1. Hankuk mal il anyi?	Ne, (Hankuk mal il) alæ yo.
2. Hakkyo ka kakkapnyi? {kakkaunyi?	Ne, (hakkyo ka) kakkawæ yo.
3. Cikim pæ ka kopunyi?	Ne, pæ ka kopha yo.
4. Mom i phikon-hanyi?	Ne, (mom i) phikon-hæ yo.
5. Hakkyo ka kkith-nassnyi?	Ne, (hakkyo ka) kkith-nassæ yo.
6. Nal mata Hankuk mal il yænsip-hanyi?	Ne, nal mata (Hankuk mal il) yænsip-hæ yo.
7. Kicha ka pælsæ ttenassnyi?	Ne, pælsæ ttenassæ yo.
8. Ppæsi ka pælsæ tahassnyi?	Ne, pælsæ tahassæ yo.
9. Onil cænyæk e pi ka okessnyi?	Ne, (onil cænyæk e) pi ka okessæ yo.
10. Kim Sænsæng puin in nai ka manhnyi?	Ne, (Kim Sænsæng puin in) nai ka manhæ yo.

## I. Substitution Drill

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. I kəs il Yəngə lo muəs ila ko<br>hamnikka?                                       | How do you say this in English?                             |
| 2. <u>Cə kəs</u> il <u>Hankuk mal</u> lo muəs ila ko<br>hamnikka?                   | How do you say that in Korean?                              |
| 3. <u>Yaksok</u> il <u>Tokil mal</u> lo muəs ila ko<br>hamnikka?                    | How do you say appointment in German?                       |
| 4. <u>Cənhəl mal</u> il <u>Səpana mal</u> lo muəs<br>ila ko hamnikka?               | How do you say message in Spanish?                          |
| 5. <u>Puthak</u> il <u>Cungkuk mal</u> lo muəs ila<br>ko hamnikka?                  | How do you say a favor to ask in<br>Chinese?                |
| 6. 'Yəpose yo.' lil <u>Ilpon mal</u> lo muəs<br>ila ko hamnikka?                    | How do you say 'Hello (there).' in<br>Japanese?             |
| 7. 'Tahəng imnita.' lil <u>Mikuk mal</u> lo<br>muəs ila ko hamnikka?                | How do you say 'That's fortunate.'<br>in American language? |
| 8. 'Camkan man kitalise yo.' lil<br><u>Pullansə mal</u> lo muəs ila ko<br>hamnikka? | How do you say 'Wait a minute.'<br>in French?               |
| 9. 'Alkessimnita.' lil <u>Ssolyən mal</u><br>muəs ila ko hamnikka?                  | How do you say 'I understand.' in<br>Russian?               |

## J. Substitution Drill

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Sənsəng e təhə sə iyaki (manhi)<br>tiləssimnita.           | I heard (a lot) about you.                 |
| *2. <u>Ki sosik</u> e təhə sə iyaki<br>tiləssimnita.          | I heard about that news.                   |
| *3. <u>Ki sinmun kisa</u> e təhə sə iyaki<br>tiləssimnita.    | I heard about that newspaper article.      |
| *4. <u>Ki il cali</u> e təhə sə iyaki<br>tiləssimnita.        | I heard about that job.                    |
| *5. <u>Ki catongcha sako</u> e təhə sə iyaki<br>tiləssimnita. | I heard about that automobile<br>accident. |
| *6. <u>Ki saken</u> e təhə sə iyaki tiləssimnita.             | I heard about that incident.               |
| *7. <u>Hankuk səngħwal</u> e təhə sə iyaki<br>tiləssimnita.   | I heard about the Korean life.             |



8. Wekyokwan sŏnghwal e tæhæ sê  
iyaki tilæssimnita. I heard about the life of foreign  
service.
- \*9. Hankuk nongpu e hæhæ sê iyaki  
tilæssimnita. I heard about the Korean farmers.

## K. Substitution Drill

1. Cê e ilim in Ceimsi la ko hamnita. My name is James. ('[They] say that  
my name is James.')
- \*2. I kŏnmul e ilim in Kukce Ssenthe  
la ko hamnita. The name of this building is said  
to be International Center.
- \*3. I kŏli e ilim in Congno la ko  
hamnita. The name of this street is Congno.
- \*4. Hankuk Cŏngpu e ilim in Tæhan  
Minkuk ila ko hamnita. The name of the Korean Government is  
Republic of Korea.
- \*5. Pullansê e sêul in Phali la ko  
hamnita. The capital of France is Paris.
- \*6. Mikuk e suto nin Wësingthon ila ko  
hamnita. The capital city of the U.S. is  
Washington.
- \*7. I tosi e ilim in Tæku la ko hamnita. The name of this city is Taegu.
- \*8. Cê tæhakkyo e ilim in Yense Tæhakkyo  
la ko hamnita. The name of that university is  
Yonsei University.
- \*9. Cê yeca e ilim in Pak Yŏngsuk ila  
ko hamnita. That woman's name is Park Young-Sook.

## L. Substitution Drill

1. Kim Sŏnsæng i eti e kanta ko  
(mal-)hæssimnikka? {Did Mr. Kim say where he is going?  
{Did [they] say where Mr. Kim is going?
2. Kim Sŏnsæng i muës il kalichinta  
ko hæssimnikka? Did Mr. Kim say what he is teaching?
3. Kim Sŏnsæng i eti e santa ko  
hæssimnikka? Did Mr. Kim say where he lives?
4. Kim Sŏnsæng i muës il wenhanta ko  
hæssimnikka? Did Mr. Kim say what he wants?
5. Kim Sŏnsæng i ance onta ko  
hæssimnikka? Did Mr. Kim say when he is coming?

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 6. Kim Sənsəng i <u>myəch-si e tola onta ko</u> həssimnikka?        | Did Mr. Kim say what time he is coming back? |
| 7. Kim Sənsəng i <u>nuku lil chachinta ko</u> həssimnikka?          | Did Mr. Kim say whom he is looking for?      |
| 8. Kim Sənsəng i <u>wə Hankuk mal il pəunta ko</u> həssimnikka?     | Did Mr. Kim say why he is studying Korean?   |
| 9. Kim Sənsəng i <u>myəch sikan tongan il-hanta ko</u> həssimnikka? | Did Mr. Kim say how many hours he works?     |

## M. Substitution Drill

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Pak Sənsəng in <u>hakkyo e kanta ko</u> (mal-)həssimnita.            | Mr. Park said that he is going to school.  |
| 2. Pak Sənsəng in <u>Hankuk salam ila ko</u> (mal-)həssimnita.          | Mr. Park said that he is a Korean.   |
| 3. Pak Sənsəng in <u>Hankuk mal il kallichinta ko</u> (mal-)həssimnita. | { Mr. Park said that he is teaching Korean.<br>[He] said that Mr. Park is teaching Korean. |
| 4. Pak Sənsəng in <u>Pul-koki lil məkko siphta ko</u> (mal-)həssimnita. | Mr. Park said that he wants to eat Pul-koki.   |
| 5. Pak Sənsəng in <u>sənsəng il anta ko</u> (mal-)həssimnita.           | Mr. Park said that he knows you.   |
| 6. Pak Sənsəng in <u>nal mata cənhwa lil kənta ko</u> (mal-)həssimnita. | Mr. Park said that he makes phone-calls everyday.  |
| 7. Pak Sənsəng in <u>Yəngə lil alə ya hanta ko</u> (mal-)həssimnita.    | Mr. Park said that [he] has to know English.   |
| 8. Pak Sənsəng in <u>nəil ttənalə ko hanta ko</u> (mal-)həssimnita.     | Mr. Park said that he is going to leave tomorrow.  |
| 9. Pak Sənsəng in <u>sə cha lil sal kəs ila ko</u> (mal-)həssimnita.    | Mr. Park said that he will buy a new car.  |

## N. Substitution Drill

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. Hakkyo ka kakkapta ko Kim Sənsəng i mal-həsse yo.             | Mr. Kim said that the school is near.                |
| 2. <u>Səul cip kaps i pissata ko</u> Kim Sənsəng i mal-həsse yo. | Mr. Kim said that the housing in Seoul is expensive. |

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 3. <u>Yenge ka swipci anhta</u> ko Kim<br>Sensæng i mal-hæsse yo.    | Mr. Kim said that English is not easy.               |
| 4. <u>Cencha ka pencap-hata</u> ko Kim<br>Sensæng i mal-hæsse yo.    | Mr. Kim said that streetcars are crowded.            |
| 5. <u>Hansik i mas (i) issta</u> ko<br>Kim Sensæng i mal-hæsse yo.   | Mr. Kim said that Korean food is delicious.          |
| 6. <u>Meli ka com aphita</u> ko Kim<br>Sensæng i mal-hæsse yo.       | Mr. Kim said that he has a little headache.          |
| 7. <u>Munce ka com pokcap-hata</u> ko<br>Kim Sensæng i mal-hæsse yo. | Mr. Kim said that the problem is rather complicated. |
| 8. <u>Tasi cenhwa kælkessta</u> ko Kim<br>Sensæng i mal-hæsse yo.    | Mr. Kim said that he will call again.                |
| 9. <u>Cikim thim i epsta</u> ko Kim<br>Sensæng i mal-hæsse yo.       | Mr. Kim said that he is not free now.                |

## 0. Substitution Drill

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. K1 salam eke tasi cenhwa hala ko<br>mal-hal kka yo?          | Shall I tell him to call again?               |
| 2. K1 salam eke <u>tasi ola ko</u> mal-hal<br>kka yo?           | Shall I tell him to come again?               |
| 3. K1 salam eke <u>kongpu-hala ko</u><br>mal-hal kka yo?        | Shall I tell him to study?                    |
| 4. K1 salam eke <u>tilæ ola ko</u><br>mal-hal kka yo?           | Shall I tell him to come in?                  |
| 5. K1 salam eke <u>ohu e tillila ko</u><br>mal-hal kka yo?      | Shall I tell him to stop by in the afternoon? |
| 6. K1 salam eke <u>alæ pola ko</u> mal-hal<br>kka yo?           | Shall I tell him to find out?                 |
| 7. K1 salam eke <u>tola kala ko</u><br>mal-hal kka yo?          | Shall I tell him to go back?                  |
| 8. K1 salam eke <u>camkan man kyesila ko</u><br>mal-hal kka yo? | Shall I tell him to wait a moment?            |
| 9. K1 salam eke <u>yensip-hala ko</u><br>mal-hal kka yo?        | Shall I tell him to practise?                 |
| 10. K1 salam eke <u>kaci malla ko</u><br>mal-hal kka yo?        | Shall I tell him not to go?                   |

## P. Substitution Drill

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. K1 salam eke kaci malla ko<br>mal-hasipsiyo.                       | Please tell him not to go.  |
| 2. K1 salam eke kaci malla ko<br><u>mal-hæ cusipsiyo.</u>             | Please tell him not to go (for me).   |
| 3. K1 salam eke kaci malla ko<br><u>mal-haci masipsiyo.</u>           | Please don't tell him not to go.  |
| 4. K1 salam eke kaci malla ko<br><u>mal-hæssimnita.</u>               | I told him not to go.   |
| 5. K1 salam eke kaci malla ko<br><u>mal-hæssimnikka?</u>              | Did you tell him not to go?   |
| 6. K1 salam eke kaci malla ko<br><u>mal-hapsita.</u>                  | Let's tell him not to go.   |
| 7. K1 salam eke kaci malla ko<br><u>mal-haci mapsita.</u>             | Let's not tell him not to go.   |
| 8. K1 salam eke kaci malla ko<br><u>mal-hakessə yo.</u>               | I'll tell him not to go.  |
| 9. K1 salam eke kaci malla ko<br><u>mal-haci anhkessə yo.</u>         | I'll not tell him not to go.  |
| 10. K1 salam eke kaci malla ko<br><u>mal-hanın kəs i cohkessə yo.</u> | { You'd better tell him not to go.<br>It will be better to tell him not<br>to go. |
| 11. K1 salam eke kaci malla ko<br><u>mal-hæ to cohsimnita.</u>        | You may tell him not to go.   |

## Q. Substitution Drill

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Kim Sənsəng i na eke Yəngə l1l<br>pəuca ko mal-hamnita.                      | Mr. Kim suggests to me that he and I<br>study English.         |
| 2. Kim Sənsəng i na eke <u>Hankuk mal lo</u><br><u>mal-haca</u> ko mal-hamnita. | Mr. Kim suggests to me that he and I<br>speak in Korean.       |
| 3. Kim Sənsəng i na eke <u>Cungkuk imsik</u><br><u>il məkca</u> ko mal-hamnita. | Mr. Kim suggests to me that he and I<br>eat Chinese food.      |
| 4. Kim Sənsəng i na eke <u>sinə l1l</u><br><u>kukyəng-haca</u> ko mal-hamnita.  | Mr. Kim suggests to me that he and I<br>go around the city.    |
| 5. Kim Sənsəng i na eke <u>cal səngkak-</u><br><u>haca</u> ko mal-hamnita.      | Mr. Kim suggests to me that he and I<br>give a second thought. |

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 6. Kim Sənsəng i na eke <u>il il</u><br><u>sicak-haca</u> ko mal-hamnita.    | Mr. Kim suggests to me that he and I start the work.          |
| 7. Kim Sənsəng i na eke <u>hapsing il</u><br><u>thaca</u> ko mal-hamnita.    | Mr. Kim suggests to me that he and I take a jitney.           |
| 8. Kim Sənsəng i na eke <u>yəca lil</u><br><u>thəuca</u> ko mal-hamnita.     | Mr. Kim suggests to me that he and I give a ride to the girl. |
| 9. Kim Sənsəng i na eke <u>il il</u><br><u>kkith-machica</u> ko mal-hamnita. | Mr. Kim suggests to me that he and I finish the work.         |
| 10. Kim Sənsəng i na eke <u>yəki esə</u><br><u>nəlica</u> ko mal-hamnita.    | Mr. Kim suggests to me that he and I get off here.            |

## R. Substitution Drill

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. <u>Hankuk mal i əlyəpnəya ko Ceimsi</u><br>ka cə eke mulə pwassimnita.                         | James asked me if Korean is difficult.     |
| 2. <u>Ilpon mal i swipnəya ko Ceimsi ka</u><br>cə eke mulə pwassimnita.                           | James asked me if Japanese is easy.        |
| 3. <u>Kicha ka pnyelli-hanya ko Ceimsi</u><br>ka cə eke mulə pwassimnita.                         | James asked me if the train is convenient. |
| 4. <u>Nuka Hankuk mal il kalichi(ni)nya ko</u><br>Ceimsi ka cə eke mulə pwassimnita.              | James inquired me who teaches Korean.      |
| 5. <u>əti esə sa(ni)nya ko Ceimsi ka cə</u><br>eke mulə pwassimnita.                              | James asked me where I am living.          |
| 6. <u>Myəch-si e hakkyo ka kkith-na(ni)nya</u><br><u>ko Ceimsi ka cə eke mulə</u><br>pwassimnita. | James asked me what time school is over.   |
| 7. <u>Myəch sikan tongan kinmu-ha(ni)nya</u><br><u>ko Ceimsi ka cə eke mulə</u><br>pwassimnita.   | James asked me how many hours [I] work.    |
| 8. <u>əlma na menya ko Ceimsi ka cə eke</u><br>mulə pwassimnita.                                  | James asked me how far [it] is.            |
| 9. <u>Onil i myəchil inya ko Ceimsi ka</u><br>cə eke mulə pwassimnita.                            | James asked me what date it is today.      |

## S. Response Drill

- Tutor: Ki 1 eke cənhwa-hala ko  
mal-hal kka yo? 'Shall I tell him to call [you]?'  
Student 1: Ne, cənhwa-hala ko mal-hæ  
cusipsiyo. 'Yes, please tell him to call [me].'  
Student 2: Aniyo, cənhwa-haci malla ko  
mal-hæ cusipsiyo. 'No, please tell him not to call [me].'
- Haksəng eke cip e kala ko mal-hal  
kka yo? Ne, cip e kala ko mal-hæ cusipsiyo.  
Aniyo, cip e kaci malla ko mal-hæ  
cusipsiyo.
  - Ai eke ppəsı lil thako kala ko  
mal-hal kka yo? Ne, ppəsı lil thako kala ko mal-hæ  
cusipsiyo.  
Aniyo, ppəsı lil thako kaci malla ko  
mal-hæ cusipsiyo.
  - Uncənsu eke mun aph esə næliə cula  
ko mal-hal kka yo? Ne, mun aph esə næliə cula ko mal-hæ  
cusipsiyo.  
Aniyo, mun aph esə næliə cuci malla  
ko mal-hæ cusipsiyo.
  - Ceımsı eke cənhwa penho lil cəkə  
tula ko mal-hal kka yo? Ne, cənhwa penho lil cəkə tula ko  
mal-hæ cusipsiyo.  
Aniyo, cənhwa penho lil cəkə tuci  
malla ko mal-hæ cusipsiyo.
  - Pisə eke mun ıl tatıla ko mal-hal  
kka yo? Ne, (mun ıl) tatıla ko mal-hæ  
cusipsiyo.  
Aniyo, (mun ıl) tatci malla ko mal-hæ  
cusipsiyo.
  - I Sənsəng eke Kim Sənsəng e cuso  
lil alə pola ko mal-hal kka yo? Ne, (Kim Sənsəng e cuso lil) alə pola  
ko mal-hæ cusipsiyo.  
Aniyo, (Kim Sənsəng e cuso lil) alə  
poci malla ko mal-hæ cusipsiyo.
  - Miss Chwe eke Hankuk mal ıl  
kalichie cula ko mal-hal kka yo? Ne, Hankuk mal ıl kalichie cula ko  
mal-hæ cusipsiyo.  
Aniyo, Hankuk mal ıl kalichie cuci  
malla ko mal-hæ cusipsiyo.

8. Pak Sənsəng eke khəphi han can sala  
ko mal-hal kka yo?

Ne, (khəphi han can) sala ko mal-hə  
cusipsiyo.

Aniyo, (khəphi han can) saci malla ko  
mal-hə cusipsiyo.

9. Ki yəca eke tangsin il kitalila ko  
mal-hal kka yo?

Ne, (cə lil) kitalila ko mal-hə  
cusipsiyo.

Aniyo, (cə lil) kitalici malla ko  
mal-hə cusipsiyo.

#### T. Response Drill

Tutor: Ai eke cip e kala ko  
mal-həssimnikka?

'Did you tell the child to go home?'

Student 3: Ne, cip e kala ko  
mal-həssimnita.

'Yes, I did. ('I told [him] to go  
home.')

Student 4: Aniyo, cip e kala ko  
mal-haci anhəssimnita.

'No, I didn't. ('I didn't tell [him]  
to go home.')

1. Haksəng til eke cəmsil (il) məkila  
ko mal-həssimnikka?

Ne, cəmsil (il) məkila ko mal-  
həssimnita.

Aniyo, cəmsil (il) məkila ko mal-haci  
anhəssimnita.

2. Puiŋ eke phyənci (lil) puchila ko  
mal-həssimnikka?

Ne, phyənci (lil) puchila ko  
mal-həssimnita.

Aniyo, phyənci (lil) puchila ko  
mal-haci anhəssimnita.

3. Ai til eke kil esə nolla ko  
mal-həssimnikka?

Ne, kil esə nolla ko mal-həssimnita.

Aniyo, kil esə nolla ko mal-haci  
anhəssimnita.

4. Chinku eke tapang esə kitalila ko  
mal-həssimnikka?

Ne, tapang esə kitalila ko mal-  
həssimnita.

Aniyo, tapang esə kitalila ko  
mal-haci anhəssimnita.

5. Uncənsu eke mun esə nəlie cula ko  
mal-həssimnikka?

Ne, mun esə nəlie cula ko mal-  
həssimnita.

Aniyo, mun esə nəlie cula ko  
mal-haci anhəssimnita.

6. Kim Sənsəng eke chæk il ponæla  
ko mal-hæssimnikka?      Ne, chæk il ponæla ko mal-hæssimnita.  
Aniyo, chæk il ponæla ko mal-haci  
anhæssimnita.
7. Atıl eke thipi lıl pola ko  
mal-hæssimnikka?      Ne, thipi lıl pola ko mal-hæssimnita.  
Aniyo, thipi lıl pola ko mal-haci  
anhæssimnita.
8. Kukmusəng i sənsəng eke Hankuk  
mal il pəula ko mal-hæssimnikka?      Ne, Kukmusəng i na eke Hankuk mal il  
pəula ko mal-hæssimnita.  
Aniyo, Kukmusəng i Hankuk mal il  
pəula ko mal-haci anhæssimnita.
9. ıysa ka sənsəng eke khəphi lıl  
masici malla ko mal-hæssimnikka?      Ne, ıysa ka khəphi lıl masici malla  
ko mal-hæssimnita.  
Aniyo, ıysa ka khəphi lıl masici  
malla ko mal-haci anhæssimnita.
10. Kim Sənsəng i Səul esə cəncha lıl  
thaci malla ko mal-hæssimnikka?      Ne, Kim Sənsəng i Səul esə cəncha lıl  
thaci malla ko mal-hæssimnita.  
Aniyo, Kim Sənsəng i Səul esə cəncha  
lıl thaci malla ko mal-haci  
anhæssimnita.

## U. Response Drill

- Tutor: Pak Sənsəng i əti e kanta ko  
mal-hæssimnikka? /tapang/      'Did Mr. Park say where he was  
going? /tearoom/'
- Student: Tapang e kanta ko mal-həssə yo.      'He said (that) he was going to the  
tearoom.'
1. I Sənsəng i muəs ilo yəhəng-hanta  
ko mal-hæssimnikka? /catongcha/      Catongcha lo yəhəng-hanta ko  
mal-həssə yo.
2. ənce kkaci kıl il il kkıth-nənta  
ko mal-hæssimnikka? /taim cuil/      Taim cuil kkaci kkıth-nənta ko  
mal-həssə yo.
3. Kim Sənsəng in atıl i əni təhak e  
taninta ko mal-hæssimnikka?  
/Cungang Təhak/      (Atıl i) Cungang Təhak e taninta ko  
mal-həssə yo.
4. Sə Sənsəng i musın ımsik il  
cohahanta ko mal-hæssimnikka?  
/yangsik/      Yangsik il cohahanta ko mal-həssə yo.



- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 5. Ceimsi ka nuku wa kyelhon-hanta<br>ko mal-hæssimnikka?<br>/Chwe Sænsæng e ttal/                  | Chwe Sænsæng e ttal kwa kyelhon-<br>hanta ko mal-hæssæ yo.        |
| 6. Ceimsi Sænsæng i wæ Hankuk mal<br>il pæunta ko mal-hæssimnikka?<br>/Hankuk e kani kka/           | Hankuk e kani kka, (Hankuk mal il)<br>pæunta ko mal-hæssæ yo.     |
| 7. Ki i ka ælma tongan Hankuk esæ<br>salkessta ko mal-hæssimnikka?<br>/han sam sa nyæn/             | Han sam sa nyæn (tongan) Hankuk esæ<br>salkessta ko mal-hæssæ yo. |
| 8. Pak Sænsæng in muæs il masiko<br>siphta ko mal-hæssimnikka?<br>/mækcu/                           | Mækcu lil masiko siphta ko<br>mal-hæssæ yo.                       |
| 9. Cæng Sænsæng i musin yoil e<br>ttænakessta ko mal-hæssimnikka?<br>/Hwayoil/                      | Hwayoil e ttænakessta ko mal-hæssæ yo.                            |
| 10. Chwe Sænsæng in ælma e cha lil<br>sassta ko mal-hæssimnikka?<br>/chæn-ku-pæk Pul/               | Chæn-ku-pæk Pul e sassta ko<br>mal-hæssæ yo.                      |
| 11. Hankuk mal sænsæng i Mikuk e onci<br>myæch nyæn tweæssta ko mal-<br>hæssimnikka? /sam nyæn pan/ | (Mikuk e onci) sam nyæn pan<br>tweæssta ko mal-hæssæ yo.          |

## V. Transformation Drill

Tutor: (Kim Sænsæng i) i kæs i chæk  
ila ko mal-hæssæ yo?

'Did Mr. Kim say that this is a book?'

Student: (Kim Sænsæng i) na eke i  
kæs i chæk inya ko mule  
pwassæ yo.

'Mr. Kim asked me if this is a book.'

1. (Kim Sænsæng i) Hankuk mal il anta  
ko mal-hæssæ yo?
2. (Kim Sænsæng i) Yængæ ka ælyæpta  
ko mal-hæssæ yo?
3. (Kim Sænsæng i) Sæul e cip kaps i  
pissata ko mal-hæssæ yo?

(Kim Sænsæng i) na eke Hankuk mal il  
a(ni)nya ko mule pwassæ yo.  
(Kim Sænsæng i) na eke Yængæ ka  
ælyæpnya ko mule pwassæ yo.  
(Kim Sænsæng i) na eke Sæul e cip  
kaps i pissanya ko mule pwassæ yo.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <p>4. (Kim Sənsəng i) Hansik i mas i<br/>issta ko mal-həsse yo?</p> <p>5. (Kim Sənsəng i) Miss Kim in nai ka<br/>manhta ko mal-həsse yo?</p> <p>6. (Kim Sənsəng i) nai ka myəch sal<br/>ila ko mal-həsse yo?</p> <p>7. (Kim Sənsəng i) yosə muəs il hanta<br/>ko mal-həsse yo?</p> <p>8. (Kim Sənsəng i) əti e santa ko<br/>mal-həsse yo?</p> <p>9. (Kim Sənsəng i) cikim myəch-si la<br/>ko mal-həsse yo?</p> <p>10. (Kim Sənsəng i) sikan i əlma na<br/>kəllinta ko mal-həsse yo?</p> | <p>(Kim Sənsəng i) na eke Hansik i mas<br/>i iss(ni)nya ko mulə pwasse yo.</p> <p>(Kim Sənsəng i) na eke Miss Kim in<br/>nai ka manhnya ko mulə pwasse yo.</p> <p>(Kim Sənsəng i) na eke nai ka myəch<br/>sal inya ko mulə pwasse yo.</p> <p>(Kim Sənsəng i) na eke yosə muəs il<br/>ha(ni)nya ko mulə pwasse yo.</p> <p>(Kim Sənsəng i) na eke əti e sa(ni)nya<br/>ko mulə pwasse yo.</p> <p>(Kim Sənsəng i) na eke cikim myəch-<br/>si nya ko mulə pwasse yo.</p> <p>(Kim Sənsəng i) na eke sikan i əlma<br/>na kelli(ni)nya ko mulə pwasse yo.</p> |
|---|---|

## EXERCISES

(All the following exercises should be done in different speech levels: Formal and Informal Polite; Formal and Informal Plain.)

A. Tell the class that Mr. Park told you that:

1. he is sick.
2. he cannot come to work.
3. he will take a good rest.
4. he visited the doctor.
5. to call him anytime.
6. not to worry/kəkɔŋ-ha-ta/ about it.
7. not to ask him any questions.
8. to go to the movies with you.
9. not to speak in English while in the class.

B. Tell Pak Sənsəŋg that you think that:

1. they sell American newspapers and magazines at that bookstore.
2. the problem is rather complicated.
3. Mr. Yang will not buy a new car.
4. you've heard about the automobile accident.
5. Korea is called 'Təhan Minkuk' in Korean.
6. anybody will be able to finish it easily.

C. Ask student A if he's heard:

1. that teaching Korean is easier than an European language.
2. that others also suggested eating Chinese food.
3. that James told the students to go home.
4. that all the students wanted to study Korean.
5. that the Government told James to teach English.

D. Tell Pak Sənsəŋg that:

1. you think that Jones speaks Korean very well.
2. Mr. Kim said that he will be back by 6:30.
3. you understood that Korean is difficult.

4. your Korean teacher told you to memorize/(ttala) we-ta/ the new words/tanə/.
5. Miss Brown asked you if you can teach her Korean.
6. Miss Choe suggested that you go together to the movies.
7. you heard that Mr. Chang's son is very bright.
8. you heard that Jones is a rich man.
9. James told you not to read that magazine.
10. your wife suggested that (she and) you not buy a foreign car.
11. 'I understand.' in Korean is expressed as 'I will know it.'
12. you heard about Korean customs.
13. the capital of France is called Paris.
14. you think riding taxis in Seoul is dangerous/wihəm-ha-ta/.
15. you think reading Korean newspapers is difficult.
16. you don't know if Korean is as easy as French.
17. you have an appointment to meet a friend at 3 p.m.
18. Jones asked you where you live.
19. your wife asked you what time the work ends.
20. the ambassador asked how difficult Korean was.

E. Mr. James has just telephoned and asked for Mr. Kim. Answer as follows:

1. 'Just a moment, please. I'll see if he is in.'
2. 'He isn't at his desk just now.'
3. 'Oh, gee, he went out just a minute ago.'
4. 'Who is calling, please?'
5. 'This is Miss Lee Suca (speaking). I'm Mr. Kim's secretary.'
6. 'He is in Mr. Park's office just now. It's extension/næsen/ 26.'
7. 'I mean Young-Soo Park.'
8. 'Would you like him to call you later?'
9. 'Yes, I understand, I will have him call you soon.'

## F. Make the following telephone calls:

1. Call the Hanil Company and leave a message for Mr. Son that you are not coming today.
2. Call your home and tell the maid that you are going to the Kim's house for supper and will be home about 11:30.
3. Call a friend and ask her to go to the movies with you.
4. Call Mr. Kim's house and ask when Mr. Kim is returning to Seoul.
5. Call Mr. Han's house and ask Mr. Han to call Ambassador Wilson's office immediately.
6. Report that your telephone is out of order/kocang-na-ta/ and request that it be fixed/kochi-ta/.
7. Call your boss' house and tell his wife that he had some business in Inchon suddenly/kapcak1/ and that he said he'll call her from Inchon tonight around 9:00.
8. Call Mr. James' secretary and tell her Mr. James asked to call his office about his sickness.

## 제 18 과 일기에 대해서

(대화 A)

날씨

종근요

1. A: 오늘은 날씨가 뭐 종근요!

가을 날씨

이렇게

2. B: 예, 한국(의) 가을 날씨는 대개 이렇게  
좋습니다.

이런 날씨

계속

계속 합니까

3. A: 이런 날씨가 얼마 동안 계속 합니까?

시월 말

하늘

하늘이 맑고

차차

(차차) 추워 집니다

4. B: 대개 시월 말까지는 하늘이 맑고 좋은 날씨가  
계속합니다. 그러나, 십이월부터 차차  
추워 집니다.

동북

미국 동북부

## UNIT 18. Talking About Weather

## BASIC DIALOGUES FOR MEMORIZATION

Dialogue AA

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| nalssi<br>cohkun yo<br>1. Onil in nalssi ka phæk cohkun yo! | weather<br>[it] is nice!<br>It's a nice day today! |
|---|--|

B

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| kail nalssi<br>iléhke<br>2. Ne, Hankuk (e) kail nalssi nin<br>tækæ iléhke cohsmnita. | autumn weather<br>this way; like this<br>Yes, Korea's autumn weather is<br>usually nice like this. |
|--|--|

A

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| ilæn nalssi<br>kyesok<br>kyesok-hamnikka<br>3. Ilæn nalssi ka əlma tongan<br>kyesok-hamnikka? | this kind of weather<br>continuation<br>does [it] continue?; does<br>[it] last?<br>How long does this kind of weather<br>last? |
|---|--|

B

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| Si-wəl mal<br>hanil<br>hanil i malkko<br>chacha }<br>cəmcəm }<br>(chacha) chuwe cimnita<br>4. Tækæ Si-wəl mal kkaci nin hanil i<br>malkko, cohin nalssi ka kyesok-<br>hamnita. Kiləna, Sip-il-wəl<br>puthe chacha chuwe cimnita. | the end of October<br>sky; heaven<br>the sky is clear and..<br>gradually<br>[it] gets colder, [it]'s getting<br>colder<br>Until the end of October the sky is<br>clear and nice weather continues.<br>But after November it gets<br>gradually colder. |
|--|---|

비슷합니다

비슷한 것 같습니다

5. A: 그럼, 한국의 기후가 미국 동북부와 비슷한 것  
같습니다.

같다고 생각합니다

6. B: 예, 남한의 기후는 뉴욕 주와 대개 같다고  
생각합니다.

봄철

뉴욕처럼

7. A: 여기에도 봄철에는 뉴욕처럼 비가 많이  
오는가요?

늦은 봄

이른 여름

장마철

장마철이라고 부릅니다

8. B: 대개 늦은 봄과 이른 여름에 비가 많이 오지요.  
그래서, 유월과 칠월을 장마철이라고 부릅니다.

(대화 B)

-토요일 아침에-

밖에

9. A: 지금 밖에 날씨가 어떻습니까?

비가 올 것 같습니다



A

- Tongpuk  
Mikuk Tongpukpu  
pisithamnita  
pisithan kəs kathsımnita
5. Kıləm, Hankuk e kihu ka Mikuk  
Tongpukpu wa pisithan kəs  
kathsımnita.
- Northeast ('eastnorth')  
the Northeastern part of the U.S.  
[it] is similar  
it seems that [it]'s similar;  
[it] looks like similar
- Well, Korea's weather seems to be  
similar to that of the Northeastern  
part of the United States.

B

- kathta ko səngkak-hamnita
6. Ne, Nam-Han e kihu nin Nyuyok Cu  
wa təkæ kathta ko səngkak-  
hamnita.
- [I] think that [it]'s the same  
Yes, I think South Korea's weather  
is about the same as that of  
New York State.

A

- pom chəl  
Nyuyok chələm
7. Yəki e to pom chəl e nin Nyuyok  
chələm pi ka manhi onin ka yo?
- spring season  
like New York; just as New York  
Does it rain here as much as it does  
in New York in the spring (season)?

B

- nicin pom  
ilin yəlım  
cangma chəl  
cangma chəl ila ko pulımnita
8. Təkæ nicin pom kwa ilin yəlım e  
pi ka manhi oci yo. Kılæ sə,  
Yu-wəl kwa Chil-wəl il cangma  
chəl ila ko pulımnita.
- late spring  
early summer  
rainy season  
[we] call [it] the rainy season  
Yes, it usually rains a lot in late  
spring and early summer. So we  
call June and July the rainy  
season.

Dialogue B

(..on a Saturday morning..)

A

- pakk (e)
9. Cıkım pakk (e) nalssi ka  
əttəhsımnikka?
- outside  
What's the weather like outside now?

10. B: 아마, 비가 올 것 같습니다. 날이 흐리고,  
바람이 좀 불니다.
- 일기  
일기 예보
11. A: 오늘 아침에 일기 예보를 들었습니까?  
태디오  
개입니다  
개인다고 (말)했습니다  
기상대  
틀립니다
12. B: 예, 아침 태디오에서는 낮에 개인다고  
말했지만 기상대도 가깝 틀리니까요.
- 큰 일  
큰 일(이) 납니다
13. A: 비가 오면 큰 일 납니다.  
계획  
중대합니다, 중요합니다  
중대한 계획, 중요한 계획
14. B: 왜요? 무슨 중대한 계획이라도 있습니까?  
등산  
등산할 계획  
등산할 계획입니다
15. A: 예, 오늘 오후에 등산할 계획이었습니다.

- |     |   |  |
|-----|---|--|
|     | <u>B</u>  |  |
|     | pi ka ol kəs kathsım̃nita   | it looks like rain   |
| 10. | Ama, pi ka ol kəs kathsım̃nita.<br>Nal i hıllıko, palam i com<br>pumnita.                           | It looks like it'll probably rain.<br>It's cloudy and a little windy.  |
|     | <u>A</u>  |  |
|     | ilki  | weather; climate   |
|     | ilki yepo   | weather forecast   |
| 11. | Onıl achım e ilki yepo (ılıl)<br>tıləssım̃nikka?  | Did you hear the weather forecast<br>this morning?   |
|     | <u>B</u>  |  |
|     | lætıo   | radio  |
|     | kæım̃nita   | [it] clears up   |
|     | kæınta ko (mal-)hæssım̃nita   | [it] said that [it] clears up  |
|     | kısangtæ  | weather bureau, weather-man  |
|     | thıllım̃nita/thılyım̃nita/  | [it]'s wrong; [it] is not right  |
| 12. | Ne, achım lætıo esə nın nac e<br>kæıntako mal-hæssci man,<br>kısangtæ to kakkım thıllını<br>kka yo. | Yes, the radio this morning said it<br>would clear up at noon, but the<br>weather-man is occasionally wrong. |
|     | <u>A</u>  |  |
|     | khın ıl   | a big problem; a big trouble<br>( 'a big job' )  |
|     | khın ıl (ı) namnita   | ( 'a big trouble comes up' )   |
| 13. | Pi ka omyən, khın ıl namnita.   | It mustn't rain! ( 'If it rains, a<br>big problem comes up.' )   |
|     | <u>B</u>  |  |
|     | kyehwek   | plan(ning); plans  |
|     | cungtæ-hamnita }<br>cungyo-hamnita }  | [it] is important  |
|     | cungtæ-han } kyehwek<br>cungyo-han }  | important plans  |
|     | musın kyehwek ılato   | any plans  |

예...

정말

바랍니다

개이기 바랍니다

16. B:

예..., 정말 오후에는 개이기 바랍니다.

14. Wæ yo? Musin cungtæ-han kyehwek  
ilato issimnikka?

Why? Do you have some important  
plans?

A

tingsan

hiking

tingsan-hal kyehwek

(a) plan to hike

tingsan-hal kyehwek imnita

[I]'m planning to hike

15. Ne, onil ohu e tingsan-hal  
kyehwek iessimnita.

Yes, I was planning to go hiking  
this afternoon.

B

ne...?

(oh, is that right?...)

cəngmal

certainly; truly; truth

palamnita

[I] desire; [I] hope

kæiki palamnita

[I] hope [it] clears up

16. Ne...? Cəngmal ohu e nin  
kæiki palamnita.

Oh, you were? I hope it clears up  
in the afternoon.

## NOTES ON DIALOGUES

(Numbers correspond to the sentence numbers.)

2. Iləhke 'this way' or 'like this', cələhke 'that way' or 'like that', kiləhke 'that way' or 'so' or 'in such a way', occur as adverbials which are inflected from the verb stems iləh- 'to be like this', cələh- 'to be like that' and kiləh- 'to be so'.
3. Ilən 'this kind of-', cələn 'that kind of-', kilən 'that kind of-', are the inflected present modifier words which are also based on the stem iləh- 'to be like this', cələh- 'to be like that', and kiləh- 'to be so', respectively. The stem final sound h is dropped when the ending -(l)n is added.
4. Mal which occurs after certain time nominals is either a part of a word or a post-noun, meaning 'the end': wəlmal 'the end of the month', cumal 'weekend', nyənmal 'the end of the year', haknyən mal 'the end of the school year', Il-wəl mal 'the end of January', etc.
5. -Pu ('part') which occurs at the end of a word succeeding the names of directions (i.e. tong 'east', sə 'west', nam 'south', puk 'north') often designates geographical areas of the United States: Tongpu 'the Eastern part of U.S.', Səpu 'the Western part of U.S.', Nampu 'the South', Pukpu 'the North'. (See Drill B, Unit 15.)
8. X (i)la ko pulimnita. ('[We] call [it] X.') can be substituted by X (i)la ko hamnita. ('[We] say [it] is X.'). (See Grammar Note 3, Unit 17.)
12. Thilli- 'to be wrong' has its antonymous verb mac- 'to be correct'. Mac- and olh- are synonymous.

## GRAMMAR NOTES

1. -ninkun/kun yo

An inflected form ending in -ninkun/kun + yo may be used as a kind of emphatic or exclamatory sentence final form. This construction is usually accompanied by the intonation patterns the same as the one in -ci yo? (Unit 6) or the one in an exclamation sentence. -Ninkun is added to an action verb stem; -kun is added to the copula or a description verb stem, or to any verb stem plus the honorific and/or tense suffixes. However, to an action verb stem which ends in -ss, -kun is added. Observe the following examples:

(a)

Sənsəng ɪn Hankuk mal ɪl cal haninkun yo!	'You speak Korean very well!'
Cə mal i cham cal ttwininkun yó!	'That horse runs sure fast!'
Ai tɪl i cham manhi məkninkun yo!	'The kids sure eat a lot!'
Mikuk yəca tɪl ɪn uncən ɪl cal haninkun yo!	'The American women certainly are good drivers, aren't they?' ( 'The American women do driving certainly well.' )
A, nə ka kɪ kəs ɪl mollasskun yo!	'Oh, gee, I didn't know that!'

(b)

Onil nalssi ka phək cohkun yo!	{ 'The weather is very nice today, isn't it?' 'It's a nice day today!'
Kim Sənsəng ɪn cəngmal khi ka khɪkun yo!	{ 'Mr. Kim is really a tall man, isn't he?' 'Mr. Kim really is tall.'
A, kɪləhkun yo!	'Oh, that's right (I didn't know that).'
Aiku, phək aphikesskun yo!	'Oh, no, [you] must hurt!'

Note: In the further Units, we will see that the construction -ninkun/kun + yo can be substituted by -ninku/ku + man + yo with the same meaning.

The inflected word ending in -ninkun/kun is considered to be one-word contraction from the two-word phrase -ninku/ku + man.

2. Infinitive + ci-

As an independent verb ci- is an intransitive action verb, of which meanings vary depending on what is its subject or topic: Hæ ka cinta.

'The sun sets.', Kkoch i cjessta. 'The flowers have withered.', (Namu) iph i cimnita. 'The leaves are falling.', etc. However, preceded by the infinitive of a description verb, ci- occurs as an auxiliary verb, which denotes gradual change of the description of the preceding verb. The verb phrase Infinitive + ci- with or without an adverb cæmcæm (or chacha) 'gradually' is usually translated as either 'be getting -er' or 'become + adjective'. Examples:

Nalssi ka (chacha) chuwa cimnita.	'The weather is getting (gradually) colder.'
Hankuk mal i tæ elyæwæ cimnita.	'Korean is getting more difficult.'
Yosæ mulkæn kaps i phæk pissa cjesse yo.	'Things became quite expensive these days.'
Næil ilki ka coha cil kka yo?	'Will the weather be nice tomorrow (do you think)?'

### 3. -n/in/nin kæs kath-

The present inflected modifier word -n/in/nin + kæs occurs without pause before the verb kath-, to denote the speaker's assumption for the probability of the action or description of the verb in the modifier word. The English translations for the construction -n/in/nin kæs kath- are 'seems that...' or 'seems as if...' or 'looks like... ing', etc. Observe the following examples:

Pi ka <u>onin kæs kathsımnita.</u>	'It seems that it's raining (now).'
Kı ai ka tætanhi ttokttokhan <u>kæs kathsımnita.</u>	'That child seems to be very bright.'
Iyaki ka cæmi <u>issnin kæs</u> <u>kathsımnikka?</u>	'Does the story sound interesting?' ( 'Does it seem that the story is interesting?')
Cæ khi (ka) khın salam i cangkun <u>in kæs kathci yo?</u>	'That tall man looks like a general, doesn't he?'
Il i kılı swıpci anhin <u>kæs kathæ yo.</u>	'The work doesn't seem to be that easy'
Tæsa ka ce ilim il <u>anın kæs kathci</u> anhsımnita.	'The ambassador doesn't seem to know my name.'

Note that the tenses and/or speech levels of the whole construction are generated in the verb kath- (1), but the tenses for the speaker's assumption of the probability are made by replacing the present modifier word ending -nin with the past modifier word ending -n/in form for the past and with the -(1)l form for the future, respectively (2). Examples:



(1)

Pusan e yekwan kaps i com pissan  
kəs kathəssimnita.

'It seemed that the hotels in Pusan  
were a little expensive.'

Kim Sənsəng e il i cəmi issnɪn  
kəs kathəsə yo.

'Mr. Kim's job sounded interesting.'

Uli Yəngə sənsəng in ttal il  
calang-hanɪn kəs kathəssimnita.

'Our English teacher seemed to be  
proud of [his] daughter.'

(2a)

Kicha ka pəlsə ttənan kəs  
kathsimnita.

'It seems the train has already left.'

Kail i kəi cinan kəs kathsimnita.

'It seems the autumn is almost over.'  
( 'It seems that almost the autumn  
passed. ' )

Pak Sənsəng in catongcha lɪl  
pha(ɪɪ)n kəs kathsimnita.

'Mr. Park seems to have sold his car.'

Note: In case of copula and description verbs, -(a,ə)sstən is added to the stem to show the past in the above construction. Example:

Kim Sənsəng puin in cəlməssɪl ttə  
(e) yəppəsstən kəs kathsimnita.

'It seems Mrs. Kim was pretty when  
she was young.'

(2b)

Pi ka ol kəs kathsimnita.

'It looks like rain.' ( 'It seems  
that it will rain.' )

Munce ka manhɪl kəs katə yo.

'It seems there 're going to be a lot  
of problems.'

Nuka tətəhngyəng i twel kəs  
kathsimnikka?

'Who do you think will be the  
President?' ( 'Who, does it seem,  
will become the President?' )

Hankuk mal i Cungkuk mal pota  
tə əlyəul kəs kathsimnita.

'Korean looks more difficult than  
Chinese.'

#### 4. Particle chələm

A nominal + the particle chələm (or its synonym kathi) 'like + the Nominal' occurs as an adverbial expression for the following inflected expression.

Examples:

Kim Sənsəng chələm hasipsiyo.

'Please do [it] like Mr. Kim.'

Kkolphi chələm cohɪn untong i  
əpsimnita.

'There aren't any good sports like  
golf.'

I cip i sæ cip chələm kkækkıthamnita. 'This house is clean like a new house.'  
 Hankuk mal i İlpon mal chələm { 'Is Korean difficult like Japanese?'  
 əlyəpsımnikka? { 'Is Korean as difficult as Japanese?'

5. Particle lato/ilato

Lato occurs after a word ending in a consonant and ilato after a word ending in a vowel. The particle lato/ilato occurs after either inflected or uninflected words. Observe the following constructions where lato/ilato occurs: (Compare lato/ilato with na/ina, Grammar Note 4, Unit 10.).

(a) Interrogative expression + (i)lato = adverbial phrase 'any-'.  
 =

muəs ilato	'anything' or 'whatever [it] is'
musın yaksok ilato	'any appointment' or 'whatever appointment [it] may be'
nuku lato	'anybody' or 'whoever [it] may be'
ənce lato	'anytime' or 'whenever [it] may be'
əttəhke lato	'somehow' or 'whatever way [I] may take'

(b) After a nominal or an adverbial expression lato/ilato also occurs simply to emphasize the preceding expression as the possible alternative of choice for the following inflected expression. Examples:

Onıl in cip esə <u>capci lato</u> ılkesşə yo.	'I'm going to read at home today, <u>say, magazines.</u> '
<u>Na lato</u> kılən il in hal su ıssımnita.	' <u>Even I</u> can do such a job.'
Kıləm, <u>tapang e lato</u> kapsıta.	'Well, let's go <u>to, say, a tea-room,</u> then.'
<u>Yəngə lato</u> kalıchiko sıphci man,.....	'I would like to teach <u>even English</u> but.....'
Kalıchinın kəs i əlyəumyən, <u>pəuki lato</u> hal su ısskessci yo?	'If teaching is hard, [he] can do, <u>say, learning,</u> can't [he]?'

Note that we will learn in further units about the constructions in which other inflected words + lato/ilato occur.

6. -(1)l kyehwek i- 'be planning to...'

The construction the -(1)l form + the noun kyehwek 'plan' + the copula i-, literally means '[it] is the plan to do...'. The usual translation, however, is

'be planning to do...'. The tense suffixes may occur in the copula i- for the whole construction. Examples:

Na nin næil tingsan-hal kyehwek  
imnita.

'I'm planning to go hiking  
tomorrow.'

Wellæ Səul e kal kyehwek iəssci  
man, kyehwek il pakkwəssə yo.

'Originally I was planning to go  
to Seoul, but I have changed  
plans.'

Miss Braun i kot kyəlhon-hal  
kyehwek in kəs kathsimnita.

'Miss Brown seems to be planning  
to get married soon.'

Kim Paksa nin appathı esə sal  
kyehwek ila ko mal-həssimnita.

'Dr. Kim said that he was planning  
to live in an apartment.'

## .DRILLS

## A. Substitution Drill

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. Yu-wəl kwa Chil-wəl il cangma chəl<br>ila ko pulimnita.                 | [We] call June and July the rainy season.                    |
| *2. <u>Seul</u> il <u>Hankuk e suto</u> la ko pulimnita.                   | Seoul is called the capital of Korea.                        |
| *3. <u>Il hanin kos</u> il <u>cikcang</u> ila ko pulimnita.                | The place where [you] work is called the place of work.      |
| *4. <u>Ton i manhin salam</u> il <u>puca</u> la ko pulimnita.              | [We] call the person who has a lot of money a rich man.      |
| *5. <u>Kukhwe iywen til</u> il <u>cəngchika</u> la ko pulimnita.           | [We] call the members of the National Assembly politicians.  |
| *6. <u>Mikuk</u> il <u>Həpcungkuk</u> ila ko pulimnita.                    | America is called the United States.                         |
| *7. <u>Pusan kathin tosi</u> lil <u>hangku</u> la ko pulimnita.            | A city like Pusan is called a harbor.                        |
| *8. <u>Mulkən il mantinin te</u> lil <u>kongcang</u> ila ko pulimnita.     | [We] call the place where goods are made a factory.          |
| *9. <u>Kongcang esə il-hanin salam</u> il <u>cikkong</u> ila ko pulimnita. | [We] call the people working at factories (factory) workers. |

## B. Substitution Drill

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. Nam-Han e kihū nin Mikuk Tongpu wa kathta ko səngkak-hamnita.         | I think South Korea's weather is the same as that of the eastern U.S.       |
| 2. Nam-Han e kihū nin Mikuk Tongpu wa kathta ko <u>səngkak-hamnikka?</u> | Do you think South Korea's weather is the same as that of the eastern U.S.? |
| 3. <u>Cə yəca nin Mikuk salam ila ko səngkak-hamnikka?</u>               | Do you think that woman is an American?                                     |
| 4. Cə yəca nin Mikuk salam ila ko <u>səngkak-haci anhsimnikka?</u>       | Don't you think that woman is an American?                                  |
| 5. <u>Kakkim yənghwa ponin kəs i cohta ko səngkak-haci anhsimnikka?</u>  | Don't you think it is good to see the movies sometimes?                     |
| *6. Kakkim yənghwa ponin kəs i cohta ko <u>mitsimnita.</u>               | I believe that it is good to see the movies sometimes.                      |
| 7. <u>Pak Sənsəng i Yəngə lil cal hanta ko</u> <u>mitsimnita.</u>        | I believe that Mr. Park speaks English well.                                |

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 8. Pak Sənsəng i Yəngə 111 cal hanta<br>ko <u>tləssimnita</u> .               | I heard that Mr. Park speaks English well.                           |
| 9. <u>Kim Ssi e apəci ka tola kasyəssta</u><br>ko <u>tləssimnita</u> .        | I heard that Mr. Kim's father (had) passed away.                     |
| 10. Kim Ssi e apəci ka tola kasyəssta<br>ko (mal-) <u>həssimnita</u> .        | [They] (or Mr. Kim) said that Mr. Kim's (or his) father passed away. |
| 11. <u>Ceimsi nin tingsan-hal kyehwek</u><br><u>ila ko həssimnita</u> .       | James told me (or said) that he was planning to go hiking.           |
| 12. Ceimsi nin tingsan-hal kyehwek<br>ila ko <u>aləssimnita</u> .             | I understood (or knew) that James was planning to go hiking.         |
| 13. <u>Sənsəng i Səul esə olə tongan</u><br><u>il-həssta ko aləssimnita</u> . | I understood that you worked in Seoul for a long time.               |
| 14. Sənsəng i Səul esə olə tongan<br>il-həssta ko <u>amnita</u> .             | I understand that you have worked in Seoul for a long time.          |

## C. Response Drill

Tutor: Hankuk mal i əlyəwə yo?

'Is Korean difficult?'

Student 1: Ne, (Hankuk mal i) əlyəpta  
ko səngkak-hamnita.

'Yes, I think Korean is difficult.'

Student 2: Aniyə, (Hankuk mal i)  
əlyəpta ko səngkak-haci  
anhsimnita.

'No, I don't think Korean is difficult.'

1. Kongpu-haki cəmi issə yo?

Ne, (kongpu-haki) cəmi issta ko  
səngkak-hamnita.Aniyə, (kongpu-haki) cəmi issta ko  
səngkak-haci anhsimnita.

2. Cə yəca ka yəppə yo?

Ne, (cə yəca ka) yəppita ko  
səngkak-hamnita.Aniyə, (cə yəca ka) yəppita ko  
səngkak-haci anhsimnita.3. Kim Sənsəng i Pullansə mal 11 cal  
hə yo?Ne, (Kim Sənsəng i Pullansə mal 11)  
cal hanta ko səngkak-hamnita.Aniyə, (Kim Sənsəng i Pullansə mal  
11) cal hanta ko səngkak-haci  
anhsimnita.

4. Kicha ka phyelli-hæ yo?      Ne, (kicha ka) phyelli-hata ko sængkak-hamnita.  
Aniyo, (kicha ka) phyelli-hata ko sængkak-haci anhsimnita.
5. Hankuk san i alimtawæ yó?      Ne, (Hankuk san i) alimtapta ko sængkak-hamnita.  
Aniyo, (Hankuk san i) alimtapta ko sængkak-haci anhsimnita.
6. Nalssi ka phæk chuwe cæsse yo?      Ne, (nalssi ka) phæk chuwe cæssta ko sængkak-hamnita.  
Aniyo, (nalssi ka) phæk chuwe cæssta ko sængkak-haci anhsimnita.
7. Pakk e palam i tætanhi pulæ yo?      Ne, (pakk e palam i) tætanhi punta ko sængkak-hamnita.  
Aniyo, (pakk e palam i) tætanhi punta ko sængkak-haci anhsimnita.
8. Mikuk kwa Hankuk e kihu ka pisithan kæs kathæ yo?      Ne, (Mikuk kwa Hankuk e kihu ka) pisithan kæs kathta ko sængkak-hamnita.  
Aniyo, (Mikuk kwa Hankuk e kihu ka) pisithan kæs kathta ko sængkak-haci anhsimnita.
9. I sikye ka thillie yo?      Ne, (i sikye ka) thillita ko sængkak-hamnita.  
Aniyo, (i sikye ka) thillita ko sængkak-haci anhsimnita.
10. Kí munce ka phæk cungyo-hæ yo?      Ne, (kí munce ka) phæk cungyo-hata ko sængkak-hamnita.  
Aniyo, (kí munce ka) phæk cungyo-hata ko sængkak-haci anhsimnita.
11. Cæ ai ka ttokttokhan haksæng iye yo?      Ne, (cæ ai ka) ttokttokhan haksæng ila ko sængkak-hamnita.  
Aniyo, (cæ ai ka) ttokttokhan haksæng ila ko sængkak-haci anhsimnita.

## D. Response Drill

Tutor: Pak Sənsəng i Yəngə lɪl cal  
hanta ko həsse yo?

Student: Ne, (Pak Sənsəng i Yəngə lɪl)  
cal hanta ko tiləsse yo.

'Did [they] say that Mr. Park speaks  
English well?'

'Yes, I heard [he] speaks English  
well.'

1. Consɪ Sənsəng i kot Səul e tola  
onta ko həsse yo?

Ne, (Consɪ Sənsəng i) kot Səul e  
tola onta ko tiləsse yo.

2. Hankuk e yəlim nalssi ka Nyuyok  
pota tē mutəpta ko həsse yo?  
(!Did [they] say that the summer  
weather in Korea is more muggy  
than in New York?')

Ne, (Hankuk e yəlim nalssi ka  
Nyuyok pota) tē mutəpta ko tiləsse  
yo.

3. Yang Sənsəng i cəngchika ka  
tweəssta ko həsse yo?

Ne, (Yang Sənsəng i) cəngchika ka  
tweəssta ko tiləsse yo.

4. Pak Sənsəng puin i inhəng e  
kinmu-hal kəs ila ko həsse yo?

Ne, (Pak Sənsəng puin i) inhəng e  
kinmu-hal kəs ila ko tiləsse yo.

5. Təku e kyothong i phyəlli-hata  
ko həsse yo?

Ne, (Təku e kyothong i) phyəlli-  
hata ko tiləsse yo.

6. Hakkyo kal sikan i nicsəsta ko  
həsse yo?

Ne, hakkyo kal sikan i nicsəsta ko  
tiləsse yo.

## E. Response Drill

Tutor: Kakkim yəngwa lɪl ponin kəs  
i cohta ko səngkak-hase yo?

Student: Ne, kakkim yəngwa lɪl ponin  
kəs i cohta ko mitsimnita.

'Do you think it's nice to see the  
movies occasionally?'

'Yes, I believe it's nice to see  
movies occasionally.'

1. Cəng sənsəng i cikim Səul e kyesinta  
ko səngkak-hase yo?

Ne, Cəng Sənsəng i cikim Səul e  
kyesinta ko mitsimnita.

2. Hankuk mal ɪl almyən, Hankuk esə  
ɪl-haki phyənhata ko səngkak-  
hase yo?

Ne, Hankuk mal ɪl almyən, Hankuk esə  
ɪl-haki phyənhata ko mitsimnita.

3. Kɪ munce ka talita ko səngkak-  
hase yo?

Ne, kɪ munce ka talita ko mitsimnita.

4. Ilponə munpəp i Cungkukə pota  
pokcap-hata ko səngkak-hase yo?

Ne, Ilponə munpəp i Cungkukə pota  
pokcap-hata ko mitsimnita.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 5. Sənsəng in kuntə kyəngəm i<br>philyo-hata ko səngkak-hase yo?                 | Ne, kuntə kyəngəm i philyo-hata<br>ko mitsimnita.                             |
| 6. Ceimsı Sənsəng in Hankuk phungsok<br>il cal ihə-hanta ko səngkak-<br>hase yo? | Ne, (Ceimsı Sənsəng in) Hankuk<br>phungsok il cal ihə-hanta ko<br>mitsimnita. |
| 7. Pak Sənsəng (e) mal i thillita<br>ko səngkak-hase yo?                         | Ne, Pak Sənsəng (e) mal i thillita<br>ko mitsimnita.                          |

## F. Response Drill

Tutor: Cə pun in wekyokwan imnikka?

'Is that man in the foreign service?'

Student: Ne, (cə pun in) wekyokwan  
illa ko aləssimnita.'Yes, I understood (or thought) that  
he is in the foreign service.'

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. Kim Sənsəng i Yəngə lıl<br>kalichimnikka?                | Ne, (Kim Sənsəng i) Yəngə lıl<br>kalichinta ko aləssimnita.               |
| 2. Pak Yəngca ka kyəlhon-həssimnikka?                       | Ne, (Pak Yəngca ka) kyəlhon-həssta<br>ko aləssimnita.                     |
| 3. Cəng Sənsəng i təsa ka<br>tweəssimnikka?                 | Ne, (Cəng Sənsəng i) təsa ka<br>tweəssta ko aləssimnita.                  |
| 4. Hankuk e kyəul kihū ka Mikuk Tongpu<br>wa pisithamnikka? | Ne, (Hankuk e kyəul kihū ka Mikuk<br>Tongpu wa) pisithata ko aləssimnita. |
| 5. Hankuk sikol kil esə uncən-haki<br>(ka) əlyəpsimnikka?   | Ne, Hankuk sikol kil esə uncən-haki<br>(ka) əlyəpta ko aləssimnita.       |
| 6. I Sənsəng e əməni nin nai ka<br>manhsimnikka?            | Ne, I Sənsəng e əməni nin nai ka<br>manhta ko aləssimnita.                |

## G. Response Drill (based on Grammar Note 1)

Tutor: Onil nalssi ka phək cohci yo?

'The weather is very nice today,  
isn't it?'Student: Ne, (onil nalssi ka) phək  
cohkun yo!

'Yes, it certainly is!'

- |                                    |  |
|------------------------------------|--|
| 1. Cohin nalssi ka kyesok-haci yo? | Ne, cohin nalssi ka kyesok-haninkun<br>yo! |
| 2. Il i pokcap-haci yo?            | Ne, il i pokcap-hakun yo!                  |
| 3. İmsik i mas i cohci yo?         | Ne, İmsik i mas i cohkun yo!               |



- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 4. Hanil i tætanhi ma(1)kci yo?  | Ne, hanil i tætanhi ma(1)kkun yo!                    |
| 5. Kim Sænsæng e atil i phæk<br>ttokttokhaci yo?                             | Ne, (Kim Sænsæng e atil i) phæk<br>ttokttokhakun yo! |
| 6. Kot, pi ka ol kæs kathci yo?  | Ne, kot, pi ka ol kæs kathkun yo!                    |
| 7. K1 ai ka apæci wa pisithaci yo?   | Ne, (k1 ai ka) apæci wa pisithakun yo!               |
| 8. Onil nalssi ka mutæpci yo?<br>( 'Today's weather is muggy,<br>isn't it?') | Ne, (onil nalssi ka) mutæpkun yo!                    |
| 9. Kimchi ka cængmal mæpci yo?   | Ne, (kimchi ka) cængmal mæpkun yo!                   |

## H. Grammar Drill (based on Grammar Note 2)

Tutor: Nalssi ka chupsimnita.

'The weather is cold.'

Student: Nalssi ka cæmcæm chuwæ cimmnita.

'The weather is getting colder.'

1. Hankuk mal i ælyæpsimnita.

Hankuk mal i cæmcæm ælyæwæ cimmnita.

2. Pang an i ttattithamnita.

Pang an i cæmcæm ttattithæ cimmnita.

3. Cæ nin nai ka manhsimnita.

Cæ nin nai ka cæmcæm manhæ cimmnita.

4. Il e cæmi ka issimnita.

Cæmcæm il e cæmi ka issæ cimmnita.

5. Munce ka talimnita.

Munce ka cæmcæm talla cimmnita.

6. Kyothong i phyællihamnita.

Kyothong i cæmcæm phyællihæ cimmnita.

7. K1 ai nin khi ka khimnita.

K1 ai nin cæmcæm khi ka khæ cimmnita.

8. Namphyæn kwa anæ e ækul i  
pisithamnita.Namphyæn kwa anæ e ækul i cæmcæm  
pisithæ cimmnita.

9. Yosæ nin pihængki ka ppalimnita.

Yosæ nin pihængki ka cæmcæm ppalla  
cimmnita.

## I. Transformation Drill

Tutor: Pi ka omnita.

'It's raining.'

Student: Pi ka onin kæs kathsimnita.

'It seems to be raining (now).'

1. Il i acik kyesok-hamnita.

Il i acik kyesok-hanin kæs  
kathsimnita.

2. Pise ka thaiph1 lil cal chimnita.

Pise ka thaiph1 lil cal chinin kæs  
kathsimnita.3. Acæssi ka k1 sakæn e tæhæ se  
amnita.Acæssi ka k1 sakæn e tæhæ se anin  
kæs kathsimnita.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 4. Miss Braun in nai ka kili manhci<br>anhsimnita. | Miss Braun in nai ka kili manhci<br>anhin kës kathsimnita. |
| 5. I Sensæng i onil ttœnal kyehwek<br>imnita.      | I Sensæng i onil ttœnal kyehwek in<br>kës kathsimnita.     |
| 6. Ceimsi nin yœngsa ka tweki<br>wœnhamnita.       | Ceimsi nin yœngsa ka tweki wœnhanin<br>kës kathsimnita.    |
| 7. Miss Chwe ka tangsin il salang-<br>hamnita.     | Miss Chwe ka tangsin il salang-hanin<br>kës kathsimnita.   |
| 8. Ki salam e acœssi ka puca imnita.               | Ki salam e acœssi ka puca in kës<br>kathsimnita.           |
| 9. Cœ haksæng i phœk ttokttokhamnita.              | Cœ haksæng i phœk ttokttokhan kës<br>kathsimnita.          |

## J. Response Drill

Tutor: Onil ilki ka œce wa  
pisithamnikka?

'Is today's weather similar to that  
of yesterday?'

Student: Ne, (onil ilki ka œce wa)  
pisithan kës kathsimnita.

'Yes, it looks the same.' ('It  
seems it is similar.')

- |   |                                  |
|---|----------------------------------|
| 1. Pakk e nalssi ka chupsimnikka?                     | Ne, chuun kës kathsimnita.       |
| 2. Tœsa ka Hankuk mal il alœ<br>titsimnikka?          | Ne, alœ titnin kës kathsimnita.  |
| 3. Hakkyo kal sikan i acik ilimnikka?                 | Ne, (acik) ilin kës kathsimnita. |
| 4. Hanil i hilmnikka?                                 | Ne, hilm kës kathsimnita.        |
| 5. Samusil i com œtupsimnikka?                        | Ne, (com) œtuun kës kathsimnita. |
| 6. Kisangtœ e ilki yepo ka thillimnikka?              | Ne, thillin kës kathsimnita.     |
| 7. Kim Sensæng e mal i macsimnikka?                   | Ne, macin kës kathsimnita.       |
| 8. Wekyokwan sænghwal e wekukœ ka<br>cungyo-hamnikka? | Ne, cungyo-han kës kathsimnita.  |
| 9. Mikuk tœsa ka tangsin e ilim il<br>molimnikka?     | Ne, molinin kës kathsimnita.     |

## K. Response Drill

Tutor: Ohu e nun i ol kka yo?	'Will it snow in the afternoon?'
Student: Ne, (nun i) ol kəs kathsimnita.	'Yes, it looks like it.' ('It seems that it will snow.')
1. I os i pissal kka yo?	Ne, pissal kəs kathsimnita.
2. Hanil i kæil kka yo?	Ne, kæil kəs kathsimnita.
3. Miss Braun i kot kyelhon hal kka yo?	Ne, kot kyelhon hal kəs kathsimnita.
4. Ki yeca ka kilohke palal kka yo?	Ne, kilohke palal kəs kathsimnita.
5. Ki chinku ka catongcha lil tasi pakkul kka yo?	Ne, tasi pakkul kəs kathsimnita.
6. Pun i Hankuk il cohahal kka yo?	Ne, (anæ ka Hankuk il) cohahal kəs kathsimnita.
7. Næil nalssi ka mutœul kka yo?	Ne, mutœul kəs kathsimnita.
8. Ilki yepo ka thillil kka yo?	Ne, thillil kəs kathsimnita.
9. Kim Paksa mal i cœngmal il kka yo?	Ne, cœngmal il kəs kathsimnita.

## L. Response Drill

Tutor: Hanil i kæil kəs kathsimnita.	'It seems the sky will clear up.'
Student: Cœngmal, kæiki palamnita.	'I sure hope it does.' ('Truly, I hope it clears up.')
1. Ilki ka ttattithal kəs kathsimnita.	Cœngmal, ttattithaki palamnita.
2. Il i onil ta kkith-nal kəs kathsimnita.	Cœngmal, onil ta kkith-naki palamnita.
3. Ceimsi nin Hankuk mal kongpu lil kimantuci anhil kəs kathsimnita.	Cœngmal, kimantuci anhki palamnita.
4. Munce ka œpsil kəs kathsimnita.	Cœngmal, (munce ka) œpski palamnita.
5. Mikuk e tola ka to, Hankuk mal kongpu ka kyesok-hal kəs kathsimnita.	Cœngmal, kyesok-haki palamnita.
6. Sœnsœng kwa Wœsington esœ tasi mannal kəs kathsimnita.	Cœngmal, tasi mannaki palamnita.
7. Kilœn il-haki œlyœpci anhil kəs kathsimnita.	Cœngmal, œlyœpci anhki palamnita.
8. Palam i pulci anhil kəs kathsimnita.	Cœngmal, (palam i) pulci anhki palamnita.

9. Tæsakwan esə uli eke allyə cul Cəngmal, allyə cuki palamnita.  
kəs kathsımnita.
10. Sınə e kil i pəncap-hal kəs kathci Cəngmal, pəncap-haci anhki palamnita.  
anhsımnita.

## EXERCISES

A. Tell Pak Sənsəng that:

1. it's raining hard.
2. it's snowing outside.
3. it started to rain just a minute ago.
4. it has stopped snowing.
5. it is very windy and cloudy today.
6. it rained all morning/achim nənə/.
7. it was snowy and cold yesterday at Panmunjom.
8. it was awfully muggy all summer in Washington.
9. it was hot but there was no humidity/sıpkı/.
10. it has begun to cloud up/kulım i kki-ta/.
11. it has begun to clear up.
12. the sky was clear and the temperature/onto/ was cool.
13. in winter, river always freeze/əl-ta/ but the sun shines most of the time.
14. the rainy season begins in the warm spring season and lasts until the end of July.
15. beginning early November the weather gets gradually colder.

B.

James asks:

You:

1. if you think the Korean winter is the same as that of New York State. 'Yes, I think so.'
2. if it looks like rain. 'Yes, but I hope it won't rain.'
3. if Koreans use chop-sticks like Japanese. 'Yes, they usually do.'
4. whether it seems housing in Tokyo is less expensive than in the U.S. 'No, it seems to be about the same.'
5. if you have any important plans. 'Yes, I have one, but not a specially important one.'

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 6. how long you're planning to stay in Korea.                        | 'Oh, maybe about two or three years.'  |
| 7. if you want to go hiking.   | 'Yes, only when the sky clears up.'  |
| 8. if you will go swimming /suyəng/ with him.                        | 'Yes, if there is a good <u>place to swim/suyəng-hal te/.</u> '  |
| 9. if winter is good for <u>hunting</u> /sanyang-haki/.              | 'Yes, it is. But there are not many <u>places to hunt/sanyang-hal kos/.</u> '                          |
| 10. if people <u>go fishing/nakssi-cil</u> (halə) ka-ta/ to the sea. | 'Some people do, but you can also see people <u>fishing/nakssi-cil hanin</u> kas/ by the river sides.' |

C. Make a short dialogue so that one of the following expressions is included in the response:

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. iləhke  | 'this way'                             |
| 2. cələhke   | 'that way'                             |
| 3. kiləhke   | 'that way, in such a way'              |
| 4. ilən  | 'this kind of'                         |
| 5. cələn   | 'that kind of'                         |
| 6. kilən   | 'such kind of'                         |
| 7. chacha <u>or</u> cəmcəm                                     | 'gradually'                            |
| 8. onil chələm   | 'like today'                           |
| 9. Sənsəng e mal i macsım̄nita.<br>( <u>or</u> macəssım̄nita). | 'You are right.'                       |
| 10. Nə ka thilliəssım̄nita.                                    | 'I am wrong.' ('I was not right.')     |
| 11. Nə ka cal mot həssım̄nita.                                 | 'I was wrong.' ('I couldn't do well.') |

## Korean-English Glossary

The following is all of the vocabulary introduced in this text, except words used for pronunciation drills in the Introductory Unit. There are three vertical columns: the left column is the Korean in transcription; the middle is the same in Hankil; the right column is the meaning in English.

A verb is listed in the traditional Korean dictionary form ending in -ta with a hyphen after stem. Every verb or verb phrase is indicated as to transitive or intransitive by Vt & Vi respectively in the parenthesis immediately after the entry, and its Infinitive form is also entered right after Vt or Vi. A free noun or noun phrase is not indicated for its part-of-speech, but other entries are so indicated like verbs: (D) = Determinative, (DN) = Dependent Noun, (PN) = Post-Noun, (Ad) = Adverb, (P) = Particle, (C) = Counter, (Num Ch) = Numeral of Chinese Character origin, (Num K) = Numeral of Korean origin, (Int) = Interjection.

An Arabic number immediately following English meaning for each entry refers to the Unit in which it first occurs: the number alone refers to the Basic Dialogue or Dialogues of that unit; N, G or D preceded by a number refers to the Notes on Dialogues, Grammar Notes and Drills of the unit indicated by number respectively.

## Examples:

- 9 means Unit 9, Basic Dialogue(s)
- 9-N means Unit 9, Notes on the Basic Dialogues
- 9-G means Unit 9, Grammar Notes
- 9-D means Unit 9, Drills

Entries are listed according to the alphabetical order of the Basic Syllable Chart in Introductory Unit: a, ə, o, u, ɿ, i, e, ø, y, w, k, kk, kh, n, t, tt, th, l, m, p, pp, ph, s, ss, c, cc, ch, h, ng.

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

a

a (Int)	아	Oh! 1
ai	아이	child 2-D
aiku! (Int)	아이구!	Gee!, Oh! 17
a(1)-ta (Vt: alə) Amnikka?	알다: 알어 압니까?	knows 2-G Do you know? 3
akka (Ad)	아까	a little while ago, a few minutes ago 16-N
atıl	아들	son 14
atınim	아드님	your son (honored) 14-N
alə tāt-ta (Vt: alə tılə)	알어 듣다: 알어 들어	understands (by ears) 9
alə po-ta (Vt: alə pwa)	알어 보다: 알어 봐	finds out, recognizes 7-G
alə cu-ta (Vt: alə cuə)	알어 주다: 알어 주	recognizes, gives credit 7-G
alımtap-ta (Vt: alımtawə)	아름답다: 아름답	is beautiful 5-D
ama (Ad)	아마	perhaps, probably 11
amu (D)	아무	any
amu kes (ina)	아무 것(이나)	anything, whatever 12
an (Ad)	안	not 3
An məmnita.	안 됩니까.	[It] is not far. 3
an	안	the inside 16-D
ani (Ad)	아니	no (plain speech) 17
aniyo (Ad)	아니요	no 1
Aniyo, kwəanchanhsımnita.	아니요, 귀찮습니다.	(No), not at all. 1
aræ	아내	my wife 14

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

annyəng Annyəng-hasimnikka?	안녕 안녕하십니까?	peace, tranquility 1 How are you? 1
annyəng <sup>hi</sup> (Ad) Annyəng <sup>hi</sup> kasipsiyo. Annyəng <sup>hi</sup> kyesipsiyo.	안녕히 안녕히 가십시오. 안녕히 계십시오.	peacefully 1 Good bye (to someone leaving).1 Good bye (to someone staying).1
ancu	안주	relish [taken with liquor], sidedish 12
anc-ta (Vi: ancə) ancə iss-ta	앉다 앉어 있다	sits 11-D is seated 14-G
anh-ta (Vt: anhə) Pissaci anhsimnita.	안다: 안어 시사하지 않습니다.	not 4 [It] is not expensive. 4
apənim	아버님	father (honored) 14-N
apəci	아버지	father 13-D
aph1-ta (Vi: ap <sup>hə</sup> )	아프다: 아퍼	is sick, hurts 6
acəssi	아저씨	uncle 14-D
acik (Ad)	아직	(not) yet, still 6-N
acu (Ad)	아주	very, extremely 10
acuməni	아주머니	aunt 14-D
achim onil achim Achim 11 məkəssimnita. achim siksa	아침 오늘 아침 아침을 먹었습니다. 아침 식사	morning, breakfast 4-D this morning 4-D I had my breakfast. 12-D breakfast ('morning meal') 12-D
ahile	아흐레	nine days, the 9th day of the month 6-D
ah1n (Num K)	아흔	ninety 5
ahop (Num K)	아홉	nine 5



KOREAN BASIC COURSE

으

əkkæ	어깨	shoulder 13
əti	어디	where, what place 2
əti e	어디에	where 2
ete (Ad)	어때	where 2
ətup-ta (Vi: ətuwə)	어둡다: 어두워	is dark 10-D
əttəh-ta (Vi: əttəhə)	어떻게다: 어떻게	how is? 4
əttən	어떤	what kind of 5
I kəs i əttəhsɪmnikka?	이것이 어떻게습니까?	How is this? 4
əttəhke (Ad)	어떻게	how?, in what way? 1
əl-ta (Vi: ələ)	얼다: 얼어	freezes 18-D
əlɪm	얼음	ice 12-D
əlɪm mul	얼음 물	ice water 12-D
əli-ta (Vi: əlyə)	어리다: 어릴	is young, is childish 14
əlkul	얼굴	face 13
əlyəp-ta (Vi: əlyəwə)	어렵다: 어렵워	is difficult 5-D
əlma	얼마	how much, what price 4
əlma imnikka?	얼마입니까?	How much is it? 4
əlma na kəllimnikka?	얼마나 걸립니까?	How long does it take? 7
əlma tongan	얼마 동안	for how long, for some time 15-N
əməni	어머니	mother 13-G
əmənim	어머님	mother (honored) 14-N
əmma	엄마	mammy, mother 17
ənɪ (D)	어느	which, a certain 2
ənɪ kəs	어느 것	which one? 2
ənɪ hwesa esə	어느 회사에서	at some company 15

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

enni	언니	older sister (of female) 14-D
ence	언제	when 5-D
ence tinci	언제든지	anytime 12
eps-ta (Vi: əpsə)	없다: 없어	does not exist, does not have 5
əsə	어서	quickly, please 4
əsə osipsiyo.	어서 오십시오.	Please come in. 4
æce	어제	yesterday 4
으		
o (Num Ch)	오	five 4
o-ta (Vi: wa)	오다: 와	comes 2-G
olin (D)	오른	right 2
olin ccok	오른 쪽	the right (side) 2-N
olæ	오래	a long time
Olæ kan man imnita.	오래간만입니다.	(I haven't seen you for a long time.), Long time no see. 8
olæ tongan	오래 동안	for a long time 8-N
olla o-ta (Vi: olla wa)	올라 오다: 올라 와	comes up 7-G
olla ka-ta (Vi: olla ka)	올라 가다: 올라 가	goes up 7-G
olh-ta (Vi: olha)	올다: 올 아	is right 18-N
onil	오늘	today 4
onto	온도	temperature 18-D
oppa	오빠	older brother (of female) 14-D
os	옷	clothes, dresses 4-D
ohu	오후	afternoon 4-D
onil ohu	오늘 오후	this afternoon 4-D

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

	<u>u</u>	
uyu	우유	milk 12-D
uli	우리	we, our 14
uli kacok	우리 가족	our family 14
untong	운동	physical exercise, sport 9-D
untong-ha-ta (Vi: untong-hæ)	운동하다: 운동해	takes exercises, plays [balls] 9-D
untongcang	운동장	playground 16-D
uncansu	운전수	driver 16-D
uphyænkuk	우편국	post office 3-D
	<u>i</u>	
lywan	의원	congressman, member of the National Assembly 16-D
il/lil (P)	을/를	
Sænsæng in muæs il hasimnikka?	선생은 무엇을 하십니까?	What do you do? 1
Yænge lil mal-hamnita.	영어를 말합니다.	I speak English. 1-G
ilo/lo (P)	으로/로	
Wen ccok ilo kasipsiyo.	왼쪽으로 가십시오.	to, as, by 2
wekyokwan ilo	외교관으로	Go to the left. 2
pæ lo	배로	as a diplomat 7
		by ship 7
imsik	음식	food 7-D
imsikcæm	음식점	restaurant 10-D
in/nin (P)	은/는	
Ce ilim in Ceimsi imnita.	제 이름은 제임스입니다.	as far 1
Cæ nin haksæng imnita.	저는 학생입니다.	My name is James. 1
Sænsæng in muæs il hasimnikka?	선생은 무엇을 하십니까?	I'm a student. 1-G
		What are YOU doing? 1-G
inhæng	은행	bank 2-D

## KOREAN BASIC COURSE

lysa	의사	medical doctor 8-D
iyca	의자	chair 2-D
ing (Ad)	응	yes (plain speech) 17
	<u>i</u>	
I	이	Lee (family name) 1-D
i (Num Ch)	이	two 4
i (D)	이	this 2
i	이	tooth 13
i/ka (P)	이/가	
tesakwan i	대사관이	the embassy (as subject) 2
Tesakwan i eti e issimnikka?	대사관이 어디에 있습니까?	Where is the embassy? 2
i-ta (Copula: iye or iye)	이다: 이에: 이여	
elma iye yo?	얼마예요?	How much is [it]? 5
iyaki	이야기	story 17 (see <u>yæki</u> )
iyaki-ha-ta (iyaki-hæ)	이야기하다: 이야기해	speaks, talks, tells
Sensæng e tæhæ sê iyaki tilæssimnita.	선생에 대해서 이야기 들었습니다.	I heard about you. 17
il	일	work, job 6
il-ha-ta (il-hæ)	일하다: 일해	works 3-G
il cali	일 자리	job 16-D
il (DN)	일	experience, fact
Cungkuk imsik il mæke pon il i issimnikka?	중국 음식을 먹어 본 일이 있습니까?	Have you ever eaten Chinese food? 13
il (Num Ch)	일	one 4
il (C)	일	day
il-il	일이	the 1st day of the month 6
ilato (P)	이라도	18-G (see <u>lato</u> )

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

iləna-ta (Vi: iləna)	일어나다: 일어나	gets up 12-D
iləh-ta (Vi: ilə or iləhæ)	이렇다: 이태: 이터해	is like this
ilən nalssi	이런 날씨	this kind of weather 18
ilɪ-ta (Vi: ille)	이르다: 이터	is early
ilɪn yəlɪm	이른 여름	early summer 18
ilɪm	이름	name 1
ilhɪn/ilɪn (Num K)	이흔/이른	seventy 5
ile	이레	seven days, the 7th day of the month 6-D
Iljoil	일요일	Sunday 6-D
ilk-ta (Vt: ilkə)	읽다: 읽어	reads 1-D
ilkop (Num K)	일곱	seven 5
ilki	일기	weather 15 (see <u>nalssi</u> )
Ilpon	일본	Japan 1-G
Ilpon mal	일본 말	Japanese (language) 1-D
Ilpon salam	일본 사람	Japanese 1-G
Ilpone	일본어	Japanese (language) 8-D
ilsang (D)	일상	daily 4
ilsang yongphum	일상용품	daily necessities, daily things 4
ilcciki (Ad)	이찌기	early 11-D
imnita (Copula)	입니다:	(see <u>i-ta</u> )
Kim Kisu imnita.	김 기수입니다.	[I] am Kisu Kim.
insa-ha-ta (Vi: insa-hæ)	인사하다: 인사해	greet 9-D
insa-kwa	인사과	personnel section
insa-kwacang	인사과장	personnel section chief, personnel officer 13-D

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

ina (P)	이나	10 (see <u>na</u> )
Into	인도	India 6-D
ip	입	mouth 13
ip-ta (Vt: ipə)	입다: 입어	puts on (clothes), dresses
ipə po-ta (ipə pwa)	입어 보다: 입어 봐	tries on (clothes) 7-G
ipku	입구	the entrance 16-D
itta (Ad)	이따	later (on the same day) 11
Itta mannapsita.	이따 만납시다.	See you later. 11
ithil	이틀	two days, the 2nd day of the month 6-D
Ithæli	이태리	Italy 6-D
Ithæliə	이태리어	Italian 8-D
ippal	이빨	tooth 13 (see <u>i</u> )
isa	이사	moving (house)
isa-ha-ta (isa-hæ)	이사하다: 이사해	moves (house, office, etc.) 14
iss-ta (Vt: issə)	있다: 있어	exists, is
Cal issimnita.	잘 있습니다.	[I]'m fine. (lit. '[I] exists well.')
icim	이즘	these days 8 (see <u>yocim</u> )
ingkhɨ	잉크	ink 7-G
ihæ	이해	understanding
ihæ-ha-ta (ihæ-hæ)	이해하다: 이해해	understand, comprehends 18-D
e		
e (P)	에	to
Səul yək e kamnita.	서울역에 갑니다.	I'm going to the Seoul Station. 3
e (P)	의	of, -'s 1
cə e ilim	저의 이름	my name 1-G

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

e (P)	에	at, on, in 2-G
eke (P)	에게	to (someone)
Ki chæk il na eke ilke cusipsiyo.	그 책을 나에게 읽어 주십시오.	Please read me the book. 11-G
ekese (P)	에게서	from (someone) 13
amëni ekese	어머니에게서	from mother 13-G
ese (P)	에서	from, at, in 3
Yëki ese mëmnikka?	여기에서 먼지까?	Is [it] far from here? 3
Kyosil ese konpu-hamnita.	교실에서 공부 합니다.	[We] study in the classroom. 3-G
ㅛ		
ya (P)	야	only when, only if 11-G
Puchie ya hamnita.	부쳐야 합니다.	[I] have to mail. 11
yakpang	약방	drugstore 10-D
yaksok	약속	appointment, date, promise 17
yaksok-ha-ta (yaksok-hæ)	약속 하다: 약속 해	promises, makes an appointment 17-N
yachæ	야채	vegetable 13
yangnyem	양념	seasoning 13
yangmal	양말	sock(s), stocking(s) 4-D
yangpok	양복	suit(s) 4-D
yangsik	양식	western food 12-D
yangsikcam	양식점	western restaurant 13
yek	역	railroad station 3
yeki	여기	here, this place 2-D
yeki e	여기에	here
Yëki e issumnita.	여기에 있습니다.	[It]'s here. 2-D
Yëki issumnita.	여기 있습니다.	Here you are! 5

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

yəkwan	여관	inn, hotel 2
yəksa	역사	history 9-D
yətəl - yətə(1)p (Num K)	여덟 - 여덟	eight 5
yətīle	여드레	eight days, the 8th day of the month 6-D
yətın (Num K)	여든	eighty 5
yə-tongsəng	여동생	younger sister 16-D
yəl (Num K)	열	ten 5
yəl-ta (Vt: yələ)	열다: 열어	opens 11-D
yələ (D)	여러	several, many 4
yələ kaci	여러 가지	several kinds 4
yəlım	여름	summer 15
yəlɦıl	열흘	ten days, the 10th day of the month 6-D
yənphil	연필	pencil 2-D
yənsıp	연습	practice 9
yənsıp-ha-ta (Vt: yənsıp-hæ)	연습하다: 연습해	practises 9-N
yənha-ta (Vi: yənhæ)	연하다: 연해	is tender (meat) 13-D
Yəpose yo!	여보세요!	Hello there!, Say! 3
Yəposipsiyol	여보십시오!	Hello there! 3-N (see <u>Yəpose yo.</u> )
yəph	옆	the side 2
yəph e	옆에	beside, (near)by 2
Sichəng yəph e issımnita.	시청 옆에 있습니다.	[It] <sub>2</sub> 's next to the City Hall.
yəsəs (Num K)	여섯	six 5



KOREAN BASIC COURSE

yessæ	엿새	six days, the 6th day of the month 6-D
yæca	여자	woman 1-D
yæhæŋ	여행	travelling, trip 15
yæhæŋ-ha-ta (yæhæŋ-hæ)	여행하다: 여행해	makes a trip, travels 15
yæŋg	영	zero 16 (see <u>kong</u> )
Yæŋgæ	영어	English 1-G
Yæŋgkuk	영국	England 1-G
Yæŋgkuk salam	영국 사람	Englishman 1-G
yæŋgsa	영사	consul 7-D
yæŋgsakwan	영사관	consulate 7-D
Yæŋg-Han	영한	English-Korean, British-Korean 5
yæŋghwa	영화	movies 9
Yi	이	Lee (family name) 1-D
yo (Particle)	요	4-G
Chænman e yo.	천만에요.	Not at all. 2
yoil (PN)	요일	week-day
musin yoil	무슨 요일	what day of the week 6
yosæ	요새	these days 8
yocim	요즘	lately, these days 1
yongphum	용품	items 4
ilsang yongphum	일상 용품	daily necessities 4
yuk (Num Ch)	육	six 4
yukci	육지	the land (in contrast to sea) 15-D
yunyæŋ	유명	fame
yunyæŋ-han salam	유명한 사람	famous man 15-N

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

yepo	예보	forecast 18
yeppi-ta (Vi: yeppe)	예쁘다: 예뻐	is pretty 5-D
yesun (Num K)	예순	sixty 5
wa/kwa (P)	와/과	with, and 4
na wa kathi	나와 같이	with me 4
chæk kwa yønphil	책과 연필	book and pencil 4-G
waisyassi	와이셔츠	dress shirt 4-D
wanhæng (cha)	완행(차)	local (train) 10-D
wihem-ha-ta (Vi: wihem-hæ)	위험하다	is dangerous, is in danger 17-D
wel (C)	월	
Sam-wel	삼월	March 6
wallæ (Ad)	원래	originally, formerly 14
Welyoil	월요일	Monday 6-D
Wellam	월남	Vietnam 6-D
wen (C)	원	Won (Korean monetary unit) 4
o-sip wen	오십 원	₩50 4
wenha-ta (Vt: wenhæ)	원하다: 원해	wants 4
we-ta (Vt: wee or wewæ)	외다: 외어: 외워	memorizes, learns by heart 17-D
we e	외에	besides, not only (see <u>pakk e</u> )
hyæng nim we e	형님의 외	besides an older brother 14-N
wekyokwan	외교관	diplomat, foreign service personnel 3
wekuk	외국	foreign country
wekuke	외국 어	foreign language 8-D
Wemupu	외무부	Ministry of Foreign Affairs (Korea) 3-1

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

wen (D)	왼	left 2
wen ccok ilo	왼쪽으로	to the left 2
wehwan	외환	foreign currency 16
wæ (Ad)	왜	why 6
Wæsik	왜식	Japanese food 12-D
	<u>k</u>	
ka (P)	가	2 (see <u>i</u> )
Hakkyo ka issimnita.	학교가 있습니다.	There is a school. ( 'A school exists.' ) 2-G
ka-ta (Vi: ka)	가다: 가	goes 1
Annyŏng <sup>hi</sup> kasipsiyo.	안녕히 가십시오.	Good bye (to someone leaving). 1
Wen ccok ilo kasipsiyo.	왼쪽으로 가십시오.	Go to the left. 2
kail	가을	autumn 15
kakkap-ta (Vi: kakkawə)	가깝다: 가까이	is near 3
kakkai	가까이	a nearby place 11
kakkai (Ad)	가까이	nearby, at the nearby place 3-D
kakkim (Ad)	가끔	sometimes 9
kath-ta (Vi: kathə)	같다: 같어	is the same 5-D
kathi (Ad)	같이	together, with
Na wa kathi kapsita.	나와 같이 갑시다.	Lets go with me. 4
kathi (P)	같이	as, like
Nyuyok kathi	뉴욕 같이	like New York 18-N
kalak	가락	spindle
son kalak	손가락	finger 13
pal kalak	발가락	toe 13
cəs kalak	젓가락	chopsticks 13
sut kalak	숟가락	(Korean) spoon 13
kalu	가루	powder 13

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

kalichi-ta (Vt: kalichie)	가르치다: 가르쳐	teaches 1-D
kamsa	감사	gratitude
kamsa-ha-ta (Vi: kamsa-hæ)	감사하다: 감사해	is grateful 2
Kamsa-hamnita.	감사합니다.	Thank you. 2
kantan	간단	simplicity
kantan-ha-ta (Vi: kantan-hæ)	간단하다: 간단해	is simple 8-D
kancang	간장	(soy) sauce 13
kapang	가방	briefcase 13-D
kapyæp-ta (Vi: kapyæwæ)	가볍다: 가벼워	is light (in weight) 10-D
kap(s)	값	price 4
cip kaps	집 값	rent, the price of a house 4-D
kapcaki (Ad)	갑자기	suddenly 17-D
kasim	가슴	chest 13-D
kacang (Ad)	가장	best, most
Kacang ppalimnita.	가장 빠릅니다.	[It]'s fastest. 10
kacok	가족	family, a family member 14
kaci (PN)	가지	sorts, kinds 4
Yæle kaci ka issimnita.	여러 가지가 있습니다.	[We] have several kinds. 4
kaci-ta (Vt: kacæ)	가지다: 가져	possesses
kacæ o-ta	가져 오다	bring (something) 12
kacæ ka-ta	가져 가다	takes (something) 12-N
kacæ iss-ta	가져 있다	has, is possessing 14-G
kangsa	강사	instructor 8-D
tæhak kangsa	대학 강사	college instructor 8-D
kæi (Ad)	거의	almost, nearly 11
kæi ta	거의 다	almost (all) 11
kæki	거기	there, that place 3

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

kəki esə	거기에서	there, at that place, from there 3-G
kəkçəng	걱정	worry
kəkçəng-ha-ta (Vi&Vt)	걱정하다	worries 17-D
kəl-ta (Vt: kələ)	걸다: 걸어	hangs
cənhwa (lɪl) kəl-ta	전화를 걸다	makes a phone-call 16
kət-ta (Vi: kələ)	걸다: 걸어	walks 10
kələ ka-ta	걸어 가다	walks, goes on foot
Kələ kal kka yo?	걸어 갑니까요?	Shall we walk? (in contrast to taking an automobile) 11
kələ sə	걸어서	on foot 10
kəli	거리	street 17-D
kəlli-ta (Vi: kəllyə)	걸리다: 걸력	takes (time) 7
(Sikan i) han sikan kəllimnita.	(시간이) 한 시간 걸립니다.	It takes an hour. 7-D
kəm-ta (Vi: kəmə)	검다: 검어	is dark 4-D
kənmul	건물	building 2
kənnə-ta (Vt: kənnə)	건너다: 건너	crosses
kənnən kil	건넌길	the street where you can cross 11-D
kil kənnə	길 건너	across the street 11-D
kəs (PN)	것	(thing) 2
cə kəs	저것	that (thing) (over there) 2
Cə kəs in muəs imnikka?	저것은 무엇입니까?	What is that? 2
ko (P)	고	
əti e kanta ko mal-həssɪnnikka?	어디에 가다가 말했습니까?	Did [he] say where [he] is going? 17-G
koyangi	고양이	cat 5-G
koki	고기	meat 13
kot (Ad)	곧	soon, immediately 11
kotanha-ta (Vi: kotanhæ)	고단하다: 고단해	is tired, is fatigued 13

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

koting (D)	고등	higher
koting hakkyo	고등 학교	high school 10-D
kolmok	골목	corner (of the street) 11-D
komap-ta (Vi: komawə)	고맙다: 고마워	is grateful 1
Komapsimnita.	고맙습니다.	Thank you. 1
komthang	곰탕	(soup with rice and meet) 12
koppu	고배	cup 13
kophi-ta (Vi: kopha)	고프다: 고파	('is empty')
Pæ ka kophimnita.	배가 고프니다.	I'm hungry. 12
kos (PN)	곳	place
kakkaun kos	가까운 곳	a nearby place 12
<b>kocang</b>	<b>고장</b>	<b>mechanical trouble</b>
<b>kocang-na-ta (Vi: kocang-na)</b>	<b>고장나다</b>	<b>is out of order 17-D</b>
<b>kochi-ta (Vt: kochie)</b>	<b>고치다</b>	<b>fixes, repairs 17-D</b>
kochu	고추	red pepper 13
kochu kalu	고추 가루	(red pepper powder) 13
kohyang	고향	home town, native town 14
Kohyang i eti ise yo?	고향이 어디이세요?	Where do you come from?(H) 14
kong	공	zero 16
kong	공	ball 16-D
kongwæn	공원	park 2-D
kongmuwæn	공무원	civil servant 7-D
kongpo	공보	public information 2
kongpowæn	공보원	information office 2
Mikuk Kongpowæn	미국 공보원	USIS 2
kongpokwan	공보관	information officer 7-G
kongpu	공부	studying 1
kongpu-ha-ta (kongpu-hæ)	공부하다: 공부해	studies 1

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

kongcang	공장	factory 18-D
kongchæk	공책	notebook 4-D
ku (Num Ch)	구	nine 4
kuk	국	soup 13
kukyǽng	구경	sightseeing, show 9
Kukmusǽng	국무성	State Department (U.S.) 13-D
Kukpangpu	국방부	Ministry of National Defence (Korea) 13-D
Kukpangsǽng	국방성	the Defense Department (U.S.) 13-D
kukcang	국장	bureau chief 16-D
kukce	국제	international 9
Kukce Kikcang	국제극장	International Theatre 9
Kukhwe	국회	National Assembly, Congress, Parliament 13-D
kutu	구두	shoe(s) 4-D
Kulapha	구라파	Europe 6-D
kulim	구름	cloud
kulim i kki-ta	구름이 끼다	clouds up 18-D
kunin	군인	soldier, military man 7-D
kuntæ	군대	military 7
k1 (D)	그	that, the 2-G
k1 kǽs	그것	that (thing), it 2
K1 kǽs in yǽkwan imnita.	그것은 여관입니다.	It's an inn. 2
k1kcang	극장	theatre 3-D

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

kiləh-ta (Vi: kilæ or kiləhæ)	그렇다: 그래: 그래해	is so, is such 1
Kiləhsımnita.	그렇습니다.	It's so., That's right. 1
Kiləhsımnikka?	그렇습니까?	Is that so?, Is that right? 1
kiləm (Ad)	그럼	then, if so 4 (see <u>kilyəmyən</u> )
kiləna (Ad)	그러나	but, however 5
kilən kəs	그런 것	such a thing 8
kilənte	그런데	by the way 8
kiləha-ta (Vi: kiləhæ)	그리하다: 그리해	is so, does so 4 (see <u>kiləh-ta</u> )
kiləhke (Ad)	그렇게	so, in such a way 9
kiləmyən (Ad)	그러면	if so, then 5 (see <u>kiləm</u> )
kiləhci man	그렇지만	however, nevertheless 9
kiləse	그래서	therefore, so 9
kilis	그릇	container, dish 13
kili (Ad)	그리	(not) so, like that 4
Kili pissaci anhsımnita.	그리 비싸지 않습니다.	[It]'s not so expensive. 4
kiliko (Ad)	그리고	and 5
kilim	그림	picture, painting 4-D
kilphi	그피	two days after tomorrow 6-D
kilsse (Ad)	그ैसे	well, maybe 4
Kilsse yo.	그ैसे요.	Well. 4
kımantu-ta (Vi: kımantwə)	그만두다: 그만뒤	stops (doing), quits 11-D
Kimyoil	금요일	Friday 6-D
kımyən	금년	this year 6-D
kinmu	근무	(paid) service



KOREAN BASIC COURSE

kinmu-ha-ta (Vi: kinmu-hæ)	근무하다: 근무해	works, is employed 8
kiphæng(cha)	급행(차)	express (train) 10-D
kicæ (Ad) Kicæ kilæhsımnita.	그저 그저 그렇습니다.	just 1 Just so so. 1
kıcække	그저께	the day before yesterday 4-D
kitali-ta (Vt: kitaliə) Kitalinin kæs i cohkessımnita.	기다리다: 기다려 기다리는 것이 좋겠습니다.	waits (for) 9 [You]'d better wait. ('That you wait will be good.')
kil	길	street, road 2-D
ki(1)-ta (Vi: kilə)	길다: 길어	is long, is lengthy 10-D
Kim Kim Kisu	김 김 기수	(a family name) 1 (a full name) 1
Kimchi	김치	(pickled vegetable) 13-D
kipun	기분	feeling 13
kisa	기사	article, column 17-D
kisangtæ	기상대	weather bureau, weatherman 18
kisuksa	기숙사	dormitory 13-D
kica sinmun kica	기자 신문 기자	reporter 8-D journalist 8-D
kicha	기차	train 7-G
kihı	기후	climate, weather 15
kihwe	기회	chance, opportunity 16-D
kæ (C) Yænpil han kæ cuse yo.	개 연필 한 개 주세요.	Please give a pencil. 5-G

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

kæ	개	dog 5-G
kæi-ta (Vi: kæie)	개이다: 개여	(weather) clears up 18
kwa (PN) Wehwan Kwa	과 외환과	department, section the Foreign Currency Department 16
kwanha-ta (Vi: kwanhæ) kwanhæ sɔ sənsəng e kwanhæ sɔ	관하다: 관해 관해서 선생에 관해서	is concerned concerning, about 17 (see <u>tæhæ sɔ</u> ) about you 17
kwacang	과장	department chief 16-D
kwɪ	귀	ear 13
kwa (P)	과	with, and 4 (see <u>wa</u> )
kwail	과일	fruit 13
kwasil	과실	fruit 13
kwən (C) Yəngə chæk tu kwən	권 영어 책 두 권	volume of two English books 5-G
kwəŋchanh-ta (Vi: kwəŋchanhɔ) (Aniyo), kwəŋchanhsimnita.	괜찮다: 괜찮어 아니요, 괜찮습니다.	is OK, is alright 1 Not at all., That's OK., It's not bad. 1
kyəul	겨울	winter 15
kyəlan	계란	egg 13 (see <u>talkyal</u> )
kyəngchal kyəngchalkwan kyəngchalsɔ	경찰 경찰관 경찰서	police policeman 8-D police station 10-D
kyəlhon kyəlhon-ha-ta (Vi: kyəlhon-hæ)	결혼 결혼하다: 결혼해	marriage gets married, has a wedding 14

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

kyəŋghəm	경험	experience 18-D
kyesi-ta (Vi: kyesieə)	게시다: 게셔	is, exists, stays (honored) 1 (see <u>iss-ta</u> )
Annyəŋghi kyesipsiyo.	안녕히 게십시오.	Good bye (to someone staying). 1
kyesok	계속	continuation
kyesok-ha-ta (Vi: kyesok-hæ)	계속하다: 계속해	continues, lasts 18
kyehwek	계획	plans 18
Tingsan-hal kyehwek imnita.	등산 할 계획입니다.	[I]'m planning to hike. 18
kyothong	교통	traffic, transportation 10-D
Kyothong i pəncaphamnita.	교통이 번잡합니다.	The traffic is jammed. 10-D
kyosu	교수	professor 8-D
kyosil	교실	classroom 2-D
kyocang	교장	principal (of school) 16-D
kyohwansu	교환수	telephone operator 16
kyohwe	교회	church 10-D
	<u>kk</u>	
kka (DN)	가	
Kal kka yo?	갈까요?	Shall we go? 5
ssani kka	싸ანი가	because [it]'s cheap 12
kkamah-ta (Vi: kkamæ)	가맴다: 가매	is black 4-N
kkaman sæk	가만색	black color 4-D
kkaci (P)	까지	as far as, to, until, by 7
Mikuk kkaci	미국까지	as far as America 7
næil kkaci	내일까지	by tomorrow 7-G
kkok (Ad)	꼭	exactly, without fail, by all means 15
kkolphi	골프	golf 18-G

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

kkith	<u>끝</u>	the end, the ending
kkith-machi-ta (Vt: kkith-machie)	<u>끝</u> 마칩다: <u>끝</u> 마쳐	finishes, completes 14-D
kkith-na-ta (Vi: kkith-na)	<u>끝</u> 나다: <u>끝</u> 나	ends, is over 6-D
kkith-næ-ta (Vt: kkith-næ)	<u>끝</u> 내다: <u>끝</u> 내	finishes, completes 8-D
kkækkitha-ta (Vi: kkækkithæ)	깨끗하다: 깨끗해	is clean 18-G
<u>kh</u>		
khal	<u>칼</u>	knife 5-D
kho	<u>코</u>	nose 13
khokhakhola	<u>코</u> 카콜라	coca cola 12-D
khokhoa	<u>코</u> 코아	cocoa 12-D
khong	<u>콩</u>	beans 12
khi-ta (Vi: khø)	<u>크</u> 다: <u>커</u>	is big 5
khin chæk	<u>크</u> 큰 책	a big book 5
khi-ta (Vi: khø)	<u>크</u> 다: <u>커</u>	grows up, 15-D
khiki	<u>크</u> 기	size 16-D
khike (Ad)	<u>크</u> 게	loudly 16
khi	<u>키</u>	height (of person) 18
khi ka khi-ta	<u>키</u> 가 <u>크</u> 다	is tall 18-D
<u>n</u>		
na	<u>나</u>	I 1 (see <u>cə</u> )
na e	<u>나</u> 의	my 1 (see <u>cə e</u> )
na-ta (Vi: na)	<u>나</u> 다: <u>나</u>	comes out
Hæ ka nanta.	<u>해</u> 가 <u>나</u> 다.	Sun shines. 18-D
Khin il nassimnita.	<u>큰</u> <u>일</u> <u>났</u> 습니다.	('[I] have a big problem.') 18

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

na/ina (P)	나/이나	
ppəsɪ na cəncha	버스나 전차	bus or streetcar 10
muəs ina	무엇이나	anything 12
nai	나이	age 14
Nai ka manhsumnita.	나이가 많습니다.	[He] is old. 14
Nai ka cəksumnita.	나이가 적습니다.	[He] is young. 14
na o-ta (Vt-Vi: na wa)	나오다: 나와	comes out, graduates 7-G
ənce hakkyo lɪl na	언제 학교를 나	When did you finish school? 15
wassumnikka?	왔습니까?	
na ka-ta (Vi: na ka)	나가다: 나가	goes out 9
nakksi-cil	낚시질	fishing
nakksi-cil-ha-ta	낚시질 하다	does fishing 18-D
nal	날	day 6-D
nala	나라	country, nation 10-D
nalssi	날씨	weather 15 (see <u>ilki</u> )
Nam-Mi	남미	South America 6-D
Nampu	남부	the Southern part, the South (U.S.) 15-D
namphən	남편	husband 14-D
Nam-Han	남한	South Korea 6-D
namtongsəng	남동생	younger brother 16-D
nappita (Vi: nappə)	나쁘다: 나빠	is bad 4-N
nac	낮	daytime, noontime
nac e	낮에	in the daytime 6-D
nac-ta (Vi: nacə)	낮다: 낮어	is low 10-D
nah-ta (Vi: naha)	낳다: 낳아	is born, gives a birth 15

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

nahil	나흘	four days, the 4th day of the month 6-D
ne	너	you (plain speech) 17-G
nei	너희	you (plural in plain speech) 17-G
nək (Num K) nək tal pan	네 네 달 반	(see <u>ne(s)</u> ) four months and a half 8-D
nəlp-ta (Vi: nəlpə)	넓다: 넓어	is wide 5-D
nəmu (Ad) Nəmu nicsɯmnita.	너무 너무 늦습니다.	too [It]'s too late. 11
nəngnəkha-ta (Vi: nəngnəkħæ)	넉넉하다: 넉넉해	is enough 13
nəh-ta (Vt: nəhə)	넣다: 넣어	puts in, deposits 16-N (see <u>noh-ta</u> )
nola(h)-ta (Vi: nolæ) nolan sæk	노랗다: 노랗 노란 색	is yellow 4 yellow color 4
nolla-ta (Vi: nolla)	놀라다: 놀라	is surprised 13-G
noph-ta (Vi: nopha)	높다: 높아	is high 10-D
noh-ta (Vt: noha) Cəke nohassɯmnita.	놓다: 놓아 적어 놓았습니다.	places, puts 16-G (see <u>tu-ta</u> ) I jot it down (for future use). 16-G
nongpu	농부	farmer 17-D
nongcang	농장	farm 15-D
nui nui tongsəng	누이 누이 동생	sister (for male siblings) younger sister 14
nuku nuka nuku lil	누구 누가 누구를	who, what person 3 who (subject) 3-N whom 3-N

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

nuləh-ta (Vi: nulæ)	누렇다: 누래	is yellowish 4-D
nun	눈	eyes 13
nun	눈	snow
Nun i omnita.	눈이 옵니다.	It snows. 15
nunim	누님	older sister (of male) 14-D
nɪl (Ad)	늘	all the time, always 9
nɪli-ta (Vi: nɪlyə)	느리다: 느려	is slow 10-D
nɪ(1)k-ta (Vi: nɪlkə)	늙다: 늙어	is old, is aged 14-N
nɪn (P)	는	as for 1 (see <u>in</u> )
nɪc-ta (Vi: nɪcə)	늦다: 늦어	is late 11
nɪcke/nɪkke/ (Ad)	늦게	late 10-D
nim	님	sweet-heart, lover 14-N
nim (PN)	님	
pumo nim	부모님	parents (honored) 14-N
ne (Ad)	네	yes 1
Ne?	네?	Beg your pardon!, Pardon me. 16-N
Ne....?	네....?	Is that right? 18
ne ka	네가	you (subject in plain speech) 17-G
nekthai	넥타이	neck-tie 4-D
ne(s) (Num K)	넷	four 5
ne kəli	네거리	crossroad 11-D

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

næ ka	내가	I (subject) 1 (see <u>ce ka</u> )
næil	내일	tomorrow 4-D
næli-ta (Vi: næliə)	내리다: 내리	gets off, descends 7-N
næliə cu-ta (Vt: næliə cuə) Næliə cusipsiyo.	내려 주다: 내려 주어 내려 주십시오.	drops [someone] off Please drop [me] off. 11
næliə o-ta (Vi: næliə wa)	내려 오다: 내려 와	comes down 7-G
næliə ka-ta (Vi: næliə ka)	내려 가다: 내려 가	goes down 7-G
nænæ (Ad) achim nænæ	내내 아침 내내	all the way all morning 18-D
næ-nyən	내년	next year 6-D
næphukhin	냅킨	napkins 13-D
næsən	내선	(telephone-line) extension 17-D
nængmyən	냉면	(cold noodle) 12
ta	다 <sup>ㅏ</sup>	all 9
taim taim cip	다음 다음 집	next, next time 5 the next door 5
tat-ta (Vt: tatə)	닫다: 닫어	closes 11-D
ta(1)-ta (Vi: talə)	달다: 달어	is sweet, is sugary 13



KOREAN BASIC COURSE

tal	달	month, moon 6
tali-ta (Vi: talla) talin kəs	다르다: 달라 다른 것	is different 5 different one, other one 5
tali	다리	leg 13
tali	다리	bridge 10-D
ta(1)k ta(1)k koki	닭 닭고기	chicken chicken 13
talkyal	달걀	egg 13 (see <u>kyalan</u> )
tampæ	담배	cigarettes, tobacco 4-D
tanə	단어	word 17-D
tani-ta (Vi: taniə) Hakkyo e tanimnita.	다니다: 다녀 학교에 다닙니다.	attends (school) [I]'m attending school. 8
tapang	다방	tearoom 3-D
tasəs (Num K)	다섯	five 5
tasi (Ad) Tasi (hanpən) malssim hasipsiyo.	다시 다시 한번 말씀 하십시오.	again 3 Please say it again. 3
tassæ	닷새	five days, the 5th day of the month 6-D
tah-ta (Vi: taha)	닿다: 닿아	arrives 6-N
tahæng tahæng-ha-ta (Vi: tahæng-hæ) A, tahæng immnita.	다행 다행하다: 다행해 아, 다행입니다.	fortunate thing is fortunate 16 Oh, that's fortunate. 16
tə (Ad) Tə ssamnita. tə ssan kəs	더 더 쌉니다. 더 싼 것	more 5 [It]'s cheaper. 5 cheaper one 5

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

təkpun	덕분	favor, mercy 1
təkpun e	덕분에	(at your favor) 1
Təkpun e cal cinamnita.	덕분에 잘 지냅니다.	I'm doing fine, thank you. 1
tal (Ad)	덜	less
tal əlyəwn mal	덜 어려운 말	(a) less difficult language 5-G
təp-ta (Vi: təwə)	덥다: 더워	is hot 13
to (P)	도	also, too 1, even though 10
puin to	부인도	your wife also 1
na to	나도	me too 4
isse to	있어도	even though there is 10
toyaci	도야지	pig
toyaci koki	도야지 고기	pork 13 (see <u>tweci</u> )
Tokil	독일	Germany 1-D
Tokile	독일어	German (language) 8-D
tol-ta (Vi: tola)	돌다: 돌아	turns, make a turn 11-D
tola o-ta (Vi: tola wa)	돌아오다: 돌아와	comes back 7-G
tola ka-ta (Vi: tola ka)	돌아가다: 돌아가	goes back 7 passes away 11-G
tola po-ta (Vt: tola pwa)	돌아보다: 돌아봐	looks back 12-G
tollita (Vi: tolliə)	돌리다: 돌려	rotates, switches, turns around 16
ton	돈	money 7-G
top-ta (Vt: towa)	돕다: 도와	helps
towa cu-ta (Vt: towa cuə)	도와주다: 도와주어	gives help, gives a helping hand 7-G
tosəkwān	도서관	library 10-D
tosi	도시	city, urban community 10-D

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

tohweci	도회지	metropolitan area, city 15-D
tongan (PN) Yətə(1)p sikan tongan il-hamnita. Kulapha e issnɨn tongan	동안 여덟 시간 동안 일합니다. 구락파에 있는 동안	for, during, while [I] work for eight hours. 6 while [I] was in Europe 15
tongyo	동료	colleague, co-worker 13-D
Tongpu	동부	the East (U.S.), the eastern part 15-D
tongmul tongmulwən	동물 동물원	animal zoo ('animal house') 10-D
tongsæng	동생	a younger sibling 14
tu(1) (Num K)	둘	two 5
tu-ta (Vt: tuə) tuə iss-ta Cəkə tuəssɨmnita.	두다: 두어 두어 있다 쥐어 두었습니다.	places, puts is being placed 14-G [I] wrote it down (for future use). 16-G
tɨl (PN) kɨ kəs tɨl ta tɨl	들 그것들 다들	they, those (things) 10 all, everybody 14
tɨ(1)-ta (Vt: tɨlə) əsə tɨsɨpsɨyo.	들다: 들어 어서 드십시오.	eats or drinks (food), lifts Please help yourself. 13
tɨt-ta (Vt: tɨlə)	들다: 들어	listens to, hears 9
tɨlə o-ta (Vi: tɨlə wa).	들어오다: 들어와	comes in 7-G
tɨlə ka-ta (Vi: tɨlə ka)	들어가다: 들어가	goes in 7-G
tɨlə ka po-ta (Vi: tɨlə ka pwa)	들어가보다: 들어 가 봐	enters and sees, goes in to see 12-G
tɨllɨ-ta (Vt: tɨllə)	들르다: 들러	stops by, drops in 4
tɨlli-ta (Vi: tɨllyə)	들리다: 들려	is heard, is audible 16

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

tinci/itinci (P)	든지: 이든지	(see <u>itinci</u> )
muas itinci	무엇이든지	anything 12-G
Yongə tinci Tokilə	영어든지 독일어	either English or German 12-G
ting (PN)	등	and so on, etc. 12
ting	등	back
Ting i aphimnita.	등이 아픕니다.	I have a backache. 13
tingsan	등산	hiking
tingsan-ha-ta (Vi: tingsan-hæ)	등산하다: 등산해	hikes 18
te (PN)	데	place 10-D
kakkaun te	가까운 데	nearby place 12
tæ (C)	대	
catongcha tu tæ	자동차 두 대	two automobiles 6-G
tæk	दै	your home, home (honored) 4
tækæ (Ad)	대개	usually, generally 6
tætanhı (Ad)	대단히	very 2
tæthongyæng	대통령	the President 8-D
tælo (P)	대로	
malm tælo	마음 대로	as one pleases, as you like 16-D
ki tælo	그 대로	as it is
Tæman	대만	Formosa, Taiwan 6-D
tæmun	대문	gate 11-D
tæsa	대사	ambassador 7-G
tæsakwan	대사관	embassy 2
tæhak	대학	college 8-D
tæhakwen	대학원	graduate school 15-G
tæhakwən kongpu	대학원 공부	graduate studies 15-G

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

tæhakkyo	대학교	university 10-D
tæha-ta (Vt: tæhæ) kihu e tæhæ sɔ	대하다: 대해 기후에 대해서	faces, confronts with concerning (or about) the weather 15
Tæhan Minkuk	대한민국	the Republic of Korea 17-D
twe-ta (Vi: tweə) Sam nyən tweæssimnita. Sənsəng i tweæssimnita.	되다: 되어 삼년 되었습니다. 선생이 되었습니다.	becomes, has been It's been 3 years. 8 [He] has become a teacher. 8-N
tweci tweci koki	돼지 돼지 고기	pig pork ('pig meat') 13
twi twi e Cip twi e issimnita.	뒤 뒤에 집 뒤에 있습니다.	back, rear 2-D behind, in back of [It]'s behind the house. 2-D
ttattitha-ta (Vi: ttattithæ)	<u>tt</u> 따뜻하다: 따뜻해	is warm 15
ttal	딸	daughter 14
(ttala) we-ta	따라 외다	memorizes, learns by heart 17-D (see <u>we-ta</u> )
ttanim	따님	your daughter (honored) 14-N
ttəna-ta (Vt: ttəna) Ttənaləko hamnita.	떠나다: 떠나 떠나려고 합니다.	leaves 6 [I]'s going to leave. 7
tto (Ad) Tto pwepkessimnita. Tto talin kəs i philyo-hamnikka?	또 또 봅니다. 또 다른 것이 필요 합니까?	again 1 So long., See you again. 1 Do you need anything else? 5
ttokttokha-ta (Vi: ttokttokhæ)	똑똑하다: 똑똑해	is intelligent, is bright 17-G
ttokpalo (Ad)	똑바로	straight, straight ahead 3
ttikəp-ta (Vi: ttikəwə)	뜨겁다: 뜨거워	is hot (solid, liquid) 13

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

ttæ (PN)	때	time, occasion, when
ki ttæ (e)	그 때(에)	(at) that time 7
ttæ ttæ lo	때때대로	occasionally 9-D
hakkyo e kal ttæ (e)	학교에 갈 때(에)	when [I] go to school 14-G
ttwi-ta (Vi: ttwiə)	뛰다: 뛰어	runs 18-G
Tækæ ttwiə kamnita.	대개 뛰어 갑니다.	[I] usually run. ('I usually run and go.') 14-G
	<u>th</u>	
tha-ta (Vt: tha)	타다: 타	rides, gets on 7
thako ka-ta	타고 가다	takes (bus, taxi, etc.) 10
thaiphɨ	타이프	typing
thaiphɨ congɨ	타이프 종이	typing paper 5
thək	턱	chin, jaw 13-D
Thoyoil	토요일	Saturday 6-D
thongyækkwan	통역관	interpreter 8-D
thonghwa	통화	telephone conversation
Thonghwa cung imnita.	통화 중입니다.	The line is busy. 16
thɨm	틈	free time, spare time 9
thɨlli-ta (Vi: thɨllia)	틀리다: 틀럭	is wrong 18
thipi	티비	television 14-G
thæu-ta (Vt: thæwə)	태우다: 태워	gives a ride (to someone), loads 7-N
thæwə cu-ta (Vt: thæwə cuə)	태워 주다: 태워 주어	gives [someone] a ride 11-N
Thækuk	태국	Tailand 6-D
thækssi	택시	taxi 7-D

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

	<u>l</u>	
lako (P)	라고	
'Mæli ka aphimnita.' lako mal-hæssimnita.	머리가 아픁니다 라고 말 했습니다.	[He] said, "I have a headache." 18-G
lato/ilato (P)	라도/이라도	18-G
muæs ilato	무엇이라도	whatever [it] is 18-G
na lato	나라도	even I 18-G
lætio	라디오	radio 9-D
lo (P)	로	to, as, by 2 (see <u>ilo</u> )
Hakkyo lo kamnita.	학교로 갑니다.	[I] go to school. 2-G
wekyokwan ilo	외교관으로	as a diplomat 7
pæ lo	배로	by boat 7
lil (P)	를	l (see <u>il</u> )
	<u>m</u>	
maim	마음	mind, heart 13-D
maim tælo	마음대로	as one pleases 16-D
moksa	목사	minister (of church) 16-D
mat (D)	맏	first
mat atil	맏 아들	the first son 14-G
mata (P)	마다	every, each
nal mata	날마다	everyday 8
mal	말	language, utterance, speech, word 1
Hankuk mal	한국 말	Korean (language) 1
mal-ha-ta (Vi-Vt: mal-hæ)	말하다: 말해	speaks 1-D
Sacæn mal imnikka?	사전 말입니까?	Do you mean a dictionary? 4
mal	말	horse 5-G
ma(1)-ta (Vt: malə)	말다: 말어	not do 11-G
Thaci mapsita.	타지 맙시다.	Let's not ride. 11

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

Kaci masipsiyo.	가지 마십시오.	Don't go. 11-G
mali-ta (Vi: mallə) Mok i mallmnita.	마르다: 말리 목이 마릅니다.	dries I'm thirsty. ('Throat is dry.'). 12
mali (C) mal ne mali	마리 말 네 마리	head of four heads of horses, four horses 5-G
malk-ta (Vi: malkə)	맑다: 맑어	is clear (water, air, etc.) 18
man (Num Ch)	만	ten-thousands 4
man (P) Mianhaci man Mækcū tu pyəng man kacə osipsiyo.	만 미안하지만 맥주 두 병만 가져 오십시오.	only, just I'm sorry but... 9 Please bring me just two bottles of beer. 12
manna-ta (Vt: manna)	만나다: 만나	meets 3
mannyənphil	만년필	fountain-pen 4-D
manh-ta (Vi: manhə)	많다: 많어	is plenty, are many 9
manhi (Ad)	많이	a lot, much 8-D
mas mas i iss-ta (or coh-ta) mas i əps-ta	맛 맛이있다 (or 좋다) 맛이 없다	taste 13 is delicious 13 is tasteless 13
masi-ta (Vt: masyə)	마시다: 마셔	drinks 10
mac-ta (Vi: macə)	맞다: 맞어	is correct, fits 18-N
mahir (Num K)	마흔	forty 5
mangræ mangræ atil	막내 막내 아들	the last child 14-N the last son 14-N
mæk-ta (Vt: məkə)	먹다: 먹어	eats 2-G
məkə po-ta (Vt: məkə pwa)	먹어 보다: 먹어 봐	tries (food) 7-G



KOREAN BASIC COURSE

mə(1)-ta (Vi: mələ)	멀다: 멀어	is far 3
Yəki esə məmnikka?	여기에서 멩니까?	Is [it] far from here? 3
məli	머리	head, hair 13
məli ka coh-ta	머리가 좋다	has brain 13-D
melli (Ad)	멀리	far away 11-N
məmul-ta (Vi: məmule)	머물다: 머물어	stays 6-D
məmchu-ta (Vt-Vi: məmchwə)	멈추다: 멈추워	stops (car, taxi, etc.) 11-D
məncə (Ad)	먼저	first of all, above all 10
mok	목	neck, throat 12
Mok i malimnita.	목이 마릅니다.	I'm thirsty. 12
Mok i aphimnita.	목이 아픉니다.	I have a sore throat. 13
Mokyoil	목요일	Thursday 6
moli-ta (Vt: malla)	모르다: 몰라	doesn't know 3
mole	모레	the day after tomorrow 4-D
mom	몸	body 6
Mom i aphimnikka?	몸이 아픉니까?	Are you sick? 6
mot (Ad)	못	cannot
Ilkci mot hamnita.	읽지 못 합니다.	[I] cannot read. 8
Mot kamnita.	못 갑니다.	[I] cannot go. 8-G
motu	모두	all, in all, altogether 14
moca	모자	hat, cap 4-D
mocala-ta (Vi: mocala)	모자라다: 모자라	is not enough 13
mues	무엇	what (thing) 1
mues il	무엇을	what (as direct object) 1
mukəp-ta (Vi: mukəwə)	무겁다: 무거워	is heavy 10-D

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

muke	무게	weight 10-D
mul	물	water 12-D
mut-ta (Vt: mule)	물다: 물어	inquires
mule po-ta (Vt: mule pwa)	물어보다: 물어봐	inquires 2
mulkən	물건	goods 9-D
mun	문	door, window 11
aph mun	앞문	the front door 11
munpəp	문법	grammar 10-D
munce	문제	problem 10-D
musin (D)	무슨	what kind of 4
musin sək	무슨 색	what color, what kind of color 4
munpangku	문방구	stationaries
munpangkucəm	문방구점	stationary shop 5
Mianhamnita.	미안합니다.	I'm sorry. 1
Mianhaci man	미안하지만	I'm sorry but... 9
Mikuk	미국	America, the United States 1
Mikuk salam	미국 사람	an American 1
Mikuk mal	미국 말	the American language 1-D
mit-ta (Vt: mite)	믿다: 믿어	trusts, believes 18-D
menyu	메뉴	menu 12
mæil (Ad)	매일	everyday 9-D
mækcū	맥주	beer 12
mæp-ta (Vi: mæwə)	매다: 매워	is (spicy) hot 13
mæcuil	매주일	every week 9-D

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

myənuli	며누 리	daughter-in-law ('son's wife') 14-D
myəch/myət/ (D) lyca ka myəch kæ issimnikka? myəch-si	몇 의자가 몇 개 있읍니까? 몇 시	how many, what How many chairs are there? 5-G what time 6
myəchil Onil i myəchil ici yo?	며칠 오늘이 며칠이지요?	what day, some days, how many days What's today's date? 6
myəngnyəng	명령	(executive) order 13-D
ㅁ		
Pak	박	Park (family name) 1-D
pakmulkwan	박물관	museum 10-D
paksa	박사	doctor (of philosophy) 16-D
pakk pakk e Hankuk mal pakk e molimnita.	밖 밖에 한국 말 밖에 모릅니다.	the outside 14-N outside, to the outside 16-D I know only Korean. ('Outside of Korean, I don't know.') 16-G
pakku-ta (Vt: pakkwə) Kim Sənsəng eke com pakkwə cusipsiyo.	바꾸다: 바꾸 김 선생에게 좀 바꾸 주십시오.	exchanges, changes May I talk to Mr. Kim (on the phone)? 16
pata	바다	sea 16-D
pat-ta (Vt: patə)	받다: 받아	receives, gets 6
pal	발	foet 13
pal kalak	발가락	toe 13
pala-ta (Vt: palæ)	바라다: 바래	hopes, wishes 8-G

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

pala po-ta (Vt: pala pwa)	바라 보다: 바라 봐	looks over (from the distance) 12-G
palam	바람	wind
Palam i pu(lu)mnita.	바람이 불 니다.	It is windy. 15
palo (Ad)	바로	just, right 2
palo aph e	바로 앞에	right ahead 2
Palo aph e issimnita.	바로 앞에 있습니다.	[It]'s right up ahead. 2
palk-ta (Vi: palkø)	밝다: 밝어	is light 10-D
pam	밤	night 4-D
pan	반	half 6-D
panto	반도	peninsula
Panto Hwesa	반도 회사	Bando Company 8
pap	밥	rice (cooked), meal 12
pappita (Vi: pappø)	바쁘다: 바빠	is busy 9
pang	방	room 4-D
pangsong	방송	broadcasting
pangsongkuk	방송국	broadcasting station, radio station 11-D
panghak	방학	school vacation 6-D
pəl (C)	벌	
yangpok tu pəl	양복 두 벌	two suits 5-G
pəlssə (Ad)	벌써	already 6
pən (PN)	번	time, number
i pən	이번	this time 7
han pən	한 번	once 7
myəch pən	몇 번	what number, how many times 16
pəncap-ha-ta (Vi: pəncap-hæ)	번잡하다: 번잡해	is crowded 10

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

pənho	번호	number 16
cənhwa pənho	전화 번호	telephone number 16
po-ta (Vt: pwa)	보다: 봐	looks at, sees 4
poi-ta (Vi: poyə)	보이다: 보여	is seen, is visible 16
poyə cu-ta (Vt: poyə cwe)	보여 주다: 보여 주어	shows 5
pokcap	복잡	complexity
pokcap-ha-ta (Vi: pokcap-hæ)	복잡하다: 복잡해	is complicated 8-D
pota (P)	보다	than
Hankuk mal i Tokil mal pota tə əlyəpsimnita.	한국 말이 독일 말 보다 더 어렵습니다.	Korean is more difficult than German. 8
pothong	보통	ordinary, ordinairly
pothong samu	보통 사무	ordinary office work 8
pom	봄	spring (season) 15
ponæ-ta (Vt: ponæ)	보내다: 보내	sends 11-D
ponkuk	본국	home country 15-D
pontho	본토	mainland 15-D
pongkɔp	봉급	pay, salary 13-D
puəkh	부엌	kitchen 16-D
puin	부인	lady, your wife, Mrs. ____ . 1
pukɔn (PN)	부근	vicinity 10
i pukɔn	이 부근	this vicinity, around here 10
puk-pu	북부	the Northern part 15-D
Puk-Han	북한	North-Korea 6-D
putiləp-ta (Vi: putiləwə)	부드럽다: 부드러워	is tender, is soft 13-D

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

puthak Chwe Sənsəng (eke) com puthak-hamnita. Chinku ekese puthak il patəssimnita.	부탁 최 선생(에게) 좀 부탁합니다. 친구에게서 부탁을 받았습니다.	request of a favor, a favor May I speak to Mr. Choe, please? 16 My friend asked me of a favor. ('I received a request of favor from a friend.') 18-D
puthə (P) cikim puthe	부터 지금 부터	from from now on 8-D
pul pul-koki	불 불고기	fire, light Korean style barbecue ('fire meat') 13
pu(1)-ta (Vi: pulə) Palam i pu(1)mnita.	불다: 불어 바람이 불니다.	blows It's windy. ('Wind blows.') 15
pul1-ta (Vt: pulleə) nolæ lil pul1-ta	부르다: 불려 노래를 부르다	calls 18 sings a song 18-N
pu(1)k-ta (Vi: pulkə)	붉다: 붉어	is reddish 4-D
Pullanse Pullanse mal Pullanse salam	불란서 불란서 말 불란서 사람	France 1 French (language) 8-D Frenchman 1-D
Pullansee	불란서어	French 8-D
pulphyen pulphyen-ha-ta (Vi: pulphyen-hæ)	불편 불편하다: 불편해	inconvenience, discomfort is inconvenient, is uncomfortable 1C-D
pumo	부모	parents 14
pun (PN) k1 pun sənsəng se pun	분 그분 선생 세 분	person (honored) 3 he ('that person') 3 three teachers 5-G
pun (C)	분	minute 6
puncuha-ta (Vi: puncuhæ)	분주하다: 분주해	is busy, is hectic 8
Pusan	부산	Pusan 1-G

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

puca	부자	a rich man 17-G
pucok	부족	insufficiency, lack
pucok-ha-ta (Vi: pucok-hæ)	부족하다: 부족해	is not enough, is insufficient 13
puchi-ta (Vt: puchiə)	부치다: 부쳐	mails, ships 11
pi	비	rain
Pi ka omnita.	비가 옵니다.	It rains. ('Rain comes.')
		8-G
pilli-ta (Vt: pillyə)	빌리다: 빌려	borrow
pillyə cu-ta (Vt: pillyə cuə)	빌려주다: 빌려 주어	loans, lends 7-G
pisə	비서	secretary 7-G
pisitha-ta (Vi: pisithæ)	비슷하다: 비슷해	is similar 15
pissa-ta (Vi: pissa)	비싸다: 비싸	is expensive 4
pihængki	비행기	airplane 7
pihængcang	비행장	airport 7-D
pæ	배	ship 7
pæ	배	stomach
Pæ ka kophimnita.	배가 곱습니다.	I'm hungry. 12
pæ (PN)	배	times
i (or tu) pæ	이 (두) 배	two times 7-G
pæu-ta (Vt: pæwə)	배우다: 배워	learns 1-D
pæk (Num Ch)	백	hundred 4
pækhwacəm	백화점	department store 2
pyallo (Ad)	별로	(not) particularly
Pyello manhi mækci anhessimnita.	별로 많이 먹지 않았습니다.	I didn't eat so much. 13

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

pyənhosa	법 호사	lawyer 8-D
pyəng	병	sickness, disease 15-G
pyəng i na-ta	병이 나타	gets sick 15-G
pyəng	병	bottle
pyəng (C)	병	bottle of 12
pyəngwən	병원	hospital 10-D
pwep-ta (Vi: pwewə)	만나다: 보우	('meets')
Chəlm pwepsimnita.	처음 뵙습니다.	(I'm glad to meet you.) ( 'I see you for the first time.' ) 1
Tto pwepkessimnita.	또 뵙겠습니다.	See you again., So long. 1

pp

ppata	버터	butter 13-D
ppalita (Vi: ppallə)	빠르다: 빨리	is fast 10
ppalli (Ad)	빨리	quickly, fast 16-D
ppang	빵	bread 13-D
ppəsɪ	버스	bus 7-G
ppilu	비루	beer 13
ppyam	뺨	cheek 13

ph

phal (Num Ch)	팔	eight 4
phal	팔	arm 13
pha(l)-ta (Vt: phalə)	팔다: 팔어	sells 4
phala(h)-ta (Vi: phalæ)	파랗다: 파랏	is blue 4-N
phalan sæk	파란 색	blue color 4-D



KOREAN BASIC COURSE

phansa	판사	judge 16-D
phək (Ad)	푼	quite, very 9
phulɪ-ta (Vi: phulɪlɛ)	푸르다: 푸르터	is bluish 4-D
phungsok	풍속	custom 15-G
phiu-ta (Vt: phiwə)	피우다: 피워	smokes
Kim in tampæ lil phiuko siphe hæ yo.	김은 담배를 피우고 싶어 해요.	Kim wants to smoke. 9-D
phikon	피곤	fatigue
phikon-ha-ta (Vi: phikon-hæ)	피곤하다: 피곤해	is tired 13
philo	피로	fatigue
philo-ha-ta (Vi: philo-hæ)	피로하다: 피로해	is fatigued 13
philyo	필요	need, necessity
philyo-ha-ta (Vi: philyo-hæ)	필요하다: 필요해	is necessary, is needed 5
phen	편	pen 5
phyən (PN)	편	side, way
ənɪ phyən	어느 편	which way 10
phyənci	편지	letter, mail 9-D
phyənha-ta (Vi: phyənhæ)	편하다: 편해	is comfortable 10-D
phyo	표	ticket 14-G

	<u>ㅅ</u>	
sa (Num Ch)	사	four 4
sa-ta (Vt: sa)	사다: 사	buys 4
Sassə yo?	샀어요?	Did [you] buy? 4
saep	사업	business, enterprise
saepka	사업가	business-man 16-D
saita	사이다	(a kind of soft drink) 12
sawi	사위	son-in-law ('daughter's husband') 14-D
sakən	사건	incident, trouble 17-D
sako	사고	accident 17-D
sa(1)-ta (Vi: salə)	살다: 살어	lives 9-G
sal (C)	살	year old 5-G
han sal	한 살	one year old 14
salam	사람	person, man 1
salam (C)	사람	
haksəng tu salam	학생 두 사람	two students 5-G
salang	사랑	love 9-G
salang-ha-ta (Vt: salang-hæ)	사랑하다: 사랑해	loves 9-G
sam (Num Ch)	삼	three 4
samu	사무	office work 6-D
samuwən	사무원	clerk, office worker 7-D

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

samusil	사무실	office 3-D
san	산	mountain 10-D
sanyang	사냥	hunting
sanyang ka-ta	사냥가다	goes hunting 18-D
sanpo	산보	a walk, a stroll
sanpo-ha-ta (Vi: sanpo-hæ)	산보하다: 산보해	takes a walk, strolls 9-D
sacang	사장	president of company 8-D
sacæn	사전	dictionary 5
sachon	사촌	cousin 14-D
sahil	사흘	three days, the 3rd of the month 6
sangyæng	상영	showing of movies
sangyæng-ha-ta (Vt: sangyæng-hæ)	상영하다: 상영해	shows movies 9
Sangwæn	상원	Senate (U.S.)
Sangwæn iywæn	상원 의원	Senator 16-D
sangkwan	상관	supervisor, boss 13-D
sangcæm	상점	store, shop 2-D
sæ (P)	서	so, and so
kilæ sæ	그래서	so, therefore 9
Sæul	서울	Seoul (Capital of Korea) 1-G
sæul	서울	capital 17-D

## KOREAN BASIC COURSE

---

sək (Num K)	석	8-D (see <u>se(s)</u> )
sək tal	석 달	three months 8-D
səlhin (Num K)	십흔	thirty 5
səlthang	설탕	sugar 13
səm	섬	island 15-D
sənmul	선물	present, gift 13-G
sənsənha-ta (Vt: sənsənhæ)	선선하다: 선선힌	is cool (air) 15
sənsəng	선생	teacher, you, Mr. 1-N
Səpu	서부	the West (U.S.), the western part 15-D
sə-ta (Vi: sə)	서다: 서	stands up, stops (walking, vehicles) 11-D
sə iss-ta	서 있다	is standing 14-G
so	소	cattle, cow 5-G
so koki	소고기	beef 13
sokim	소금	salt 13
sohki (Ad)	속히	quickly 16-D
solli	소리	noise, sound, voice
mal soli	말소리	voice 16-D
salam soli	사람소리	voices 16-D
pal soli	발소리	foot steps 16-D
son	손	hand 13
son kalak	손가락	finger 13

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

sonnim	손님	customer, quest 13-D
sonnye	손녀	granddaughter 14-D
sonca	손자	grandson 14-D
sopangsa	소방서	fire station 11-D
sosik	소식	news, whereabouts 15-G
sohakkyo	소학교	elementary school 10-D
su (DN) (Mal) hal su issumnita. Hal su epsumnita.	수 (말) 할 수 있습니다. 할 수 없습니다.	[I] can speak. 8 [I] cannot do., I'm unable to do. 8-N
suəp ənce suəp i kkith- namnikka?	수업 언제 수업이 끝 납니까?	class (work) 6-D When does the class end? 6-D
suyəng suyəng ka-ta	수영 수영 가다	swimming 18-D goes swimming 18-D
Suyoil	수요일	Wednesday 6-D
sukən son sukən	수건 손수건	towel 4 handkerchief 4-D
sukce	숙제	homework 16-G
suto	수도	capital city 17-D
sut kalak	술가락	(Korean) spoon 13
sul	술	liquor, wine 12-D
suchəp	수첩	address book 16

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

simu (Num K)	스무	twenty 5
simu nal	스무 날	twenty days 6-D
simul (Num K)	스물	twenty 5
sipki	습기	humidity 18-D
singkip	승급	promotion 13-D
si (D)	시	(husband's side)
si pumo	시부모	husband's parents 14-D
si apæci	시아버지	husband's father 14-D
si æmeni	시어머니	husband's mother 14-D
si tongsæng	시동생	husband's younger siblings 14-D
si nui	시누이	husband's sister 14-D
si cip	시집	husband's family 14-D
si-ta (Vi: siə)	시다: 시어	is sour 13
siwe	시외	suburb, out skirt of city 10-D
sikan	시간	time, hour 6
myæch sikan	몇 시간	how many hours 6
Sikan i issimnikka?	시간이 있습니까?	Do you have time. 6-N
sikol	시골	country, rural area 15-D
sikye	시계	watch, clock 2-D
siktang	식당	restaurant, dining hall 3-D
siksa	식사	meal 12-D
achim siksa	아침 식사	breakfast 12-D
sikmo	식모	maid 16-D
Sikhako	시카고	Chicago 15
sillye	실례	rudeness 1
Sillye-hamnita.	실례합니다.	Excuse me (on leaving <u>or</u> on interrupting) 1

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

Sillye-hakessimnita.	실례하겠습니다.	Excuse me (for what I'm going to do). 1
Sillye-hæssimnita.	실례했습니다.	Excuse me (for what I did). 1
silhøha-ta (Vt: silhøhæ)	싫어하다: 싫어해	dislikes 4-N
sinæ	시내	downtown 4
sinmun	신문	newspaper 4-D
sinmunsa	신문사	newspaper publisher 11-D
sip (Num Ch)	십	ten 4
siph-ta (Vt: siphø)	싶다: 싶어	
Poko siphsimnita.	보고 싶습니다.	I want to see. 9
sicak	시작	beginning
sicak-ha-ta (Vi-Vt: sicak-hæ)	시작하다: 시작해	begins 3-G
sicang	시장	market-place 3-D
sicang po-ta	시장보다	goes food shopping 9-D
sichang	시청	city hall 2
sihæm	시험	test, examination
sihæm (il) po-ta	시험(을)보다	takes an examination 15-G
singkep-ta (Vi: singkøwø)	싱겁다: 싱거워	is not salty, is bland 13
se(s) (Num K)	셋	three 5
seu-ta (Vt: sewø)	세우다: 세워	parks, stops, erects 11-D
sæ (D)	새	new 14-D
sæk	색	color 4
sængil	생일	birthday 13-G
sængkak	생각	idea, thought 9
sængkak-ha-ta (Vt-Vi: sængkak-hæ)	생각하다: 생각해	thinks 15

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

sængmyəng	생명	life 16-N
sængsən	생선	fish 13
sængħwal	생활	life, livelihood 15-D
syassı	셔츠	shirts 4-D
swi-ta (Vi: swiə)	쉬다: 쉬어	rests, takes a rest 6
swin (Num K)	쉰	fifty 5
swip-ta (Vi: swiwə)	쉽다: 쉬워	is easy 5-D
	<u>ss</u>	
ssa-ta (Vi: ssa)	싸다: 싸	is cheap 4
ssau-ta (Vi: ssawə)	싸우다: 싸워	fight, quarrels 14-G
Ssolyən	소련	Soviet Union 6-D
Ssolyənə	소련어	Russian 8-D
ssi-ta (Vt: ssə)	쓰다: 써	writes, uses 8-D
ssi-ta (Vi: ssə)	쓰다: 써	is bitter (in taste) 13
ssik (P)	씩	each 14
hana ssik	하나씩	one at a time, one each 14
	<u>c</u>	
Ca! (Int)	자!	Here!, Well! 5
ca-ta (Vi-Vt: ca)	자다: 자	sleeps 11-G
cak-ta (Vi: cakə)	작다: 작어	is small 5
cakin kəs	작은것	a small one 5
Cakke malssım-hasipsiyo.	작게 말씀 하십시오.	Please speak softly. 16-D
caknyən	작년	last year 6-D
catongcha	자동차	automobile 7-G



KOREAN BASIC COURSE

cal (Ad)	잘	well 1
cala-ta (Vi: cala)	자라다: 자라	grows up 14-D
calang	자랑	boasting
calang-ha-ta (Vt: calang-hæ)	자랑하다: 자랑해	is proud of (something) 18-G
cali	자리	seat 11-D
il cali	이 자리	job 16-D
cam	잠	sleep
Cam i omnita.	잠이 옵니다.	I'm sleepy. ('Sleep comes.') 13
(Cam il) camnita.	잠을 잡니다.	[I]'m sleeping. 13
camkan (Ad)	잠깐	for a moment 2
Camkan man kitalise yo.	잠깐만 기다리세요.	Just a minute. 16
can (C)	잔	cup of
khæphi han can	커피 한 잔	a cup of coffee 5-G
capsusi-ta (Vt: capsusyæ)	잡수 시다: 잡수셔	eats (honored) 12 (see <u>mæk-ta</u> )
capci	잡지	magazine 4-D
cacænke	자전거	bicycle 16-D
caacu (Ad)	자주	frequently, often 9-D
elma na cacu	얼마나 자주	how often 9-D
cang (C)	장	sheet of, piece of 5
swin cang	쉰 장	50 sheets 5
cang	장	(soy) sauce 13 (see <u>kancang</u> )
cangin	장인	father-in-law ('wife's father') 14-D
cangkun	장군	general (of armed forces) 16-D
cangkap	장갑	gloves 16-D

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

cangkwan	장관	minister (of government) 16-D
cangma (chəl)	장마(철)	rainy season 18
cangmo	장모	mother-in-law ('wife's mother) 14-D
cə	저	I (polite) 1
cə e or ce	저의, 제	my 1
cə (D)	저	that 2
cə kənmul	저 건물	that building (over there) 2
cə(h)i	저희	we (polite) 17-G
cək (DN)	적	
Məkə pon cək i issimnikka?	먹어 본 적이 있습니까?	Have you ever eaten? 13
cək-ta (Vi: cəkə)	적다: 적어	is little 5-N
cək-ta (Vt: cəkə) Cəkə tuəssimnita.	적다: 적어 적어 두었습니다.	writes down, jots down [I] wrote it down (for later use). 16
cəki	저기	there, that place 2
cəki e	저기에	over there, at that place 2
cələh-ta (Vi: cələ)	저렇다: 저태	is like that
cələn kəs	저런 것	that kind of thing 18-D
cələhke (Ad)	저렇게	that way, like that 18-N
cə(l)m-ta (Vi: cəlmə)	젊다: 젊어	is young, is youthful 14-N
cəmsim	점심	lunch 12
cəncəm (Ad)	점점	gradually 18
cən	전	before
yatal-si o pun cən	여덟 시 오 분 전	five minutes to eight 6
cən e	전에	previously 7
Səul e oki cən e	서울에 오기 전에	before coming to Seoul, before [I] came to Seoul 15

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

cənyək	저녁	evening 4-D
onil cənyək	오늘 저녁	this evening 4-D
cənyək (siksa)	저녁 식사	supper 12-D
cənpō	전보	telegram, cable 13-D
cəncha	전차	streetcar 7-G
cənha-ta (Vt: cənhæ)	전하다: 전해	delivers 16
cənhal mal(ssim)	전할 말(씀)	message (to leave) 16
cənhwa	전화	telephone 13-D
cənhwa-ha-ta (cənhwa-hæ)	전화하다: 전화해	telephones 16
cənhwa (lil) kal-ta	전화를 거다	makes a telephone call 16
cənhwa pənho chæk	전화 번호 책	telephone book 16
cəs kalak	저가락	chopsticks 13
Cəng	정	Chung (family name) 1-D
cəngwən	정원	the yard, garden 16-D
cəngkəcang	정거장	station, railroad station 3
cəngpu	정부	government 8-D
cəngmal (Ad)	정말	certainly 18
cəngmal	정말	truth 18
Cəngmal imnikka?	정말입니까?	Are you sure?, Is it true? 18-N
cəngchika	정치가	politician 18-D
cəphanso	재판소	(law) court 10-D
coyonghi (Ad)	조용히	quietly 16-D
cokim (Ad)	조금	a little 8 (see <u>com</u> )
cokha	조카	nephew 14-D
cokha ttal	조카딸	niece 14-D

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

coləp	졸업	graduation
coləp-ha-ta (coləp-hæ)	졸업하다: 졸업해	graduates (from) 14
com (Ad)	좁	a little 2
cop-ta (Vi: copa)	좁다: 좁아	is narrow 5-D
cocongsa	조종사	pilot 16-G
coh-ta (Vi: coha)	좋다: 좋아	is good, is nice 4
cohaha-ta (Vt: cohahæ)	좋아하다: 좋아해	prefers, likes 4
congi	종이	paper 5
Cu	주	State (U.S.) 15
cu-ta (Vt: cuə)	주다: 주어	gives 4
Cusipsiyo.	주십시오.	Please give [me]. 4
Ka cusipsiyo.	가 주십시오.	Please go (for me). 11
cuil	주일	week 6
cuin	주인	master, owner, my husband
uli cuin	우리 주인	my husband ('our master') 14-D
cuk-ta (Vi: cukə)	죽다: 죽어	dies 11-G
culo (Ad)	주로	mainly, mostly 8
cumal	주말	weekend 12-D
cumun	주문	order (of goods, food, etc) 1 13-D
cunpi	준비	preparation 15-G
cunpi-ha-ta (cunpi-hæ)	준비하다: 준비해	prepares for 17-G
cuso	주소	(one's) address 16-D
cuchacang	주차장	parking lot 16-D

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

cung (PN)	중	among, during 10
ki (kəs til) cung esə	그(것들) 중 에서	among them 10
cungang	중앙	center, central 11
cungyoha-ta (Vi: cungyohæ)	중요하다: 중요해	is important 18
Cungkuk	중국	China 1-G
Cungkuk mal	중국 말	Chinese (language) 1-G
Cungkuk salam	중국 사람	Chinese (man)
Cungkukə	중국어	Chinese (language) 8-D
cungtæha-ta (Vi: cungtæhæ)	중대하다: 중대해	is important 18
cunghakkyo	중학교	junior high school ('middle school') 10-D
ci (DN)	지	
ətɪ e issnɪn ci asimnikka?	어디에 있는지 아십니까?	Do you know where [it] is? 13
Kukmusəng e tilə on ci,	국무성에 들어온지	since I joined the State Department, 15
ci-ta	지다	
chuwə ci-ta (chuwə cə)	추워 지다: 추워 저	gets colder 18
cikap	지갑	wallet 16-D
cikəp	직업	occupation, profession 18-D
cikɪm	지금	now, present 5
cikcang	직장	place of work 18-D
cikkong	직공	factory worker, technician 18-D
cilki-ta (Vi: cilkiə)	지기다: 지기어	is tough 13
cilmun	지문	question(iars) 13-D

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

cina-ta (Vi: cina)	지나다: 지나	passes by, gets along
Yocim ettehe cinasimnikka?	요즘 어떻게 지나 십니까?	How are you getting along these days? 1
cinan	지난	last, past
cinan sahil	지난 사흘	last three days 6
cito	지도	map 2-D
cip	집	house, home 2-D
ce ka	제가	I (polite subject) 17-G
ceil (Ad)	제일	most, best, No. 1 10-N
Ceil phyellihamnita.	제일 편리합니다.	[It]'s most convenient. 10
cæmi	재미	fun, interest 1
Sensæng in cæmi ettehsimnikka?	선생은 재미 어떻습니까?	And how are YOU doing? 1
Cæmi (ka) issimnita.	재미(가) 있습니다.	[It]'s interesting. 8
Geimsi	제임스	James 1
cca-ta (Vt: cca)	<u>cc</u> 짜다: 짜	is salty 13
ccali (PN)	자리	worth, value 5
o-sip Wæn ccali	오십 원 자리	50 Wæn worth, ₩50 bill 5
ccalp-ta (Vi: ccalpə)	짧다: 짧아	is short (in length) 10-D
ccok (PN)	쪽	side, direction 2
wen ccok	왼쪽	the left (side) 2
i ccok	이쪽	this way 2-D
Sichəng ccok ilo	시청쪽으로	in the direction of the City Hall 2-D
ccim (PN)	쯤	around, about
tasəs si ccim	다섯 시쯤	around 5 o'clock 6
ccæ (PN)	재	
tu pən ccæ	두 번째	the second time 7

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

ccæm	잼	jam 13-D
	<u>ch</u>	
cha	차	car 4-N
cha	차	tea 12-D
hongcha	홍차	black tea 10-G
cha-ta (Vi: cha)	차다: 차	is cold
chan mul	찬물	cold water 12-D
chako	차고	garage 16-D
cham (Ad)	참	really, very 9
Cham (Int)	참	By the way, Oh! 9-N
chac-ta (Vt: chacə)	찾다: 찾아	looks for, seeks 3
əti lil chac(s)imnikka?	어디를 찾습니까?	What (place) are you looking for? 3
chacha (Ad)	차차	gradually 18
chang (mun)	창(문)	window 11-D
chə	처	my wife 14-D
chəim	처음	first, the first time 1
chəim ilo	처음으로	for the first time 7-N
chəl	철	season 18
chələm (P)	처럼	
Nyuyok chələm	뉴욕처럼	like (or just as) New York 18
chən (Num Ch)	천	thousand 4
chənam	처남	brother-in-law ('wife's brother') 14-D
chənyə	처녀	maiden, single woman, spinster 14-D

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

chənchənhi (Ad)	천천히	slowly 11-D
chenman	천만	ten-million 1
chenman e	천만에	of ten-million
Chenman e malssim imnita.	천만에 말씀입니다.	You're welcome. 1
chet (D)	첫	first 7 (see <u>chəm</u> )
chet ccæ	첫째	first, the first 7
chet pen ccæ	첫 번째	the first, the first time 7
chece	처제	wife's younger sister 14-D
chəhyeng	처형	wife's older sister 14-D
chieta po-ta (Vt: chieta pwa)	쳐다 보다: 쳐다 봐	looks up to, beholds 12-G
cho	초	vinegar 13
chon	촌	village, rural area 15-D
chongcang	총장	president (of university) 16-D
chotæ	초대	invitation 13-D
chongkak	총각	bachelor, unmarried man 14-G
chulipku	출입구	exit-entrance 16-D
chulku	출구	exit 16-D
chum	춤	dancing
chum (11) chu-ta (chum (11) chwæ)	춤을 추다: 춤을 춰	dances 9-D
chup-ta (Vi: chwæ)	춥다: 추워	is cold 18
chungpun	충분	sufficiency
chungpun-ha-ta ( chungpun-hæ)	충분하다: 충분해	is sufficient, is enough 13
chil (Num Ch)	칠	seven 4



KOREAN BASIC COURSE

chinku	친구	friend 3
chinchək	친척	relatives 14-D
chæk	책	book 1-G
chækpang	책방	book store 4
chæksang	책상	table, desk 2-D
Chwe	최	Choe (family name) 1-D
ha-ta (Vt: hæ <u>or</u> hayə)	하다: 해: 하여	does 1
Muəs (il) hasimnikka?	무엇을 하십니까?	What do you do (sir)? 1
haya(h)-ta (Vi: hayæ)	하얗다: 하얘	is white 4-N
hayən sək	하얀 색	white color 4-D
hako (P)	하고	with, and 9
na hako	나하고	with me 9
chæk hako yənphil	책하고 연필	book and pencil 9-G
hakki	학기	semester 10-D
hakkyo	학교	school 2
haknyən	학년	grade (school year), grader
haksæng	학생	student 1
hakca	학자	scholar 8-D
hakcang	학장	dean (of college) 16-D
halapəci	할아버지	grandfather 13-G
halu	하루	one day, the 1st day of the month 6
halməni	할머니	grandmother 14-D

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

han (D)	한	approximately 8
han sam nyen	한 삼 년	about 3 years 8
han(a) (Num K)	하나	one 4
hanil	하늘	heaven, sky 18
Hansik	한식	Korean food 12
Hankuk	한국	Korea 1
Hankuk mal	한국 말	Korean (language) 1
Hankuk salam	한국 사람	(a) Korean 1-G
Hankukə	한국 어	Korean 8-D
hanthe (P)	한테	to 11-G (see <u>eke</u> )
hapsing	합승	jitney 7-G
Hapcungkuk	합중국	United States 18-D
hangsang (Ad)	항상	all the time 9-N
hangku	항구	harbor 18-D
hangsi (Ad)	항시	always 9-N
həli	허리	waist 13-D
hok (Ad)	혹	by any chance 16
hoksi (Ad)	혹시	by any chance 16
hothel	호텔	hotel 2-D
honca	혼자	single, alone 14
Hocu	호주	Australia 6-D
hongcha	홍차	(black) tea 10-G
hu	후	the later time
hu e	후에	later, after a while 7

KOREAN BASIC COURSE

təhak ɪl coləp-han hu e	대학을 졸업한 후에	after graduation from the college 15
hullyungha-ta (Vi: hullyunghæ)	훌륭하다: 훌륭해	is excellent, is outstanding 13
huchu	후추	black pepper 13
huchu kalu	후추 가루	black pepper (power) 13
hɪli-ta (Vi: hɪliə)	흐리다: 흐리어	is cloudy 18
hilkiə po-ta (Vt: hilkiə pwa)	흔겨 보다: 흔겨 봐	steers 12-G
hi-ta (Vi: hiə)	희다: 희어	is whitish 4-D
hæ	해	year, sun 6-D
musɪn hæ	무슨 해	what year 6-D
hæwe	해외	overseas, abroad 15-D
hyənkɪm	현금	cash 7-G
hyənkɪm ilo	현금으로	in cash 7-D
hyuka	휴가	vacation 6
Hyuka ɪɪl patəssɪmnita.	휴가를 났습니다.	[I] took a vacation. 6
hyəng	형	older brother
nyəng nim	형님	older brother (honored) 14
hyəngce	형제	siblings, brothers and sisters 14
Hwayoil	화요일	Tuesday 6-D
Hwalan	화란	Holland 6-D
hwesa	회사	company, firm 8

## KOREAN BASIC COURSE

### Index to the Grammar Notes

References are to Unit and Grammar Note: for example, 3.1. refers to Unit 3, Grammar Note 1. The alphabetical order of the Index follows that of Korean-English Glossary. The letters which are not used in the Glossary are inserted as follows: D after T; F and Q after P; V after H.

- Action Verbs 3.1.  
 Adverbial Phrases 6.4.  
 Adverbs 5.3.  
an (negative) 'not' 3.4.  
 Auxiliary Verb 7.6.  
il/lil (Particle) 1.2.  
-ilē 'in order to-' 6.3. (See -lē.)  
ilo (Particle) 2.2. (See lo/ilo.)  
-ilyəko 7.3.  
-ilyemyen 12.2.  
in/nin (Particle) 1.2.  
-ini kka 'because-', 'since-' 12.1.  
     (See -ni kka.)  
i/ka (Particle) 2.2.  
ina (Particle) 10.4. (See na.)  
 Indirect Quotative Particle 17.3.  
 Infinitive 4.1.  
 Infinitive + iss- 14.5.  
 Infinitive + to 'even though-',  
     'although-' 10.2.  
 Infinitive + tu- (or noh-) 16.2.  
 Infinitive + po- 12.3.  
 Infinitive + pon il i iss- 13.2.  
                     cək      əps-  
 Infinitive + sə 14.2.  
 Infinitive + ci- 18.2.  
 Infinitive + cu- 11.2.  
 Interrogative + -n/in/nin ci 13.3.  
 Intransitive Verbs 3.1.  
itinci (Particle) 12.4. (See tinci.)  
ilato (Particle) 18.5. (See lato.)  
imnita vs. issimnita 2.5.  
e (Particle) 'of', 'is' 1.2.  
e (Particle) 'at', 'on', 'in' 2.2.  
e (Particle) 'to' 3.6.  
 Endings 2.1. (See Verb-Endings.)  
esə (Particle) 'from', 'at', 'in',  
     'on' 3.5.  
ya (Particle) 11.3.  
     Infinitive + ya + ha- 'has to-',  
     'must-' 11.3.a.  
     Infinitive + ya 'only when (or  
     if)-', 'must- to-' 11.3.b.  
yo (Particle) 4.4.  
wa/kwa (Particle) 4.4.  
ka (Particle) 2.2. (See i/ka.)  
kathi (Particle) 18.4.  
kacang 'the most-' 10.3.  
-ko 9.1.  
ko (Particle) 17.3. (See lako.)  
-kun yo 18.1. (See -ninkun yo.)  
-ki 8.1.  
-ki cən e 'before doing-' 15.2.  
-ke 16.3.  
kwa (Particle) 4.4. (See wa/kwa.)  
kkaci (Particle) 'to', 'as far as',  
     'until', 'till', 'by' 7.5.  
talm 15.1. (See hu.)  
to (Particle) 'also, too' 4.3.  
tinci/itinci (Particle) 12.4.  
 Time Counters: nyən 'year', hæ 'year'  
     -wəl 'month', tal 'month', cull

## KOREAN BASIC COURSE

- 'week', il 'day', nal 'day', -si  
'o'clock', sikan 'hour', pun  
'minute' 6.1.
- ttæ 'time', 'occasion', 'when' 14.1.
- Transitive Verbs 3.1.
- Dependent Nouns 13.4.
- Description Verbs 3.1.
- Determinatives 2.3.
- Direct Quotative Particle 17.3.
- lako/ko (Particle) 17.3.
- lato/ilato (Particle) 18.5.
- lil (Particle) 1.2. (See il/lil.)
- l/il kəs i- 11.5.
- l/il kyehwek i- 'be planning to—' 18.6.
- l/il kka yo? 'Shall I-?', 'Shall we—?',  
'Will [it] - (do you think)?' 5.2.
- l/il su əps- 'cannot—', 'be unable  
to—' 8.3.
- l/il su iss- 'can-', 'be able to—' 8.3.
- l/il + Nominal 9.3.
- lo/ilo (Particle) 'to', 'toward' 2.2.
- lo/ilo (Particle) 'as', 'in the capacity'  
'by means of' 7.2.
- lyəko 7.3. (See ilyəko.)
- lyəmyən 12.2. (See ilyəmyən.)
- man (Particle) 'only', 'just' 12.5.
- mata (Particle) 8.2.
- myən/ımyən 'if-' 10.1.
- na/ina '-but' 13.1.
- na/ina (Particle) 10.4.
- n/in/nın ka yo? 7.3.
- n/in/nın + kəs 11.4.
- n/in + il (or cək) i + iss- (or əps-)  
'has (or has not), sometime up to  
present, done so-and-so' 13.2.
- n/in/nın kəs kath- 18.3.
- n/in/nın te 16.1.
- n/in/nın + Noun 5.1.
- n/in/nın ci 16.4.
- n/in ci + period of time + twe- (or  
cına-) 'It has been— (period of  
time) since—' 15.3.
- n hu e 'after doing-' 15.1.
- nın (Particle) 1.2. (See in/nın.)
- nın + tongan 'while doing so-and-  
so' 15.4.
- ninkun/kun yo 18.2.
- ni/inı kka 'since—', 'because—'  
12.1.
- Nouns 1.3.
- Noun hrases 1.3.
- Nominal (Expression) 1.3.
- Nominal + e tæhə se 'concerning  
Nominal', 'about Nominal' 15.5.
- Nominal + we (or pakk) e 14.3.
- Nominal Phrases 7.1.
- Numerals 4.6.
- Past Tenses: Simple Past and Remote  
Past 4.2.
- Past Tense Suffixes 4.2.
- Particles 1.2.
- Personal Nouns in Polite and Plain  
Speeches 17.2.
- Personal Nominal + eke (or hanthe)  
11.2.
- Polite Speech: Formal 2.1.; Informal  
4.1.
- Possessive Particle 1.2. (See e.)
- Post-Nouns 2.4.
- pota (Particle) 'than', 'more than'  
8.4.
- Plain Speech: Formal and Informal  
17.1.
- Present Noun-Modifier Ending 5.1.
- Present Noun-Modifier Words 9.3.
- Prospective Modifier Ending 9.3.
- Future Tense in Korean 3.2.
- Future Tense Suffix 3.2.

## KOREAN BASIC COURSE

---

- Quotatives 17.3.  
Suffixes 3.2. (See Verb Suffixes.)  
ssik 'each', 'at one time' 14.4.  
cən 'before', 'the previous time' 15.2.  
-ci man '—but' 9.2.  
-ci + anhsimnita 4.5.  
-ci + ma(i) 11.1.  
-ci mot ha- 'cannot—', 'is not—' 8.3.  
-ci yo? 6.2.  
ceil (or kacang) 'the most—' 10.3.  
Copula 1.1.  
Counter 4.6.  
Counters: cang, can, kwən, kæ, pun, maŋi,  
pəl, tæ 5.4.
- chələm (Particle) 18.4.  
hako (Particle) 9.4.  
Honorifics 3.3. 11.6.  
Honorific Suffix 3.3.  
hu (or talm) 'after', 'the later time',  
time', 'next' 15.1.  
Verbals 1.1.  
Verb-Endings 2.1.  
Verbs: Action vs. Description and  
Intransitive vs. Transitive 3.1.  
Verb Phrases 7.6.  
Verb-Stems 2.1.  
Verb Suffixes 3.2.